



# **IP Office 4.1**

## **Installation Manual**

### **Notice**

While reasonable efforts were made to ensure that the information in this document was complete and accurate at the time of printing, Avaya Inc. can assume no liability for any errors. Changes and corrections to the information in this document may be incorporated in future releases.

### **Documentation Disclaimer**

Avaya Inc. is not responsible for any modifications, additions, or deletions to the original published version of this documentation unless such modifications, additions, or deletions were performed by Avaya.

### **Link Disclaimer**

Avaya Inc. is not responsible for the contents or reliability of any linked Web sites referenced elsewhere within this Documentation, and Avaya does not necessarily endorse the products, services, or information described or offered within them. We cannot guarantee that these links will work all of the time and we have no control over the availability of the linked pages.

### **License**

USE OR INSTALLATION OF THE PRODUCT INDICATES THE END USER'S ACCEPTANCE OF THE TERMS SET FORTH HEREIN AND THE GENERAL LICENSE TERMS AVAILABLE ON THE AVAYA WEBSITE AT <http://support.avaya.com/LicenseInfo/> ("GENERAL LICENSE TERMS"). IF YOU DO NOT WISH TO BE BOUND BY THESE TERMS, YOU MUST RETURN THE PRODUCT(S) TO THE POINT OF PURCHASE WITHIN TEN (10) DAYS OF DELIVERY FOR A REFUND OR CREDIT.

Avaya grants End User a license within the scope of the license types described below. The applicable number of licenses and units of capacity for which the license is granted will be one (1), unless a different number of licenses or units of capacity is specified in the Documentation or other materials available to End User. "Designated Processor" means a single stand-alone computing device. "Server" means a Designated Processor that hosts a software application to be accessed by multiple users. "Software" means the computer programs in object code, originally licensed by Avaya and ultimately utilized by End User, whether as stand-alone Products or pre-installed on Hardware. "Hardware" means the standard hardware Products, originally sold by Avaya and ultimately utilized by End User.

### **License Type(s): Designated System(s) License (DS).**

End User may install and use each copy of the Software on only one Designated Processor, unless a different number of Designated Processors is indicated in the Documentation or other materials available to End User. Avaya may require the Designated Processor(s) to be identified by type, serial number, feature key, location or other specific designation, or to be provided by End User to Avaya through electronic means established by Avaya specifically for this purpose.

### **Copyright**

Except where expressly stated otherwise, the Product is protected by copyright and other laws respecting proprietary rights. Unauthorized reproduction, transfer, and or use can be a criminal, as well as a civil, offense under the applicable law.

### **Third-Party Components**

Certain software programs or portions thereof included in the Product may contain software distributed under third party agreements ("Third Party Components"), which may contain terms that expand or limit rights to use certain portions of the Product ("Third Party Terms"). Information identifying Third Party Components and the Third Party Terms that apply to them is available on Avaya's web site at: <http://support.avaya.com/ThirdPartyLicense/>

### **Avaya Fraud Intervention**

If you suspect that you are being victimized by toll fraud and you need technical assistance or support, call Technical Service Center Toll Fraud Intervention Hotline at +1-800-643-2353 for the United States and Canada. Suspected security vulnerabilities with Avaya Products should be reported to Avaya by sending mail to: [securityalerts@avaya.com](mailto:securityalerts@avaya.com).

For additional support telephone numbers, see the Avaya Support web site (<http://www.avaya.com/support>).

### **Trademarks**

Avaya and the Avaya logo are registered trademarks of Avaya Inc. in the United States of America and other jurisdictions. Unless otherwise provided in this document, marks identified by "®," "™" and "SM" are registered marks, trademarks and service marks, respectively, of Avaya Inc. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

### **Documentation information**

For the most current versions of documentation, go to the Avaya Support web site (<http://www.avaya.com/support>) or the IP Office Knowledge Base (<http://marketingtools.avaya.com/knowledgebase/>).

### **Avaya Support**

Avaya provides indirect and direct services for customer support, report problems or to ask questions about your product. These services are subject to your support agreement. Contact your local reseller / distributor for indirect support . Contact Avaya Global Services (AGS) for direct support. For additional information on support, see the Avaya Web site: <http://www.avaya.com/support>.

# Contents

<b>IP Office Installation.....</b>	<b>7</b>	IP Office Application CD/DVD's.....	55
Installing IP Office.....	7	VoIP and Network Assessments.....	56
Equipment Availability.....	8	Voice Compression Channels.....	57
RoHS.....	8	Training.....	59
Repair.....	8	Web Sites.....	60
<b>System Overview.....</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>A. Planning.....</b>	<b>61</b>
System Overview.....	9	Space Requirements.....	61
Small Office Edition System Components.....	10	Environmental requirements.....	63
IP Office IP400 System Components.....	12	Tools and Parts Required.....	64
IP500 Office System Components.....	14	<b>B. Pre-Configuration.....</b>	<b>65</b>
Control Units.....	16	Off Line Configuration.....	65
Control Unit Summary.....	18	Creating a New Configuration.....	66
IP Office Standard Edition.....	19	Importing and Exporting Settings.....	67
IP500 Base Cards.....	20	<b>C. Small Office Edition Installation.....</b>	<b>69</b>
IP500 Digital Station Base Card.....	20	Small Office Edition Installation.....	69
IP500 Analog Phone Base Card.....	20	Unpacking.....	70
IP500 VCM Base Card.....	21	Installing the Admin Applications.....	71
IP500 Legacy Card Carrier Base Card.....	21	Default Control Unit Power Up (SOE).....	73
IP500 Trunk Daughter Cards.....	22	Connecting the Manager PC.....	74
IP500 Analog Trunk Daughter Card.....	23	Receiving a Configuration (Pre-3.2).....	75
IP500 BRI Trunk Daughter Card.....	23	Checking the System Using System Monitor.....	76
IP500 PRI-U Trunk Daughter Card.....	23	Fitting Trunk Cards (SOE).....	78
IP400 Trunk Cards.....	24	Shelf/Wall Mounting (SOE).....	80
External Expansion Modules.....	26	Grounding (SOE).....	82
IP400 External Expansion Modules.....	27	Upgrading the Core Software (SOE).....	83
IP500 External Expansion Modules.....	29	Configuring Security Settings.....	85
Other IP Office Cards.....	30	N. Receiving a Configuration.....	86
Modem Cards.....	30	Running the System Status Application.....	87
Embedded Voicemail Memory Cards.....	30	<b>D. IP400 Basic Installation.....</b>	<b>89</b>
Small Office Edition Wireless Card.....	31	IP400 Installation.....	89
IP400 Voice Compression Modules.....	31	Unpacking.....	90
Power Supplies.....	32	Installing the Admin Applications.....	91
Power Supply Cords.....	33	Control Unit Power Up.....	93
Power Supply Backup (UPS).....	34	Connecting the Manager PC.....	94
Cables.....	35	Receiving a Configuration (Pre-3.2).....	95
Standard IP Office Cables.....	36	Checking the System Using System Monitor.....	96
Grounding.....	37	Fitting VCM Cards.....	98
Out-of-Building Connections/Lightning Protection.....	38	Fitting Modem Cards.....	100
Wall and Rack Mounting.....	39	Fitting Trunk Interface Cards.....	102
Wall Mounting.....	39	Stage 9b. Grounding E1R2 Coaxial Connections.....	104
Rack Mounting.....	39	Rack Mounting Instructions.....	105
Feature Key Dongles.....	41	Adding Expansion Modules.....	107
License Keys.....	42	Adding a WAN3 Module.....	109
IP Office Phones.....	43	Grounding (Earthing).....	111
IP Office Core Software (BIN Files).....	44	Upgrading the Core Software (IP400).....	113
Upgrading.....	45	Configuring Security Settings.....	115
Supported Country Locales.....	47	N. Receiving a Configuration.....	116
IP Office Programming and Maintenance Applications.....	49	Running the System Status Application.....	117
User Applications.....	50		
Voicemail Applications.....	51		
Call Logging Applications.....	52		
Call Center Applications.....	53		
CTI Applications.....	54		

<b>E. IP500 Basic Installation.....</b>	<b>119</b>	<b>H. Additional Processes .....</b>	<b>171</b>
IP500 Installation .....	119	Upgrading the Core Software .....	171
A. Tools Required .....	121	Creating a WAN Link .....	174
B. Read the Documentation .....	122	Music on Hold (MOH).....	175
C. Unpacking Equipment .....	123	IP500 Reset Button .....	177
D. IP500 Card Installation.....	124	Grounding and Protection Devices.....	178
D1. IP500 Trunk Daughter Card Installation .....	125	Out-of-Building Connections/Lightning Protection.....	178
D2. IP400 Legacy Card Installation .....	126	DS Phone IROB Installation .....	179
D3. IP500 Card Installation .....	127	Analog Phone Barrier Boxes .....	180
E. Inserting the Feature Key .....	128	Rack Mounting Barrier Boxes .....	182
F. Applying Power .....	129	External Output Port.....	183
H. Installing the IP Office Admin Applications ..	130	Using the External Output (Door) Port.....	183
I. Connecting the Manager PC .....	132	EXT O/P Port.....	184
J. Start Manager .....	133	Licensing .....	185
K. Upgrading the Core Software (IP500).....	134	License Keys .....	185
L. Checking the CPU LED .....	135	Feature Key Dongles .....	186
M. Check the Card LEDs .....	136	Installation Requirements .....	187
N. Receiving the Configuration (IP500).....	137	Serial Port Feature Key Installation .....	188
O. Adding Licences .....	138	Parallel Port / USB Feature Key Installation.....	189
P. Adding External Expansion Modules (IP500).....	140	So8 BRI Module .....	190
Q. Configuring Security Settings (IP500).....	142	So8 Example 1 .....	190
R. Rack Mounting (IP500) .....	143	So8 Example 2: Video Conference.....	191
S. Wall Mounting (IP500).....	145	Polycom Video Module Settings .....	192
T. Grounding (IP500).....	147	SNMP .....	193
Running the System Status Application .....	149	SNMP Introduction.....	193
<b>F. Phone Installation.....</b>	<b>151</b>	Installing the IP Office MIB Files.....	194
Installing Phones .....	151	HP Open View Network Node Manager .....	194
Installing 2400/5400 Series Phones .....	152	CastleRock SNMPc 5.1.6c and earlier....	195
Installing an EU24 Add-On .....	157	CastleRock SNMPc V5.0.1 .....	195
Basic Button Programming .....	158	Enabling SNMP and Polling Support .....	196
Changing Extension Numbers .....	160	Enabling SNMP Trap Sending.....	197
Swapping Extension Users.....	162	Trap Generation.....	198
<b>G. External Trunk Configuration.....</b>	<b>163</b>	RFC1215 Generic SNMP Traps.....	198
Trunk Configuration .....	163	IPO-MIB .....	198
Clock Quality .....	164	DTE Port Maintenance .....	200
Unused Trunks .....	166	DTE Port Overview .....	200
Prefix Dialing .....	168	RS232 DTE Port .....	201
		DTE Cables.....	201
		Erasing the Configuration .....	202
		Defaulting Security Settings.....	204
		Erasing the Operational Software.....	205

<b>System Components .....</b>	<b>207</b>	4601.....	267
System Components .....	207	4602IP, 4602SW.....	268
Unsupported Items.....	207	4610SW.....	269
Control Units.....	208	4620IP, 4620SW.....	270
IP500 System Unit.....	208	4621SW.....	271
IP412 Control Unit.....	210	4625SW.....	272
IP406 V2 Control Unit.....	212	5402D.....	273
Small Office Edition.....	214	5410.....	274
Internal Cards.....	216	5420D.....	275
Modem Cards.....	216	5601.....	276
Wireless Card.....	216	5602.....	277
Embedded Voicemail Memory Cards.....	217	5610SW.....	278
Voice Compression Module Cards (VCM's).....	218	5620.....	279
IP400 Trunks Cards.....	219	5621.....	280
Analog Trunk Card Universal (ATM4U).....	219	6408D.....	281
Analog Trunk Card (ATM4).....	220	6416D.....	282
BRI Trunk Cards (Quad BRI).....	221	6424D.....	283
T1 PRI Trunk Cards.....	221	T3 Classic.....	284
E1 PRI Trunk Cards.....	222	T3 Comfort.....	285
WAN Trunk Card.....	222	T3 Compact.....	286
E1R2 PRI Trunk Cards.....	223	Phone Add-Ons.....	287
IP500 Base Cards.....	224	4450.....	287
IP500 Legacy Card Carrier Base Card.....	224	EU24.....	288
IP500 VCM Cards.....	225	EU24BL.....	289
IP500 Digital Station Base Card.....	226	T3 DSS.....	290
IP500 Analog Phone Base Card.....	227	201B Recorder Interface Module.....	291
IP500 Daughter Cards.....	228	XM24.....	292
IP500 Analog Trunk Daughter Card.....	228	Applications.....	293
IP500 BRI Trunk Daughter Cards.....	229	Call Status.....	293
IP500 PRI Universal Trunk Daughter Card.....	230	Compact Business Center (CBC).....	294
IP400 Expansion Modules.....	231	Compact Contact Center (CCC).....	295
IP400 Analog Trunk Module.....	231	Conferencing Center.....	299
IP400 Digital Station V2.....	233	ContactStore.....	300
IP400 Digital Station V1.....	235	Delta Server.....	301
IP400 Phone Module V2.....	237	Feature Key Server.....	302
IP400 Phone Module.....	239	Manager.....	303
IP400 So8 Module.....	241	Monitor (Sysmon).....	304
IP400 WAN3 10/100 Module.....	243	MS-CRM.....	305
IP500 Expansion Modules.....	245	Phone Manager.....	306
IPO 500 Analog Trunk 16.....	245	SoftConsole.....	308
IPO 500 BRI SO8.....	247	System Status Application (SSA).....	309
IPO 500 Digital Station.....	249	TAPI.....	310
IP500 Phone.....	251	Voicemail Lite.....	311
Phones.....	253	Voicemail Pro.....	312
2402D.....	253	IP Office Ports.....	315
2410D.....	254	Adding Firewall Exceptions.....	315
2420D.....	255	Ports Used.....	316
3616.....	256	Ports.....	317
3620.....	257	Protocols.....	317
3626.....	258	Specification for IP Office Application PC's.....	318
3641.....	259	Server Applications Dependencies.....	319
3645.....	260	Client Applications Dependencies.....	320
3701.....	261	Operating Systems for IP Office.....	321
3711.....	262	Licence Keys.....	322
3810.....	263	License Keys General.....	322
4406D+.....	264	Licenses Keys IP500.....	323
4412D+.....	265	License Keys CCC.....	324
4424D+.....	266	License Keys CTI.....	325

License Keys Phone Manager .....	326	3700 Series Phones.....	365
License Keys Voicemail .....	327	3810 Phones.....	366
IP DECT Licenses.....	328	4400 Series Phones.....	366
45-Day Trial Licenses .....	329	4600 Series Phones (New Style) .....	366
Ports and Cables .....	330	5400 Series Phones.....	367
Cables.....	330	5600 Series Phones.....	367
Standard IP Office Cables.....	331	6400 Series Phones.....	367
IP Office Port Types.....	332	T3 Series Phones (Upn) .....	368
ANALOG Port .....	333	T3 Series Phones (IP).....	368
AUDIO Port.....	334	Spares.....	369
BRI Port (So).....	335	IP DECT Handsets and Handset	
BRI Port .....	336	Accessories.....	369
PRI/BRI Trunk Cable.....	336	IP DECT Base Stations.....	370
DC I/P Port.....	337	IP DECT Site Survey Kits.....	370
DS Ports.....	338	IP DECT Licenses.....	370
Structured Cabling Line Cord .....	338	Equipment Availability.....	371
RS232 DTE Port .....	339	RoHS .....	371
DTE Cables.....	339	<b>Safety Statements .....</b>	<b>373</b>
EXPANSION Ports.....	340	Safety and Homologation Statements.....	373
Expansion Interconnect Cable .....	340	Lithium Batteries.....	373
EXT O/P Port .....	341	Lightning Protection/Hazard Symbols .....	374
LAN Port .....	342	Trunk Interface Modules.....	375
LAN Cables .....	343	Further Information and Product Updates .....	376
Analog Power Failure (PF) Ports .....	344	Support Telephone Numbers.....	376
PHONE Port.....	345	Compliance with FCC Rules .....	377
Structured Cabling Line Cord .....	346	Port Safety Classification .....	378
PRI Port .....	347	EMC Cautions .....	379
PRI/BRI Trunk Cable.....	347	89/336/ EEC (EMC Directive) CISPR	
WAN Port.....	348	22:1993 including A1 + A2, AS/NZ	
V.24 WAN Cable.....	349	3548:1995 (ROW).....	379
V.35 WAN Cable.....	350	Federal Communications Commission	
X.21 WAN Cable.....	351	(FCC).....	379
SAP Codes .....	352	Canadian Department of Communications	
SAP Codes .....	352	(DOC) .....	379
IP Office Control Units.....	352	EMC Caution for China.....	379
IP500 Base Cards .....	352	Regulatory Instructions for Use .....	380
IP500 Trunk Daughter Cards .....	352	IP Office Operation in Australia .....	380
IP400 Trunks Cards .....	353	Industry Canada Notification (DoC) .....	380
IP500 External Expansion Modules .....	353	China .....	381
IP400 External Expansion Modules .....	354	IP Office Operation in EU .....	382
Internal Cards.....	354	IP Office Operation in New Zealand .....	382
Power Supply Units .....	355	FCC Notification.....	383
Power Cords.....	356	<b>Index.....</b>	<b>385</b>
Cables .....	358		
Mounting.....	358		
Barrier Boxes.....	358		
Feature Keys Dongles.....	359		
CCC Licenses .....	359		
CTI Licenses .....	359		
General Licenses .....	360		
IP500 Licenses.....	361		
Phone Manager Licenses.....	361		
Voicemail Licenses.....	362		
IP DECT Licenses.....	363		
45-Day Trial Licenses.....	363		
IP Office Application CDs .....	364		
2400 Series Phones .....	365		
3600 Series Phones .....	365		

---

# IP Office Installation

---

## Installing IP Office

This documentation is intended to assist with the installation of the core components of an Avaya IP Office telephone system. It describes those components and factors that should be considered for an installation.

- The IP Office is a converged voice and data communications system. It should therefore only be installed by persons with telephony and IP data network experience.
- Installers must be trained on IP Office systems. Through its Avaya University (AU), Avaya provides a range of training courses including specific IP Office implementation and installation training. It also provides certification schemes for installers to achieve various levels of IP Office accreditation. See Training.
- It is the installer's responsibility to ensure that all installation work is done in accordance with local and national regulations and requirements. It is also their responsibility to accurately establish the customer's requirements before installation and to ensure that the installation meets those requirements.
- You should read and understand this documentation before installation. You should also obtain and read the Avaya Technical Bulletins relevant to recent IP Office software and hardware releases to ensure that you are familiar with any changes to the IP Office equipment and software.

The following components of IP Office are outside the range of a basic IP Office installation. They are covered by separate installation and configuration documentation. If those components are to be part of the IP Office system installation, that documentation should be obtained, read and understood prior to the installation.

- **4600/5600 Series IP Phone Installation.**
- **Embedded Voicemail Installation.**
- **Voicemail Lite Installation.**
- **Voicemail Pro Installation.**
- **Delta Server (SMDR) Installation.**
- **Compact Business Center (CBC) Installation.**
- **Compact Contact Center (CCC) Installation.**
- **Contact Store Installation.**
- **Compact DECT Installation.**
- **IP DECT Installation.**
- **3600 Series Wireless IP Installation.**
- **IP Office Applications Installation.** (Phone Manager, SoftConsole and Conference Center)

## Equipment Availability

SAP codes and details of specific items within this documentation are for reference only. Items available in any specific locale should be confirmed against the local Avaya IP Office price list for that locale. The local price list may also include additional items relative to the installation requirements of that locale.

---

## RoHS

RoHS is an European Union directive for the Removal of Certain Hazardous Substances from Electrical and Electronic Equipment. Similar legislation has been or is being introduced in a number of other countries. Avaya has decided to make its global product range compliant with the requirements of RoHS. The actions taken vary

- In some cases equipment has been discontinued and is no longer available from Avaya.
- In some cases new manufactured stock has been made RoHS compliant and keeps its existing SAP code.
- In other cases the equipment has been replaced by a new RoHS compliant alternative with new SAP codes.

The SAP codes within this document are for RoHS compliant equipment unless otherwise stated.

---

## Repair

IP Office systems do not contain any user serviceable or repairable components. If a faulty unit is suspected the whole unit should be replace.

- IP400 control units should only be opened where indicated for the installation of IP400 cards.
- IP500 control units should not be opened under any circumstances.

---

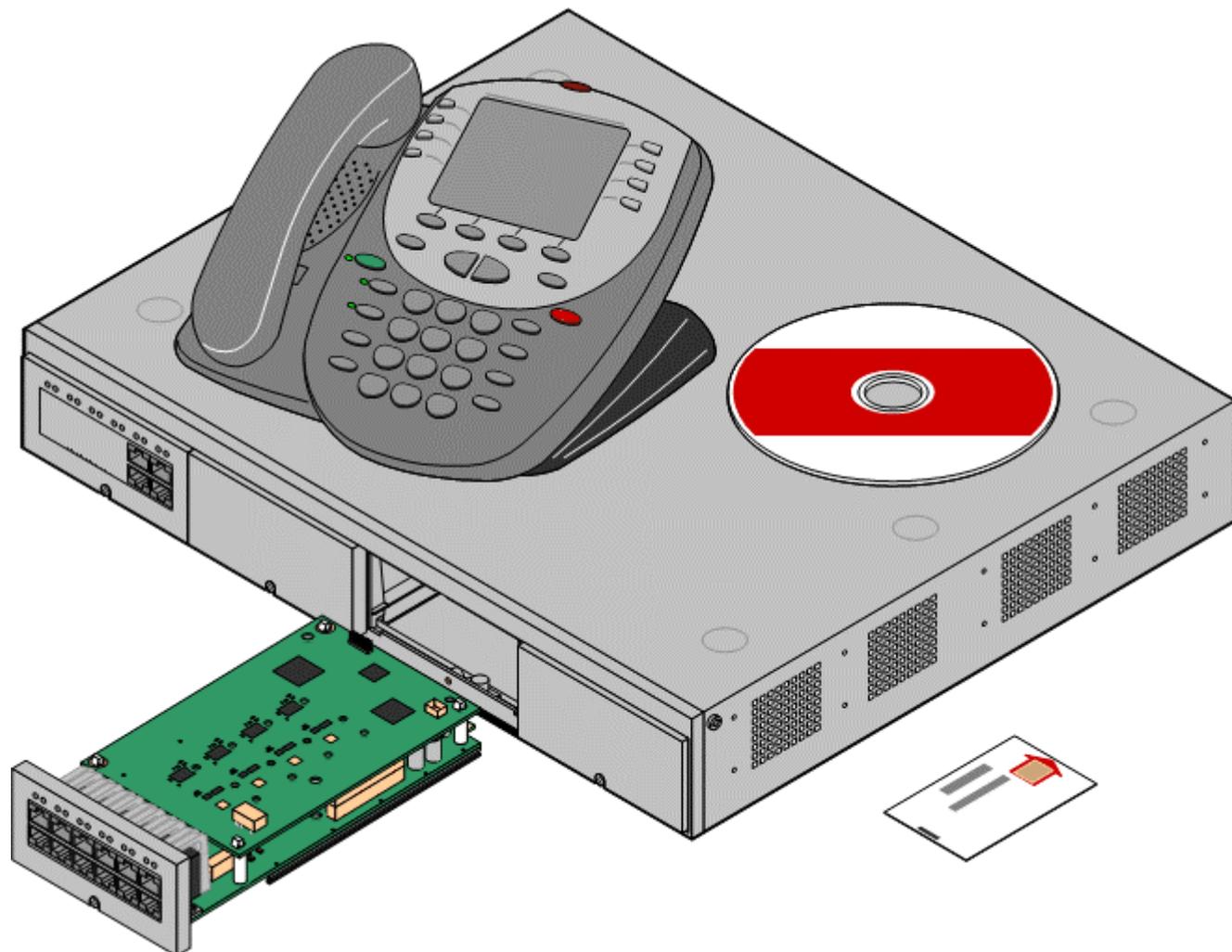
# System Overview

---

## System Overview

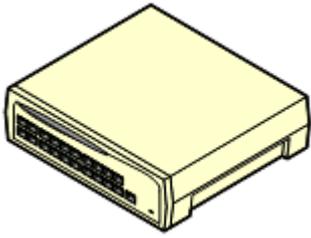
This section looks at the components that collectively form IP Office systems. This includes aspects such as cabling and the need for additional non-Avaya IP Office equipment.

This section provides just a general description of individual units. For greater detail refer to the **System Components** section.



## Small Office Edition System Components

The IP Office Small Office Edition is a single control unit with no external expansion modules. It is intended for small sites and branch offices.



- **IP Office Small Office Edition Control Unit**

The control unit holds the main configuration and performs the routing and switching for telephone calls and data traffic. Each Small Office control unit includes LAN ports, a Ethernet WAN port, and depending on the particular control unit variant a number of integral analog phone, analog extension and digital station ports.



- **Trunk Card**

The Small Office Edition control unit accepts a single IP400 trunk card for additional trunks.



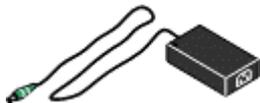
- **Embedded Voicemail Memory Card**

IP Office embedded voicemail is supported by the addition of an Embedded Voicemail memory card.



- **Wireless Card**

The Small Office Edition can support an Avaya 802.11b WiFi wireless card.



- **Power Supplies**

Each Small Office Edition control unit is supplied with an external power supply unit. Additional power supply units may also be required for IP phones and some phone add-ons.

- **Power Cords**

Depending on the locale, different power cords are needed for the external power supply unit.

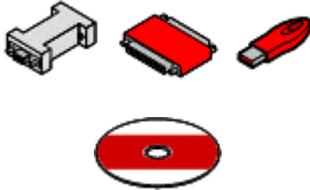


- **Cables**

The IP Office is designed primarily for connection to a structured cabling system using CAT3 UTP cabling. This approach allows telephone and data traffic to share the same wiring infrastructure and simplifies equipment moves.



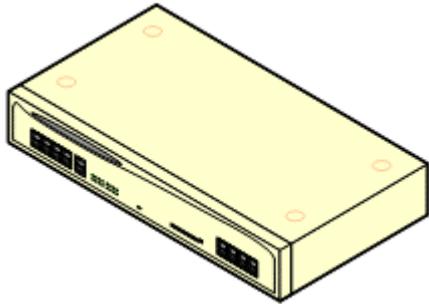
VK00nDd15SDvXoxkw9cR9x\_jOXr\_AWz9



- **Phones**  
IP Office systems support a variety of Avaya digital and IP phones plus analog phones.
- **License Keys**  
Various IP Office features and applications require a license key to be entered into the system's configuration. Each key is a 32-character text string unique to the feature being activated and the serial number of the Feature Key dongle (see below) installed in the system.
- **Feature Key Dongle**  
A uniquely numbered dongle is used to validate license keys.
- **Application CD's/DVD's**  
The IP Office applications can be ordered on a number of CD's. In addition they can be downloaded from the IP Office section of the Avaya support web site (<http://support.avaya.com>).

## IP Office IP400 System Components

The following are the typical components of an IP Office system.



- **IP Office IP400 Control Unit**

The control unit holds the main configuration and performs the routing and switching for telephone calls and data traffic. Each control unit includes LAN ports, slots for additional internal cards and in some cases integral digital and analog phone ports. IP Office 4.0 supports the following IP400 control units:

- **IP406 V2**

Includes 8 integral digital extension (DS) ports, 2 analog phone ports and an 8 port ethernet LAN switch. Can be expanded by the addition of up to 6 IP400 external expansion modules.

- **IP412**

Includes a 2 port ethernet switch. Can be expanded by the addition of up to 12 IP400 external expansion modules.

- **Trunk Cards**

Each IP400 control unit supports the addition of two IP400 trunk cards.

- **Internal Cards**

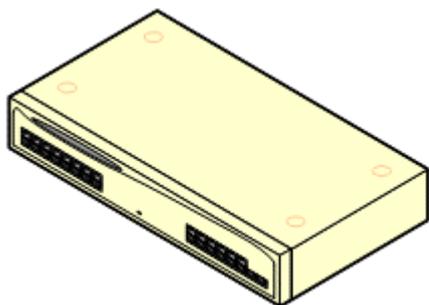
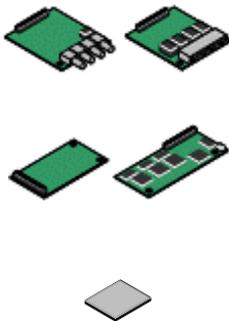
Additional cards can be added to the IP400 control units for features such as modem ports and voice compression channels (used for VoIP).

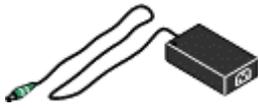
- **Embedded Voicemail Memory Card**

The IP460 V2 supports IP Office embedded voicemail by the addition of an Embedded Voicemail memory card.

- **IP400 External Expansion Modules**

Additional extension and trunk ports can be added using a number of external expansion modules. The number supported depends on the control unit type and the module type.





- **Power Supplies**

Each IP400 Office control unit and external expansion module is supplied with an external power supply unit. Additional power supply units may also be required for IP phones and some phone add-ons.

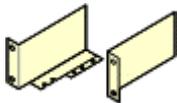


- **Power Cords**

Depending on the locale, different power cords need to be ordered for each control unit, external expansion module and any phones or devices using external power supply units.

- **Cables**

The IP Office is designed primarily for connection to a structured cabling system using CAT3 UTP cabling. This approach allows telephone and data traffic to share the same wiring infrastructure and simplifies equipment moves.



- **IP400 Rack Mounting Kit**

The IP400 control units and expansion modules are designed to be stacked free-standing. However they can also be rack mounted using an optional rack mounting kit for each unit and module.



- **Surge Protectors and Barrier Boxes**

Where the installation includes extensions in other buildings additional protective equipment is required. This equipment may also be required in areas where the lightning risk is high.



- **Phones**

IP Office systems support a variety of Avaya digital and IP phones plus analog phones.

VK00nDd15SDvXoxkw9cR9x\_jOXr\_AWz9

- **License Keys**

Various IP Office features and applications require a license key to be entered into the system's configuration. Each key is a 32-character text string unique to the feature being activated and the serial number of the Feature Key dongle (see below) installed in the system.



- **Feature Key Dongle**

A uniquely numbered dongle used to validate license keys. Several different types of Feature Key dongle are available.

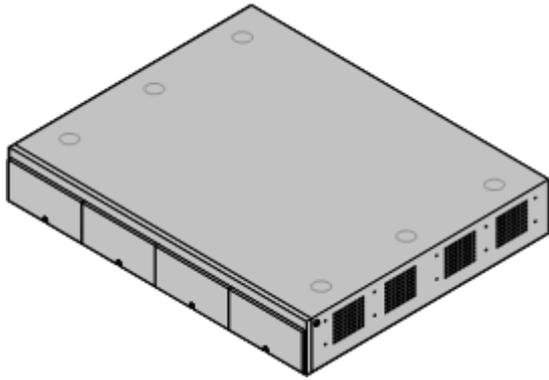


- **Application CD's/DVD's**

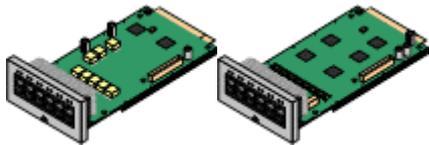
The IP Office applications can be ordered on a number of CD's. In addition they can be downloaded from the IP Office section of the Avaya support web site (<http://support.avaya.com>).

# IP500 Office System Components

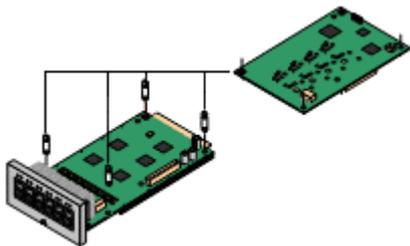
The following are the typical components of an IP Office IP500 system.



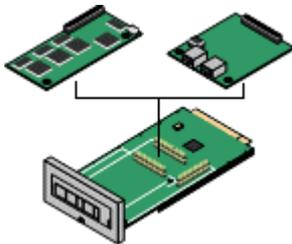
- IP Office IP500 System Unit**  
 The control unit holds the main configuration and performs the routing and switching for telephone calls and data traffic. Each control unit includes LAN ports, slots for additional internal cards and in some cases integral digital and analog phone ports.



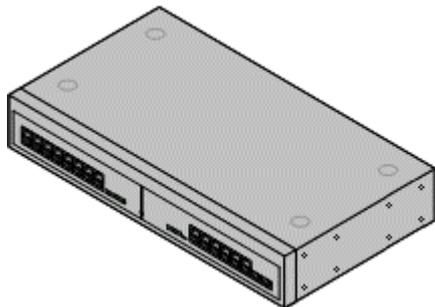
- IP500 Base Cards**  
 The IP500 control unit has slots for up to 4 IP500 base cards. These can be used to add analog extension port, digital extension ports, voice compression channels and some legacy IP400 cards.



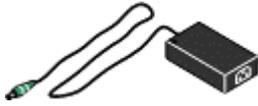
- IP500 Trunk Daughter Cards**  
 Many of the IP500 base cards can be fitted with a IP500 daughter card in order to support various types of trunk connections.



- IP400 Cards**  
 The IP500 Legacy Carrier base card can be used to allow IP400 trunk cards and IP400 VCM cards to be added to the IP500 control unit.



- IP500 External Expansion Modules**  
 Additional analog and digital extension ports can be added using a number of IP500 external expansion modules.
  - The IP500 also supports IP400 external expansion modules except for WAN3 modules.



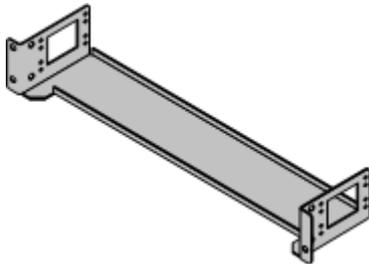
- **Power Supplies**

The IP500 control unit has an internal power supply unit. Each external expansion module is supplied with an external power supply unit. Additional power supply units may also be required for IP phones and some phone add-ons.



- **Power Cords**

Depending on the locale, different power cords need to be ordered for each control unit, external expansion module and any phones or devices using external power supply units.



- **Cables**

The IP Office is designed primarily for connection to a structured cabling system using CAT3 UTP cabling. This approach allows telephone and data traffic to share the same wiring infrastructure and simplifies equipment moves.

- **Mounting Kits**

The IP500 control unit can be used free-standing, with external expansion modules stacked above it. With optional rack mounting kits, the control unit and external expansion modules can also be rack mounted. Alternatively with an optional wall mounting kit the IP500 control unit can be wall mounted.



- **Surge Protectors and Barrier Boxes**

Where the installation includes extensions in other buildings additional protective equipment is required. This equipment may also be required in areas where the lightning risk is high.



- **Phones**

IP Office systems support a variety of Avaya digital and IP phones plus analog phones.

VK00nDd15SDvXoxkw9cR9x\_jOXr\_AWz9

- **License Keys**

Various IP Office features and applications require a license key to be entered into the system's configuration. Each key is a 32-character text string unique to the feature being activated and the serial number of the Feature Key dongle (see below) installed in the system.



- **Feature Key Dongle**

A uniquely numbered dongle used to validate license keys. For the IP500 control unit a Smart Card type Feature Key dongle is mandatory for correct system operation even if no licensed features are being used.



- **Application CD's/DVD's**

The IP Office applications can be ordered on a number of CD's. In addition they can be downloaded from the IP Office section of the Avaya support web site (<http://support.avaya.com>).

## Control Units

The base of any IP Office system is the system or control unit. It stores the system configuration and controls the system operation.

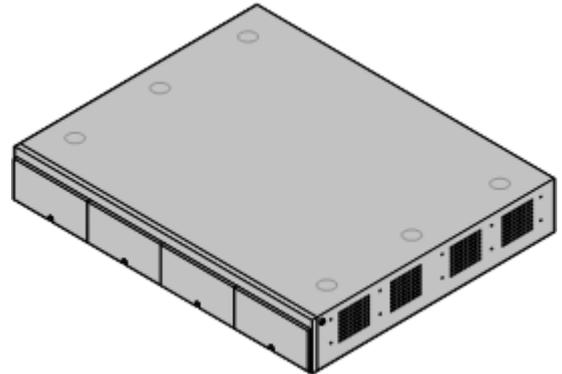
Each control unit can be customized by adding various internal cards such as trunk cards. Except for the Small Office Edition control unit, External expansion modules can be also be connected to add additional extension and trunk ports.

IP Office 4.0 supports the following IP Office control units.

- **IP500 System Unit**

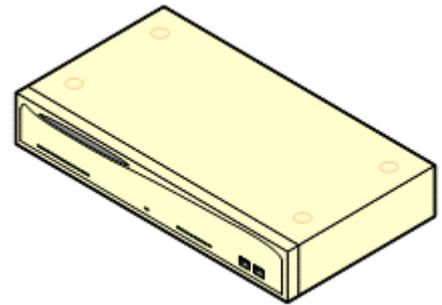
This control unit has four front slots for IP500 base cards. It has an internal power supply unit and uses a mandatory credit-card sized Smart Card Feature Key dongle. It includes a 2 port ethernet LAN switch (layer 3 managed) on the rear. The unit runs in two modes; IP Office Express Edition and IP Office Professional Edition.

- **IP Office Standard Edition** is the default mode for the IP500 control unit. In this mode it support only 32 users, no external expansion modules and the basic IP Office applications.
- By addition of a license the IP500 can be run in **IP Office Professional Edition** mode. In this mode it supports up to 272 extensions, 8 external expansion modules and the full suite of IP Office applications.



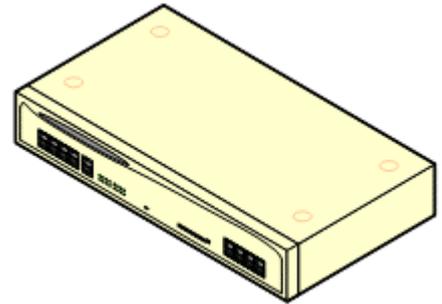
- **IP412 Control Unit**

This unit supports 2 IP400 trunk cards of any type. Up to 12 external expansion modules can be added plus 2 WAN3 10/100 modules. It includes a 2 port ethernet LAN switch (layer 3 managed).



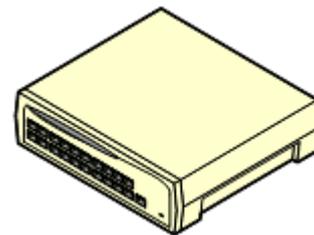
- **IP406 V2 Control Unit**

This unit supports up to 6 external expansion modules plus 2 WAN3 10/100 modules. It supports 2 IP400 trunk cards of all types though only one may be a dual PRI trunk card. The unit has 8 Avaya digital DS phone ports and 2 analog phone ports plus an 8 port ethernet LAN switch (layer 2 unmanaged).



- **Small Office Edition Control Unit (SOE)**

This is a single unit IP Office system. It does not support any external expansion modules and only supports a single IP400 trunk interface card. However the Small Office is available in a number of models, with differing numbers of integral analog trunk, analog extension and Avaya digital DS ports. The modules all have a 4 port ethernet LAN switch (layer 2 unmanaged) and an Ethernet WAN port.



## Control Unit Summary

The following table summarizes the IP Office control units.

Feature	Small Office Edition	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
Digital Station (DS) Ports	0 or 8	8	0	Up to 24
Analog Phone (PHONE) Ports	2 or 4	2	0	Up to 32
Optional Embedded Voicemail Card Slot	✓	✓	✗	✓
Integral WAN Port	✗	✓	✓	✗
Expansion Ports	0	6	12	8
DTE Port	9-way	9-way	9-way	9-way
Audio In (MOH) Port	✓	✓	✓	✓
External O/P Switch Port	✓	✓	✓	✓
Conference Parties*	24	64	128	64
Configuration Memory	192KB	256KB	1024KB	1024KB
Voicemail Pro/TAPI WAV Channels	10	20	30	30
<b>Maximum Extension Capacity</b>	<b>28</b>	<b>190</b>	<b>360</b>	<b>272</b>
- Digital (DS) Phones only.	8	188	360	264
- Analog Phones only.	4	182	360	272
- IP Phones only.	16	190	360	272
<b>IP400 Trunk Cards Supported</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>
- Analog trunk cards	✗	✓	✓	✓
- Quad BRI trunk cards	✓	✓	✓	✓
- Single PRI trunk cards	✓ (T1)	✓	✓	✓
- Dual PRI trunks cards	✗	✓ (Slot A)	✓	✓
- WAN port card	✓	✗	✗	✗
<b>IP500 Trunk Daughter Cards</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>4</b>
- IP500 Analog trunk cards	✗	✗	✗	✓
- IP500 BRI trunk cards	✗	✗	✗	✓
- IP500 PRI trunk cards	✗	✗	✗	✓
<b>VCM Cards</b>				
- IP400 VCM Cards	✗	1	2	2
- IP500 VCM Cards	✗	✗	✗	2
Maximum voice compression channels	3 or 16	30	60	128
<b>Dimensions</b>				
Height x Width x Depth	76x255x241mm 3"x10"x9.5"	71x445x245mm 2.8"x17.5"x9.7"	73x445x365mm 2.9"x17.5"x14.4"	

\*Note

1. The Small Office Edition is restricted to 6 callers in any particular conference.
2. Where IP Office Conferencing Center is installed, 5 conference slots are reserved by the control unit for its own use (call recording, etc) and are not available to IP Office Conferencing Center or for general conference usage.

## IP Office Standard Edition

The IP500 system unit start operation in a mode called IP Office Standard Edition mode. In this mode, the number and range of features supported is limited. The limitations can be overridden by the addition of and IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional license to the IP Office 500 configuration. Features not detailed in the table below are not affected directly by Standard Edition or Professional Edition mode selection.

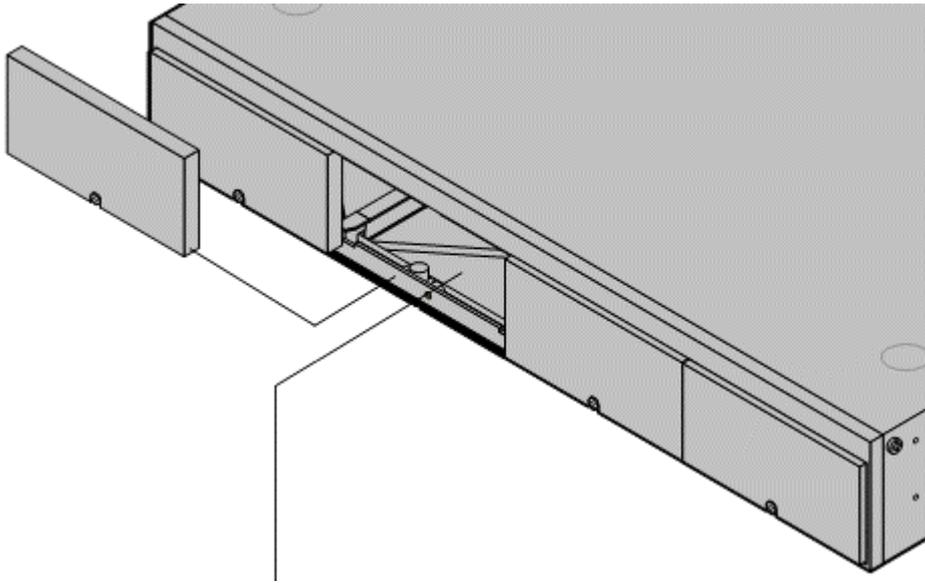
Feature	Standard Edition	Professional Edition
Extensions	32	272
External Expansion Modules	✗	✓
<b>Applications</b>		
Phone Manager (All modes)*	✓	✓
SoftConsole *	✓	✓
IP Office TAPI	✓	✓
Delta Server	✓	✓
Compact Business Center (CBC)	✓	✓
Compact Contact Center (CCC)*	✗	✓
Embedded Voicemail	✓	✓
Voicemail Lite	✗	✓
Voicemail Pro *	✗	✓
ContactStore *	✗	✓
Conference Center *	✗	✓
MS-CRM	✗	✓
Meet-me Conferences	✗	✓
IP DECT Trunks	✓	✓
SIP Trunks *	✓	✓
SES Trunks *	✓	✓

\*Also require appropriate application licenses.

The following licences are specific to IP Office 500 systems.

- IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional**  
 This license is required for an IP500 system to run in IP Office Professional Edition mode rather than IP Office Standard Edition mode. It is a pre-requisite for any licensed features not supported in Standard Edition mode.
- IP500 Voice Networking (Base 4 channels)**  
 For IP500 systems this licences enables support for H323 IP trunks between IP Office systems and QSIG or Small Community Networking over those trunks.
- IP500 Voice Networking (Additional channels)**  
 Allows an additional 4 H323 voice networking trunks.
  - For IP Office 4.0, the IP500 Voice Networking licenses were only supported in IP Office Professional Edition mode. For IP Office 4.1 they are supported in IP Office Standard and Professional Edition modes.
- IP500 PRI Trunk Channels**  
 Each IP500 PRI-U trunk daughter card provides 8 channels by default. Additional channels are enabled by the addition of the type of license.

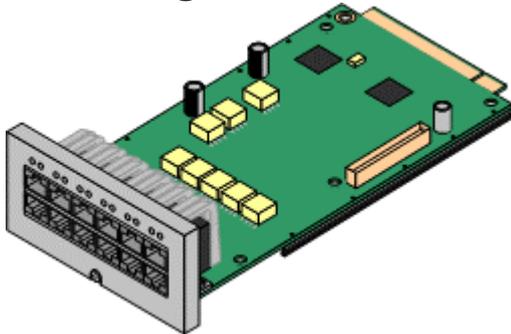
## IP500 Base Cards



The IP500 control unit has 4 slots for the insertion of base cards. Each base cards includes an integral front panel with ports for cable connections.

The slots are numbered 1 to 4 from left to right. They can be used in any order. However if the capacity for a particular type of card is exceeded, the card in the highest slot will be disabled.

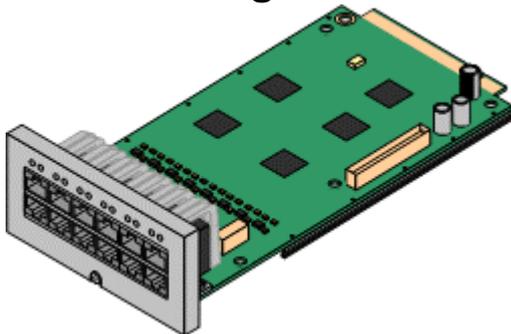
## IP500 Digital Station Base Card



This card has 12 RJ45 ports. The first 8 ports are DS ports for the connection of Avaya digital phones other than IP phones. The card can be fitted with an IP500 daughter card which then uses the additional 4 RJ45 ports for connections.

- This card accepts one IP500 daughter card of any type.
- Maximum: 3 per IP500 control unit.
- 4400 Series phones (4406D, 4412D and 4424D) are not supported.

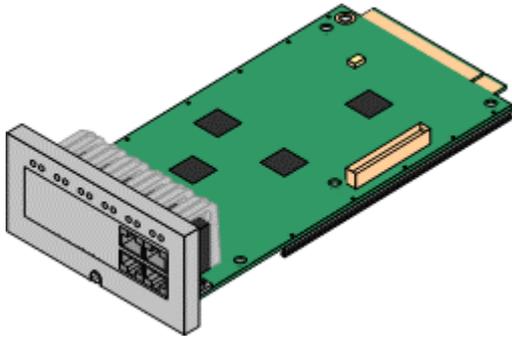
## IP500 Analog Phone Base Card



This card has 12 RJ45 ports. The card is available in two variants, providing 2 or 8 analog extension ports for the connection of analog phones. The card can be fitted with an IP500 daughter card which then uses the additional 4 RJ45 ports for connections.

- This card accepts one IP500 daughter card of any type.
- Maximum: 4 per IP500 control unit.
- When fitted with an IP500 Analog Trunk daughter card, the Phone 8 base card supports 1 power failure extension to trunk (loop-start only) connection.
- The analog extension ports do not include a ringing capacitor. Where this is a requirement, connection should be via a Master socket containing ringing capacitors.

## IP500 VCM Base Card

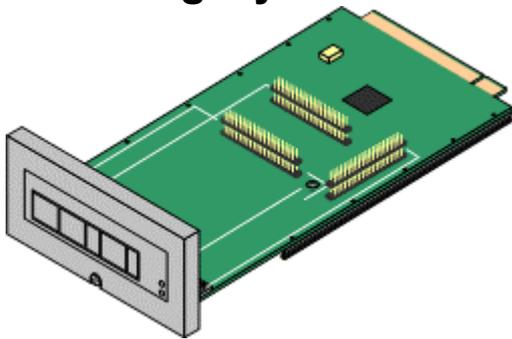


This card provides voice compression channels for use with VoIP calls. The module is available in variants supporting up to 32 or 64 channels. Each card provides 4 initial channels with additional channels being enabled by licenses in the IP Office configuration. The card can be fitted with an IP500 daughter card which then uses the 4 RJ45 ports for connections.

The maximum number of voice compression channels supported, using IP500 VCM cards and or IP400 VCM cards on IP500 carrier cards, is 128.

- This accepts one IP500 daughter card of any type.
- Maximum: 2 per IP500 control unit.

## IP500 Legacy Card Carrier Base Card

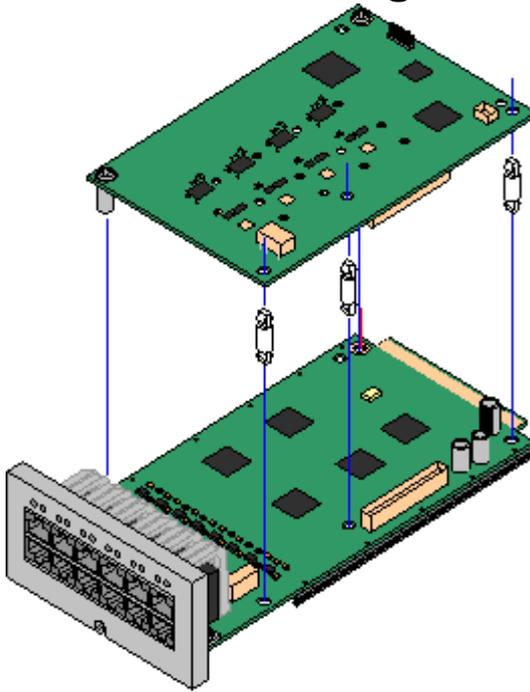


This card allows a various IP400 trunk and VCM cards to be used with the IP500 control unit. The front of the card includes a number of panels that can be snapped off to match the ports when a trunk card being fitted.

- This card does not accept an IP500 daughter card.
- Maximum: 2 per IP500 control unit.
- IP400 Cards Supported: The following cards are supported. Any card not listed is not supported.

✓ PRI T1	✓ BRI-8 (UNI)
✓ Dual PRI T1	✓ ANLG 4 Uni ( <i>US only</i> )
✓ PRI 30 E1 (1.4)	✓ VCM 4
✓ Dual PRI E1	✓ VCM 8
✓ PRI 30 E1R2 RJ45	✓ VCM 16
✓ Dual PRI E1R2 RJ45	✓ VCM 24
	✓ VCM 30

## IP500 Trunk Daughter Cards



IP500 daughter trunk cards can be fitted to IP500 base cards to provide support for trunk. The daughter card uses the physical ports provided on the front panel of the base card for cable connection.

The addition of an IP500 daughter card is supported on any IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card.

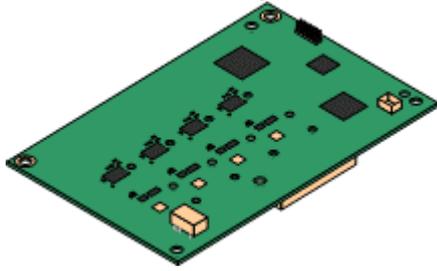
For those base card that support daughter cards, there are no restrictions on the combination of card types. However in systems with both analog phone base cards and analog trunk daughter cards, combining the two type is recommended as it then provides analog power failure support for one trunk/extension.

Each daughter card is supplied with the stand off pillars required for installation and a label to identify the cards presence on the physical unit once installed.

- **Note: Change to Installation**  
With the introduction of the IP500 PRI-U trunk daughter card, the 5 plastic stand off pillars supplied with these card were changed. All trunk daughter cards are now supplied with two pre-fitted metal pillars and 3 plastic pillars. Two screws and washers for final attachment of the metal pillars to the base card are also included. This change does not affect existing cards supplied with 5 plastic pillars.

---

## IP500 Analog Trunk Daughter Card

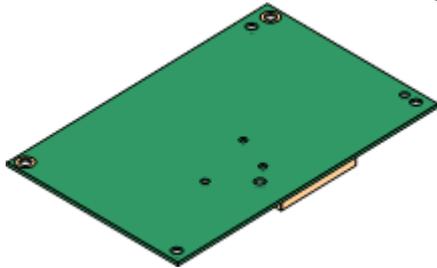


This card can be added to an IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card. It allows that base card to then also support 4 analog loop-start trunks.

- When fitted to an IP500 Analog Phone 8 base card, the combination supports 1 power failure extension to trunk (loop-start only) connection.
- **Maximum:** 4 per IP500 control unit.

---

## IP500 BRI Trunk Daughter Card

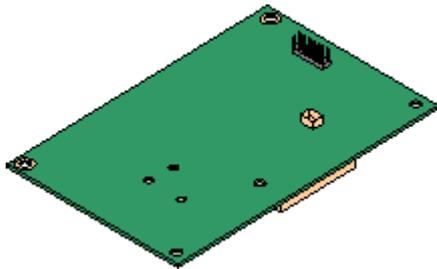


This card can be added to an IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card. It allows that card to then also support up to 4 BRI trunk connections, each trunk providing 2B+D digital channels. The card is available in 2 port (4 channels) and 4 port (8 channels) variants.

- **Maximum:** 4 per IP500 control unit.

---

## IP500 PRI-U Trunk Daughter Card



This card can be added to an IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card. The card is a universal card that can be configured in software for E1 PRI, T1 robbed bit, T1 PRI or E1R2. The card is available in single and dual port variants.

- **Maximum:** 4 per IP500 control unit.
- The IP500 PRI-U card supports E1, T1 and E1-R2 PRI modes. The IP Office systems supports 8 B-channels for each IP500 PRI-U port fitted, using in-service channels from port 9 of slot 1 upwards. Additional B-channels up to the capacity of ports installed and PRI mode selected require **IP500 Universal PRI (Additional Channels)** licenses added to the configuration. D-channels are not affected by licensing.

## IP400 Trunk Cards

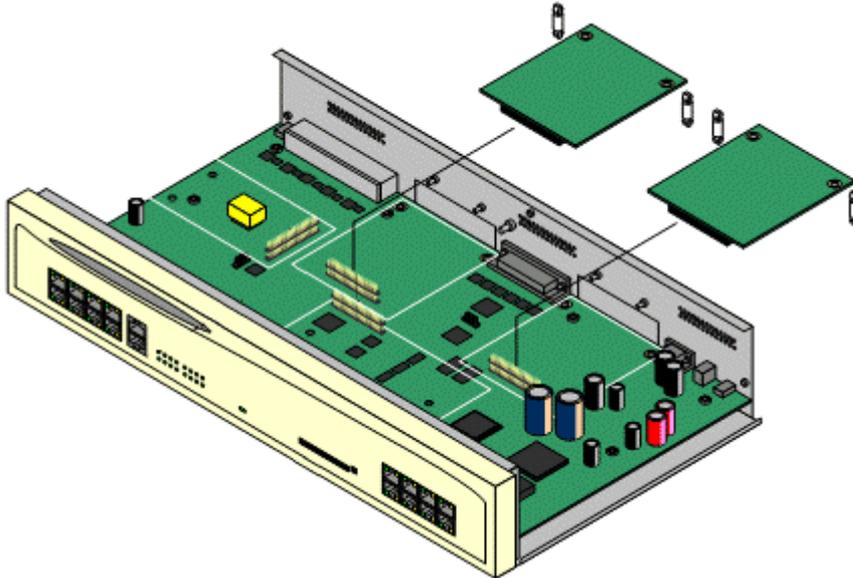
A range of IP400 trunk cards are available for different trunk types. Each IP400 trunk card is supplied with stand off pillars and a replacement blanking plate for use with IP400 control units.

- **Small Office Edition Control Units**

All versions of the Small Office Edition control include either two or four integral analog trunk ports on the front of the unit. In addition a single IP400 trunk card can be fitted to the rear of the unit.

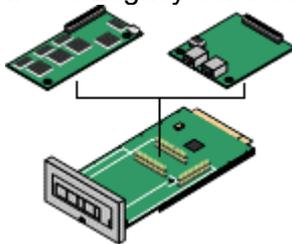
- **IP400 Control Units**

The IP406 V2 and IP412 can be fitted with up to 2 IP400 trunk cards. Except where otherwise indicated, it is recommended that Slot B is used first.

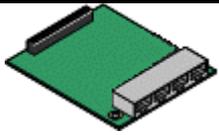
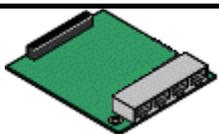
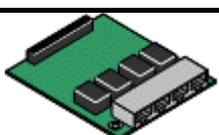
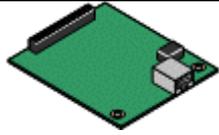
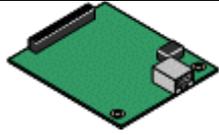
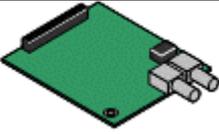
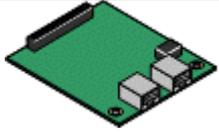
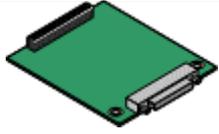


- **IP500 Control Unit**

The IP500 control unit can accept up to two IP400 trunk cards by mounting each card on an IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card.



The following IP400 trunk card types are supported by IP Office 4.0:

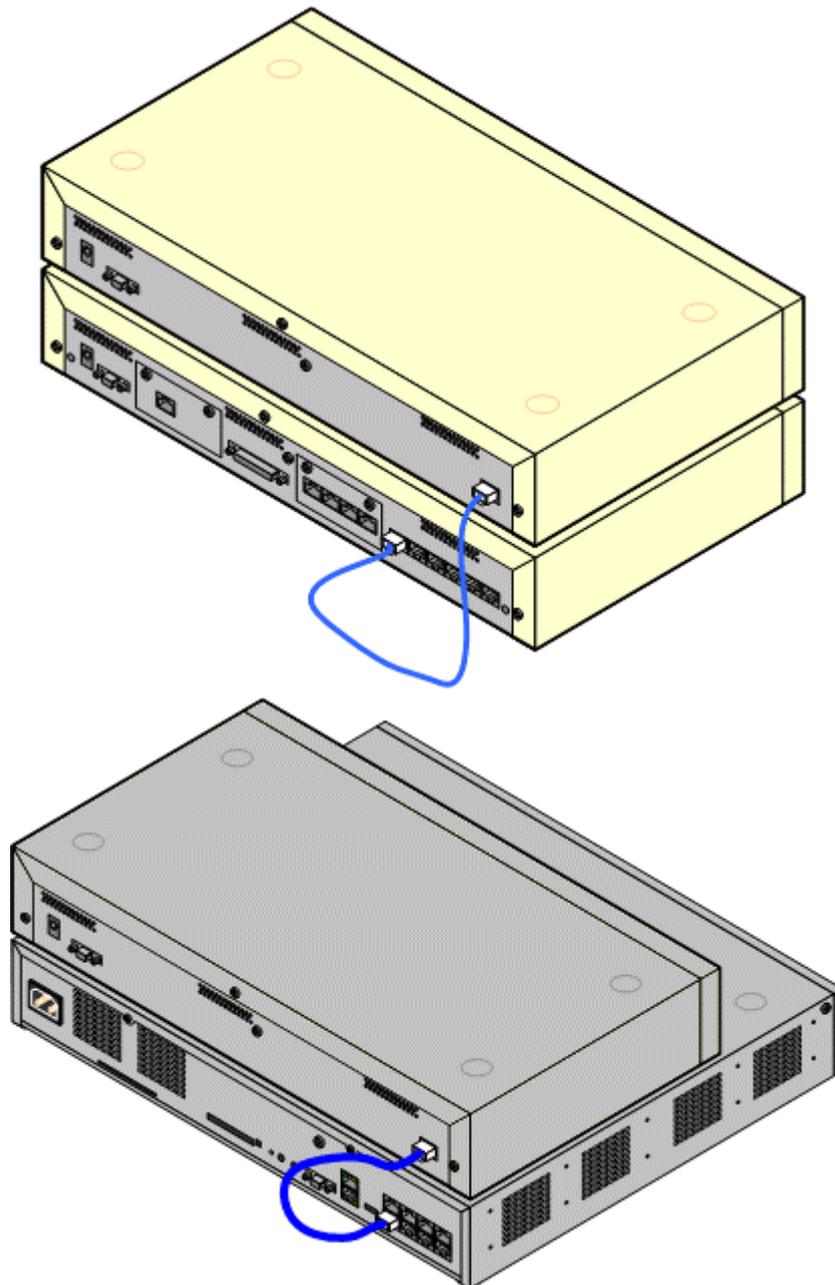
IP400 Trunk Cards		SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
	<p><b>Analog Trunk Card (ATM4)</b> Provides 4 RJ45 loop-start analog trunk ports. The card is available in several locale specific variants. This card has been superseded by the ATM4U card below.</p> <p>Additional loop or ground start analog trunks can also be added using Analog Trunk external expansion modules.</p>	×	✓	✓	✓
	<p><b>Analog Trunk Card (ATM4U)</b> Provides 4 RJ45 loop-start analog trunk ports as per the ATM4 above but available in a single worldwide variant. Also supports adjustable echo cancellation on IP Office 3.1.</p> <p>Additional loop or ground start analog trunks can also be added using Analog Trunk external expansion modules.</p>	×	✓	✓	✓
	<p><b>Quad BRI Trunk Card</b> Provides support for 4 RJ45 BRI (2B+D) trunk ports. These can be configured to ETSI or AusTS013 operation. The ports include 100ohm termination.</p>	✓	✓	✓	✓
	<p><b>Single PRI T1 Trunk Cards</b> Supports PRI (23B+D) trunks and T1 Robbed-Bit (24B) trunks through a single RJ45 port. The mode of operation is selected in the IP Office configuration.</p>	✓	✓	✓	✓
	<p><b>Single E1 PRI Trunk Cards</b> Supports PRI (30B+D) trunks through a single RJ45 port. The port can be configured for PRI or QSIG operation.</p>	×	✓	✓	✓
	<p><b>Single E1R2 Trunk Cards</b> Supports PRI (30B+D) trunks using E1R2 signalling. Available in coaxial or RJ45 connector variants. Coaxial variants are not supported on an IP500 carrier card.</p>	×	✓	✓	✓
	<p><b>Dual PRI Trunk Cards</b> As the single PRI cards above but supporting the connection of two PRI trunks. On the IP406 V2, supported in Slot A only.</p>	×	✓	✓	✓
	<p><b>WAN Port Card</b> Used only with the Small Office Edition. Provides a single 37-way D-type socket for connection to a V.24, V.35 or X.21 WAN service. Includes a replacement back panel for the control unit.</p>	✓	×	✓	×

## External Expansion Modules

These modules can be used to add additional ports to an IP400 and IP systems. The number of expansion modules supported depends on the control unit type.

Expansion modules, except the WAN3 10/100 module, connect to expansion ports on the rear of the control unit, using a 1 meter (3'3") cable supplied with the expansion module. No other cable should be used. The WAN3 10/100 module differs in that it connects via a LAN port on its front to one of the control unit's LAN ports.

Each module uses an external power supply unit supplied with the module. A locale specific power cord for the PSU must be ordered separately.



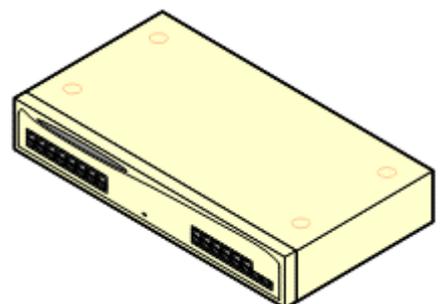
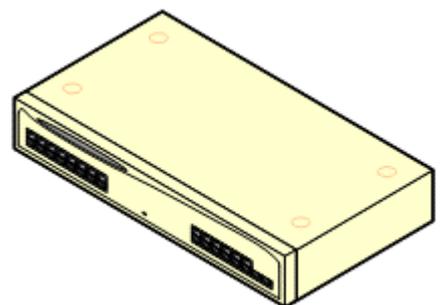
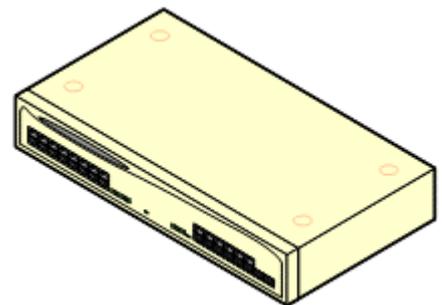
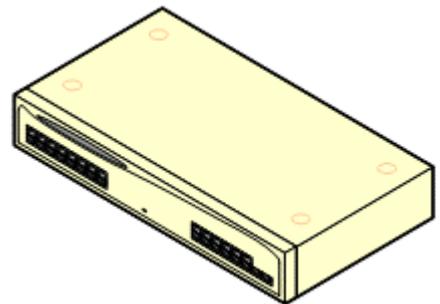
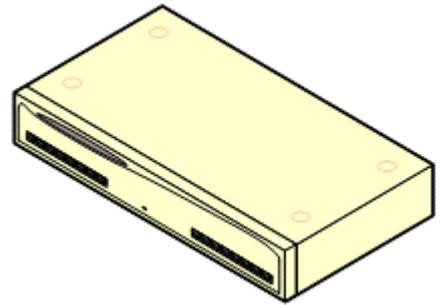
Number of modules supported:	Small Office Edition	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
WAN3 10/100 modules.	✘	2	2	✘
All other modules.	✘	6	12	8

- The IP500 control unit only supports external expansion modules when running in IP Office Professional Edition mode. IP500 control units running in IP Office Standard Edition mode do not support any external expansion modules.

## IP400 External Expansion Modules

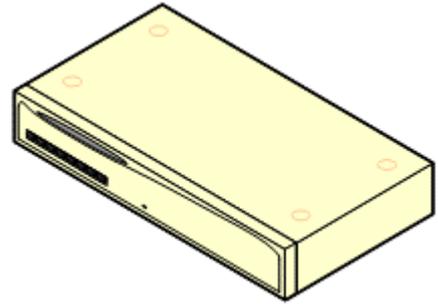
The following IP400 external expansion modules are supported by IP Office 4.0. Except for the WAN3 10/100, these modules can also be used with an IP500 control unit running in IP Office Professional Edition mode.

- **IP400 Analog Trunk Module (ATM16)**  
Provides an additional 16 ANALOG ports for connection of analog trunks. Supports both loop-start and ground-start trunks.
  - Available in a number of variants for different locales.
  - Use with ground start trunks requires that the trunk module and the IP Office control unit are grounded.
  
- **IP400 Digital Station Module (DS16/DS30)**  
Provides, depending on the variant, an additional 16 or 30 DS ports for supported Avaya digital phones. This module has been superseded by the Digital Station V2.
  
- **IP400 Digital Station Module V2 (DS16 V2/DS30 V2)**  
Provides, depending on variant, an additional 16 or 30 DS ports for supported Avaya digital phones. Supersedes the previous Digital Station module.
  
- **IP400 Phone Module (Phone8/Phone16/Phone30)**  
Provides, depending on variant, an additional 8, 16 or 30 POT ports for analog phones. This module has been superseded by the Phone Module V2.
  
- **IP400 Phone Module V2 (Phone8 V2/Phone16 V2/Phone30 V2)**  
Provides, depending on variant, an additional 8, 16 or 30 PHONE ports for analog phones. Supersedes the previous Phone module. With IP Office 3.1, the Phone V2 supports a wider range of message waiting indication (MWI) options than Phone V1 modules.
  - With V2 units, the labelling of analog phone ports was changed from POT to PHONE.



- **IP400 So8 Module**

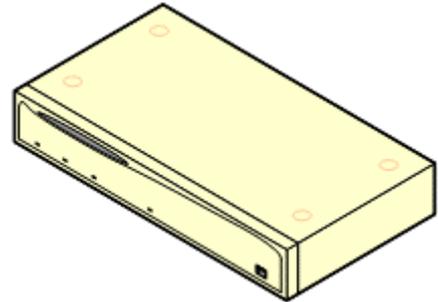
Provides 8 ETSI BRI ports for the connection of ISDN devices (BRI-So interface). This unit is not intended to support BRI trunks.



- **IP400 WAN3 10/100 Module**

Provides on its rear an additional three 37-way D-type WAN ports. These can be used for the connection of V.24, V.35 and X.21 WAN services. The module connects to the control unit via a LAN port rather than an expansion port.

- The WAN3 has been superseded by the WAN3 10/100 and is not supported by IP Office 3.2 and higher.
- IP Office systems are restricted to a maximum of 2 WAN3 modules regardless of the control unit type.
- This module is not supported with the IP500.



## IP500 External Expansion Modules

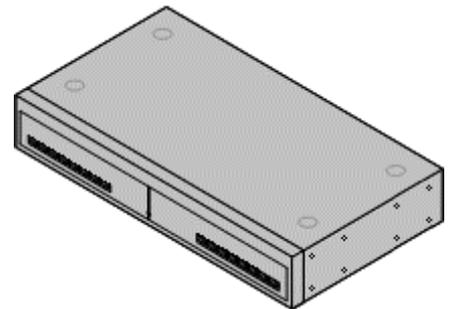
The following IP500 external expansion modules are supported by IP Office 4.0. They are intended for use with an IP500 control unit running in IP Office Professional Edition mode but can also be used with IP400 control units.

Unlike IP400 external expansion modules these units use the IP500 rack mounting kit.

- **IPO 500 Analog Trunk Module**

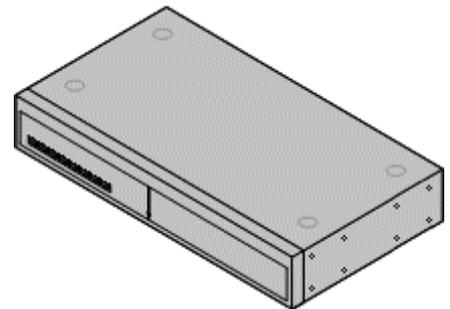
Provides an additional 16 ANALOG ports for connection of analog trunks. Supports both loop-start and ground-start trunks.

- Currently only available for the US locale.
- Use with ground start trunks requires that the trunk module and the IP Office control unit are grounded.



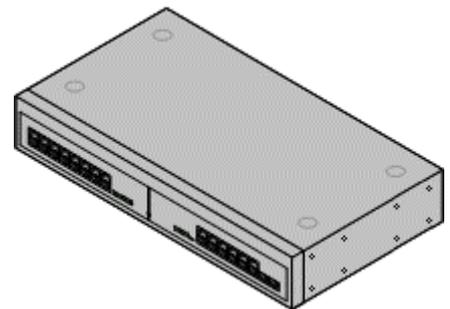
- **IPO 500 BRI So8 Module**

Provides 8 ETSI BRI ports for the connection of ISDN devices (BRI-So interface). This unit is not intended to support BRI trunks.



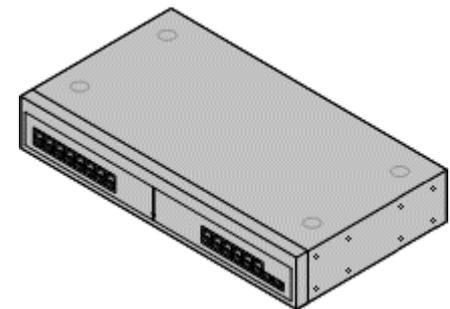
- **IP500 Digital Station Module**

Provides, depending on variant, an additional 16 or 30 DS ports for supported Avaya digital phones.



- **IP500 Phone Module**

Provides, depending on variant, an additional 16 or 30 PHONE ports for analog phones.



## Other IP Office Cards

Each IP Office control unit can be fitted with a number of internal cards. The cards supported depend on the control unit type.

### Modem Cards



These cards provide modem circuits to answer incoming V.90 analog modem calls.

- The first analog trunk on control units fitted with analog trunks can be set to answer V.32 analog modem calls. Whilst in this mode, the trunk cannot be used for voice calls.

Modem Cards	SAP Code	Small Office Edition	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
<b>Internal Modem Card/Modem 12:</b> Provides 12 V.90 modem channels, 4 only in the IP403 control unit.	700343452	✗	✓	✓	✗
<b>Modem 2 Card:</b> Provides 2 V.90 modem channels.	700185226	✗	✓	✓	✗

### Embedded Voicemail Memory Cards

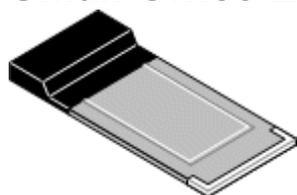


These cards provide message and prompt storage space for embedded voicemail and auto-attendant options. The cards used are specially formatted compact flash cards.

Embedded Voicemail Memory Cards	SAP Code	Small Office Edition	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
<b>Small Office Edition Memory Card:</b> Supports a 64Mb Compact Flash card fitted in a PCMCIA slot caddy. This provides up to 10 hours of compressed message and prompt storage. Compression uses voice compression channels during usage.	700289721	✓	✗	✗	✗
<b>IP406 V2 Memory Card:</b> Supports a 512MB Compact Flash card. This provides up to 15 hours of uncompressed message storage.	700343460	✗	✓	✗	✓

- Memory cards in these slots can also be used for storage of files normally obtained via TFTP transfer. For example the music-on-hold .wav file and supported 4600 Series/5600 Series software files. This will however reduce storage space for prompt and message files if embedded voicemail is being used.
- IP Office systems that have downloaded an internal music on hold source can then backup and restore that music on hold to and from the memory card.
- Non-Avaya cards can be used for file storage but will not support Embedded Voicemail.

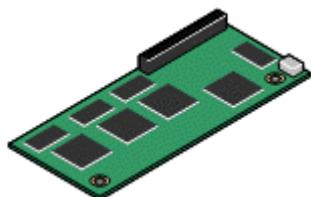
## Small Office Edition Wireless Card



The Small Office Edition supports an Avaya supplied 802.11b WiFi wireless card. This allows the control unit to act as a wireless access point.

Wireless Card	SAP Code	Small Office Edition	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
Wireless Card	700289739	✓	✗	✗	✗

## IP400 Voice Compression Modules



VCM cards are used to provide voice compression channels for calls between IP and non-IP devices, devices being both trunks and extensions. VCM cards with differing numbers of voice compression channels are available.

- For the Small Office Edition control unit, either 3 or 16 voice compression channels with 40ms echo cancellation are pre-built into the module. These cannot be changed.
- For IP500 control units, voice compression channels can be added using either IP400 VCM modules mounted on a IP500 Carrier Card or using IP500 VCM cards.

VCM Cards	SAP Code	Small Office Edition	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500	
25ms echo cancellation.	IP400 VCM5*	700185119	✗	✓	✓	✗
	IP400 VCM10*	700185127	✗	✓	✓	✗
	IP400 VCM20*	700185135	✗	✓	✓	✗
	IP400 VCM30	700293939	✗	✓	✓	✓
64ms echo cancellation.	IP400 VCM4	700359854	✗	✓	✓	✓
	IP400 VCM8	700359862	✗	✓	✓	✓
	IP400 VCM16	700359870	✗	✓	✓	✓
	IP400 VCM24	700359888	✗	✓	✓	✓
Number of IP400 VCM cards.			0	1	2	2
Maximum number of channels.			3/16	30	60	128

- \*These modules are still supported but are no longer available from Avaya.

## Power Supplies

The IP500 has an internal power supply unit and so only requires a suitable locale specific power cord. Small Office Edition, IP406 V2, IP412 control units and external expansion modules are all supplied with an external power supply unit (PSU). These external power supply units include an integral 1.5 meter lead for connection to the control unit or expansion module. A power cord for connection from the PSU to the power outlet is not included as this varies by locale. The appropriate power cord must be ordered separately or sourced locally.

Additional power supply units are required for 4450, EU24, XM24 and T3 DSS add-on modules and may also be required for 4600 Series/5600 Series IP phones.

Area	Used on:	Type	SAP Code	Connector Type
IP Office Control Units and External Expansion Modules	Analog, Digital Station V1, Phone V1.	40W PSU	700210792	IEC60320 C7
	Small Office Edition.	45W Earthed PSU	700284938	IEC60320 C13
	IP406 V2, IP412, IP400 Digital Station V2, IP400 Phone V2, IP400 So8, IP400 WAN3 10/100, IP500 Phone 30, IP500 Digital Station 30.	60W Earthed PSU	700357387	
IP Phones and Phone Add-Ons	Phones with XM24 Phone add-ons. Phones with EU24/EU24BL Phone add-ons unless using Class 3 PoE. 4600 and 56000 Series IP Phones when not using a PoE.	1151C1	700356447	
		1151C2	700356454	

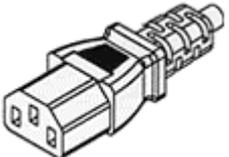
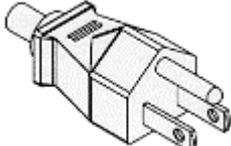
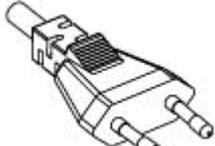
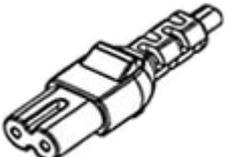
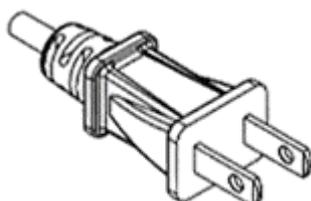
- Some units previously supplied with a 40W unearthed PSU are now approved for and supplied with a 60W earthed PSU. That changes affects the IP412, So8 and WAN3 10/100 units.
- The 1151C2 is the same as the 1151C1 except that it includes a backup battery that is charged during normal operation. This can provide typically 15 minutes backup at maximum load (20 Watts) and up to 8 hours at light load (2 Watts).
- Avaya 4600 Series and 5600 Series can use IEEE 802.3af Power over Ethernet (PoE) power supplies. Refer to the IP Office IP Phone Installation Manual for full details.

## Power Supply Cords

Each control unit and expansion module requires a switched power outlet socket rated at 110-240V ac, 50-60Hz. Connection from that power outlet socket requires an appropriate locale specific power cord which is not supplied with the unit and must be ordered separately.

Power cords must not be attached to the building surface or run through walls, ceilings, floors and similar openings. Installation measures must be taken to prevent physical damage to the power supply cord, including proper routing of the power supply cord and provision of a socket outlet near the fixed equipment or positioning of the equipment near a socket outlet.

For locales not detailed below an appropriate power cord must be obtained locally.

Power Cord Type	Power Outlet Plug Type	Locales	SAP Codes
<b>Earthed Power Cords (IEC60320 C13)</b>  <b>Control Units</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP500.</li> <li>• IP406 V2.</li> <li>• IP412.*</li> <li>• Small Office Edition.</li> </ul> <b>IP400 External Expansion Modules</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Digital Station V2.</li> <li>• Phone V2.</li> <li>• So8.*</li> <li>• WAN3 10/100.*</li> </ul> <b>IP500 External Expansion Modules</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Digital Station 30.</li> <li>• Phone 30.</li> </ul>	<b>CEE7/7 (Schuko)</b> 	Europe and South Africa.	700289762
	<b>BS1363</b> 	Czech Republic, Ireland, United Kingdom.	700289747
	<b>NEMA5-15P / CS22.2 No.42</b> 	North, Central and South America.	700289770
	<b>CPCS-CCC</b>	China.	700261977
	<b>CEE7/16 (Europlug)</b> 	Europe and South Africa.	700213382
<b>Unearthed Power Cord (IEC60320 C7)</b>  <b>IP400 External Expansion Modules</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Analog.</li> <li>• Digital Station V1.</li> <li>• Phone V1.</li> </ul>	<b>BS1363</b> 	Czech Republic, Ireland, United Kingdom.	700213374
	<b>NEMA1-15</b> 	North, Central and South America.	700213390
		Korea.	700254519
		China.	700314172

\*Older units were supplied with a 40W unearthed PSU and required an IEC60320 C7 power cord.

## Power Supply Backup (UPS)

The use of an Uninterrupted Power Supply (UPS) with any telephone system is recommended. Even at sites that rarely lose electrical power, that power may occasionally have to be switched off for maintenance of other equipment. In addition, most UPS's also provide an element of power conditioning, reducing spikes and surges.

The capacity of UPS systems and the total equipment load the UPS is expected to support are usually quoted in VA. Where equipment load is quoted in Watts, multiply by 1.4 to get the VA load.

The calculation of how much UPS capacity is required depends on several choices.

- What equipment to place on the UPS?**  
 Remember to include server PC's such as the voicemail and Feature Key Server PC's. It is recommended that the total load on a new UPS is never greater than 75% capacity, thus allowing for future equipment.
- How many minutes of UPS support is required?**  
 Actual UPS runtime is variable, it depends on what percentage of the UPS's capacity the total equipment load represents. For example, a 1000VA capacity UPS may only support a 1000VA (100%) load for 5 minutes. This relationship is not linear, the same UPS would support a 500VA (50%) load for 16 minutes. Therefore the lower the percentage of capacity used, the increasingly longer the UPS runtime, typically up to 8 hours maximum. Remember also that for most UPS's the ratio of discharge to full recharge time is 1:10.
- How many output sockets does the UPS provide?**  
 Multiple UPS units may be required to ensure that every item of supported equipment has its own supply socket.

The web site <http://ups.avayaups.com> provides a calculator into which you can enter the equipment you want supported on a UPS. It will then display various UPS options. The site uses VA values for typical IP Office systems. However, if more specific values are required for a particular system, the table below can be used to enter values.

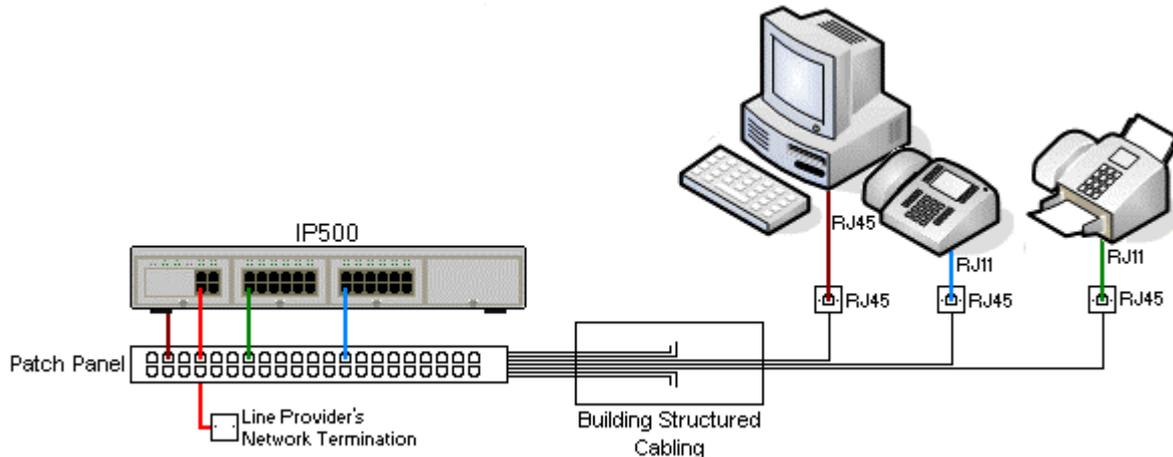
Typical IP Office System	VA	Typical IP Office System	VA
Small Office Edition	17	IP412 System	312
IP406 V2 System	168		
Individual Equipment	VA	Individual Equipment	VA
Small Office Edition	17	So8 Module	34
		Phone 8 Module	17
IP406 V2 Control Unit	23	Phone 16 Module	23
IP412 Control Unit	25	Phone 30 Module	42
Analog 16 Module	88	Typical Server PC	600
Digital Station 16 Module	34	Typical Desktop PC	400
Digital Station 30 Module	42	Mid Span PSU - 6 ports	150
WAN3 Module	17	Mid Span PSU - 12/24 ports	300

- The 1151C2 power supply unit for Avaya H.323 IP phones includes a backup battery. This typically provides 15 minutes backup at maximum load (20 Watts) and up to 8 hours at light load (2 Watts).

## Cables

The IP Office systems are designed primarily for use within an RJ45 structured cabling system using CAT3 unshielded twisted-pair (UTP) cabling and RJ45 sockets.

A structured cabling system is one where cables are run from a central RJ45 patch panel in the communications/data room to individual RJ45 sockets at user's desk. All wires in each cable between the patch panel and the desk socket are connected straight through. This arrangement allows devices connected at the patch panel to be swapped to match the type of device that needs to be connected at the user socket. For example, making one user socket a phone port and another user socket a computer LAN port, without requiring any rewiring of the cables in between.



- **Traditional IDC Punchdown Wiring Installations**

Where necessary, the far end RJ45 plug can be stripped from IP Office cables and wired into traditional wiring systems using punch-block connectors. This type of installation should be performed by an experienced wiring technician.

- **Trunk Connections**

The majority of IP Office trunk ports use RJ45 connectors for acceptance of an RJ45-to-RJ45 cable. However, connection at the line providers end may require use of a different plug type in order to match the line providers equipment.

- **RJ11 Phone Connectors**

Many phones use RJ11 sockets and are supplied with RJ11-to-RJ11 cables. RJ11 plugs can be inserted into RJ45 sockets and in many case the connection will work. However this is not recommended or supported as the connection lock is not truly positive and may become disconnected. An RJ45-to-RJ11 cable is available for these connections.

## Standard IP Office Cables

The following are Avaya standard cables available for use with IP Office systems. The maximum length is applicable if the standard Avaya cable is replaced with an alternate cable.

Cable	Description	SAP Code	Standard Length	Maximum Length
<b>9-Way DTE Cable</b>	Connects to control unit RS232 DTE port. 9-Way D-type plug to 9-way D-type socket.	–	2m/6'6".	2m/6'6".
<b>Structured Cabling DS Line Cable</b>	Connects from RJ45 sockets to RJ11 socketed DS and analog phones.	700047871	4m/13'2".	See table below.
<b>BRI/PRI Cable</b>	Connects BRI/PRI trunk ports to the line providers network termination point. RJ45 to RJ45. Red.	700213440	3m/9'10".	–
<b>Expansion Interconnect Cable</b>	Connects the control unit to expansion modules (except WAN3 modules). RJ45 to RJ45. Blue.	700213457	1m/3'3".	1m/3'3".
<b>LAN Cable</b>	Connects from IP Office LAN ports to IP devices. RJ45 to RJ45. Grey.	700213481	3m/9'10".	100m/328'.
<b>LAN Interconnect Cable</b>	Connects WAN3 module to the control unit. Replace with a LAN crossover cable for IP412 control units. Green.	700213465	1m/3'3".	–
<b>LAN Crossover Cable</b>	Used for connection of IP devices to LAN ports on the IP412 control unit. Black	700213473	3m/9'10".	100m/328'.
<b>V.24 WAN Cable</b>	37-Way D-type plug to 25-way D-type plug.	700213416	3m/9'10".	5m/16'5"
<b>V.35 WAN Cable</b>	37-Way D-type plug to 34-way MRAC plug.	700213424	3m/9'10".	5m/16'5"
<b>X.21 WAN Cable</b>	37-Way D-type plug to 15-way D-type plug.	700213408	3m/9'10".	5m/16'5"

The table below details the maximum total cable distances for DS and analog extensions using different cable types.

Telephone	Unshielded Twisted-Pair (UTP) - 50nf/Km			
	AWG22 (0.65mm)	AWG24 (0.5mm)	AWG26 (0.4mm)	CW1308
2400/5400 Series	1200m/3937'.	1000m/3280'.	670m/2200'.	400m/1310'.
4406D Phone	1000m/3280'.	1000m/3280'.	400m/1310'.	400m/1310'.
4412D Phone	1000m/3280'.	700m/2295'.	400m/1310'.	400m/1310'.
4424D	500m/1640'.	500m/1640'.	400m/1310'.	400m/1310'.
6400 Series	1000m/3280'.	1000m/3280'.	400m/1310'.	400m/1310'.
T3 Series (Upn)	1000m/3280'.	1000m/3280'.	400m/1310'.	–
Analog Phones	1000m/3280'.	1000m/ 3280'.	400m/1640'.	800m/2620'.

## Grounding

Use of ground connections reduces the likelihood of problems in most telephony and data systems. This is especially important in buildings where multiple items of equipment are interconnected using long cable runs, for example phone and data networks.

All IP Office control units and external expansion modules must be connected to a functional ground. In some cases, such as ground start trunks, in addition to being a protective measure this is a functional requirement for the equipment to operate. In other cases it may be a locale regulatory requirement and or a necessary protective step, for example areas of high lightning risk.

- **⚠ WARNING**

During installation do not assume that ground points are correctly connected to ground. Test ground points before relying on them to ground connected equipment.

The ground point on IP Office control units and external expansion modules are marked with a  or  symbol. Ground connections to these points should use a 14 AWG solid wire with either a green sleeve for a functional ground or green and yellow sleeve for a protective ground.

- **Additional protective equipment**

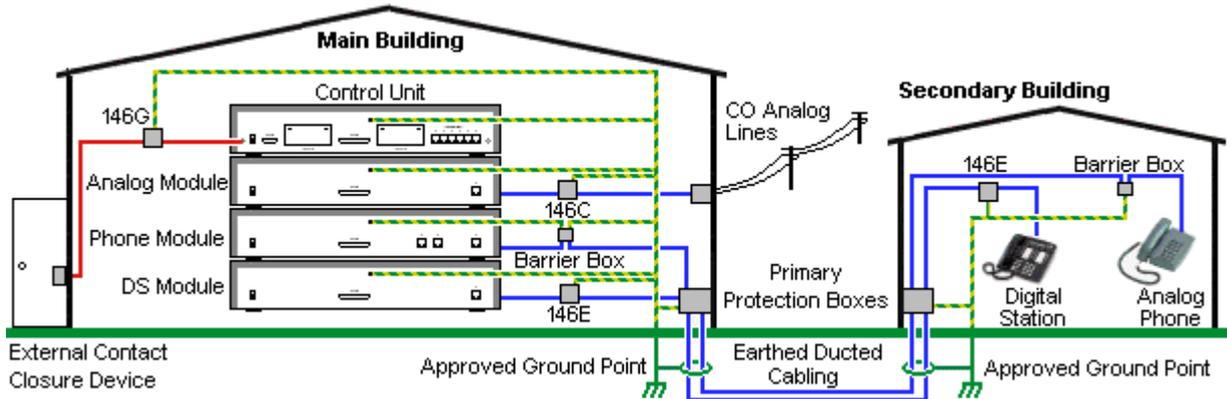
In addition to grounding, additional protective equipment will be required in the following situations. Refer to "Out of Building Telephone Installations".

- On any Digital Station or Phones external expansion module connected to an extension located in another building.
- In the Republic of South Africa, on all Analog Trunk external expansion modules (ATM16) and on any control units containing an analog trunk cards (ATM4/ATM4U).

## Out-of-Building Connections/Lightning Protection

The following are the only supported scenarios in which wired extensions and devices outside the main building can be connected to the IP Office system. In these scenarios, additional protection, in the form of protective grounding and surge protectors, must be fitted.

- ⚠ The fitting of additional protection does not remove the risk of damage. It merely reduces the chances of damage.



### Cabling Requirements

- Cables of different types, for example trunk lines, extensions, ground and power connections, should be kept separate.
- All cabling between building should be enclosed in grounded ducting. Ideally this ducting should be buried.
- A Primary Protection Box must be provided at the point where the cables enter the building. This should be three point protection (tip, ring and ground). Typically this would be gas tube protection provided by the local telephone company. The ground wire must be thick enough to handle all the lines being affected by indirect strike at the same time.

Connection Type	Protection Device Type	Requirement
<b>DS Phone Extensions</b> ⚠ <i>Digital Station Expansion module DS ports only.</i>	<b>Avaya 146E DS2 IROB</b> Supports up to 4 connections.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Connection from the expansion module to the phone must be via a surge protector <u>at each end</u> and via the primary protection point in each building.</li> <li>The IP Office expansion module and control unit and IROB devices must be connected to the protective ground point in their building.</li> <li>The between building connection <u>must be</u> via earthed ducting, preferable underground. The cable <u>must not be</u> exposed externally at any point.</li> </ul>
<b>Analog Phone Extensions</b> ⚠ <i>Phones Expansion module (POT or PHONE) ports only.</i>	<b>IP Office Barrier Box</b> Supports a single connection. Maximum of 16 on any expansion module.	
<b>Analog Trunks</b>	<b>Avaya 146C CO Line Protector</b> Supports up to 4 two-wire lines.	For installations in the Republic of South Africa, the fitting of surge protection on analog trunks is a requirement. For other locations where the risk of lightning strikes is felt to be high, additional protection of incoming analog trunks is recommended.
<b>External Output Switch</b>	<b>Avaya 146G Surge Protector</b>	Connections from an IP Office Ext O/P port to an external relay device <u>must be</u> via a surge protector.

## Wall and Rack Mounting

All the IP Office control units are designed to be free-standing. On systems with external expansion modules, the control unit and modules are intended to be stacked.

Using additional option mounting kits, some systems can be wall or rack mounted.

	Wall Mount	Rack Mount
Small Office Edition	✓	✗
IP400 Control Unit	✗	✓
IP400 External Expansion Modules	✗	✓
IP500 Control Unit	✓	✓
IP500 External Expansion Modules	✗	✓

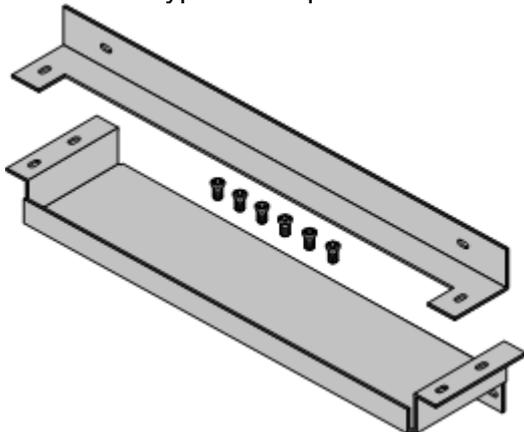
### Wall Mounting

The Small Office Edition control unit can be wall mounted if required. The base of the unit includes mouldings suitable for this purpose and an additional securing bracket is supplied with the unit.

The IP500 control unit can also be wall mounted if not using an external expansion units. An IP500 wall mounting kit is required in addition to suitable wall fixings.

- **IP500 Wall Mounting Kit (SAP Code 700430150)**

This kit must be used when wall mounting an IP500 control unit. Additional 4.5mm fixings suitable for the wall type are required. A clearance of 500mm around the control unit is required.



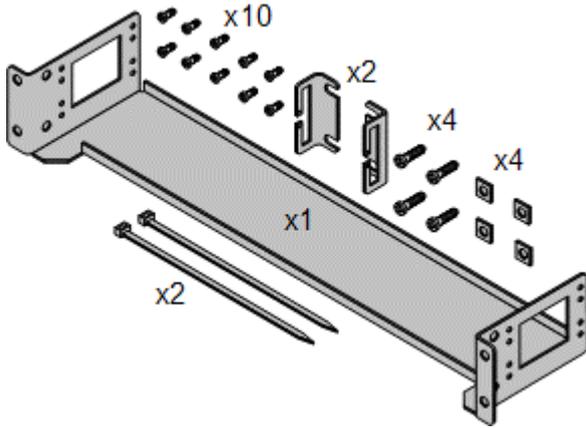
### Rack Mounting

With the exception of the Small Office Edition, all IP Office control units and external expansion modules can be rack mounted into standard 19" rack systems. Each unit requires a 2U slot space within the rack. Rack mounting requires an IP400 or IP500 rack mounting kit for each control unit and external expansion module.

Where IP Office systems are being rack mounted, the effect of conditions with the rack cabinet must be considered. For example the rack temperature may be above the room temperature and airflow within the rack will be restricted. The environmental requirements for the individual IP Office units are still applicable.

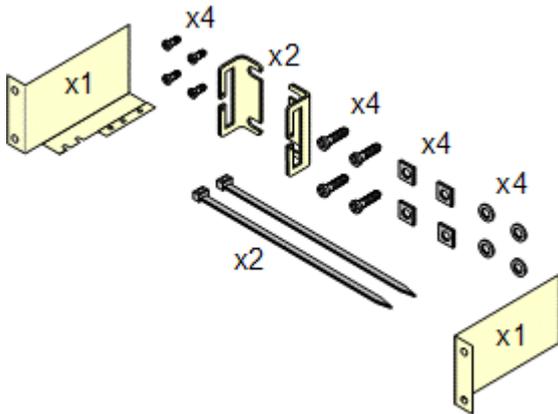
- **IP500 Rack Mounting Kit (SAP 700429202)**

This kit contains all the components required for the rack mounting of a single IP500 control unit or IP500 external expansion module. This includes screws for fixing of the brackets to the module, bolts for securing the module in the rack and cable tidy brackets.



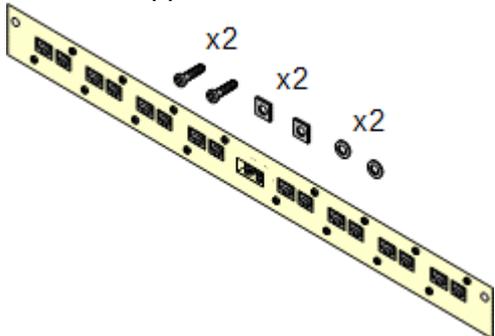
- **IP400 Rack Mounting Kit (SAP 700210800)**

This kit contains all the components required for the rack mounting of a single control unit or expansion module. This includes screws for fixing of the brackets to the module and bolts for securing the module in the rack.



- **Barrier Box Rack Mounting Kit (SAP 700293905)**

Barrier boxes must be used for out-of-building analog phone extensions. This bracket allows up to 8 IP Office barrier boxes to be rack mounted and simplifies the number of connections to the protective ground point in the rack. This kit must be used when more than 3 barrier boxes are in use and supports a maximum of 16 barrier boxes for a single external expansion module.



## Feature Key Dongles

Various IP Office features and applications require entry of a licence key or keys into the system's configuration. Each licence key is a unique 32-character number based on the feature being activated and the serial number of a Feature Key dongle installed somewhere with the IP Office system.

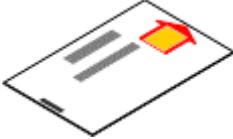
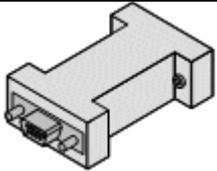
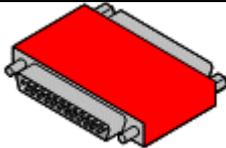
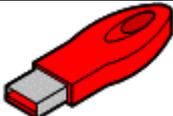
- PC-Less Licensing** 

Uses a feature key dongle inserted or attached to the rear of the control unit. This method can be used with any of the IP Office control units supported by IP Office 4.0 and is mandatory with the IP500 control unit.

- PC-Base Licensing** 

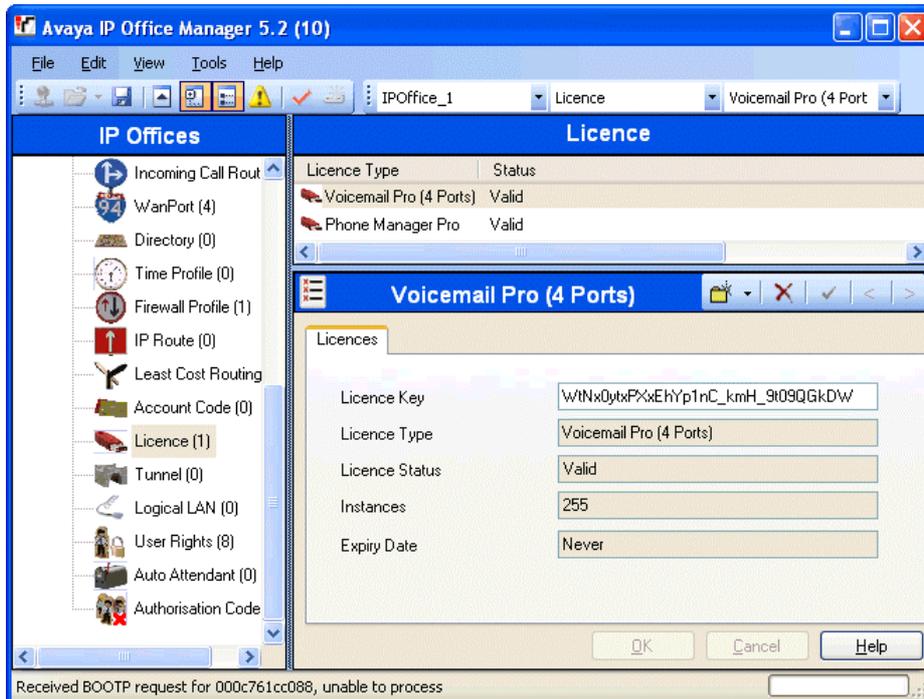
This method uses a dongle attached to a PC running the IP Office Feature Key server application. This PC must be on the same LAN segment as the IP Office control unit. Typically the dongle and IP Office Feature Key server application are installed on the same PC as the IP Office Voicemail Lite or Voicemail Pro application if present.

There are three type of Feature Key dongle available. The serial number is printed either directly onto the dongle or onto a label on the dongle.

Feature Key Type	Description	SOE	IP406	IP412	IP500	SAP Code
<b>Smart Card</b> 	Inserts into a dedicated slot on the rear of the IP500 control unit. This card is required on IP500 systems even if not using any IP Office licenses.	×	×	×	✓	MU-Law 700417470 A-Law 700417488
<b>Serial</b> 	Plugs directly into the DTE serial port on the rear of the control unit allowing PC-less operation.	✓	✓	✓	×	700293095
<b>Parallel</b> 	Plugs into the appropriate port on a PC running the IP Office Feature Key server application. This PC must on the same LAN segment as the IP Office control unit.	✓	✓	✓	×	700185234
<b>USB</b> 		✓	✓	✓	×	700261506

## License Keys

Various IP Office features and applications require entry of license keys into the system's configuration. The license keys are unique 32-character codes based on the feature being activated and the serial number of the IP Office system's Feature Key dongle.



- **Example 1: Enabling Software Features**

In the example above, the IP Office system has a valid Phone Manager Pro license. In this case the license is for 20 instances. That means that up to 20 IP Office users can be configured to use Phone Manager Pro simultaneously. Their previously license free Phone Manager Lite software will automatically change to display Phone Manager Pro features.

- **Example 2: Enabling Software and Features**

The example above the IP Office also a license for Voicemail Pro. This initial Voicemail Pro license provide for 4 ports between the IP Office system and the Voicemail Pro PC. Additional Voicemail Pro (ports) licenses can be added to cumulative increase the number of port up to the limit supported by the particular type of IP Office control unit.

When a license key is entered into the IP Office configuration, the following information is shown.

- **Status:** The status, which is Unknown until the configuration file is sent back to the IP Office system.
- **License:** The name of the licensed feature. This may differ from the ordered RFA name.
- **Instances:** Depending on the license, this may be the number of ports enabled or number of simultaneous users of the licensed feature. Sometime the number of instances is specified in the license name.
- **Expires:** Most purchased licenses have no expiry setting. For some features, trial licenses may be available which will have an expiry date.

## IP Office Phones

IP Office 4.0 supports the following phones and phone add-ons. Availability may be subject to local restrictions.

Digital stations connect to the IP Office via DS ports.

Series	IP Office Supported Digital Station (DS) Phones	Region
<b>2400</b>	2402, 2410, 2420.	Global
<b>4400</b>	4406D, 4412D+, 4424D+. Not supported on the IP500 Digital Station card.	North America
<b>5400</b>	5402, 5410, 5420.	Global
<b>6400</b>	6408D, 6416D+M, 6424D+M.	Global
<b>T3 (Upn)</b>	T3 Compact, T3 Classic, T3 Comfort.	Europe, Middle East and Africa
–	3810 Wireless phone.	North America

H323 IP Phones connect to the IP Office system via the RJ45 LAN or WAN.

Series	IP Office Supported H323 IP Phones	Region
<b>3600</b>	3616, 3620, 3626, 3641, 3645 ( <i>Connect via AVPP add-on module</i> ).	Global
<b>4600</b>	4601, 4602, 4602SW, 4610, 4610SW, 4620, 4620SW, 4621SW, 4625.	
<b>5600</b>	5601, 5602, 5602SW, 5610, 5620, 5621.	
<b>Softphone</b>	Phone Manager Pro PC Softphone application (requires Phone Manager Pro and Phone Manager IP Audio licenses).	
<b>T3 (IP)</b>	T3 IP Compact, T3 IP Classic, T3 IP Comfort.	Europe, Middle East and Africa
<b>Others</b>	Other IP softphones and hardphones require entry of an IP Endpoints license. Functionality beyond making and answering calls is not guaranteed by Avaya.	-

Analog phones and devices connect to PHONE ports with the IP Office system. However due to the variety of analog phones and device available no guarantee of operation is given. It is the responsibility of the IP Office installer and maintainer to test and verify the operation of proposed analog equipment.

Series	IP Office Recommended Analog Phones	Region
6200 Series	6211, 6219, 6221.	North America
Interquartz Gemini	9330-AV, 9335-AV, 9281-AV.	Europe, Middle East, Africa, Asia-Pacific

Series	IP Office Supported DECT Phones	Region
IP DECT 3700	3701, 3711 - Connection via IP DECT base stations.	Global

## IP Office Core Software (BIN Files)

Each IP Office control unit and expansion module contains and runs its own part of the IP Office core software. These parts take the form of .bin files (binary files).

IP400 control units and external expansion modules are supplied with a base level of core software .bin files loaded. Currently this base level is IP Office 2.1. Therefore one of the first steps of the installation process is to upgrade the modules from this base level to the level of IP Office core software required.

IP500 control units are supplied with a base level of IP Office software that acts as a software loader for upgrading the unit to the required software level. This software loader supports the LAN connection necessary for local PC to IP Office upgrade.

The .bin files for each IP Office software level are included on the IP Office Administrator Applications CD for that software level. They are installed from that CD as part of the IP Office Manager application. IP Office Manager can then be used to upgrade the .bin files loaded in the modules within an IP Office system.

Updated sets of software and bin files may also be made available through the Avaya support web site. See **Web Sites**.

- **Software Level**

The IP Office core software level is expressed in the form **X.Y(Z)**, for example 2.1(27), where **X** is the major software level, **Y** is the minor level and **Z** is the build number.

The following rules apply to the core software level used by modules within an IP Office system and between linked IP Office systems.

- All modules within an IP Office should run the same level of core software. Doing otherwise will lead to incorrect operation of the system.
- By default the IP500 runs in a software mode called IP Office Express. To run in full IP Office mode requires the addition of various licenses.

## Upgrading

Upgrading is performed using the Upgrade Wizard tool within the IP Office Manager application (**File | Advanced | Upgrade**). It displays the systems it can detect, their existing software level and the levels it has available.

- **Check IP Office Technical Bulletins**

Whenever upgrading check the latest IP Office Technical Bulletins for the various IP Office software releases involved before proceeding. These may contain information relating to changes that occurred after this document was completed. Bulletins are available from <http://support.avaya.com>.

- **Multi-Stage Upgrades**

As indicated in the table below, the upgrade path may require several intermediate upgrades. Skipping an intermediate level may lead to incorrect system operation and configuration corruption. Multi-stage upgrades are only necessary for control units. External expansion modules can be upgraded directly between any two levels supported by the module.

Control Unit	.bin File	Unvalidated Only	Validated
Small Office Edition	ip401ng.bin	2.0 > 2.1	2.1 > 3.0 > 3.1 > 3.2 > 3.2(999) > 4.1.
IP406 V2	ip406u.bin	–	2.1 > 3.0 > 3.0(999) > 3.1 > 3.1(999) > 3.2 > 4.1.
IP412	ip412.bin	1.3 > 2.1	2.1 > 3.0 > 3.1 > 3.2 > 4.1.
IP500	ip500.bin	–	4.0.0 > 4.1.

- **WAN3 10/100 Modules**

In systems containing these modules, it is recommended that control unit and any other external expansion modules are upgraded first before then upgrading the WAN3 10/100 module.

- **Large Systems**

In systems with a large number of external expansion modules, for example an IP412 with 12 external expansion modules, it may be necessary to upgrade the control unit first and then the modules.

There are three methods that the IP Office may use for upgrading, these are Validated, Offline and Unvalidated.

- **Validated Upgrade**

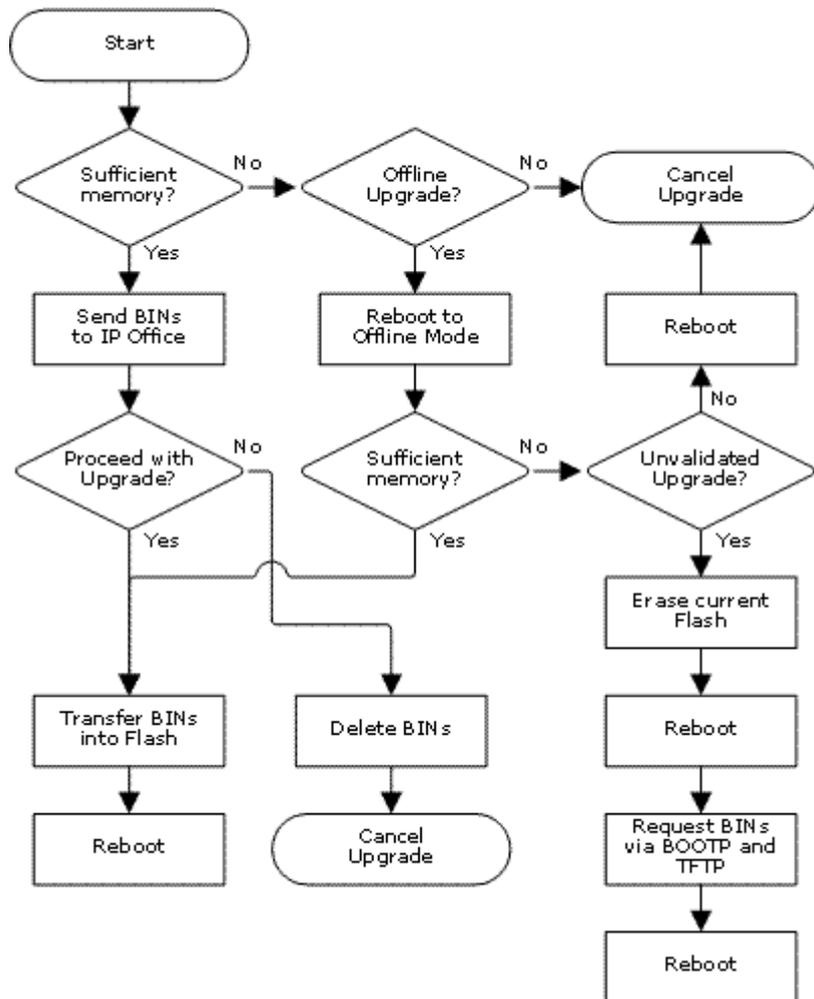
This is the preferred method and can be used with any IP Office system that already has IP Office 2.1 or higher software. By default the Validate option within the Upgrade Wizard is pre-selected. During this process, the required BIN files are first transferred to the IP Office's RAM memory. Only when the files are received will the IP Office overwrite the existing software in its Flash memory and restart using the new files.

- **Offline Upgrade**

On some systems, it may not be possible for the validated upgrade to download all the BIN files required into the IP Office system's RAM memory. If this is the case, the IP Office will offer to reboot in Offline mode and then attempt to continue the validated upgrade. In offline mode the IP Office only supports the service necessary to allow upgrading, for example it does not support Small Community Networking (SCN). If in offline mode for more than 15 minutes without being upgraded, the IP Office will reboot again back to normal operation.

- **Unvalidated Upgrade**

This is the least preferred upgrade method. It should only be used from a PC directly connected to the IP Office and with a fixed IP address on the same LAN domain as the IP Office LAN1. This method involves erasing the existing software in the IP Office's Flash memory and then copying the new BIN files directly to the Flash memory. Its uses BOOTP and TFTP and requires a BOOTP entry for the IP Office system to exist on the Manager PC. This method should not be used unless absolutely necessary.



## Supported Country Locales

When a new or defaulted system's configuration is first opened in Manager, the value set in the **Locale** field (**System | System | Locale**) should always be checked and changed if necessary. The system's **Locale** sets factors such as the default ringing patterns and caller display settings. The locale also controls the language that a voicemail server will use for prompts.

This following table indicates locale settings supported for different functions. Note that this does not necessarily indicate support, availability or approval for IP Office within that country.

This following table indicates locale settings used within 4.0 and higher for different functions. Note that reference to a locale does not necessarily indicate support, availability or approval for IP Office within that country.

Pre-3.2	Locale	Language	Telephony	Phone Display	T3 Phones	Manager	Applications			Voicemail		
							Phone Manager	Soft Console	Conf' Center	EVM	Lite	Pro
ess	Argentina	Latin Spanish	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
ena	Australia	UK English	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
nlb	Belgium	Dutch	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓
frb	Belgium	French	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓
ptb	Brazil	Brazilian	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓
frc	Canada	Canadian French	✓	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓	✓
esl	Chile	Latin Spanish	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓
chs	China	Mandarin	✓	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓
eso	Colombia	Latin Spanish	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓
dan	Denmark	Danish	✓	✓	✗	✗	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓
fin	Finland	Suomi	✓	✓	✗	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
fra	France	French	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
deu	Germany	German	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
ell	Greece	Greek	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓
zhh	Hong Kong	Cantonese	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✓
hun	Hungary	Hungarian	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓
isl	Iceland	Icelandic	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗
ind	India	UK English	✓	✗	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓
ita	Italy	Italian	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
kor	Korea	Korean	✓	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓
esm	Mexico	Latin Spanish	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
nld	Netherlands	Dutch	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓
enz	New Zealand	UK English	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗
nor	Norway	Norwegian	✓	✓	✗	✗	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓
esr	Peru	Latin Spanish	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
plk	Poland	Polish	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓
ptg	Portugal	Portuguese	✓	✓	✗	✗	✓	✗	✗	✓	✓	✓
rus	Russia	Russian	✓	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓
ara	Saudi Arabia	UK English	✓	✗	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗	✗
ens	South Africa	UK English	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗
esp	Spain	Spanish	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓
sve	Sweden	Svenska	✓	✓	✗	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
frs	Switzerland	French	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓	✓
cht	Taiwan	Putonghua	✓	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓	✗	✗	✗	✓
eng	UK	UK English	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
enu	USA	US English	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
esv	Venezuela	Latin Spanish	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

- **Pre-3.2:**

These are the three character codes used by pre-3.2 IP Office systems to set locales. In IP Office 3.2 they have been replaced by selection of the required country or language by name. The special locale **TTY** may appear for some users. This is used in conjunction with Voicemail Pro and TTY devices for hearing impaired users. Refer to the Voicemail Pro Installation manual for full details.
- **Locale:**

The country represented by the locale.
- **Language:**

The voicemail prompt language used for that locale.
- **Manager:**

Indicates that the IP Office Manager application can run in the specific locale language. Manager uses the best match it has (French, German, Brazilian, Dutch, Italian, Mexican Spanish or US English) for the regional location settings setting of the PC on which it is running, otherwise it defaults to UK English. If required the language used within the Manager screens can be overridden.
- **Telephony:**

The IP Office provides default telephony settings matching the normal expected defaults for the locale.
- **Phone Display:**

Indicates that display messages from the IP Office to Avaya DS and IP phones can be sent using the appropriate language for that locale. Note that the user locale can be used to override the system locale for these messages. Note also that some phones support their own language selection options for menus displayed by the phone's software.
- **T3 Phones:**

Menus for T3 Series phones available in the specific language.
- **Voicemail:**

These columns indicate for which locales the different Avaya IP Office voicemail servers can provide the appropriate language prompts. In all cases, the system locale can be overridden by setting a different user locale.

  - **EVM:**

Indicates that the locale is recognized by Embedded Voicemail and appropriate language prompts are then used. If an unsupported locale is used, Embedded Voicemail will attempt the best match using the first two characters of the locale.
  - **VM Lite:**

Indicates that the locale is recognized by Voicemail Lite and appropriate language prompts are then used. For an unsupported locale is used, or one for which the necessary prompts are not available, Voicemail Lite will attempt the best match using a sequence of alternate locales.
  - **VM Pro:**

Indicates that the locale is recognized by Voicemail Pro and appropriate language prompts are then used. For an unsupported locale is used, or one for which the necessary prompts are not available, Voicemail Lite will attempt the best match using a sequence of alternate locales. For example French Canadian (frc) fallback to French (fra), then US English (enu) and finally UK English (eng). Note that the languages available are selectable during Voicemail Pro installation. For further details refer to the Voicemail Pro manual.

---

## IP Office Programming and Maintenance Applications

The following Windows applications are used to program and maintain an IP Office system. They run on PC's connected to the IP Office system via its LAN interface. These applications are all provided on the IP Office Administrator Applications CD and don't require any licenses.

Typically, with the exception of SNMP, all these applications would be installed onto a single PC on the customer's LAN in order to ensure that each is available on site if required. Due to the nature of the applications, this should be a secure PC. If a voicemail server PC is also being installed, the same PC can be used for the programming and maintenance applications.

For maintainers most of these applications can also be run remotely if a route for data connections to the customer IP Office exists from the maintainers location.

- **IP Office Manager**  
This tool is used to access all parts of the IP Office configuration. Different levels of access can be defined to control which parts of the configuration the Manager user can view and alter. Manager is also used to upgrade the software files used by an IP Office system. When running it can also act as the TFTP server from which upgradeable Avaya phones can request new software.
- **System Status Application**  
This application can be used to inspect the current status of IP Office lines and extensions and to view records of recent alarms and events. It runs as a Java application.
- **Feature Key Server**  
This application is required for IP Office systems where licenses are being validated against a parallel or USB port Feature Key dongle. It must be installed on the same PC as the dongle.
- **SNMP MIB's**  
Not an application as such. Using IP Office SNMP MIB files the status of the IP Office system to be monitored by 3rd-party SNMP applications such as Castlerock and HP OpenView. When configured for SNMP operation, the IP Office can also send alerts for potential problems. IP Office 3.2 and higher supports the sending of the same alerts used for SNMP to SMTP email addresses.
- **Monitor (SysMon)**  
Monitor is a tool that can show a trace of all activity on the IP Office system in detail. As a consequence, interpretation of Monitor traces requires a high-level of data and telephony protocol knowledge. Despite that however, all IP Office installers and maintainers need to understand how to run Monitor when necessary as Avaya may request copies of Monitor traces to resolve support issues.
- **Call Status**  
This application is used to display current calls in progress. Call Status is not supported on IP Office 4.0 but is still included in the IP Office Admin applications suite for maintainers who are supported IP Office's with earlier software levels.

## User Applications

Through its LAN interfaces, the IP Office is able to let users run a number of Windows applications that operate in parallel with their telephones.

These applications are installed from the IP Office User Applications CD. Some of them require licenses to be entered into the IP Office system's configuration to enable features or to set the number of simultaneous users.

- **IP Office Phone Manager**

Phone Manager allows a user to control and monitor their phone through their PC. For Avaya phones that support handsfree operation, Phone Manager can be used to make and answer calls. During use, Phone Manager records details of calls made, answered and missed. It can also be configured to show the status of other users on the system. Phone Manager also allows the user to access and change many of the settings stored in the IP Office configuration that relate to their own phone operation, for example their forwarding destination numbers. Phone Manager software can operate in several modes:

- **Phone Manager Lite**

- The default mode of Phone Manager. Requires no license, this application can be installed for any IP Office user.

- **Phone Manager Pro**

- Users configured for Professional Edition mode are able to access a range of additional features. Phone Manager Pro requires entry of licenses into the IP Office system. The licenses also control the number of simultaneous Phone Manager Pro users. The user's Phone Manager software then automatically changes from Lite mode to Professional Edition mode.

- **Phone Manager Pro PC Softphone**

- This is a PC softphone mode of Phone Manager operation. The user acts as a VoIP extension, making calls through the speaker and microphone of their PC. This mode requires further licenses in addition to the Phone Manager Pro licenses.

- **TAPILink Lite**

The Microsoft Telephony Application Program Interface (TAPI) allows TAPI compliant applications to interact with IP Office phones by installing an IP Office TAPI driver. TAPILink Lite does not require any licenses entered into the IP Office system's configuration. It allows TAPI compliant applications such as Outlook to make and answer calls. The speech part of the calls is still via the user's physical phone.

- **SoftConsole**

This is a licensed application. It is intended for telephone system operators or receptionists. It displays details of calls directed to the user and allows them to quickly see the status of the callers required destination and transfer the call. The SoftConsole user is able to access a range of details about the status of users and groups on the IP Office system. Up to 4 simultaneous SoftConsole users can be licensed.

- **Conference Center**

This is a server application that is then accessed via web browser. It also users with a conference center password to book conferences. Details of the conference invitees can be entered and those people set to receive either an email or, using IP Office Voicemail Pro, a call asking them to join the conference.

- **IP Office MS-CRM**

Microsoft's MS-CRM is an application that allows the customer to maintain a database of their business contacts and details of interactions with those contacts. The IP Office MS-CRM component consists of three parts, one installed on the MS-CRM user PC, one installed on the customer's MS-CRM server and a license entered into the IP Office system's configuration. It allows the MS-CRM user to make and answer calls through their MS-CRM application.

---

# Voicemail Applications

The IP Office supports a range of applications for the recording and playing of voicemail messages.

- **Embedded Voicemail**

Also called Integral Voicemail, this application is supported on Small Office Edition, IP406 V2 and IP500 control units. It is unlicensed but requires the addition of an Avaya memory card to store messages and prompts. Embedded Voicemail supports basic voicemail mailbox operation, simple auto-attendants and hunt group announcements.

- **Voicemail Lite**

This application does not require an IP Office license. It can be installed from the IP Office Administrator Applications CD to a Windows PC on the IP Office LAN. It provides voicemail operation for all IP Office users and groups, using the PC hard-disk to store prompts and messages. Only 4 simultaneous connections to leave or play messages are supported. Voicemail Lite is not supported on IP500 control units running in IP Office Express Edition mode.

- **Voicemail Pro**

This application requires various licenses entered into the IP Office configuration to control the features it offers and the number of simultaneous connections, up to 30 on the IP412 control unit. The operation of Voicemail Pro can be customised to provide special services. Voicemail Pro is not supported on IP500 control units running in IP Office Standard Edition mode.

- **Campaigns**

The Voicemail Pro can be configured to run a campaign. This consists of a series of questions for which the Voicemail Pro records the callers answer or key presses. The resulting recordings can then be played back by users. The web aspect of campaigns allows user to perform this playback and processing of campaign recordings via their web browser. This requires a web server to be run on the same PC as the Voicemail Pro software.

- **Text to Speech (TTS)**

Through adding additional licenses, the Voicemail Pro is able to use the TTS functions of Windows to speak text and numbers to callers in addition to recording prompts. This is intended mainly for scenarios where the Voicemail Pro is obtaining text and number values from a customer database.

- **Integrated Messaging Service (IMS)**

Both Voicemail Pro and Voicemail Lite support a feature called voicemail email to send messages or message alerts to a users email. This however is a one-way process. IMS allows this to become a two-way process, where users can play voicemail messages through their email mailbox or voicemail mailbox. IMS interoperates with the customer's Exchange server and the user's Outlook.

- **Database Integration**

With an additional license, the Voicemail Pro can be integrated with customer database through Windows ODBC. When combined with TTS operation, this allows the construction of interactive voice response (IVR) applications on Voicemail Pro.

- **ContactStore for IP Office**

Voicemail Pro can be used for manual and automatic call recording. Those recording are placed into a mailbox and treated as normal messages. Contact Store allows those recordings to be redirected into a database on the ContactStore PC. This allows recordings to be archived and searched separately from mailbox messages. This application requires entry of a license into the IP Office configuration.

## Call Logging Applications

A wide range of 3rd -party applications exist to provide call logging and accounting for telephone systems. The IP Office has a number of options for providing call details to those applications.

- **Call Detail Records (CDR)**

IP Office 3.1 and higher supports the sending of CDR records via TCP or UDP to an IP address. A range of common CDR record formats are supported. This option is configured within the IP Office itself.

- **Delta Server SMDR Output**

This application receives call information from the IP Office systems which it then shares with other applications. The Delta Server does not require a license in the IP Office configuration. Only one Delta Server can be used with each IP Office system. The Delta server can be configured to output a call log of all calls made and received by the IP Office system. The Delta sever send these records to an SMDR file stored on the PC and which can then be accessed by 3rd-party call logging applications. The Delta Server can also send SMDR records to a remote IP address.

---

## Call Center Applications

- **Delta Server**

The applications below do not communicate directly with the IP Office system. They communicate across the LAN with a PC running the IP Office Delta Server application. This application receives call information from the IP Office systems which it then shares with other applications. The Delta Server does not require a license in the IP Office configuration. Only one Delta Server can be used with each IP Office system.
- **Compact Business Center (CBC)**

This is a licensed application. It receives data from the IP Office Delta Server application. The CBC is able to show details of calls handled by up to 3 selected hunt groups. Its can also display details of IP Office trunk usage. The CBC retains calls details for 31 days.
- **Compact Contact Center (CCC)**

CCC is a reporting application designed for use in call centers. It provides a range of both real-time and historical reporting options. CCC consists of a CCC Server application that receives call information from the IP Office Delta Server, and a number of client applications for the displaying of that information. CCC and its clients are controlled by a range of licenses entered into the IP Office configuration.

  - The CCC server applications are listed below. They are installed onto the same PC:
    - **CCC Archiver**

The Archiver manages the collection and storage of call activity information.
    - **Wallboard Manager**

Wallboards provide current information on the number of calls waiting, response times and service levels. Wallboard Manager provides the ability to control both physical wallboards and PC wallboards.
  - The CCC clients are:
    - **Call Center View (CCV):**

Provides a realtime information about call center activity.
    - **Alarm Reporter:**

Provides real-time and past 7-days information on alarms that have occurred within the call center.
    - **PC Wallboard:**

The PC Wallboard allows call center agents and supervisors to display real-time call center performance information on their Windows PC screen.
    - **Report Manager:**

Provides in depth historical reporting on calls, agents and groups.
    - **Workforce Management:**

This application allows CCC to share information with a third-party agent scheduling application - Blue Pumpkin.

## CTI Applications

- **TAPILink Pro**

Using the same software as TAPILink Lite, TAPILink Pro provides all of the features and functionality of TAPILink Lite, but additionally provides third party CTI operation. This means that a single server can control and monitor any number of telephone devices. This requires entry of a CTI Link Pro license. TAPILink Pro also provides the ability to monitor and control groups. This allows an application to be notified when a call enters a queue, and can also redirect it to another location. TAPILink Pro also supports additional TAPI functionality such as:

- Agent login.
- Agent logout.
- Set and retrieve divert destination.
- Set and retrieve extended divert status (Forward All Calls, Forward on Busy, Forward on No Answer, Do not Disturb).
- Retrieving the extension locale (language).
- Set and clear the message waiting lamp.
- Enable and disable group membership.
- Generate and detect DTMF digits and tones (requires the TAPI-WAV driver).

- **TAPI WAV driver**

Provides software-based support for voice processing. Purchasing the CTI Link Pro RFA license key also enables 4 ports of voice processing; additional ports can be purchased in 4 port increments. The TAPI-WAV driver is for use with TAPI 2.1 only; for TAPI 3.0, IP Office supports the Media Service Provider (MSP) interface, defined by Microsoft in TAPI 3.0.

- **DevLink Pro**

Provides a real-time event stream in addition to the SMDR interface provided in IP Office SMDR (see below). The real-time event stream takes the form of a call record, which is issued whenever the state of any endpoint of a call changes (typically there are two endpoints on a call, but for some circumstances, such as conference calls, intruded calls there may be more).

## IP Office Application CD/DVD's

The IP Office applications are available on a number of CD's and DVD's. These can be ordered at a nominal cost to cover order processing and delivery. Copies of the CD images can also be downloaded from the Avaya support website at <http://support.avaya.com>.

The CD's below have also been combined onto a single DVD (SAP 700449465).

Title	Discs	Description	SAP Code
<b>IP Office 4.1 User and Administration CD Set</b>	5	This CD set contains the IP Office Administrator Applications CD, IP Office User Applications CD and IP Office Documentation CD's (English, German and French). See below for details of the contents of each CD. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>CD 1: Administrator Applications CD</b> Contains: the IP Office Wizard, Monitor, Feature Key Server, Manager, Voicemail Lite, Call Status, DECT Integration applications plus SNMP MIB's.</li> <li>• <b>CD 2: User Applications CD</b> Contains the IP Office Phone Manager, TAPI, DevLink, MS-CRM Integration and SoftConsole applications.</li> <li>• <b>CD 3/4/5: Documentation CDs</b> Contains an HTML and PDF collection of IP Office documentation. Available in English, French and German versions.</li> </ul>	700449457
<b>Voicemail Pro 4.1 CD</b>	2	This CD set is split into the first CD for Voicemail Pro and a second CD for the additional IP Office ContactStore application. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>CD 1:</b> Contains the Voicemail Pro application including components for Campaigns, IMS and VPNM.</li> <li>• <b>CD 2:</b> Contains the software for the IP Office ContactStore application.</li> </ul>	700448954
<b>Voicemail Pro ScanSoft TTS CD's</b>	5	Contains various language text to speech engines for use with Voicemail Pro's TTS functions. Languages provided are Chinese, Dutch, English (UK), English (US), French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Norwegian, Brazilian Portuguese, Russian, Spanish and Latin Spanish.	700293921
<b>Compact Contact Center V5.2 DVD</b>	1	This DVD contains Delta Server, CBC and CCC.	700451545
<b>Conference Center V3.2 CD</b>	1	Installs the IP Office Conference Center application.	700407596
<b>Software Developers Kit (SDK) CD</b>	1	Contains documentation and sample code for development of third-party application that can interact with the IP Office system. These applications will require CTI license and possible other licenses.	700188873

- It is acceptable to make copies of the Avaya IP Office CD's and DVD's listed above. However the content must remain intact, unaltered and without change or addition. Avaya does not accept any liability and responsibility for damage or problems arising from the use of such copies.

## VoIP and Network Assessments

The IP Office is a converged telephony system, that is it combines aspects of traditional PABX telephone systems and IP data network systems. This works at various levels.

- Individual phone users can control the operation of their phone through applications running on their PC.
- Data traffic can be routed from the LAN interface to a telephony trunk interface, for example a dial-up ISP connection.
- Voice traffic can be routed across internal and or external data links. This option is referred to as voice over IP (VoIP).

The VoIP mode of operation can include IP trunks between customer systems and or H.323 IP telephones for users. In either case the following factors must be considered:

- The IP Office control unit must be fitted with voice compression channels. These channels are used whenever a IP device (trunk or extension) needs to communicate with a non-IP device (trunk or extension). See Voice Compression Channels.
- A network assessment is a mandatory requirement. For support issues with VoIP, Avaya may request access to the network assessment results and may refuse support if those are not available or satisfactory.

A network assessment would include a determination of the following:

- A network audit to review existing equipment and evaluate its capabilities, including its ability to meet both current and planned voice and data needs.
- A determination of network objectives, including the dominant traffic type, choice of technologies, and setting voice quality objectives.
- The assessment should leave you confident that the implemented network will have the capacity for the foreseen data and voice traffic, and can support H.323, DHCP, TFTP and jitter buffers in H.323 applications.
- An outline of the expected network assessment targets is:

Test	Minimum Assessment Target
Latency	Less than 150ms.
Packet Loss	Less than 2%.
Duration	Monitor statistics once every minute for a full week.

---

## Voice Compression Channels

Calls to and from IP devices can require conversion to the audio codec format being used by the IP device. In the IP Office this conversion is done by voice compression channels. These support the common IP audio codecs G711, G723 and G729a.

For Small Office Edition control units either 3 or 16 integral channels are included. For IP400 control units channels can be added by fitting IP400 VCM cards. For the IP500 control unit channels can be added using either IP400 VCM cards or licensed IP500 VCM cards.

The voice compression channels are used as follows.

- **IP Device to Non-IP Device**

These calls require a voice compression channel for the duration of the call. If no channel is available busing indication is returned to the call.
- **IP Device to IP Device**
  - Call progress tones (for example dial tone, secondary dial tone, etc) do not require voice compression channels with the following exceptions:
    - Short code confirmation, ARS camp on and account code entry tones require a voice compression channel.
    - Devices using G723 require a voice compression channel for all tones except call waiting.
  - When a call is connected:
    - If the IP devices use the same audio codec no voice compression channel is used.
    - If the devices use differing audio codecs, a voice compression channel is required for each.
- **Non-IP Device to Non-IP Device**

No voice compression channels are required except for Small Office Edition Embedded Voicemail access.
- **Music on Hold**

This is provided from the IP Office's TDM bus and therefore requires a voice compression channel when played to an IP device.
- **Conference Resources and IP Devices**

Conferencing resources are managed by the conference chip which is on the IP Office's TDM bus. Therefore, a voice compression channel is required for each IP device involved in a conference. This includes services that use conference resources such as call listen, intrusion, call recording and silent monitoring.
- **Page Calls to IP Device**

Page calls require 1 voice compression channel per audio codec being used by any IP devices involved. IP Office 4.0 and higher only uses G729a for page calls, therefore only requiring one channel but also only supporting pages to G729a capable devices.
- **Voicemail Services and IP Devices**

Calls to the IP Office voicemail servers (Voice Mail Pro, Voicemail Lite and Embedded Voicemail) are treated as data calls from the TDM bus. Therefore calls from an IP device to voicemail require a voice compression channel.

  - On the Small Office Edition, embedded voicemail uses voice compression channels for audio conversion. Therefore all calls to SOE embedded voicemail require a voice compression channel and calls from IP devices require two voice compression channels.

- **Fax Calls**

These are voice calls but with a slightly wider frequency range than spoken voice calls. IP Office only supports fax across IP between IP Office systems with the **Fax Transport** option selected. It does not currently support T38.

- **SIP Calls**

- **SIP Line Call to/from Non-IP Devices**

Voice compression channel required.

- **Outgoing SIP Line Call from IP Device**

No voice compression channel required.

- **Incoming SIP Line Call to IP Device**

Voice compression channel reserved until call connected.

Note: T3 IP devices must be configured to 20ms packet size for the above conditions to apply. If left configured for 10ms packet size, a voice compression channel is needed for all tones and for non-direct media calls.

## Training

Avaya University provides a wide range of training courses for IP Office and its associated applications. This includes courses necessary for IP Office resellers to become Avaya Authorized Channel Partners and for individuals to achieve IP Office certification.

Details of all the course can be found on the Avaya University web site (<http://www.avaya-learning.com>). The site can be used to check course availability and to book course. It also includes on-line courses and on-line course assessments. The site requires users to setup a user name and password in order to track their personal training record.

The Avaya University site also includes details of the processes necessary for achieving different levels of product certification. These processes allow installers and maintainers to achieve certification in different areas such as Selling, Design, Implementation, Maintenance, Voicemail and Contact Centers. Levels of individual certification within those areas are:

- **Avaya Certified Associate (ACA).**
- **Avaya Certified Specialists (ACS).**
- **Avaya Certified Expert (ACE).**

Key IP Office courses are:

Course	Course Code
IP Office Hardware and Applications Overview	AVA00136WEN
IP Office Data Components	AVA00138WEN
IP Office Voicemail Pro	AVA00139WEN
IP Office Implementation Workshop	AVA00140H00
IP Office Advanced Applications Workshop	AVA00484H00
IP Office Telephones End-User Training	AVA00619WEN
IP Office Telephones End-User Training ILT	AVA00619H00
IP DECT (Europe only)	AVA00757WEN
IP Office Maintenance and Troubleshooting Workshop	AVA00758H00
IP Office Release 4.0 Product Delta	–

## Web Sites

Information to support the IP Office can be found on a number of web sites.

- **Avaya - <http://www.avaya.com>**  
The official web site for Avaya. The front page also provides access to individual Avaya web sites for different countries.
- **Avaya Enterprise Portal - <http://partner.avaya.com>**  
This is the official web site for all Avaya Business Partners. The site requires registration for a user name and password. Once accessed, the site portal can be individually customized for what products and information types you wish to see and to be notified about by email.
- **Avaya Support - <http://support.avaya.com>**  
Contains documentation and other support materials for Avaya products including IP Office. Copies of the IP Office CD images are available from this site and updated core software .bin files.
- **Avaya University - <http://www.avaya-learning.com>**  
This site provides access to the full range of Avaya training courses. That includes both on-line courses, course assessments and access to details of classroom based courses. The site requires users to register in order to provide the user with access to details of their training record. See Training.
- **Avaya Community - <http://www.aucommunity.com>**  
This is the official discussion forum for Avaya product users. However it does not include any separate area for discussion of IP Office issues.
- **Avaya IP Office Knowledge Base - <http://www.avaya.com/ipoffice/knowledgebase>**  
Access to an on-line regularly updated version of the IP Office Knowledge Base. Currently this link is only available to Avaya Business Partners while running an ARA account (Avaya Remote Access) connection.
- **Avaya UPS Calculator - [http://ups.avayaups.com/AC\\_01.asp](http://ups.avayaups.com/AC_01.asp)**  
An online calculator for uninterruptable power supply (UPS) requirements. Allows specification of a range of equipment to be supported including IP Office 403, 406 and 412 control units. See Power Supply Backup (UPS).
- **Other Non-Avaya Web Sites**  
A number of third-party web forums exist that discuss IP Office. These can act as useful source of information about how the IP Office is used. Some of these forums require you to be a member and to register. These are not official Avaya forums and their content is not monitored or sanctioned by Avaya.
  - **Tek-Tips: <http://www.tek-tips.com>.**
  - **IP Office Info: <http://www.ipofficeinfo.com>.**
  - **Yahoo Groups: <http://groups.yahoo.com/group/ipoffice>.**
  - **Lycos Forum: <http://members.lycos.co.uk/ipoffice>.**
  - **PBX Tech: <http://www.pbxtech.info/forumdisplay.php?f=8>.**
  - **IP Office Italian: <http://www.ipoffice.it>.**
  - **IP Office UK: <http://www.ipofficeforum.co.uk>.**

---

# A. Planning

---

## Space Requirements

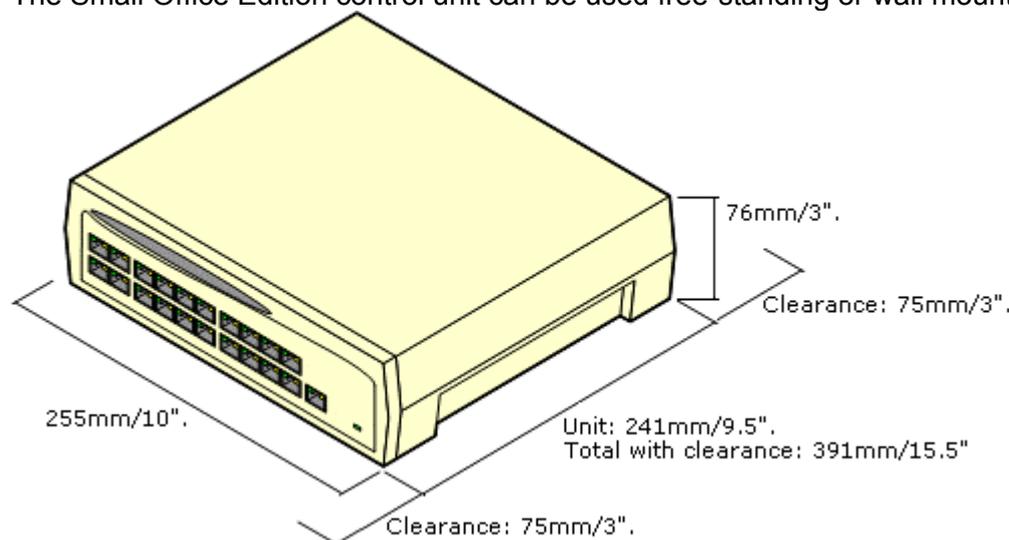
The Small Office Edition is designed to be free-standing or wall mounted. The base includes integral screw-head slots for wall mounting and an additional bracket is supplied with the module for a locking screw.

All the other IP Office control units and modules are designed to be installed either in a free-standing stack or into a 19" rack system. Rack installation requires a rack mounting kit for each control unit and expansion module.

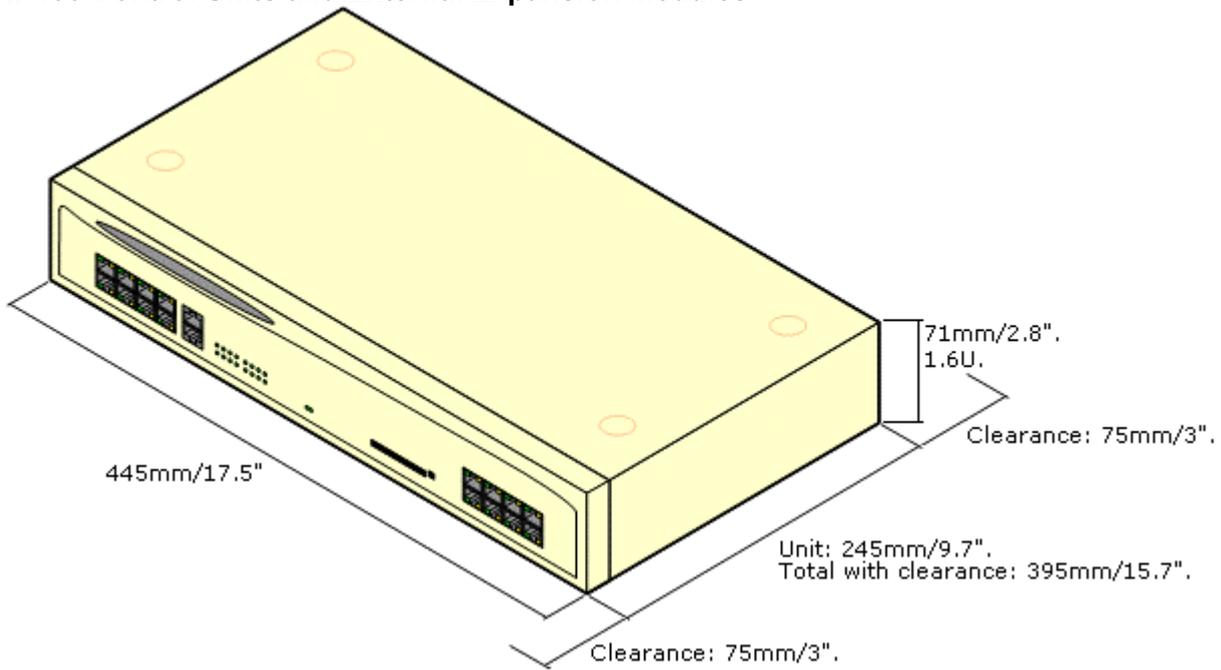
- **Cable Clearance:**  
Clearance must be provided at the front and rear of all modules for cable access and feature key dongle connection.
  - On IP400 and Small Office Edition systems, allow a minimum clearance of 75mm (3 inches).
  - On IP500 systems allow a minimum clearance of 90mm (3.5 inches).
- **Additional Clearance:**  
Care should be taken to ensure that the positioning of the modules does not interrupt air flow and other factors that may affect environmental requirements. This is especially important on IP500 control units which have ventilation slots at the side.
- **Cable Access**  
Power cords must not be attached to the building surface or run through walls, ceilings, floors and similar openings. Installation measures must be taken to prevent physical damage to the power supply cord, including proper routing of the power supply cord and provision of a socket outlet near the fixed equipment or positioning of the equipment near a socket outlet.

### Small Office Edition Control Unit

The Small Office Edition control unit can be used free-standing or wall mounted.

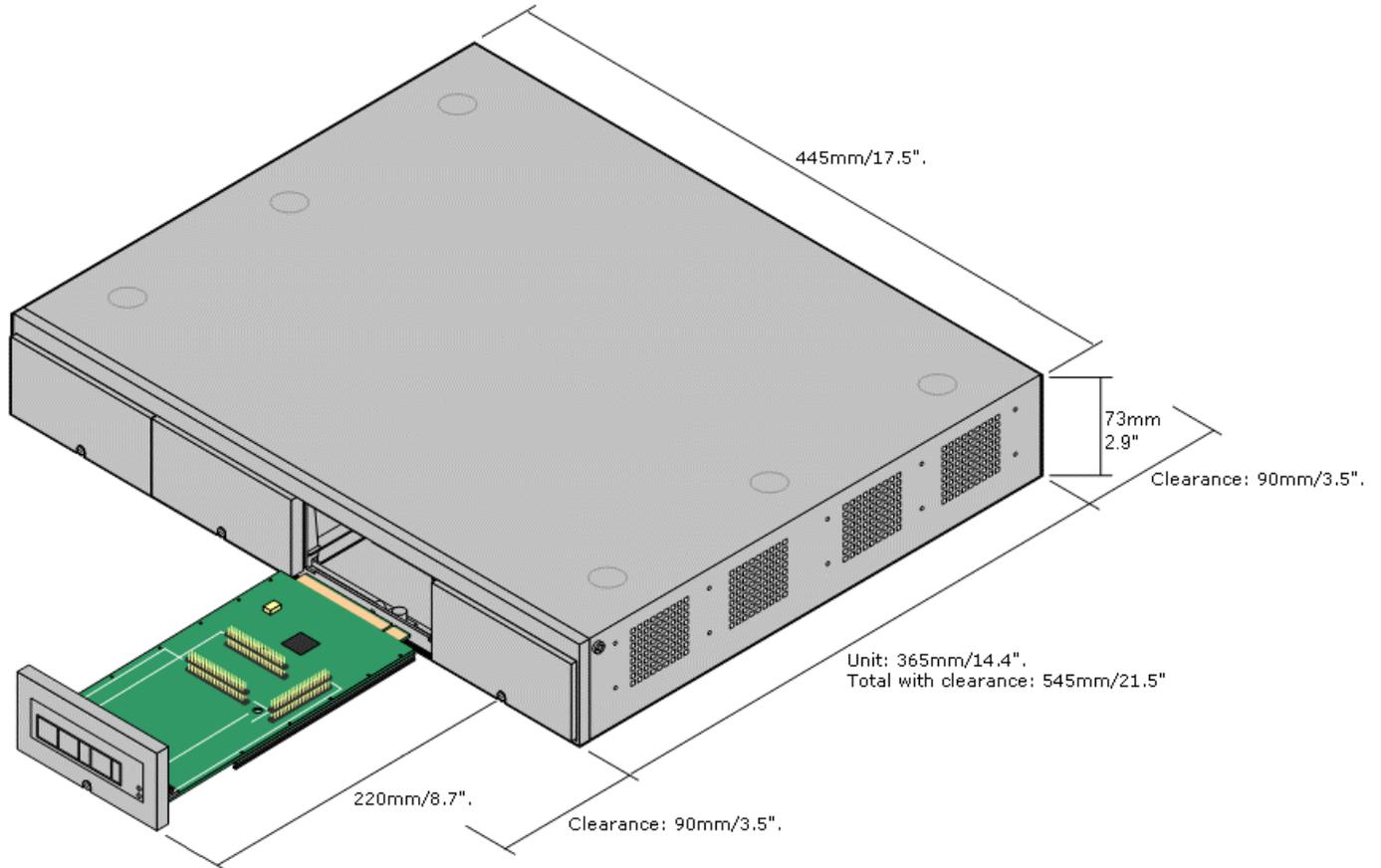


**IP400 Control Units and External Expansion Modules**



**IP500 Control Unit**

When wall mounted, a clearance of 500mm is required on all sides. The ventilation slots on the rear and sides should not be covered or blocked.



## Environmental requirements

The planned location must meet the following requirements. If being installed into a rack system, these are requirements for within the rack:

1.  **Temperature:** 0°C to 40°C / 32°F to 104°F.
2.  **Humidity:** 10% to 95% non-condensing.
3.  Check there are no flammable materials in the area.
4.  Check there is no possibility of flooding.
5.  Check that no other machinery or equipment needs to be moved first.
6.  Check that it is not an excessively dusty atmosphere.
7.  Check that the area is unlikely to suffer rapid changes in temperature and humidity.
8.  Check for the proximity of strong magnetic fields, sources of radio frequency and other electrical interference.
9.  Check there are no corrosive chemicals or gasses.
10.  Check there is no excessive vibration or potential of excessive vibration, especially of any mounting surface.
11.  Check that where telephones are installed in another building, that the appropriate protectors and protective grounds are fitted (see Out of Building Telephone Installation).
12.  Check there is suitable lighting for installation, system programming and future maintenance.
13.  Check that there is sufficient working space for installation and future maintenance.
14.  Ensure that likely activities near the system will not cause any problems, e.g. access to and maintenance of any other equipment in the area.
15.  Where ventilation holes are present on any of the IP Office units, those holes should not be covered or blocked.
16.  The surface must be flat horizontal for free-standing or rack mounted installations.

### Wall Mounting

In addition to the requirements above, the following are applicable to IP Office units that support wall mounting.

1. Units must only be mounted onto permanent wall surfaces.
2. The surface must be vertical and flat.
3. Orientation of the unit must be as shown in the sections on **IP500 Wall Mounting** or **Small Office Edition Wall Mounting**.
4. The appropriate Avaya wall mounting kits must be used.

### IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

When using your telephone equipment, basic safety precautions should always be followed to reduce the risk of fire, electric shock and injury to persons, including the following:

1. Do not use this product near water, for example, near a bath tub, wash bowl, kitchen sink or laundry tub, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
2. Avoid using a telephone (other than a cordless type) during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
3. Do not use the telephone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.
4. Use only the power cord and batteries indicated in this manual. Do not dispose of batteries in a fire. They may explode. Check with local codes for possible special disposal instructions.

## Tools and Parts Required

This section outlines the tools and miscellaneous parts likely to be required during the setup of an IP Office system. Other tools may also be required.



### Tools Required

1.  Pozidrive No. 1 screwdriver for removal of module covers.
2.  Cutter for cable ties.
3.  Pozidrive No. 4 screwdriver.
4.  Wrist-strap for anti-static grounding or similar.
5.  PC running Windows 2000/XP/2003.  
During the Staging Installation later in this manual, we recommend that you use a customer PC that will eventually remain on site. Ideally this will be the same PC that will be used as the customers Feature Key server and or voicemail server.
6.  Indelible marker for cable labelling.



### Parts Required

1.  Cable ties.
2.  Cabling labels.
3.  IP Office CD Pack  
Contains IP Office Administration Applications CD, IP Office User Applications CD and IP Office Engineers Toolkit CD.
4.  Technical Bulletins  
Each IP Office software release is normally accompanied by a Technical Bulletin detailing special installation requirements, known issues, etc. Various software releases and their associated Technical Bulletins can also be obtained from <http://support.avaya.com>.

---

## B. Pre-Configuration

---

### Off Line Configuration

Manager supports a number of methods by which the configuration of an IP Office system can be setup in advanced of the physical IP Office. This allows pre-configuration and speeds up the actual on-site installation.

It also allows potential configuration questions to be raised and resolved with the customer in advance of the on-site installation, reducing the number of post-installation changes required.

- **Creating a New Configuration**

Manager can be used to create a new configuration, specifying the locale, control unit type, expansion modules and trunk cards in the process. This then gives a default configuration onto which the customer requirements can be prepared.

- **Importing Settings**

Manager can import settings in the form a simple CSV files. It can also be used to export the settings from another IP Office system's configuration and then import those settings into a different configuration.

## Creating a New Configuration

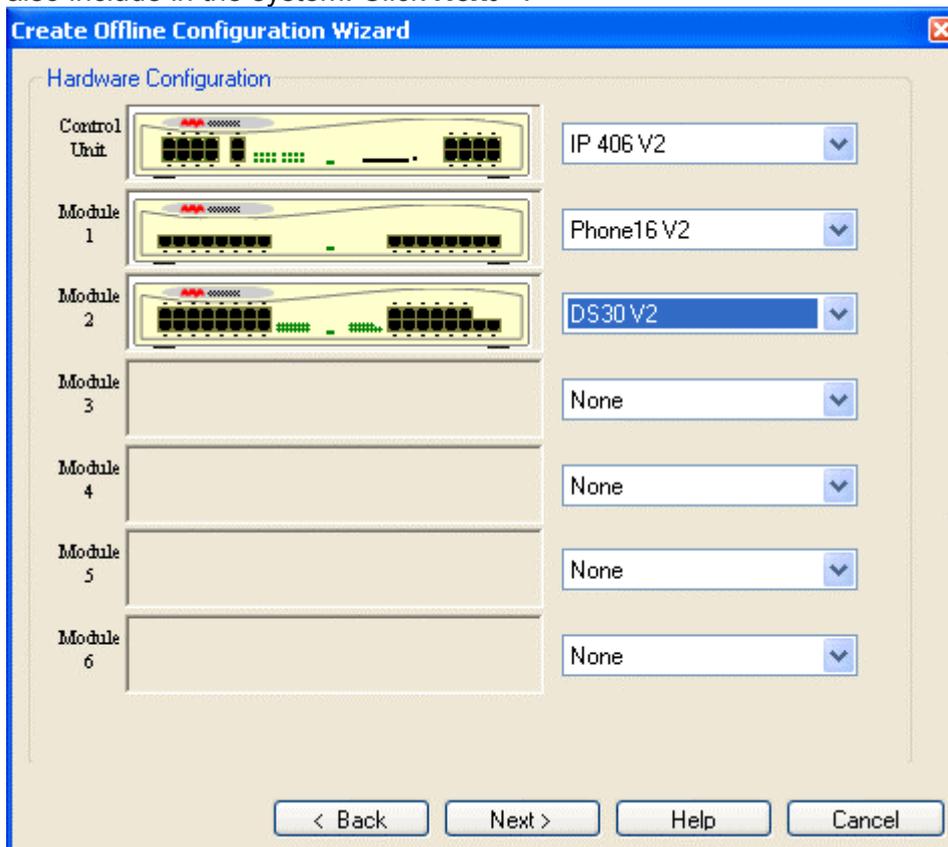
Manager can be used to create a new configuration without connecting to an IP Office system. During the process, you can specify the locale of the system, what type of trunk cards it uses and what type of control unit and expansion modules to include.

This allows the creation of a configuration prior to installation of the real system and so can be used to speed up installation.

- The configuration created must match the physical equipment in the IP Office system onto which the configuration will be loaded. Doing otherwise may cause the IP Office system to reset and experience other problems.
- The **Create Configuration** tool includes all control units, external expansion modules and trunk cards supported by IP Office. It is your responsibility to confirm what IP Office equipment is supported in your locale.

### Creating a New Configuration

1. Click  in the main toolbar or select **File | Offline | Create New Config** from the menu bar.
2. Select the **Locale** for the system. This defines a range of features such as default telephony settings. Click **Next >**.
3. Select the type of IP Office control unit. Then select the expansion modules, excluding WAN3, to also include in the system. Click **Next >**.



4. Select the trunks cards to be included and the IP address of a WAN3 module if required. Click **Finish**.
5. The configuration is created and loaded into Manager.
6. Once this configuration has been edited as required it can be saved on the PC. In order to send it to the matching IP Office system, **File | Offline | Send Configuration** has to be used.

---

## Importing and Exporting Settings

Manager can import configuration settings created elsewhere. This can be useful when setting up a new system or sharing common settings such as a directory between systems.

Settings are imported and exported in two formats:

- **Binary Files (.exp)**  
These are non-editable files. During import and export it is possible to select what types of entries should be included in the file. During import the whole file is imported.
- **Comma Separated Variable Text Files (.csv)**  
These are plain text files. In addition to being exported from an IP Office system these files can be created and edited using programs such as WordPad or Excel.

### Exporting Settings

1. Select **File | Import/Export...** from the menu bar.
2. Select **Export**.
3. Select the type of file. The list of exportable entry types will change to match the file type.
4. Select the types of items that should be exported.
5. Use the **Save In** path to select the location for the exported files. The default location used is sub-directory of the Manager application directory based on system name of the currently loaded IP Office system.
6. Click **OK**.

### Importing Settings

Importing settings will overwrite any existing entries that match an entry being imported.

1. Select **File | Import/Export...** from the menu bar.
2. Select **Import**.
3. Select the type of file. The list of items will change to match the type of file selected and whether a matching file or files is found in the current file path.
4. Use **Look In** to adjust the file path. The default location used is sub-directory of the Manager application directory based on system name of the currently loaded IP Office system.
5. Select the types of items that should be imported.
6. Click **OK**.

**CSV File Formats**

The format is CSV using commas as field separator, no text delimiters and no header row. The simplest way to check the required format for a CSV file prior to import, is to export and study the settings from an existing system.

<b>File Name</b>	<b>Fields in Order</b>
<b>Directory</b>	Name, Number.
<b>HuntGroup</b>	Name, Extension, Group, Hunt, Rotary, Idle, Queuing On, Voicemail On, Broadcast, Voicemail Email.
<b>License</b>	License, License Key
<b>ShortCode</b>	Code, Telephone Number, Feature.
<b>User</b>	Name, Extension, User Restriction/Rights, Voicemail Email.
<b>Configuration</b>	<i>Proprietary format</i>

**Notes**

- **Hunt Group:** Apart from Name, Extension and Voicemail Email, the fields use a 1 or 0 value for on or off.
- **License:**
  - The License field is for information only and is ignored during import.
  - Following import the License name may appear as invalid with Manager. To resolve this save and then reload the configuration file.
- **System:** The format of the system CSV is too complex to be described. It is a full export of all the IP Office system's configuration settings. This file format should only be used for export and import between systems and not for any offline editing.

---

# C. Small Office Edition Installation

---

## Small Office Edition Installation

1. Unpacking
2. Installing the Admin Applications
3. Default Control Unit Power Up
4. Connecting the Manager PC
5. Receiving a Configuration (Pre 3.2)
6. Using Monitor
7. Fitting Trunk Cards (SOE)
8. Shelf/Wall Mounting
9. Grounding (SOE)
10. Upgrading the Core Software
11. Configuring Security Settings
12. Receiving a Configuration (3.2+)
13. Running System Status Application

# Unpacking

Use the following procedure when unpacking any equipment supplied by Avaya or an Avaya distributor.

 **Objective** - To check that the correct equipment has been supplied and that no damage has occurred during transit.

## Information Required

### 1. **Equipment Checklist.**

Draw up an installation checklist of the parts and equipment expected.

1.   
2.   
3.

## Procedure

### 1. **Check for Package Damage.**

Before unpacking any equipment, check for any signs of damage that may have occurred during transit. If any damage exists bring it to the attention of the carrier.

### 2. **Check the Correct Parts Have Been Delivered.**

Check all cartons against the packing slip and ensure that you have the correct items. Report any errors or omissions to the equipment supplier.

### 3. **Retain All Packaging and Documentation.**

While unpacking the equipment, retain all the packaging material. Fault returns are accepted only if repackaged in the original packaging. If performing a staged installation, the original packaging will also assist when repacking equipment to be moved to the final install site.

### 4. **Ensure that Anti-Static Protection Measures are Observed**

Ensure that anti-static protection measures are observed at all times when handling equipment with exposed electrical circuit boards.

### 5. **Check All Parts.**

Visually inspect each item and check that all the necessary documentation and accessory items have been included. Report any errors or omissions to the dealer who supplied the equipment.

### 6. **Check All Documentation.**

Ensure that you read and retain any documentation included with any items.

## Installing the Admin Applications

This procedure covers installation of applications in the IP Office Admin suite.

 **Objective** - To install the applications necessary for the installation and maintenance of an IP Office system.

### Information Required

#### 1. Which IP Office Admin Suite applications are being installed?

The following list indicates those that are required for installation and configuration:

- **System Monitor - Install**  
Monitor is a tool intended primarily for Avaya technicians and engineers. However it is able to report on all aspects of IP Office operation and is therefore an important tool for diagnostics.
- **Feature Key Server - Optional**  
The Feature Key Server should only be installed if the PC will host the parallel port or USB port Feature Key dongle for the IP Office system.
- **Manager - Install**  
This application is required to edit and manage the software on the IP Office system.
- **Voicemail Mail Lite - Optional**  
Only install this application if no other voicemail such as Voicemail Pro or embedded voicemail is being installed. IP Office Lite is not supported by IP500 systems running in IP Office Standard Edition mode.
- **System Status Application - Install**  
This application is used with IP Office 4.0 systems to show equipment and resource within the system, alarms and calls in progress.
- **Previous System Monitor - IP400 Install/IP500 Optional**  
For IP400 control unit this version of monitor is required until the system is upgraded to IP Office 4.0 software.
- **Call Status - Optional**  
This application is only supported for pre-4.0 IP Office systems. For IP Office 4.0 and higher it has been replaced by the System Status Application above.

### Parts Required

#### 1. IP Office Administrator Applications CD.

#### 2. Windows PC

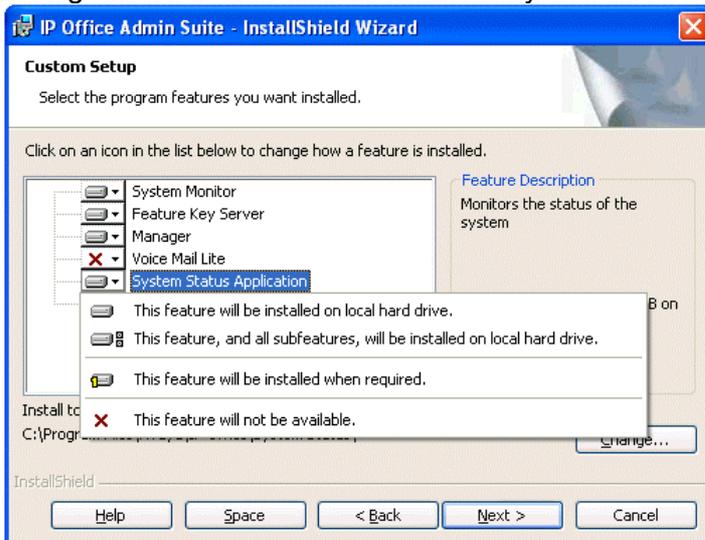
This should meet the requirements of the administrator applications being installed. If a server PC from the customer installation is available, for example for Voicemail Pro, use that PC. The specification below is just for IP Office Manager. If other applications are to be installed on the PC then their requirements should also be met.

Requirement	Minimum	Recommended
<b>Processor</b>	600MHz Pentium or AMD Opteron, AMD Athlon64, AMD Athlon XP.	800MHz Pentium or AMD Opteron, AMD Athlon64, AMD Athlon XP.
<b>RAM</b>	128MB	256MB
<b>HD Space</b>	1GB - 800MB for .NET2, 200MB for Manager.	1.4GB - 800MB for .NET2, 600MB for the full IP Office Admin suite.
<b>Display</b>	800 x 600 - 256 Colors	1024 x 768 - 16-bit High Color
<b>Operating System</b>	Windows XP Professional with SP2. Windows 2000 Professional with SP4. Windows 2000 Server with SP4. Windows 2003 Server. Windows 2003 SBS. Note: 64-bit versions of the operating systems above are not supported.	



**Procedure: Installing the IP Office Admin Applications**

1. Using the **Add or Remove Programs** option in the Windows Control Panel, check that the PC does not already have a version of the IP Office Admin suite installed.
  - If 'yes' and the suite is a pre-IP Office 3.2 version, remove the existing IP Office Admin suite via **Add/Remove Programs**.
  - If the existing suite is IP Office 3.2 or higher, it is possible to upgrade without removing the previous installation.
2. Insert the IP Office Administrator Applications CD. The installation process should auto start. If it does not auto start, open the CD contents and double-click **setup.exe**.
3. Select the language you want to use for the installation process. This does not affect the language used by Manager which will attempt to match your Windows regional setting. Click **Next >**.
4. Select whether only the current Windows logon account should be able to run the Admin Suite applications or whether they will be available to all users of the PC. Click **Next >**.
  - The previous selection does not affect the IP Office Feature key server application, if installed. That application runs as a service whenever the PC is running.
5. If required select the destination to which the applications should be installed. We recommend that you accept the default destination. Click **Next >**.
6. The next screen is used to select which applications in the suite should be installed. Clicking on each will display a description of the application. Click on the ▼ next to each application to change the installation selection. When you have selected the installations required, click **Next >**.



- a. For IP Office system installations, ensure that at minimum **System Monitor** and **Manager** are selected.
  - b. Only select **Voice Mail Lite** if this PC will also be the customer's Voicemail Lite server PC.
  - c. Deselect **Feature Key Server** unless this PC will be hosting a Parallel port or USB port Feature Key dongle for the customer's IP Office system.
7. Click **Install**.
  8. Installation of Windows .Net2 components may be required. If dialogs for this appear, follow the prompts to install .Net.
  9. If requested, reboot the PC.

## Default Control Unit Power Up (SOE)

This procedure starts a new IP Office control unit without the unit being connected to any LAN. In this scenario the IP Office control unit will assume its default configuration settings.

 **Objective** - To power up the IP Office control unit to a known state with a known set of defaults.

### Parts and Equipment Required

1.  **Switched power outlet socket.**
2.  **IP Office Control Unit.**
3.  **Locale Specific Power Cord.**

### Procedure

1. Remove the control unit from its box and check its condition.
2. Connect the external power supply unit to the control unit.
3. Connect the power cord from the power supply outlet to the external power supply unit.
  - Power cords must not be attached to the building surface or run through walls, ceilings, floors and similar openings. Installation measures must be taken to prevent physical damage to the power supply cord, including proper routing of the power supply cord and provision of a socket outlet near the fixed equipment or positioning of the equipment near a socket outlet.
4. Switch on power to the control unit.
5. Observe the center LED on the far-right of the front of the Small Office Edition control unit. Initially this LED will be red. After approximately 10 seconds it should change to green. During this time other LED's may flash as the unit goes through its power on self test cycle.

### IP Office Default Settings

The following are the basic default configuration settings for an IP Office system.

System	Name		MAC address of the control unit.	
		<b>System Password</b>	password	
		<b>License Server IP Address</b>	255.255.255.255	
LAN1		LAN1	LAN2/WAN	
		<b>IP address</b>	192.168.42.1.	192.168.43.1
		<b>IP Mask</b>	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
		<b>DHCP Mode</b>	Server	Server
		<b>No of DHCP IP Addresses</b>	200.	200.

- **Extensions and Users**  
A user is automatically created for each physical extension port detected in the system. Users are assigned extension numbers starting from 201. User names take the form Extn201, Extn202, ....
- **Hunt Group**  
A single hunt group 200 called **Main** is created and the first 10 users are placed into that hunt group as members.
- **Incoming Call Routes**  
Two default incoming call routes are created. Voice calls are routed to the hunt group **Main**. Data calls are routed to the RAS user **Dialln**.

## Connecting the Manager PC

At this stage we will directly connect the Manager PC to the new IP Office control unit. For this the PC will need to be set to a fixed IP address in the same subnet range as the IP Office control unit's default address (192.168.42.1/255.255.255.255).

 **Objective** - Physically connecting the Manager PC and the IP Office without needing to adjust or configure any intervening equipment.

### Parts and Equipment Required

1.  **Manager PC.**
2.  **LAN Cable.**
  - IP Office Small Office Edition, IP406 V2 and IP500 control units: A standard RJ45-RJ45 LAN cable can be used.
  - IP412 Control Unit: A RJ45-RJ45 cross-over LAN cable is required.

1.  
2.  
3.

### Procedure: Direct Connection to a Defaulted IP Office Control Unit

1. Check that the TCP/IP properties for the Manager PC's Local Area Network connection are set as follow:
  - Fixed IP address: 192.168.42.203
  - Subnet mask: 255.255.255.255
  - Default gateway: 192.168.42.1.
2. Connect the LAN cable from the PC's LAN port the LAN 1 port on the IP Office control unit.
3. Check that the orange LED lamp on the IP Office LAN port is on. The green LED may also be flickering as it indicates traffic across the LAN connection.
4. Select **Start | Run** and enter **cmd**.
5. In the command window that appears enter **ping 192.168.42.1**. The results should show a number of ping replies from the IP Office. This confirms basic communication between the Manager PC and the IP Office.
6. If there are no ping replies
  1. Enter **ipconfig**. The results should list the IP address settings of the Manager PC as required above and with no mention of DHCP being used. Enter exit.
7. Check the cable connection.

## Receiving a Configuration (Pre-3.2)

The following is the normal procedure for receiving a copy of the IP Office configuration from a new or defaulted control unit running pre-3.2 IP Office core software.

 **Objective** - This process tests the communication between the Manager application and the IP Office control unit.

### Information Required

1.  **System Password** - For a new or defaulted system this is *password*.

1.  
2.  
3.

### **Procedure: Receiving the Configuration from a Pre-3.2 IP Office Control Unit**

1. Select **Start | Programs | IP Office | Manager**.
2. Click  in the main toolbar or select **File | Open Configuration** from the menu bar.
3. The **Select IP Office** window appears. After a few seconds it should list the control unit that is being setup. The default name used is the control units MAC address.
  - If the system required was not found, the address used for the search can be changed. Enter or select the required address in the **Unit/Broadcast Address** field and then click **Refresh** to perform a new search.
4. Click the check the box next to the system and then click **OK**.
5. The name and password request is displayed. The name must match a Manager operator and the password must match the IP Office control unit's system password. For a defaulted IP Office with pre-3.2 IP Office software enter **Administrator** and **password**.
  - The name and password used above are applicable to new control units which are supplied with a basic IP Office 2.1 level of software. Once upgraded to IP Office 3.2 the name and password required change.
6. Successful receiving of the configuration is shown by the full configuration tree being shown in the left-hand panel. With no configuration loaded the configuration tree shows just **BOOTP** and **Operator**.

## Checking the System Using System Monitor

Monitor is a tool intended primarily for Avaya technicians and engineers. However it is also able to report the presence of hardware devices that are not reported by the IP Office Manager application and is therefore an important tool during the installation process. This process shows how System Monitor can be used to obtain information about the components installed with the IP Office control unit.

### Objective

To introduce System Monitor so that it can be used during later stages of installation to confirm the correct installation of some components into the control unit.

### Warnings

1. Running Monitor can create a high network load on the IP Office system. Therefore it should only be used when necessary and should be closed when not needed.

### Information Required

1.  **System IP Address** - For a new or defaulted system this will still be **192.168.42.1**.
2.  **System Password** - For a new or defaulted system this is **password**.



## Procedure: Running Monitor

1. Select **Start | Programs | IP Office | Monitor**.
2. If Monitor has been run before it will attempt to connect with the system which is monitored previously. If you want to monitor a different system use the steps below.
3. Select **File** and then **Select Unit**.
4. Enter the **IP Address** and **Password** (see below) of the IP Office control unit you want to monitor.
  - For a new or defaulted control unit the IP address is **192.168.42.1** and the password is **password**.
  - Following installation, the IP Office control unit can be configured with a specific **Monitor Password** for Monitor access to an IP Office system. If the IP Office does not have a **Monitor Password** set, Monitor uses the IP Office's **System Password**.
5. For an IP Office system, ensure that **IP Office** is selected.
6. Click **OK**.
7. The first few lines give information about various aspects of the IP Office system. For example:

```
0ms PRN: Monitor Started IP=192.168.42.203 IP406 DS 3.2(8) IPOffice_1
1ms PRN: LAW=U PRI=0, BRI=0, ALOG=0, ADSL=0, VCOMP=16, MDM=0, WAN=0 MODU=0 LANM=
0, CkSRC=0 VMAIL=1 (VER=2 TYP=1) CALLS=0 (TOT=2)
```

- **LAW** = A or MU law system.
  - **PRI** = PRI channels
  - **BRI** = BRI channels.
  - **ALOG** = Analog Trunks
  - **VCOMP** = VCM channels.
  - **MDM** = Modem channels.
  - **WAN** = WAN Ports configured.
  - **MODU** = Number of external expansion modules.
  - **LANM** = Number of WAN3 Modules attached.
  - **CkSRC** = Current Clock Source (ISDN port number - 0 = Internal Clock Source)
  - **VMAIL** = 1 if connected, 0 if not connected.
  - **VER** = Version of the voicemail server if obtainable.
  - **TYP** = Type of Voicemail Server:  
0= None, 1 = PC (Voicemail Lite or Pro), 2 = Line, 3 = Embedded, 4 = Group, 5 = Audix.
  - **CALLS** = Number of current calls
  - **TOT** = Total number of calls made to date since last IP Office reboot.
8. Close Monitor until it is needed again. When restarted, Monitor will attempt to reconnect using the last settings entered.
  9. For Small Office Edition control units, proceed to **09. Fitting Trunk Cards**. For all other control units proceed to **07. Fitting VCM Cards**.

## Fitting Trunk Cards (SOE)

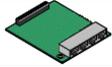
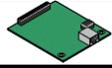
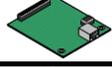
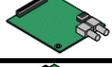
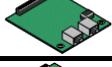
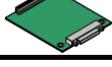
All trunk cards are supplied with 2 plastic snap-in stand off pillars and a blanking plate appropriate to the cards ports. The blanking plate is not required with the Small Office Edition.

### Warnings

1. Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
2. During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.

### Parts and Equipment Required

1.  **Trunk Card or Cards**  
Check that the correct card has been supplied.

IP400 Trunk Cards		SOE
	Analog Trunk Card (ATM4)	✗
	Analog Trunk Card (ATM4U)	✗
	Quad BRI Trunk Card	✓
	Single PRI T1 Trunk Cards	✓
	Single E1 PRI Trunk Cards	✗
	Single E1R2 Trunk Cards	✗
	Dual PRI Trunk Cards	✗
	WAN Port Card	✓

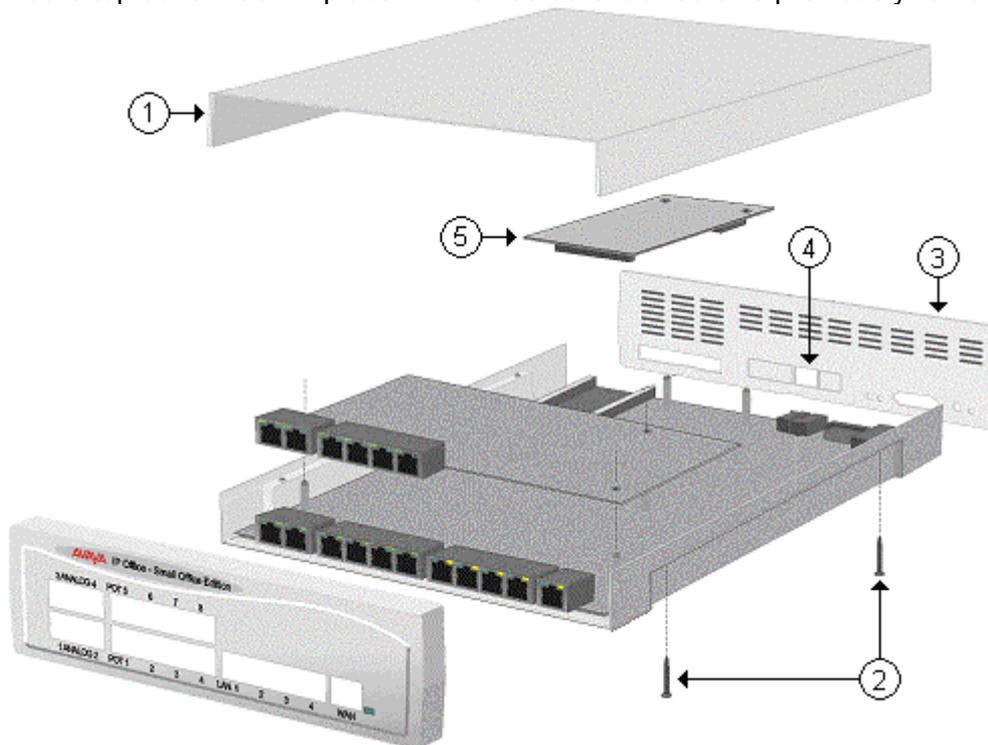
### Tools Required

1.  Cross-head screwdriver.
2.  Anti-static wrist strap and ground point.
3.  IP Office Monitor application.



## Procedure

1. Ensure that you wear an anti-static wrist strap that is connected to a suitable grounding point.
2. Remove the top cover (1) from the base cover by removing the four retaining screws (2) on either side.
3. Remove the rear panel (3).
4. Locate the holes for the two trunk card stand off pillars and insert them.
5. Plug the trunk card (5) onto its sockets and stand-off hex. pillars.
  - If fitting a WAN card, replace the rear panel with the new one supplied with the WAN card.
  - Otherwise, on the rear panel, press out all of the knock-out panels (4) to match the trunk card being fitted.
6. Replace the rear panel.
7. Fit the top cover back in place and reinsert the four screws previously removed.



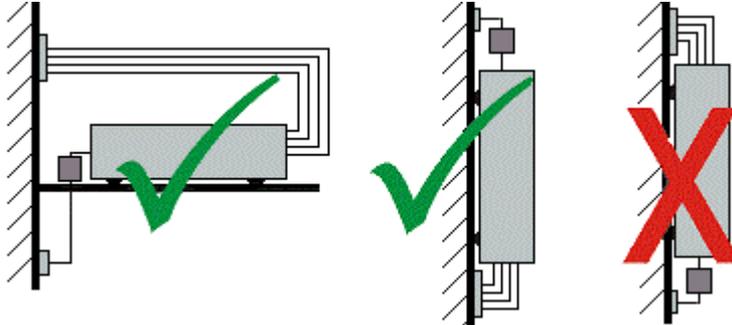
8. Proceed to **Stage 12. Upgrading the Core Software.**

## Shelf/Wall Mounting (SOE)

Small Office Edition control units can be shelf or wall mounted. Four screw head retaining slots are moulded into the base of the unit for this purpose. In addition a plastic Z-shaped bracket and screw is supplied with the unit for securing it in position.

### ⓘ Installation Requirements

- Horizontally on a shelf - leaving sufficient space for the cabling at both front and rear of the unit.
- Vertically from a wall – with the front panel facing down **only**.



- The Z-shaped bracket **must not be used** as the sole mounting fixture.

### 🔧 Tools Required

1.  Drill and drill bits suitable for the wall fixings selected.
2.  Screwdrivers.

### 📦 Parts and Equipment Required

1.  Wall fixings suitable for 3 No.8 screws.
2.  3 x No.8 panhead screws, minimum 25mm long.



## Grounding (SOE)

Use of ground connections reduces the likelihood of problems in most telephony and data systems. This is especially important in buildings where multiple items of equipment are interconnected using long cable runs, for example phone and data networks.

All IP Office control units and external expansion modules must be connected to a functional ground. In some cases, such as ground start trunks, in addition to being a protective measure this is a functional requirement for the equipment to operate. In other cases it may be a locale regulatory requirement and or a necessary protective step, for example areas of high lightning risk.

- **⚠ WARNING**

During installation do not assume that ground points are correctly connected to ground. Test ground points before relying on them to ground connected equipment.

The ground point on IP Office control units and external expansion modules are marked with a  or  symbol. Ground connections to these points should use a 14 AWG solid wire with either a green sleeve for a functional ground or green and yellow sleeve for a protective ground.

- **Additional protective equipment**

In addition to grounding, additional protective equipment will be required in the following situations. Refer to "Out of Building Telephone Installations".

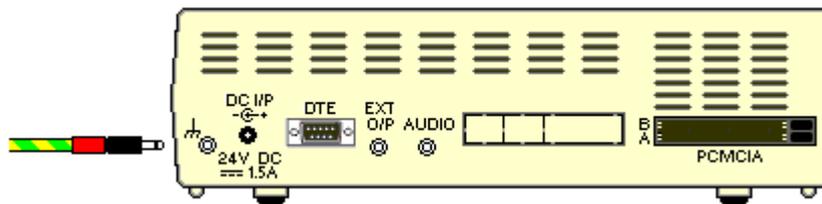
- On any Digital Station or Phones external expansion module connected to an extension located in another building.
- In the Republic of South Africa, on all Analog Trunk external expansion modules (ATM16) and on any control units containing an analog trunk cards (ATM4/ATM4U).

### Parts and Equipment Required

1.  14AWG Solid copper wire for ground connection.
2.  Cable sleeve matching local regulator requirements. Typically green for a functional ground and green/yellow for a protective ground.

### Procedure

On the Small Office Edition control unit, the ground point is provided by a 3.5mm jack socket marked with a  symbol on the left of the rear panel. Ground connections to these points should use a 14 AWG solid wire with either a green sleeve for a functional ground or green and yellow sleeve for a protective ground.



## Upgrading the Core Software (SOE)

The installed IP Office Manager includes .bin core software files appropriate to the software level. It can be used to load those .bin file into the control unit and module within the IP Office system.

### WARNINGS

- **Check IP Office Technical Bulletins**  
Check the latest IP Office Technical Bulletin for the IP Office software release before proceeding any further. It may contain information relating to changes that occurred after this document was completed. Bulletins are available from <http://support.avaya.com>.
- **Upgrading pre-Level 2.1 Systems**  
For IP Office Systems with software Level 2.0 or earlier, the upgrade procedure must be done from a PC with a fixed IP address on the same subnet and LAN segment as the IP Office.
- **Multi-Stage Upgrades**  
Due to the need to adjust internal memory allocation and configuration storage, for certain upgrades some control units need to perform a multi-stage upgrade process. The table below indicates the require upgrade paths.

Control Unit	.bin File	Unvalidated Only	Validated
Small Office Edition	ip401ng.bin	2.0 > 2.1	2.1 > 3.0 > 3.1 > 3.2 > 3.2(999) > 4.1.

- **Multiple Managers**  
If more than one copy of Manager is running it is possible for the IP Office to request BIN files from a different Manager from the one that started the upgrade process. Ensure that only one copy of Manager is running when upgrading an IP Office system.

### Information Required

1.  **System Password.**  
For a new or defaulted system this is *password*.

### Tools Required

1.  **Manager PC.**  
The Upgrade Wizard tool is part of the Manager application.

### Procedure: Upgrade Procedure

1. Using Manager, click  and receive the configuration from the IP Office. If not already done this action creates a **BOOTP** entry in Manager for the IP Office system. This action also confirms communication between the Manager PC and the IP Office.
2. Select **File | Save Configuration As...** and save a copy of the configuration file onto the PC. This action should be completed before upgrading any IP Office system.
3. Select **File | Advanced | Upgrade**.
4. The **UpgradeWiz** is started and scans for IP Office modules using the **Unit/Broadcast address**. Adjust this address and click **Refresh** if the expected modules are not shown.
5. For each the control unit and module found, the **UpgradeWiz** displays the module type, its current version of software installed in the unit and the software version of the .bin file that Manager has available.
6. For those units and modules where manager detects that it has a higher version available, the tick box next to the unit or module is automatically selected.
7. If any of the modules have pre-version 2.1 software installed, untick the **Validate** option.

-  If this is the case, only continue with the upgrade process using a PC with a fixed IP address on the same LAN domain and physical LAN segment as the IP Office control unit.
8. If a multi-stage upgrade is necessary, use the following additional steps to select the appropriate interim software:
    - a. Right-click on the upgrade wizard and click **Select Directory**.
      - **Upgrading a Small Office Edition to level 4.0:**  
Select the **V3\_2\_99** folder within the Manager program directory.
    - b. The upgrade wizard should now list just the control unit as having upgrade software available. For the remainder of the upgrade as detailed below, the upgrade can be rerun again select the final software for the control unit.
  9. For those modules which you want to upgrade, tick the check box. For modules where a later version of software is available the check box may have already been automatically ticked.
  10. Select **Upgrade**.
  11. The system password will be requested. Enter it and click **OK**.
  12. **Validated Upgrade**  
If using the **Validated** option, a number of actions take place as follows;
    2. Firstly the upgrade wizard performs initial checks on the amount of free RAM memory available in the IP Office system to temporarily store the new BIN files during the upgrade process. If insufficient memory is available, you will be prompted whether to continue with an off-line upgrade or cancel upgrading.
      - If offline is selected, the IP Office is rebooted into offline mode. It may be necessary to use the Refresh option within the Upgrade Wizard to reconnect following the reboot. Validate upgrade can then be attempted to again check the amount of available RAM memory for transfer of BIN files. If the memory is still insufficient, the option is offered to either do an unvalidated upgrade or cancel.
    3. The bin files required are transferred to the system and stored in temporary memory.
    4. Once all the files have been transferred, the upgrade wizard will prompt whether it okay to proceed with the upgrade process. Select **Yes** to continue.
    5. Each module being upgraded will delete its existing core software, restart and load the new software file that was transferred. This process may take several minutes for each unit. Do not cancel or close the upgrade wizard while this process is running.
  9. **Unvalidated Upgrade**  
This method of upgrading should be avoided unless absolutely necessary. It is only required for IP Office systems with pre-2.1 software and should only be done from a Manager PC with a fixed IP address running on the same LAN segment and subnet as the IP Office system. During the upgrade the units and modules erases their current software and then request the new software file from Manager.
  10. Following the upgrade check that the upgrade wizard now shows that the selected units and modules have upgraded. It may be necessary to select **Refresh** to update the information in the upgrade wizard display.

## Configuring Security Settings

Currently the system is defaulted, including the security passwords controlling access to the system's security and configuration settings.

 You should read and understand the Security Settings section of the IP Office Manager documentation. That section details the settings and operation of the IP Office security settings and is part of the Manager applications help file.

 **Objective** - Make the control unit configuration settings secure from unauthorized changes by changing the default passwords.

1.   
2.   
3. 

### Procedure

1. Select **Start | Programs | IP Office | Manager**.
2. Select **File | Advanced | Security Settings**.
3. The **Select IP Office** window appears. After a few seconds it should list the control unit that is being setup. The default name used is the control unit's MAC address.
  - If the system required was not found, the address used for the search can be changed. Enter or select the required address in the **Unit/Broadcast Address** field and then click **Refresh** to perform a new search.
4. Click the check the box next to the system and then click **OK**.
5. The name and password request is displayed. As the system has been upgrade to IP Office 3.2 software, the name and password now requested are a Service User name and password stored within the IP Office. The default name and password for security settings access are **security** and **securitypwd**.
6. The Manager should load and display the IP Office control unit's security settings.
7. Select  **General**. On the tab displayed, the **Security Administrator** section contains the default name and password used to access the IP Office's security settings. Click **Change** and set a new password. The default password is **securitypwd**. Click **OK**.
8. Click **OK** to save the changes to that tab.
9. Select  **Rights Groups** and then the **Administrator Group**.
10. Select the **System Status** tab and check that System Status Access is selected. This is required for the System Status Application.
11. Click **OK** to save the changes to that tab.
12. Select  **Service Users**. This tab shows the settings for one of the Service Users who have names and passwords used for access to the configuration settings on the IP Office control unit. Click **Change** and set a new password. The default password matches the name. Click **OK**.
13. Click **OK** to save the changes made on that tab.
14. Click > button to display the settings for the next Service User and repeat the process in the previous two steps to change their password.
15. Click **OK**.
16. The new security settings can now be sent to the IP Office control unit. Click .
17. The original name and password used to load the settings will be requested. Enter the details and click **OK**.

# N. Receiving a Configuration

The process here applies to systems running IP Office 3.2 and higher.

 **Objective** - Receive a configuration from an IP Office running IP Office 3.2 or higher software.

 **Information Required**

1.  **Service User Name and Password**  
The defaults for full configuration access are **Administrator** and **Administrator**. However these should have been changed as part of the installation process, see **16. Configuring Security Settings**.

 **Procedure: Receiving the Configuration**

1. Select **Start | Programs | IP Office | Manager**.
2. Click  in the main toolbar or select **File | Open Configuration** from the menu bar.
3. The **Select IP Office** window appears. After a few seconds it should list the control unit that is being setup. The default name used is the control units MAC address.
  - If the system required was not found, the address used for the search can be changed. Enter or select the required address in the **Unit/Broadcast Address** field and then click **Refresh** to perform a new search.
4. Click the check the box next to the system and then click **OK**.
5. The name and password request is displayed. The name and password must match one of those setup through the security settings. The default name and password for full configuration settings access is **Administrator** and **Administrator**.
6. Successful receiving of the configuration is shown by the full configuration tree being shown in the left-hand panel. With no configuration loaded the navigation pane shows just **BOOTP** and **Operator** entries.

## IP Office Default Settings

The following are the basic default configuration settings for an IP Office system.

<b>System</b>	<b>Name</b>	MAC address of the control unit.	
	<b>System Password</b>	password	
	<b>License Server IP Address</b>	255.255.255.255	
<b>LAN1</b>		LAN1	LAN2/WAN
	<b>IP address</b>	192.168.42.1.	192.168.43.1
	<b>IP Mask</b>	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
	<b>DHCP Mode</b>	Server	Server
	<b>No of DHCP IP Addresses</b>	200.	200.

- **Extensions and Users**  
A user is automatically created for each physical extension port detected in the system. Users are assigned extension numbers starting from 201. User names take the form Extn201, Extn202, ....
- **Hunt Group**  
A single hunt group 200 called **Main** is created and the first 10 users are placed into that hunt group as members.
- **Incoming Call Routes**  
Two default incoming call routes are created. Voice calls are routed to the hunt group **Main**. Data calls are routed to the RAS user **DialIn**.

## Running the System Status Application

In the previous process (Configuring Security Settings) the Administrator service user was configured to be able to use the IP Office System Status Application (SSA) with the control unit. This application is useful during the following installation processes as it can be used to validate the correct installation of equipment.

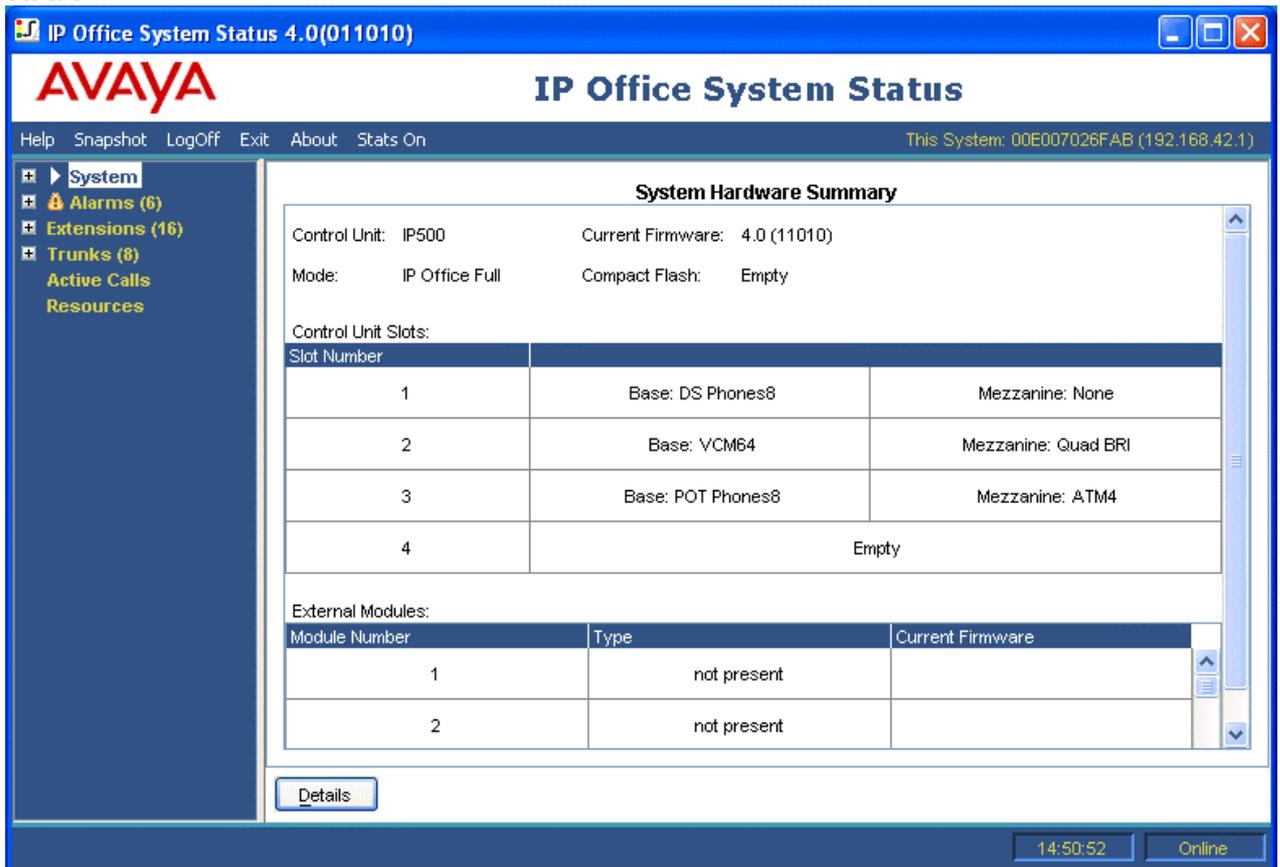
By default the System Status Application is enabled for the Administrator service user. For other service users, use of System Status Application must be enabled through the IP Office's security settings.

 **Objective** - Allow SSA to be used to check the correct installation of additional equipment.

1.   
2.   
3. 

### Procedure

1. Select **Start | Programs | IP Office | System Status**.
2. On the **Logon** menu enter the required details. For a default systems these will be:
  - **Control Unit IP Address:** 192.168.42.1
  - **Services Base TCP Port:** 50804
  - **User Name:** Administrator
  - **Password:** Administrator
3. Click **Logon**.
4. If the details are correct, SSA should show Waiting for connection and then the IP Office system status.



The screenshot shows the AVAYA IP Office System Status application interface. The title bar reads "IP Office System Status 4.0(011010)". The main window has a blue header with the AVAYA logo and the title "IP Office System Status". Below the header is a menu bar with "Help", "Snapshot", "LogOff", "Exit", "About", and "Stats On". The status bar on the right indicates "This System: 00E007026FAB (192.168.42.1)".

The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with the following items: System (selected), Alarms (6), Extensions (16), Trunks (8), Active Calls, and Resources.

The main content area displays the "System Hardware Summary" section. It includes the following information:

- Control Unit: IP500
- Current Firmware: 4.0 (11010)
- Mode: IP Office Full
- Compact Flash: Empty

Below this, there is a section for "Control Unit Slots" with a table:

Slot Number	Base	Mezzanine
1	Base: DS Phones8	Mezzanine: None
2	Base: VCM64	Mezzanine: Quad BRI
3	Base: POT Phones8	Mezzanine: ATM4
4	Empty	

Below the slots table, there is a section for "External Modules" with a table:

Module Number	Type	Current Firmware
1	not present	
2	not present	

At the bottom of the main content area, there is a "Details" button. The system status bar at the bottom right shows the time "14:50:52" and the status "Online".



---

# D. IP400 Basic Installation

---

## IP400 Installation

1. Unpacking
2. Installing the Admin Applications
3. Control Unit Power Up
4. Connecting the Manager PC
5. Receiving a Configuration
6. Using Monitor
7. Fitting VCM Cards
8. Fitting Modem Cards
9. Fitting Trunk Cards
10. Module Rack Mounting
11. Adding Expansion Modules
12. Adding a WAN3 Module
13. Grounding
14. Upgrading the Core Software
15. Configuring Security Settings
16. Receiving a Configuration (3.2)
17. Running System Status Application

# Unpacking

Use the following procedure when unpacking any equipment supplied by Avaya or an Avaya distributor.

 **Objective** - To check that the correct equipment has been supplied and that no damage has occurred during transit.

## Information Required

1.  **Equipment Checklist.**

Draw up an installation checklist of the parts and equipment expected.

1.   
2.   
3.

## Procedure

1.  **Check for Package Damage.**

Before unpacking any equipment, check for any signs of damage that may have occurred during transit. If any damage exists bring it to the attention of the carrier.

2.  **Check the Correct Parts Have Been Delivered.**

Check all cartons against the packing slip and ensure that you have the correct items. Report any errors or omissions to the equipment supplier.

3.  **Retain All Packaging and Documentation.**

While unpacking the equipment, retain all the packaging material. Fault returns are accepted only if repackaged in the original packaging. If performing a staged installation, the original packaging will also assist when repacking equipment to be moved to the final install site.

4.  **Ensure that Anti-Static Protection Measures are Observed**

Ensure that anti-static protection measures are observed at all times when handling equipment with exposed electrical circuit boards.

5.  **Check All Parts.**

Visually inspect each item and check that all the necessary documentation and accessory items have been included. Report any errors or omissions to the dealer who supplied the equipment.

6.  **Check All Documentation.**

Ensure that you read and retain any documentation included with any items.

## Installing the Admin Applications

This procedure covers installation of applications in the IP Office Admin suite.

 **Objective** - To install the applications necessary for the installation and maintenance of an IP Office system.

### Information Required

#### 1. Which IP Office Admin Suite applications are being installed?

The following list indicates those that are required for installation and configuration:

- **System Monitor - Install**  
Monitor is a tool intended primarily for Avaya technicians and engineers. However it is able to report on all aspects of IP Office operation and is therefore an important tool for diagnostics.
- **Feature Key Server - Optional**  
The Feature Key Server should only be installed if the PC will host the parallel port or USB port Feature Key dongle for the IP Office system.
- **Manager - Install**  
This application is required to edit and manage the software on the IP Office system.
- **Voicemail Mail Lite - Optional**  
Only install this application if no other voicemail such as Voicemail Pro or embedded voicemail is being installed. IP Office Lite is not supported by IP500 systems running in IP Office Standard Edition mode.
- **System Status Application - Install**  
This application is used with IP Office 4.0 systems to show equipment and resource within the system, alarms and calls in progress.
- **Previous System Monitor - IP400 Install/IP500 Optional**  
For IP400 control unit this version of monitor is required until the system is upgraded to IP Office 4.0 software.
- **Call Status - Optional**  
This application is only supported for pre-4.0 IP Office systems. For IP Office 4.0 and higher it has been replaced by the System Status Application above.

### Parts Required

#### 1. IP Office Administrator Applications CD.

#### 2. Windows PC

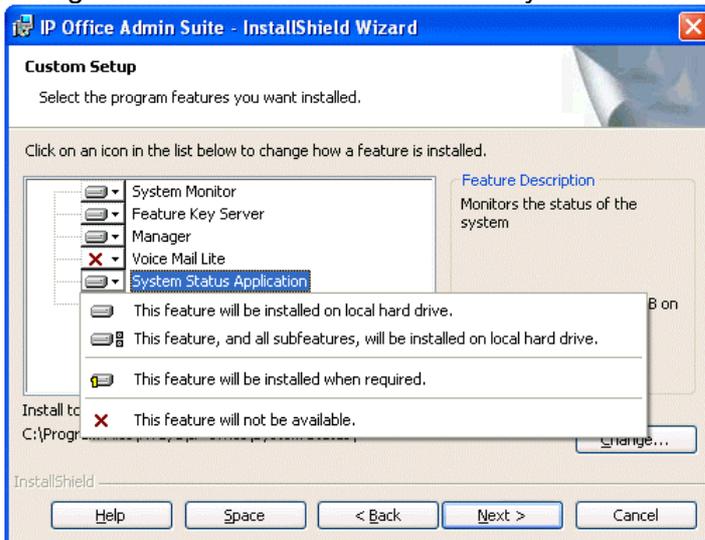
This should meet the requirements of the administrator applications being installed. If a server PC from the customer installation is available, for example for Voicemail Pro, use that PC. The specification below is just for IP Office Manager. If other applications are to be installed on the PC then their requirements should also be met.

Requirement	Minimum	Recommended
<b>Processor</b>	600MHz Pentium or AMD Opteron, AMD Athlon64, AMD Athlon XP.	800MHz Pentium or AMD Opteron, AMD Athlon64, AMD Athlon XP.
<b>RAM</b>	128MB	256MB
<b>HD Space</b>	1GB - 800MB for .NET2, 200MB for Manager.	1.4GB - 800MB for .NET2, 600MB for the full IP Office Admin suite.
<b>Display</b>	800 x 600 - 256 Colors	1024 x 768 - 16-bit High Color
<b>Operating System</b>	Windows XP Professional with SP2. Windows 2000 Professional with SP4. Windows 2000 Server with SP4. Windows 2003 Server. Windows 2003 SBS. Note: 64-bit versions of the operating systems above are not supported.	



**Procedure: Installing the IP Office Admin Applications**

1. Using the **Add or Remove Programs** option in the Windows Control Panel, check that the PC does not already have a version of the IP Office Admin suite installed.
  - If 'yes' and the suite is a pre-IP Office 3.2 version, remove the existing IP Office Admin suite via **Add/Remove Programs**.
  - If the existing suite is IP Office 3.2 or higher, it is possible to upgrade without removing the previous installation.
2. Insert the IP Office Administrator Applications CD. The installation process should auto start. If it does not auto start, open the CD contents and double-click **setup.exe**.
3. Select the language you want to use for the installation process. This does not affect the language used by Manager which will attempt to match your Windows regional setting. Click **Next >**.
4. Select whether only the current Windows logon account should be able to run the Admin Suite applications or whether they will be available to all users of the PC. Click **Next >**.
  - The previous selection does not affect the IP Office Feature key server application, if installed. That application runs as a service whenever the PC is running.
5. If required select the destination to which the applications should be installed. We recommend that you accept the default destination. Click **Next >**.
6. The next screen is used to select which applications in the suite should be installed. Clicking on each will display a description of the application. Click on the ▼ next to each application to change the installation selection. When you have selected the installations required, click **Next >**.



- a. For IP Office system installations, ensure that at minimum **System Monitor** and **Manager** are selected.
  - b. Only select **Voice Mail Lite** if this PC will also be the customer's Voicemail Lite server PC.
  - c. Deselect **Feature Key Server** unless this PC will be hosting a Parallel port or USB port Feature Key dongle for the customer's IP Office system.
7. Click **Install**.
  8. Installation of Windows .Net2 components may be required. If dialogs for this appear, follow the prompts to install .Net.
  9. If requested, reboot the PC.

## Control Unit Power Up

This procedure starts a new IP Office control unit without the unit being connected to any LAN. In this scenario the IP Office control unit will assume its default configuration settings.

 **Objective** - To power up the IP Office control unit to a known state with a known set of defaults.

### Parts and Equipment Required

1.  **Switched power outlet socket.**
2.  **IP Office Control Unit.**
3.  **Locale Specific Power Cord.**

1.   
2.   
3. 

### Procedure

1. Remove the control unit from its box and check its condition. Check that an external power supply unit has been included with the control unit.
2. Connect the external power supply unit to the control unit.
3. Connect the power cord from the power supply outlet to the external power supply unit.
  - Power cords must not be attached to the building surface or run through walls, ceilings, floors and similar openings. Installation measures must be taken to prevent physical damage to the power supply cord, including proper routing of the power supply cord and provision of a socket outlet near the fixed equipment or positioning of the equipment near a socket outlet.
4. Switch on power to the control unit.
5. Observe the center LED on the front of the control unit. Initially this LED will be red. After approximately 10 seconds it should change to green. During this time other LED's may flash as the unit goes through its power on self test cycle.

### IP Office Default Settings

The following are the basic default configuration settings for an IP Office system.

System	Name	MAC address of the control unit.	
	System Password	password	
	License Server IP Address	255.255.255.255	
LAN1		LAN1	LAN2/WAN
	IP address	192.168.42.1.	192.168.43.1
	IP Mask	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
	DHCP Mode	Server	Server
	No of DHCP IP Addresses	200.	200.

- **Extensions and Users**  
A user is automatically created for each physical extension port detected in the system. Users are assigned extension numbers starting from 201. User names take the form Extn201, Extn202, ....
- **Hunt Group**  
A single hunt group 200 called *Main* is created and the first 10 users are placed into that hunt group as members.
- **Incoming Call Routes**  
Two default incoming call routes are created. Voice calls are routed to the hunt group *Main*. Data calls are routed to the RAS user *Dialln*.

## Connecting the Manager PC

At this stage we will directly connect the Manager PC to the new IP Office control unit. For this the PC will need to be set to a fixed IP address in the same subnet range as the IP Office control unit's default address (192.168.42.1/255.255.255.255).

 **Objective** - Physically connecting the Manager PC and the IP Office without needing to adjust or configure any intervening equipment.

### Parts and Equipment Required

1.  **Manager PC.**
2.  **LAN Cable.**
  - IP Office Small Office Edition, IP406 V2 and IP500 control units: A standard RJ45-RJ45 LAN cable can be used.
  - IP412 Control Unit: A RJ45-RJ45 cross-over LAN cable is required.

1.   
2.   
3. 

### Procedure: Direct Connection to a Defaulted IP Office Control Unit

1. Check that the TCP/IP properties for the Manager PC's Local Area Network connection are set as follow:
  - Fixed IP address: 192.168.42.203
  - Subnet mask: 255.255.255.255
  - Default gateway: 192.168.42.1.
2. Connect the LAN cable from the PC's LAN port the LAN 1 port on the IP Office control unit.
3. Check that the orange LED lamp on the IP Office LAN port is on. The green LED may also be flickering as it indicates traffic across the LAN connection.
4. Select **Start | Run** and enter **cmd**.
5. In the command window that appears enter **ping 192.168.42.1**. The results should show a number of ping replies from the IP Office. This confirms basic communication between the Manager PC and the IP Office.
6. If there are no ping replies
  1. Enter **ipconfig**. The results should list the IP address settings of the Manager PC as required above and with no mention of DHCP being used. Enter exit.
7. Check the cable connection.

## Receiving a Configuration (Pre-3.2)

The following is the normal procedure for receiving a copy of the IP Office configuration from a new or defaulted control unit running pre-3.2 IP Office core software.

 **Objective** - This process tests the communication between the Manager application and the IP Office control unit.

### Information Required

1.  **System Password** - For a new or defaulted system this is *password*.

1.  
2.  
3.

### **Procedure: Receiving the Configuration from a Pre-3.2 IP Office Control Unit**

1. Select **Start | Programs | IP Office | Manager**.
2. Click  in the main toolbar or select **File | Open Configuration** from the menu bar.
3. The **Select IP Office** window appears. After a few seconds it should list the control unit that is being setup. The default name used is the control units MAC address.
  - If the system required was not found, the address used for the search can be changed. Enter or select the required address in the **Unit/Broadcast Address** field and then click **Refresh** to perform a new search.
4. Click the check the box next to the system and then click **OK**.
5. The name and password request is displayed. The name must match a Manager operator and the password must match the IP Office control unit's system password. For a defaulted IP Office with pre-3.2 IP Office software enter **Administrator** and **password**.
  - The name and password used above are applicable to new control units which are supplied with a basic IP Office 2.1 level of software. Once upgraded to IP Office 3.2 the name and password required change.
6. Successful receiving of the configuration is shown by the full configuration tree being shown in the left-hand panel. With no configuration loaded the configuration tree shows just **BOOTP** and **Operator**.

## Checking the System Using System Monitor

Monitor is a tool intended primarily for Avaya technicians and engineers. However it is also able to report the presence of hardware devices that are not reported by the IP Office Manager application and is therefore an important tool during the installation process. This process shows how System Monitor can be used to obtain information about the components installed with the IP Office control unit.

### Objective

To introduce System Monitor so that it can be used during later stages of installation to confirm the correct installation of some components into the control unit.

### Warnings

1. Running Monitor can create a high network load on the IP Office system. Therefore it should only be used when necessary and should be closed when not needed.

### Information Required

1.  **System IP Address** - For a new or defaulted system this will still be **192.168.42.1**.
2.  **System Password** - For a new or defaulted system this is **password**.



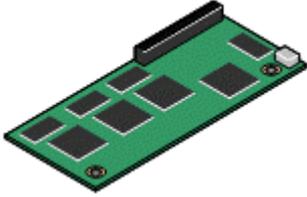
## Procedure: Running Monitor

1. Select **Start | Programs | IP Office | Monitor**.
2. If Monitor has been run before it will attempt to connect with the system which is monitored previously. If you want to monitor a different system use the steps below.
3. Select **File** and then **Select Unit**.
4. Enter the **IP Address** and **Password** (see below) of the IP Office control unit you want to monitor.
  - For a new or defaulted control unit the IP address is **192.168.42.1** and the password is **password**.
  - Following installation, the IP Office control unit can be configured with a specific **Monitor Password** for Monitor access to an IP Office system. If the IP Office does not have a **Monitor Password** set, Monitor uses the IP Office's **System Password**.
5. For an IP Office system, ensure that **IP Office** is selected.
6. Click **OK**.
7. The first few lines give information about various aspects of the IP Office system. For example:

```
0ms PRN: Monitor Started IP=192.168.42.203 IP406 DS 3.2(8) IPOffice_1
1ms PRN: LAW=U PRI=0, BRI=0, ALOG=0, ADSL=0, VCOMP=16, MDM=0, WAN=0 MODU=0 LANM=
0, CkSRC=0 VMAIL=1 (VER=2 TYP=1) CALLS=0 (TOT=2)
```

- **LAW** = A or MU law system.
  - **PRI** = PRI channels
  - **BRI** = BRI channels.
  - **ALOG** = Analog Trunks
  - **VCOMP** = VCM channels.
  - **MDM** = Modem channels.
  - **WAN** = WAN Ports configured.
  - **MODU** = Number of external expansion modules.
  - **LANM** = Number of WAN3 Modules attached.
  - **CkSRC** = Current Clock Source (ISDN port number - 0 = Internal Clock Source)
  - **VMAIL** = 1 if connected, 0 if not connected.
  - **VER** = Version of the voicemail server if obtainable.
  - **TYP** = Type of Voicemail Server:  
0= None, 1 = PC (Voicemail Lite or Pro), 2 = Line, 3 = Embedded, 4 = Group, 5 = Audix.
  - **CALLS** = Number of current calls
  - **TOT** = Total number of calls made to date since last IP Office reboot.
8. Close Monitor until it is needed again. When restarted, Monitor will attempt to reconnect using the last settings entered.
  9. For Small Office Edition control units, proceed to **09. Fitting Trunk Cards**. For all other control units proceed to **07. Fitting VCM Cards**.

## Fitting VCM Cards



VCM cards are used to provide voice compression channels for calls between IP and non-IP devices, devices being both trunks and extensions. VCM cards with differing numbers of voice compression channels are available.

 **Objective** - To fit the card and confirm its presence after restarting the IP Office.

### Warnings

1. Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
2. During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.

### Parts and Equipment Required

1.  **VCM Card.**

Check that the correct card has been supplied. The number and maximum capacity supported varies between different IP Office control units. All cards are supplied with 2 plastic snap-in stand off pillars.

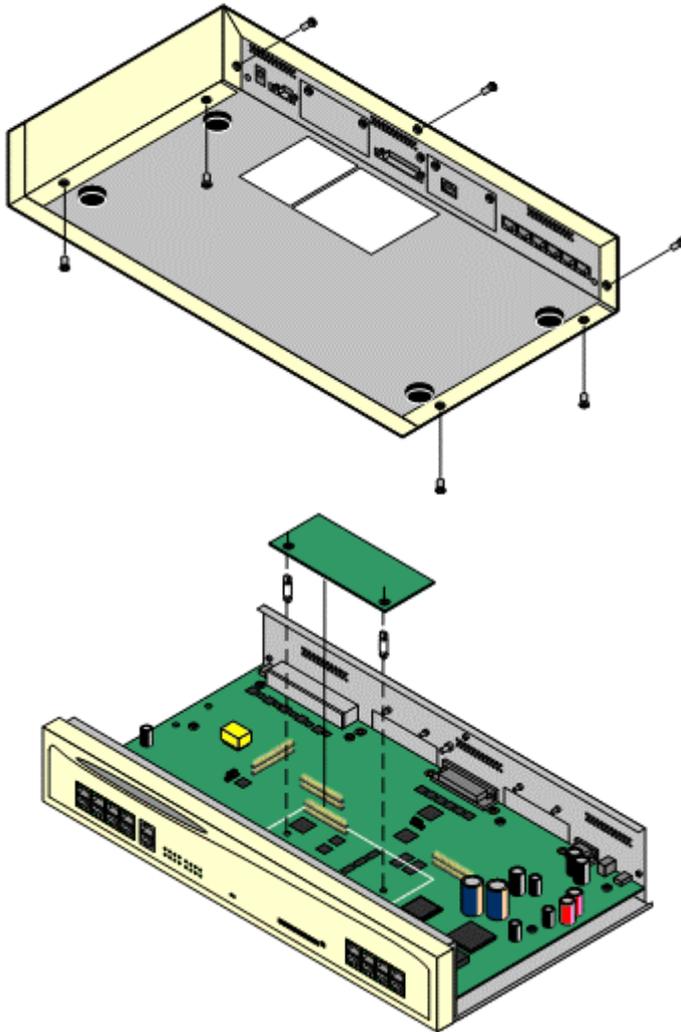
VCM Cards	SAP Code	IP406 V2	IP412
Voice Compression Modules (25ms echo cancellation)	VCM5	700185119	✓
	VCM10	700185127	✓
	VCM20	700185135	✓
	VCM30	700293939	✓
Voice Compression Modules (64ms echo cancellation)	VCM4	700359854	✓
	VCM8	700359862	✓
	VCM16	700359870	✓
	VCM24	700359888	✓
Number of VCM cards.		1	2
Maximum number of channels.		30	60

### Tools Required.

1.  **Cross-head screwdriver.**
2.  **Anti-static wrist strap and ground point.**
3.  **IP Office Monitor application.**



## Procedure: Installing VCM Cards



1. Check that correct card has been supplied.
2. Ensure that you are wearing an anti-static wrist strap connected to a suitable ground point.
3. Remove the 7 screws fixing the IP Office control unit cover and slide the cover off the control unit.
4. Locate the position for the card and its jumper block.
5. Using the card as a template locate the two holes in the control unit circuit board. Insert the stand off pillars into these holes. For the IP412 either slot can be used in any order.



6. Using minimal force and checking that the pins are correctly located, push the card onto the jumper block and stand off pillars.
7. If other cards are being fitted, proceed to **08. Fitting Modem Cards**.
8. Slide the control unit cover back on and replace the cover screws.
9. Reapply power to the control unit and check that it restarts correctly.
10. Using the IP Office Monitor application, confirm that the correct number of voice compression channels are reported. They are shown by the value **VCOMP=** at the start of the Monitor trace.

## Fitting Modem Cards



 **Objective** - To fit and verify the presence of a modem card.

### Warnings

1. Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
2. During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.

### Parts and Equipment Required

1.  **Modem Card**

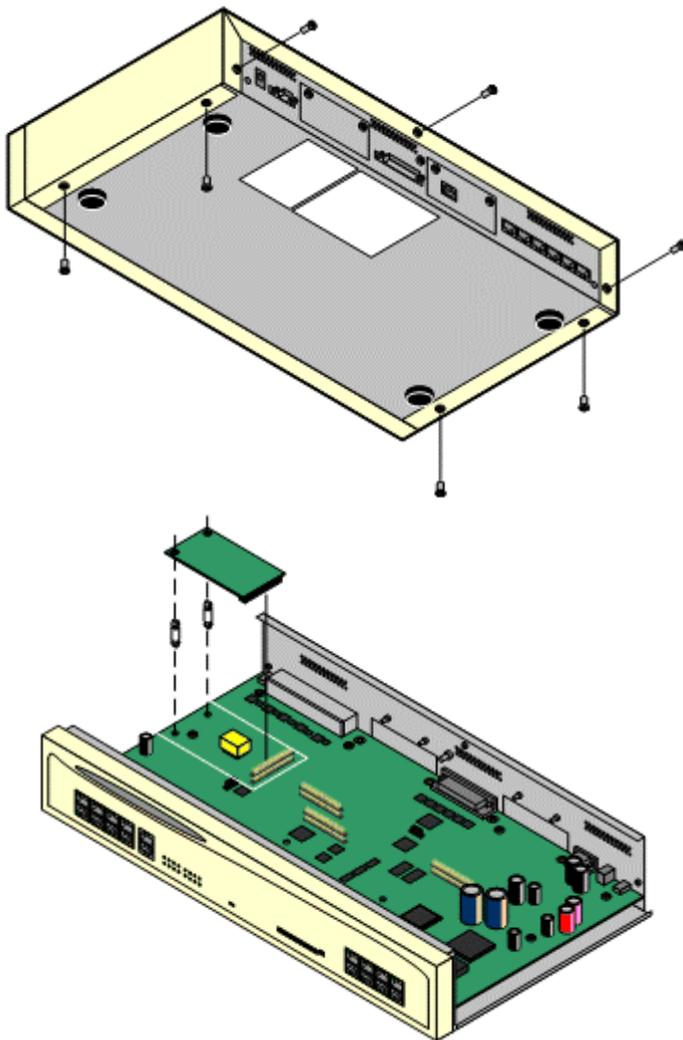
Check that the correct card has been supplied. The number and maximum capacity supported varies between different IP Office control units. All cards are supplied with 2 plastic snap-in stand off pillars.

Modem Cards	SAP Code	IP406 V2	IP412
<b>Internal Modem Card/Modem 12</b> - Provides 12 V.90 modem channels.	700343452	✓	✓
<b>Modem 2 Card</b> - Provides 2 V.90 modem channels.	700185226	✓	✓

### Tools Required

1.  **Cross-head screwdriver.**
2.  **Anti-static wrist strap and ground point.**
3.  **IP Office Monitor application.**

1. Procedure: Installing Modem Cards



1. Check that correct card has been supplied.
  2. Ensure that you are wearing a anti-static wrist strap connected to a suitable ground point.
  3. Remove the 7 screws fixing the IP Office control unit cover and slide the cover off the unit.
  4. Locate the position for the card and its jumper block.
  5. Using the card as a template locate the two holes in the control unit circuit board. Insert the stand off pillars into these holes.
- IP406 V2, IP412**
6. Using minimal force and checking that the pins are correctly located, push the card onto the jumper block and stand off pillars.
  7. If other cards are being fitted, proceed to **09. Fitting Trunk Cards.**
  8. Slide the control unit cover back on and replace the cover screws.
  9. Reapply power to the control unit and check that it restarts correctly.
  10. Using the IP Office Monitor application, confirm that the correct number of modem channels are now reported. They are shown by the value **MDM=** when Monitor first connects to the control unit.

## Fitting Trunk Interface Cards

All trunk cards are supplied with 2 plastic snap-in stand off pillars and a blanking plate appropriate to the cards ports. E1R2 coaxial trunk cards include additional grounding strap, screws and bolts.

### Warnings

1. Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
2. During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.

### Parts and Equipment Required

#### 1. Trunk Card or Cards

Check that the correct card has been supplied. The number and maximum capacity supported varies between different IP Office control units. All cards are supplied with 2 plastic snap-in stand off pillars.

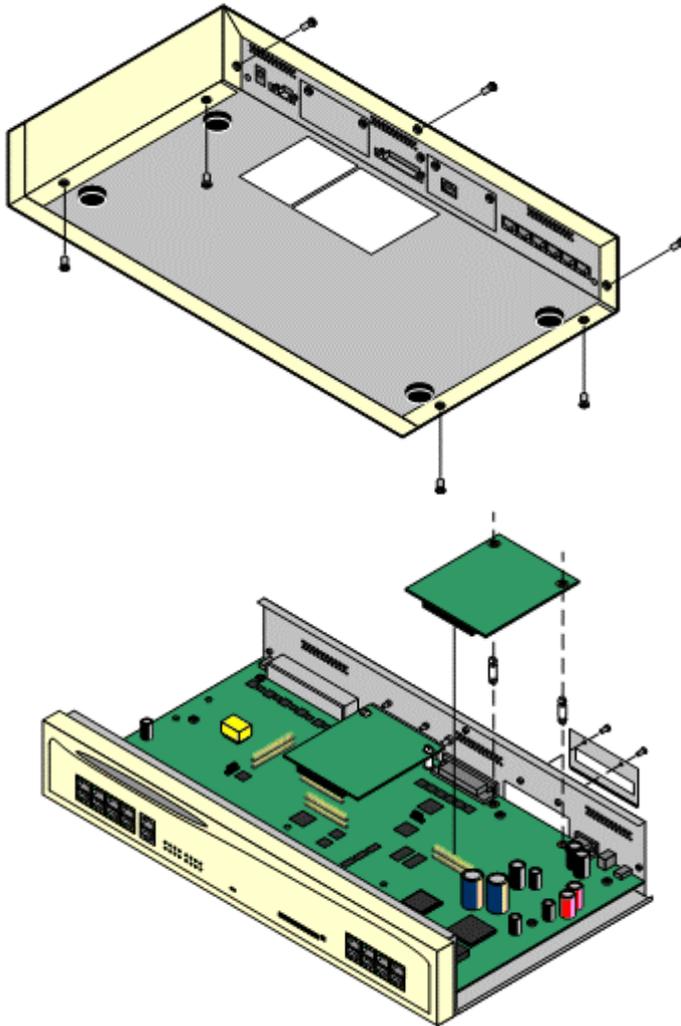
IP400 Trunk Cards	IP406 V2	IP412
Analog Trunk Card (ATM4)	✓	✓
Analog Trunk Card (ATM4U)	✓	✓
Quad BRI Trunk Card	✓	✓
Single PRI T1 Trunk Cards	✓	✓
Single E1 PRI Trunk Cards	✓	✓
Single E1R2 Trunk Cards	✓	✓
Dual PRI Trunk Cards	✓	✓
WAN Port Card	✗	✗

### Tools Required

1.  Cross-head screwdriver.
2.  Anti-static wrist strap and ground point.
3.  IP Office Monitor application.



## Procedure: Fitting Trunk Cards



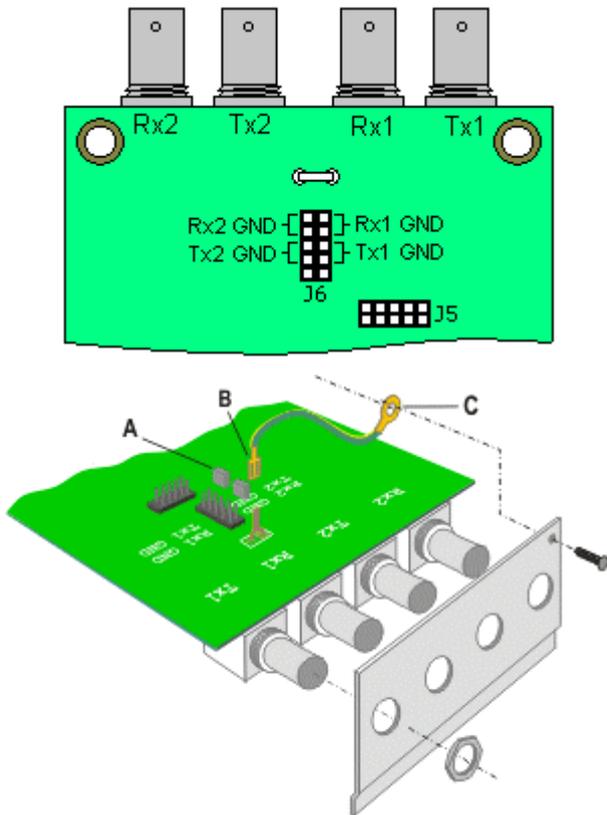
1. Check that correct card has been supplied. Dual PRI cards are only supported in Slot A of the IP406 V2 control unit or both slots on an IP412 control unit.
2. Ensure that you are wearing a ground wrist strap connected to a suitable ground point.
3. Remove the 7 screws fixing the IP Office control unit cover and slide the cover off the unit.
4. Remove the 2 screws fixing the slot blanking plate.
5. Attach the replacement blanking plate.
6. Using the card as a template locate the two holes in the control unit circuit board. Insert the stand off pillars into these holes.
  - Except where otherwise indicated, it is recommended that **Slot B** is used first.
  - The IP406 V2 only supports dual PRI cards in Slot B.
7. Using minimal force and checking that the pins are correctly located, push the card onto the jumper block and stand off pillars.
8. **Coaxial E1R2 Trunk Cards Only:** For these trunk cards care must be taken to ground the connectors. See the following section for details. This must be completed before proceeding any further.
9. Reapply power to the control unit and check that it restarts correctly.
10. Using Manager, receive the IP Office configuration and check that the lines are now shown.
11. If Modem and VCM cards were also fitted whilst the control unit was open, use Monitor to check that the **VCOMP** and **MDM** values match the cards fitted.
12. Proceed to **Stage 10. Adding Expansion Modules**.

## Stage 9b. Grounding E1R2 Coaxial Connections

E1R2 coaxial trunk cards must be grounded correctly and require the IP Office control unit to be connected to a protective ground.

Normally the ends of one connection is grounded. For example, if the exchange Tx1 is grounded, the IP Office Rx1 should also be grounded. However this must be confirmed with the line provider to establish which ends they want grounded.

1. 4  
2. 4  
3. 4  
**Procedure**



1. Use the two jumpers supplied with the card, match the ground selection of the line provider. For example, if the line provider wants the IP Office Rx1 grounded, place a jumper across the two Rx1 pins of jumper block J6.
2. Connect the ground strap spade end (B) to the spade connection on the board.
3. Connect the other end of the ground strap (C) to the blanking plate using the long securing screw supplied with the card.
4. Ensure that the coaxial connector ports are locked to the blanking plate using the nuts provided.
5. Continue with trunk card installation as in **Stage 9a**.

## Rack Mounting Instructions

All IP Office control units and expansion modules except the Small Office Edition can be rack mounted. To do this requires a separate rack mounting kit for each unit and module.

### ⓘ Installation Requirements

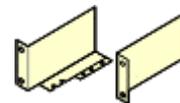
In addition to the existing environmental requirements for an IP Office system, the following additional factors must be considered when rack mounting a unit:

1. **Rack Positioning** - Ensure compliance with the rack manufacturers safety instructions. For example check that the rack legs have been lowered and fixing brackets have been used to stop toppling.
2. **Elevated Operating Ambient** - If installed in a closed or multi-unit rack assembly, the operating ambient temperature of the rack environment may be greater than room ambient. Therefore, consideration should be given to installing the equipment in an environment compatible with the maximum ambient temperature (T<sub>ma</sub>) specified by the manufacturer.
3. **Reduced Air Flow** - Installation of the equipment in a rack should be such that the amount of air flow required for safe operation of the equipment is not compromised. Proper ventilation must be maintained. The side ventilation slots on the IP500 control unit should not be covered or blocked.
4. **Mechanical Loading** - Mounting of the equipment in the rack should be such that a hazardous condition is not achieved due to uneven mechanical loading.
5. **Circuit Overloading** - Consideration should be given to the connection of the equipment to the supply circuit and the effect that overloading of the circuits might have on overcurrent protection and supply wiring. Appropriate consideration of equipment nameplate ratings should be used when addressing this concern.
6. **Reliable Earthing** - Reliable earthing of rack-mounted equipment should be maintained. Particular attention should be given to supply connections other than direct connections to the branch circuit (e.g. use of power strips).

### 📦 Parts and Equipment Required

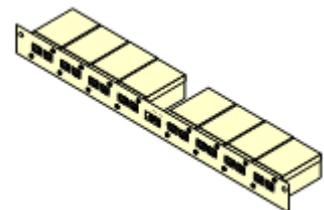
- **Rack Mounting Kit (SAP 700210800)**

This kit contains all the components required for the rack mounting of a single control unit or expansion module. This includes screws for fixing of the brackets to the module and bolts for securing the module in the rack.



- **Barrier Box Rack Mounting Kit (SAP 700293905)**

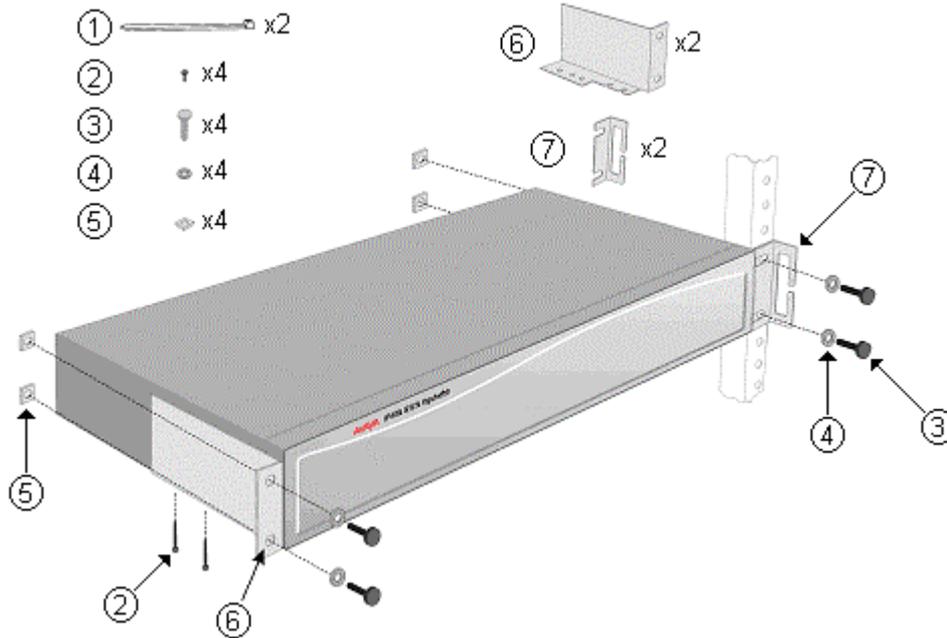
Barrier boxes must be used for out-of-building analog phone extensions. This bracket allows up to 8 IP Office barrier boxes to be rack mounted and simplifies the number of connections to the protective ground point in the rack.



- Must be used when more than 3 Barrier Boxes are in use.
- A maximum of 16 Barrier Boxes are supported on any module.

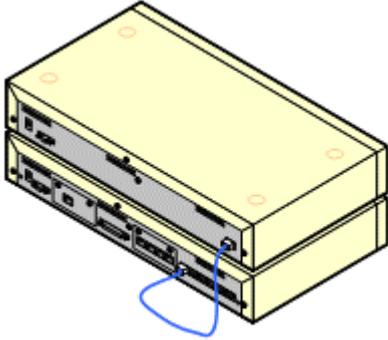
**Procedure: Rack Mounting**

- Using the small screws (2), fix the main brackets (6) to the module.



- Using the nut (5), bolt (3) and washer (4) provided, loosely fit the module into the rack system in its intended position.
- If required, add the cable guide brackets (7) before finally tightening the nuts and bolts.
- If required, connect the module ground points to the rack ground point. This should be done using 14AWG solid wire with either a green sleeve (functional ground) or green and yellow sleeve (protective ground).
- Continue installation and setup as normal.

## Adding Expansion Modules



External expansion modules, except the WAN3, connect to the IP Office control unit using a blue 1 meter (3'3") expansion interconnect cable.

- **Note**

Expansion modules are only detected by the IP Office control unit, if the Expansion modules are powered up and running before the control unit is started. The control unit power on process includes a delay to ensure that if all modules in a system are started at the same time, the expansion modules should complete their power up before the control unit.

Each module is supplied with an expansion connect cable and a power supply unit. An appropriate locale specific power cord for the power supply unit, and cables for the ports on the front of the module must be ordered separately.

### Warnings

- No cable other than an Expansion Interconnect cable should be used. Use of any alternate cable will lead to system failure.

### Installation Requirements

1.  Installation space either on or under the existing IP Office control unit.
2.  Switched power outlet socket.
3.  Free **EXPANSION** port on the rear of the control unit.
4.  **Grounding Requirements**
  1.  **Functional Grounding**  
Connection of a functional ground is:
    - Recommend for all modules.
    - Connection of a functional ground is mandatory for Analog Trunk module.
  2.  **Protective Grounding**  
Connections of a protective ground via surge protection equipment is:
    - Mandatory for Analog trunk modules in the Republic of South Africa.
    - Mandatory for Digital Station and Phone modules connected to out of building extensions.
    - Mandatory for Digital Station V2 and Phone V2 modules.

### Tools Required

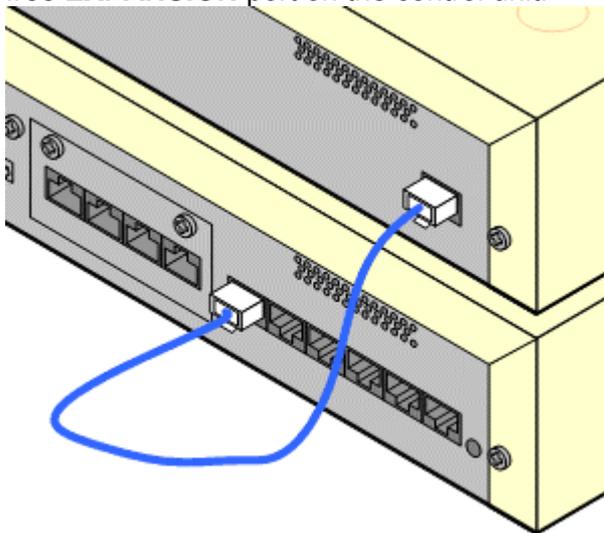
1.  **Manager PC.**
2.  **Tools for rack mounting** (*optional*).

 **Parts and Equipment Required**

1.  **External Expansion Module.**  
Each module is supplied with a suitable external power supply unit and a RJ45-RJ45 expansion interconnect cable.
2.  **Power cord for the power supply unit.**
3.  **Rack mounting kit (optional).**
4.  **Cable labelling tags.**

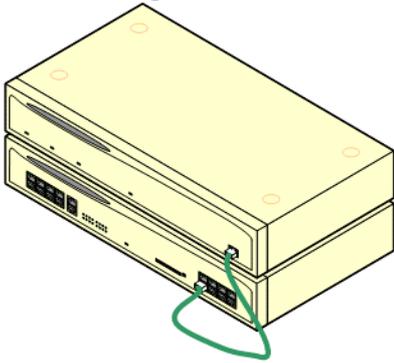
 **Procedure**

1. Switch off power to the IP Office control unit.
2. Attach the external expansion module's power supply.
3. Connect the blue expansion interconnect cable from the module's **EXPANSION** port to the first free **EXPANSION** port on the control unit.



4. Make careful note of the port used and include this detail on the cable label and any other system records.
5. Switch on power to the module. Wait for the center LED on the front of the module to change from red to green.
6. Switch on power to the control unit.
7. Once the control unit has rebooted, using Manager receive the system configuration.
8. Click on  **Unit** in the left-hand panel.
9. Check that the list of units shown in the right-hand panel is correct.
10. Proceed to **12. Adding a WAN3 Module.**

## Adding a WAN3 Module



WAN3 expansion modules connect to the IP Office control unit using a LAN cable. It is preferred that the cable is connected directly to the IP Office control unit rather than via any other equipment. A green 1 meter (3'3") LAN interconnect cable is supplied with the module for this purpose though a replacement cross-over cable is required if connecting to an IP412 control unit.

The WAN3 module requires its own IP address on the same subnet as the IP Office control unit. A WAN3 module obtains that address using DHCP so a DHCP server is required for installation.

This module is supplied with a LAN interconnect cable and a power supply unit. An appropriate locale specific power cord for the power supply unit, and cables for the WAN ports on the rear of the module must be ordered separately.

### Installation Requirements

1.  Installation space either on or under the existing IP Office control unit.
2.  **Switched power outlet socket.**
3.  **System password.**
4.  Free **LAN** port on the front of the control unit.
5.  **Grounding Requirements**
  1.  **Functional Ground** - Connection of a functional ground is recommend for all modules.

### Tools Required

1.  **Manager PC.**
2.  **DHCP server (preferably the IP Office itself).**
3.  **Tools for rack mounting (optional).**

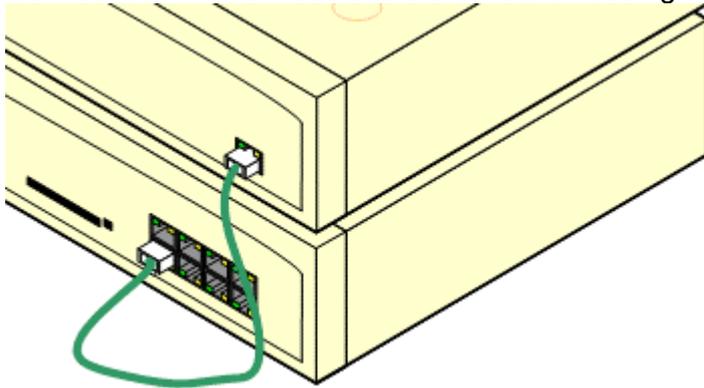
### Parts and Equipment Required

1.  **WAN3 10/100 Module**  
Each module is supplied with a suitable external power supply unit and a RJ45-RJ45 LAN interconnect cable.
2.  For the IP412 control unit an RJ45-RJ45 LAN crossover cable is required.
3.  **WAN Cables.**  
A V.24, V.35 or X.21 WAN cable is required for connection to each WAN port. The cable used determines the signalling provided by that port.
4.  **Power cord for the power supply unit.**
5.  **Rack mounting kit (optional).**
6.  **Cable labeling tags.**



**Procedure: Adding a WAN3 Module**

1. Switch off power to the IP Office control unit.
2. Connect the WAN3 module to the control unit using the LAN cable.



3. Switch on power to the WAN3 10/100 module.
4. Switch on power to the IP Office Control Unit.
5. Using Manager receive the configuration from the IP Office system.
6. Select  **Control Unit**. If the WAN3 10/100 module is not listed, right-click and select **New**. A **Select WAN unit** window appears which will allow the network to be scanned for the WAN3 unit.
7. When the unit is located, select it and then **OK**.
8. Send the configuration back to the IP Office system.

## Grounding (Earthing)

Use of ground connections reduces the likelihood of problems in most telephony and data systems. This is especially important in buildings where multiple items of equipment are interconnected using long cable runs, for example phone and data networks.

All IP Office control units and external expansion modules must be connected to a functional ground. In some cases, such as ground start trunks, in addition to being a protective measure this is a functional requirement for the equipment to operate. In other cases it may be a locale regulatory requirement and or a necessary protective step, for example areas of high lightning risk.

-  **WARNING**

During installation do not assume that ground points are correctly connected to ground. Test ground points before relying on them to ground connected equipment.

The ground point on IP Office control units and external expansion modules are marked with a  or  symbol. Ground connections to these points should use a 14 AWG solid wire with either a green sleeve for a functional ground or green and yellow sleeve for a protective ground.

- **Additional protective equipment**

In addition to grounding, additional protective equipment will be required in the following situations. Refer to "Out of Building Telephone Installations".

- On any Digital Station or Phones external expansion module connected to an extension located in another building.
- In the Republic of South Africa, on all Analog Trunk external expansion modules (ATM16) and on any control units containing an analog trunk cards (ATM4/ATM4U).



### Tools Required

1.  M4 Cross-Head Screwdriver.
2.  Tools suitable for crimping a cable spade.



### Parts and Equipment Required

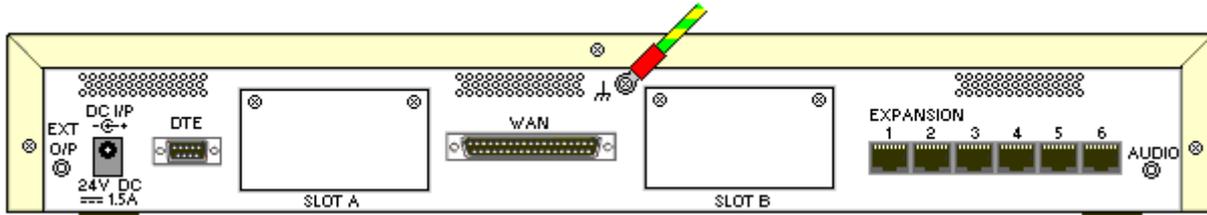
1.  14AWG Solid copper wire for ground connection.
2.  Cable sleeve matching local regulator requirements. Typically green for a functional ground and green/yellow for a protective ground.

1.   
2.   
3.  **Procedure**

The ground point on IP Office control units and expansion modules are marked with a  or  symbol. Ground connections to these points should use a 14 AWG solid wire with either a green sleeve for a functional ground or green and yellow sleeve for a protective ground.

**IP400 Control Units**

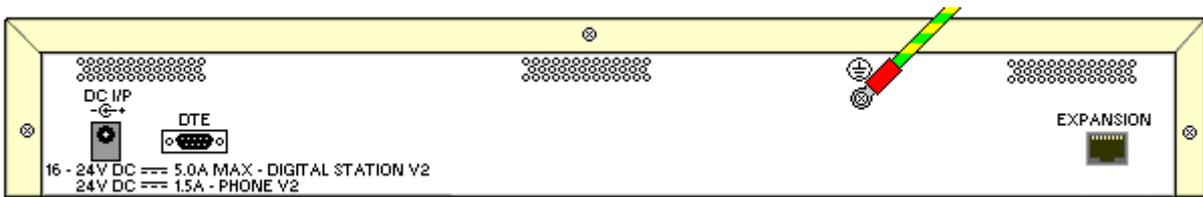
On IP406 V2 and IP412 control units, the ground point is a 4mm screw located adjacent to trunk card **Slot B**.



- On some older units, the dedicated ground point screw is not present. In those cases, the left-hand 3mm fixing screw on the **Slot B** blanking plate can be used as an alternate ground connection point. A toothed washer should be added to ensure good contact.

**Expansion Modules**

On expansion modules, the ground point is a 4mm screw located towards the right on the rear of the module.



- On some older modules, the dedicated ground point screw is not present. In those cases, the top-center cover fixing screw (3mm) can be used as an alternative ground connection point. A toothed washer should be added to ensure good contact.

## Upgrading the Core Software (IP400)

The installed IP Office Manager includes .bin core software files appropriate to the software level. It can be used to load those .bin file into the control unit and module within the IP Office system.

### WARNINGS

- **Check IP Office Technical Bulletins**  
Check the latest IP Office Technical Bulletin for the IP Office software release before proceeding any further. It may contain information relating to changes that occurred after this document was completed. Bulletins are available from <http://support.avaya.com>.
- **WAN3 10/100 Modules**  
Upgrade each WAN3 10/100 module separately and only after having upgraded the control unit and any other expansion modules.
- **Upgrading pre-Level 2.1 Systems**  
For IP Office Systems with software Level 2.0 or earlier, the upgrade procedure must be done from a PC with a fixed IP address on the same subnet and LAN segment as the IP Office.
- **Multi-Stage Upgrades**  
Due to the need to adjust internal memory allocation and configuration storage, for certain upgrades some control units need to perform a multi-stage upgrade process. The table below indicates the require upgrade paths.

Control Unit	.bin File	Unvalidated Only	Validated
IP406 V2	ip406u.bin	–	2.1 > 3.0 > 3.0(999) > 3.1 > 3.1(999) > 3.2 > 4.1.
IP412	ip412.bin	1.3 > 2.1	2.1 > 3.0 > 3.1 > 3.2 > 4.1.

- **Multiple Managers**  
If more than one copy of Manager is running it is possible for the IP Office to request BIN files from a different Manager from the one that started the upgrade process. Ensure that only one copy of Manager is running when upgrading an IP Office system.

### Information Required

1.  **System Password** - For a new or defaulted system this is *password*.

### Tools Required

1.  **Manager PC** - The Upgrade Wizard tool is part of the Manager application.

### Procedure: Upgrade Procedure

1. Using Manager, click  and receive the configuration from the IP Office. If not already done this action creates a **BOOTP** entry in Manager for the IP Office system. This action also confirms communication between the Manager PC and the IP Office.
2. Select **File | Save Configuration As...** and save a copy of the configuration file onto the PC. This action should be completed before upgrading any IP Office system.
3. Select **File | Advanced | Upgrade**.
4. The **UpgradeWiz** is started and scans for IP Office modules using the **Unit/Broadcast address**. Adjust this address and click **Refresh** if the expected modules are not shown.
5. For each the control unit and module found, the **UpgradeWiz** displays the module type, its current version of software installed in the unit and the software version of the .bin file that Manager has available.
6. For those units and modules where manager detects that it has a higher version available, the tick box next to the unit or module is automatically selected.
7. If any of the modules have pre-version 2.1 software installed, untick the **Validate** option.

-  If this is the case, only continue with the upgrade process using a PC with a fixed IP address on the same LAN domain and physical LAN segment as the IP Office control unit.
8. If a multi-stage upgrade is necessary, use the following additional steps to select the appropriate interim software:
    - a. Right-click on the upgrade wizard and click **Select Directory**.
      - **Upgrading an IP406 V2 to level 3.1 or higher:**  
Select the **V3\_0\_99** folder within the Manager program directory.
      - **Upgrading an IP406 V2 to level 3.2 or higher:**  
Select the **V3\_1\_999** folder within the Manager program directory.
    - b. The upgrade wizard should now list just the control unit as having upgrade software available. For the remainder of the upgrade as detailed below, the upgrade can be rerun again select the final software for the control unit.
  9. For those modules which you want to upgrade, tick the check box. For modules where a later version of software is available the check box may have already been automatically ticked. If doing a multistage upgrade, only the control unit is selectable for the first stage.
    - For systems including WAN3 modules, untick the WAN3 modules. Each WAN3 module should be upgraded separately once the control unit and modules in the same system have been upgraded.
  10. Select **Upgrade**.
  11. The system password will be requested. Enter it and click **OK**.
  12. **Validated Upgrade**  
If using the **Validated** option, a number of actions take place as follows;
    1. Firstly the upgrade wizard performs initial checks on the amount of free RAM memory available in the IP Office system to temporarily store the new BIN files during the upgrade process. If insufficient memory is available, you will be prompted whether to continue with an off-line upgrade or cancel upgrading.
      - If offline is selected, the IP Office is rebooted into offline mode. It may be necessary to use the Refresh option within the Upgrade Wizard to reconnect following the reboot. Validate upgrade can then be attempted to again check the amount of available RAM memory for transfer of BIN files. If the memory is still insufficient, the option is offered to either do an unvalidated upgrade or cancel.
    2. The bin files required are transferred to the system and stored in temporary memory.
    3. Once all the files have been transferred, the upgrade wizard will prompt whether it okay to proceed with the upgrade process. Select **Yes** to continue.
    4. Each module being upgraded will delete its existing core software, restart and load the new software file that was transferred. This process may take several minutes for each unit. Do not cancel or close the upgrade wizard while this process is running.
  13. **Unvalidated Upgrade**  
This method of upgrading should be avoided unless absolutely necessary. It is only required for IP Office systems with pre-2.1 software and should only be done from a Manager PC with a fixed IP address running on the same LAN segment and subnet as the IP Office system. During the upgrade the units and modules erases their current software and then request the new software file from Manager.
  14. Following the upgrade check that the upgrade wizard now shows that the selected units and modules have upgraded. It may be necessary to select **Refresh** to update the information in the upgrade wizard display.
  15. Repeat the process as required. For example if doing a multi-stage control unit upgrade or if there are WAN3 modules in the system that are being upgraded separately.
  16. Proceed to **16. Configuring Security Settings**.

## Configuring Security Settings

Currently the system is defaulted, including the security passwords controlling access to the system's security and configuration settings.

 You should read and understand the Security Settings section of the IP Office Manager documentation. That section details the settings and operation of the IP Office security settings and is part of the Manager applications help file.

 **Objective** - Make the control unit configuration settings secure from unauthorized changes by changing the default passwords.

1.   
2.   
3. 

### Procedure

1. Select **Start | Programs | IP Office | Manager**.
2. Select **File | Advanced | Security Settings**.
3. The **Select IP Office** window appears. After a few seconds it should list the control unit that is being setup. The default name used is the control unit's MAC address.
  - If the system required was not found, the address used for the search can be changed. Enter or select the required address in the **Unit/Broadcast Address** field and then click **Refresh** to perform a new search.
4. Click the check the box next to the system and then click **OK**.
5. The name and password request is displayed. As the system has been upgrade to IP Office 3.2 software, the name and password now requested are a Service User name and password stored within the IP Office. The default name and password for security settings access are **security** and **securitypwd**.
6. The Manager should load and display the IP Office control unit's security settings.
7. Select  **General**. On the tab displayed, the **Security Administrator** section contains the default name and password used to access the IP Office's security settings. Click **Change** and set a new password. The default password is **securitypwd**. Click **OK**.
8. Click **OK** to save the changes to that tab.
9. Select  **Rights Groups** and then the **Administrator Group**.
10. Select the **System Status** tab and check that System Status Access is selected. This is required for the System Status Application.
11. Click **OK** to save the changes to that tab.
12. Select  **Service Users**. This tab shows the settings for one of the Service Users who have names and passwords used for access to the configuration settings on the IP Office control unit. Click **Change** and set a new password. The default password matches the name. Click **OK**.
13. Click **OK** to save the changes made on that tab.
14. Click > button to display the settings for the next Service User and repeat the process in the previous two steps to change their password.
15. Click **OK**.
16. The new security settings can now be sent to the IP Office control unit. Click .
17. The original name and password used to load the settings will be requested. Enter the details and click **OK**.

# N. Receiving a Configuration

The process here applies to systems running IP Office 3.2 and higher.

 **Objective** - Receive a configuration from an IP Office running IP Office 3.2 or higher software.

 **Information Required**

1.  **Service User Name and Password**  
The defaults for full configuration access are **Administrator** and **Administrator**. However these should have been changed as part of the installation process, see **16. Configuring Security Settings**.

 **Procedure: Receiving the Configuration**

1. Select **Start | Programs | IP Office | Manager**.
2. Click  in the main toolbar or select **File | Open Configuration** from the menu bar.
3. The **Select IP Office** window appears. After a few seconds it should list the control unit that is being setup. The default name used is the control units MAC address.
  - If the system required was not found, the address used for the search can be changed. Enter or select the required address in the **Unit/Broadcast Address** field and then click **Refresh** to perform a new search.
4. Click the check the box next to the system and then click **OK**.
5. The name and password request is displayed. The name and password must match one of those setup through the security settings. The default name and password for full configuration settings access is **Administrator** and **Administrator**.
6. Successful receiving of the configuration is shown by the full configuration tree being shown in the left-hand panel. With no configuration loaded the navigation pane shows just **BOOTP** and **Operator** entries.

## IP Office Default Settings

The following are the basic default configuration settings for an IP Office system.

<b>System</b>	<b>Name</b>	MAC address of the control unit.	
	<b>System Password</b>	password	
	<b>License Server IP Address</b>	255.255.255.255	
<b>LAN1</b>		LAN1	LAN2/WAN
	<b>IP address</b>	192.168.42.1.	192.168.43.1
	<b>IP Mask</b>	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
	<b>DHCP Mode</b>	Server	Server
	<b>No of DHCP IP Addresses</b>	200.	200.

- **Extensions and Users**  
A user is automatically created for each physical extension port detected in the system. Users are assigned extension numbers starting from 201. User names take the form Extn201, Extn202, ....
- **Hunt Group**  
A single hunt group 200 called **Main** is created and the first 10 users are placed into that hunt group as members.
- **Incoming Call Routes**  
Two default incoming call routes are created. Voice calls are routed to the hunt group **Main**. Data calls are routed to the RAS user **DialIn**.

## Running the System Status Application

In the previous process (Configuring Security Settings) the Administrator service user was configured to be able to use the IP Office System Status Application (SSA) with the control unit. This application is useful during the following installation processes as it can be used to validate the correct installation of equipment.

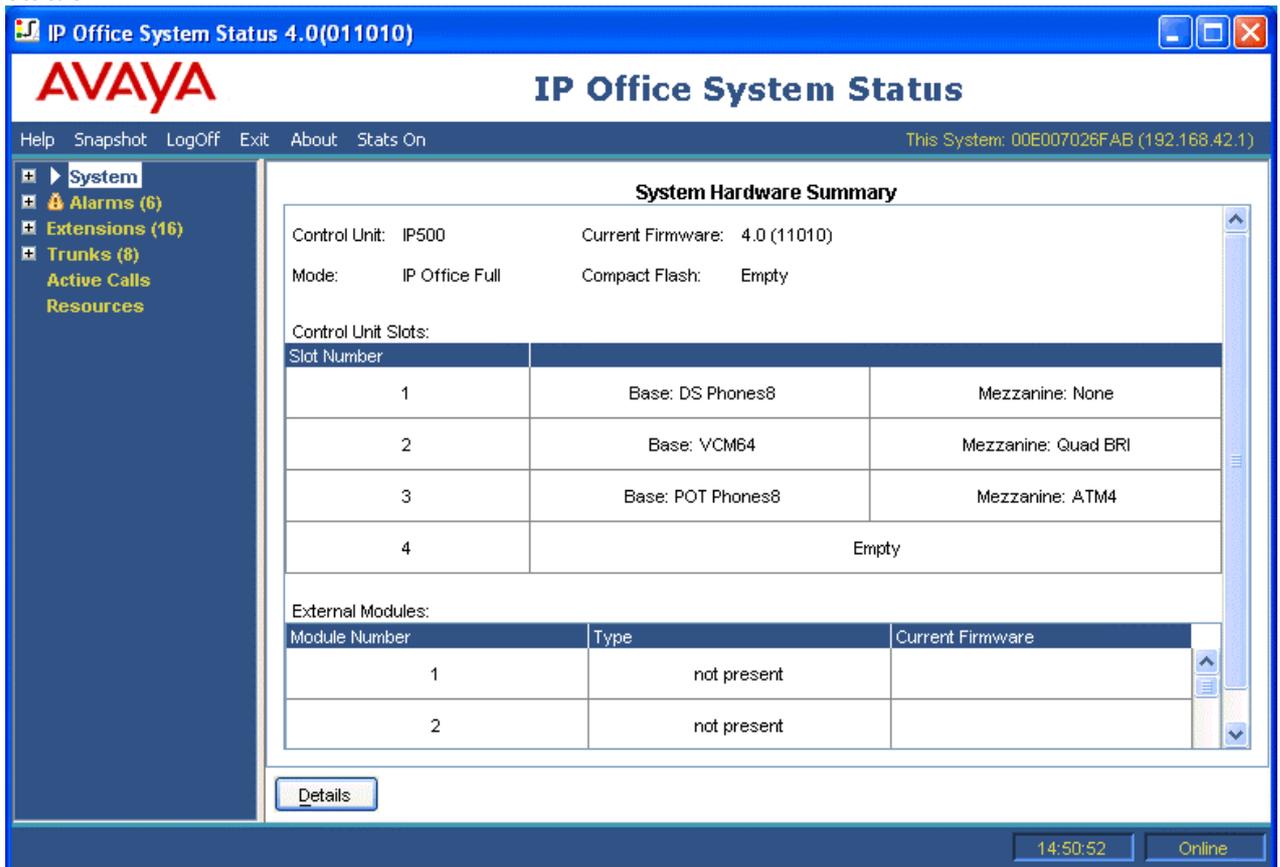
By default the System Status Application is enabled for the Administrator service user. For other service users, use of System Status Application must be enabled through the IP Office's security settings.

 **Objective** - Allow SSA to be used to check the correct installation of additional equipment.

1.   
2.   
3. 

### Procedure

1. Select **Start | Programs | IP Office | System Status**.
2. On the **Logon** menu enter the required details. For a default systems these will be:
  - **Control Unit IP Address:** 192.168.42.1
  - **Services Base TCP Port:** 50804
  - **User Name:** Administrator
  - **Password:** Administrator
3. Click **Logon**.
4. If the details are correct, SSA should show Waiting for connection and then the IP Office system status.



**System Hardware Summary**

Control Unit: IP500      Current Firmware: 4.0 (11010)  
 Mode: IP Office Full      Compact Flash: Empty

Control Unit Slots:

Slot Number	Base	Mezzanine
1	Base: DS Phones8	Mezzanine: None
2	Base: VCM64	Mezzanine: Quad BRI
3	Base: POT Phones8	Mezzanine: ATM4
4	Empty	

External Modules:

Module Number	Type	Current Firmware
1	not present	
2	not present	

Details

14:50:52      Online



---

# E. IP500 Basic Installation

---

## IP500 Installation

The IP500 control unit does not contain any replaceable components apart from the slot in base cards and trunk daughter cards. The control unit cover should never be removed. If a fault control unit is suspected, the whole control unit should be replaced.

- A. Tools Required
- B. Read the Documentation
- C. Unpacking
- D. IP500 Card Installation
- E. Inserting the Feature Key
- F. Default Control Unit Power Up
- H. Installing the Admin Applications
- I. Connecting the Manager PC
- J. Start Manager
- K. Upgrading the Core Software
- L. Check the CPU LED
- M. Check the Card LEDs
- N. Receiving the Configuration
- O. Adding Licences
- P. Adding External Expansion Modules
- Q. Configuring Security Settings
- R. Rack Mounting
- S. Wall Mounting
- T. Grounding

**A Tools Required**

Outils nécessaires / Benötigtes Zubehör und Werkzeug / Utensili richiesti / Herramientas requeridas / Ferramentas necessárias / Benötigt gereedschap.

LAN Cable RJ45 Ethernet

Windows PC Windows XP Pro (SP2) / Windows 2000 (SP4) / Windows 2003

Screwdriver 5mm Flathead

Anti-Static Strap Bracelet anti-statique / Antistatisches Armband / Fascetta antistatica / Tira antiestática / Pulseira antiestática / Antistatisch riempje.

**J Start IP Office Manager**

Start | All Programs | IP Office | Manager

« Démarrer | Tous les programmes | IP Office | Manager »

« Start | Alle Programme | IP Office | Manager »

« Start | Programmi | IP Office | Manager »

« Iniciar | Todos los programas | IP Office | Manager »

« Iniciar | Todos os programas | IP Office | Manager »

« Start | Alle programma's | IP Office | Manager »

**B Read the Documentation**

Lisez la documentation / Anleitung lesen / Leggere la documentazione / Lea la documentación / Leia a documentação / Lees de documentatie.

Manuals / Manuels / Handbücher / Manuales / Manuali / Manuais <http://marketingtools.avaya.com/knowledgebase/ipoffice/install>

Bulletins / Nachrichten / Boletines / Bollettini / Boletins <http://marketingtools.avaya.com/knowledgebase/ipoffice/bulletins>

**K Upgrade the IP Office Core Software**

File | Advanced | Upgrade.

« Fichier | Avancé | Mise à niveau »

« Datei | Erweitert | Upgrade »

« File | Avanzate | Aggiornamento »

« Archivo | Avanzado | Actualizar »

« Arquivo | Avançado | Atualização »

« Bestand | Geavanceerd | Bijwerken »

Default password = password

Mot de passe par défaut. Standard-Passwort. Password predefinita. Contraseña predeterminada. Senha padrão. Standaardwachtwoord.

**C Unpack and Check**

Check and retain all packaging.

Vérifiez et conservez tous les emballages.

Verpackung prüfen und aufbewahren.

Verificare che tutti i componenti siano presenti e conservare tutto il materiale di imballaggio.

Comprebe y retenga todo el embalaje.

Verifique todas as embalagens e guarde-as.

Controleer en bewaar de verpakking.

**L Check the CPU LED**

Steady green = OK.

Allumé vert = OK.

Permanent grün = OK.

Spia verde fissa = OK.

Luz verde fija = Aceptar.

Verde continuo = OK.

Groen brandend = OK.

**D Fit the IP 500 Cards**

Read and follow the instructions provided with each card.

Lisez et suivez les instructions fournies pour chaque carte.

Anleitung der jeweiligen Karte lesen und befolgen.

Leggere e seguire le istruzioni fornite con la scheda.

Lea y siga las instrucciones incluidas con cada tarjeta.

Leia e siga as instruções fornecidas com cada placa.

Lees en volg de bij elke kaart bijgestelde instructies op.

**M Check the Card LED's**

LED 1 Base card. Carte de base. Basiskarte. Scheda di base. Tarjeta base. Placa básica. Basiskaart.

LED 9 Trunk daughter card. Carte fille de ligne de réseau. Leitungstochterkarte. Scheda trunk secondaria. Tarjeta auxiliar de Enlace. Placa de tronco filha. Dochterkaart transmissielijn.

Flash every 5 seconds. Blinkt im 5-Sekunden-Takt. Spia lampeggiante ad intervalli di 5 secondi.

Cignote toutes les 5 secondes. Parpadeo cada 5 segundos. Pisca a cada 5 segundos. Knippert om de vijf seconden.

**E Fit the Feature Key**

The Feature Key and key slot cover must be fitted.

La clé de protection électronique et le couvercle de l'emplacement de la clé doivent être installés.

Feature Key und Schachtelabdeckung anbringen.

Verificare che la chiave hardware e la copertura per il foro di inserimento della chiave siano installate.

La Tecla de función y la cubierta de ranura de tecla deben instalarse en su lugar.

A Feature Key e a respectiva proteção do slot devem estar instaladas.

De Fundiesleutel en sleutelslotdeksel moeten aangesloten worden.

**N Open the Configuration**

Click/ Cliquez/ Klicken/ Fare clic/ Haga clic/ Clique/ Hier klikken.

Default user name/password = Administrator/Administrator

Nom utilisateur / mot de passe par défaut

Standard-Benutzername/ Passwort

Nome utente/ password predefinito

Nombre/ contraseña predeterminada de usuario

Nome de usuário/ senha padrão

Standaardgebruikersnaam/ wachtwoord

**F Apply Power.**

Connect and switch on power.

Connectez le matériel et mettez-le sous tension.

An Stromversorgung anschließen.

Collegare l'unità all'alimentazione e accenderla.

Conecte y encienda.

Conecte e ligue a alimentação.

Aansluiten en voeding inschakelen.

Mandatory/Obligatoire/ Immer benötigt/ Obligatorio/Obligatorio/ Obrigatório/ Verplicht

**? More Information**

For more information/Pour plus d'informations, voir/Weitere Informationen/Per ulteriori informazioni/Para más información/Mais informações/Voor meer informatie.

- IP Office Knowledge Base <http://marketingtools.avaya.com/knowledgebase>

- Avaya Support <http://support.avaya.com/>

- Avaya University <http://www.avaya-learning.com/>

- Avaya <http://www.avaya.com/>

**G Set the PC IP Address**

IP Address: 192.168.42.201 / Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0

Set the PC's LAN port IP address to the above.

Configurez l'adresse IP du port LAN de l'ordinateur sur la valeur ci-dessus.

IP-Adresse des LAN-Ports am PC auf o. g. Wert setzen.

Impostare l'indirizzo IP della porta LAN del PC sul valore indicato.

Configure la dirección IP del puerto LAN de la PC según el valor arriba indicado.

Configure a porta IP da LAN do PC com o valor acima.

Stel het IP-adres van de LAN-poort op de pc in volgens de bovengenoemde waarden.

**H Install the IP Office Admin Suite**

Install the applications shown.

Installez les applications illustrées/ Anwendung installieren/ Installare le applicazioni indicate/ Instalar las aplicaciones indicadas/ Instalar os aplicativos mostrados/ Installeer de afgebeelde applicaties.

- System Monitor
- Feature Key Server
- Manager
- System Status Application
- Voice Mail Lite
- Call Status
- Previous System Monitor

**I Connect the LAN Cable**

Connect the LAN cable directly between the PC and IP 500.

Connectez le câble LAN directement entre l'ordinateur et l'IP 500.

PC und IP 500 mit LAN-Kabel verbinden.

Collegare il cavo LAN direttamente al PC e al telefono IP 500.

Conecte el cable LAN directamente entre la PC y el IP 500.

Conecte o cabo de LAN diretamente entre o PC e o IP 500.

Gebruik de LAN-kabel voor een rechtstreekse verbinding tussen de pc en de IP 500.

**Barcode and Reference**

\*46DHB0002UKAC\*

## A. Tools Required



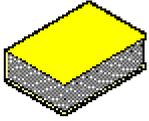
The following is a general summary of the tools required. Additional tools and equipment will be required for wall and or rack mounting and to fashion ground cable connections suitable to local requirements.



### Tools Required.

1.  5mm Flat-blade screwdriver.
2.  Crosshead screwdriver.
3.  Anti-static wrist strap and ground point.
4.  PC with IP Office Admin suite (Manager and System Status application) and RJ45 Ethernet LAN port.
5.  RJ45-RJ45 Ethernet LAN Cable.
6.  Tools and materials suitable for ground cabling.

## B. Read the Documentation



Ensure that you have read this manual in full before starting installation. Also include the installation documentation for any other equipment and applications being installed as part of the IP Office system.

- **⚠ IP Office Technical Bulletins**

Ensure that you have obtained and read the IP Office Technical Bulletin relating to the IP Office software release which you intend to install on the IP500 Office. This bulletin will contain important information that may not have been included in this manual. IP Office Technical Bulletins are available from the web sites listed below.

### Other IP Office Installation Manuals

The following components of IP Office are outside the range of a basic IP Office installation. They are covered by separate installation and configuration documentation. If those components are to be part of the IP Office system installation, that documentation should be obtained, read and understood prior to the installation.

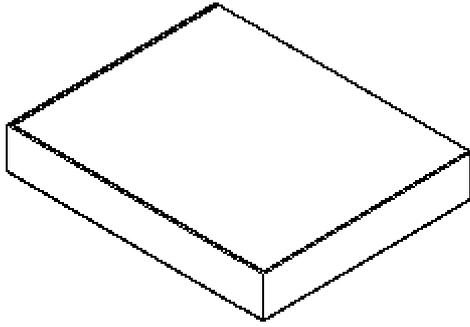
- **4600/5600 Series IP Phone Installation.**
- **Embedded Voicemail Installation.**
- **Voicemail Lite Installation.**
- **Voicemail Pro Installation.**
- **Delta Server (SMDR) Installation.**
- **Compact Business Center (CBC) Installation.**
- **Compact Contact Center (CCC) Installation.**
- **Contact Store Installation.**
- **Compact DECT Installation.**
- **IP DECT Installation.**
- **3600 Series Wireless IP Installation.**
- **IP Office Applications Installation.** (Phone Manager, SoftConsole and Conference Center)

### Information Web Sites

IP Office documentation is available from the following web sites.

- **Avaya Support - <http://support.avaya.com>**  
Contains documentation and other support materials for Avaya products including IP Office. Copies of the IP Office CD images are available from this site and updated core software .bin files.
- **Avaya IP Office Knowledge Base - <http://www.avaya.com/ipoffice/knowledgebase>**  
Access to an on-line regularly updated version of the IP Office Knowledge Base. Currently this link is only available to Avaya Business Partners while running an ARA account (Avaya Remote Access) connection.

## C. Unpacking Equipment



Use the following procedure when unpacking any equipment supplied by Avaya or an Avaya reseller or distributor.

 **Objective** - To check that the correct equipment has been supplied and that no damage has occurred during transit.

### Information Required

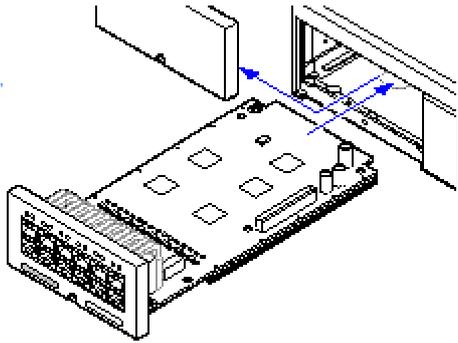
1.  **Equipment Checklist.**  
Draw up an installation checklist of the parts and equipment expected.

1.   
2.   
3.

### Procedure

1.  **Check for Package Damage.**  
Before unpacking any equipment, check for any signs of damage that may have occurred during transit. If any damage exists bring it to the attention of the carrier.
2.  **Check the Correct Parts Have Been Delivered.**  
Check all cartons against the packing slip and ensure that you have the correct items. Report any errors or omissions to the equipment supplier.
3.  **Retain All Packaging and Documentation.**  
While unpacking the equipment, retain all the packaging material. Fault returns are accepted only if repackaged in the original packaging. If performing a staged installation, the original packaging will also assist when repacking equipment to be moved to the final install site.
4.  **Ensure that Anti-Static Protection Measures are Observed**  
Ensure that anti-static protection measures are observed at all times when handling equipment with exposed electrical circuit boards.
5.  **Check All Parts.**  
Visually inspect each item and check that all the necessary documentation and accessory items have been included. Report any errors or omissions to the dealer who supplied the equipment.
6.  **Check All Documentation.**  
Ensure that you read and retain any documentation included with the equipment.

## D. IP500 Card Installation



At this stage fit all the internal IP500 cards before powering up the IP500 Office control unit. These processes should be performed with no power to the control unit and following full anti-static precautions.

1. **Fitting IP500 Trunk Daughter Cards.**
2. **Fitting IP400 Legacy Cards.**
3. **Installing IP500 Cards.**

### Warnings

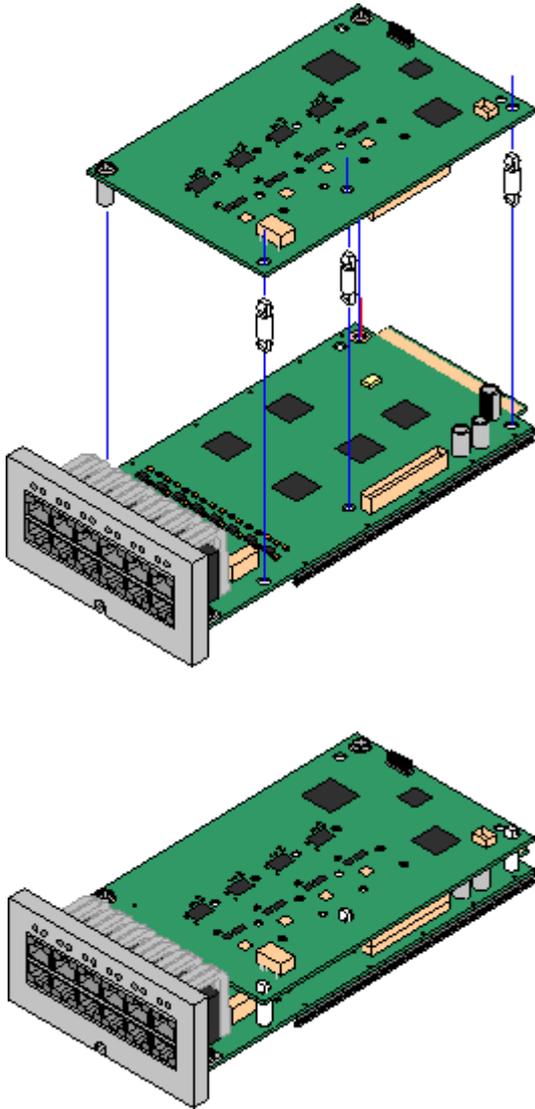
1. Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
2. During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.

### General Notes

1. Cards can be fitted in any order into any available slots.
2. It is recommended that cards are fitted from left to right.
3. There are restrictions to the number of supported cards of some types. When such a limit is exceeded, the right-most card of that type will not function.
4. Ensure that you use the labels supplied to identify the card fitted into the control unit.

## D1. IP500 Trunk Daughter Card Installation

IP500 trunk daughter cards can be fitted to any IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Card Carrier.



 **Objective** - To fit a IP500 trunk card to an IP500 base card.

 **Warnings**

1. Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
2. During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.

 **Parts and Equipment Required**

1.  Any IP500 base card except the IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card.
2.  IP500 Trunk Card
3.  5 Stand Off Pillars  
These are supplied with the trunk daughter card.
  - With the release of the IP500 PRI-U trunk daughter card, the design of stand off pillars supplied with all types of trunk daughter card has changed. The original 5 plastic pillars have been replaced by 2 metal pillars and 3 plastic pillars. The metals pillars are pre-fitted to the trunk daughter cards in their intended position and two screws and washers are supplied for final attachment to the base card.

 **Tools Required.**

1.  5mm Flat-blade screwdriver.
2.  Anti-static wrist strap and ground point.

 **Procedure:**

**Installing an IP500 Trunk Daughter Card**

1. Check that correct cards have been supplied.
2. Ensure that you are wearing an anti-static wrist strap connected to a suitable ground point.
3. On the base card identify the position of 3 holes for the plastic pillars for the IP500 card. These are along the same edge as the card connector.
4. Fit the stand off pillars to the IP500 base card.
5. If there is a clip-on metal shield over the connector block on the base card, remove it.
6. Using minimal force and checking that the pins are correctly located, push the IP500 trunk card onto its connector block and the stand off pillars.
7. Check that the card connector has snapped into position.
8. Using the washers and screws provided, secure the metal stand off pillars to the base card.
9. A set of labels are supplied with the trunk daughter card. Fit the appropriate label to the front of the base card.
10. Prepare any other IP500 cards. Then proceed to Inserting an IP500 Card

## D2. IP400 Legacy Card Installation

An IP500 Legacy Card can be used to fit IP400 trunk or VCM cards into an IP500 control unit. Up to 2 IP500 carrier cards can be inserted.

✓ PRI T1	✓ BRI-8 (UNI)
✓ Dual PRI T1	✓ ANLG 4 Uni
✓ PRI 30 E1 (1.4)	✓ VCM 4
✓ Dual PRI E1	✓ VCM 8
✓ PRI 30 E1R2 RJ45	✓ VCM 16
✓ Dual PRI E1R2 RJ45	✓ VCM 24
	✓ VCM 30

**Objective** - To fit a IP400 card to an IP500 Legacy Card Carrier.

**Warnings** -

1. Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
2. During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.

**Parts and Equipment Required**

1.  **IP500 Carrier Card.**
2.  **IP400 Card**

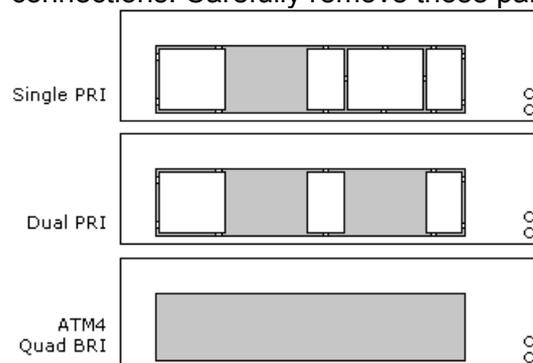
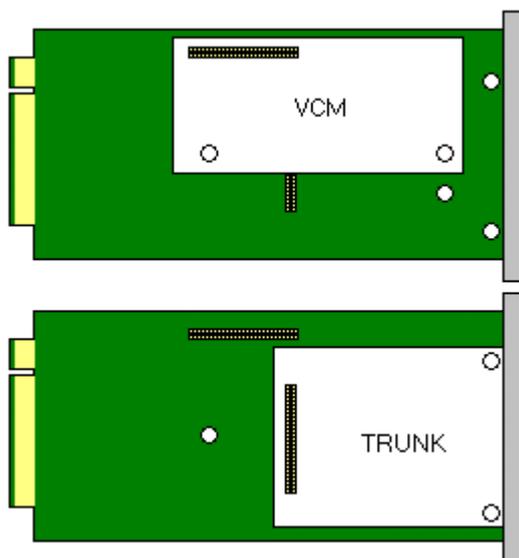
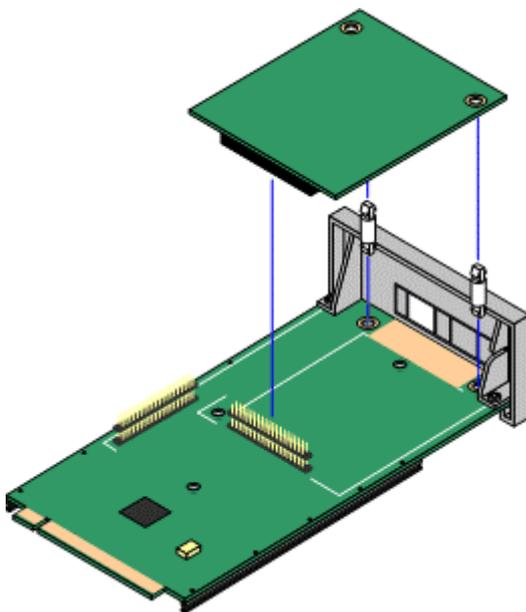
The table opposite lists supported cards. Any card not listed is not supported. Cards are supplied with 2 plastic stand off pillars. Trunk cards are also supplied with a replacement blanking plate which are not required with the IP500.

**Tools Required.**

1.  **5mm Flat-blade screwdriver.**
2.  **Anti-static wrist strap and ground point.**

**Procedure: Installing a Carrier Card**

1. Check that correct cards have been supplied.
2. Ensure that you are wearing an anti-static wrist strap connected to a suitable ground point.
3. On the carrier card identify the position of the jumper block and stand off pillar holes for the IP400 card. The peg holes are labelled as **VCM** or **TRUNK**.
4. If fitting an IP400 trunk card, identify which of the plastic snap-off panels on the front of the carrier card need to be removed to allow the trunk cable connections. Carefully remove those panels.



5. Fit the stand off pillars to the IP500 carrier card.
6. Using minimal force and checking that the pins are correctly located, push the IP400 card onto its jumper and the stand off pillars.

## D3. IP500 Card Installation

Having prepared each IP500 card by adding any IP400 cards or IP500 trunk daughter cards required, the base cards can be inserted into the control unit.

 **Objective** - To fit a IP500 base card into the IP500 control unit.

### Warnings

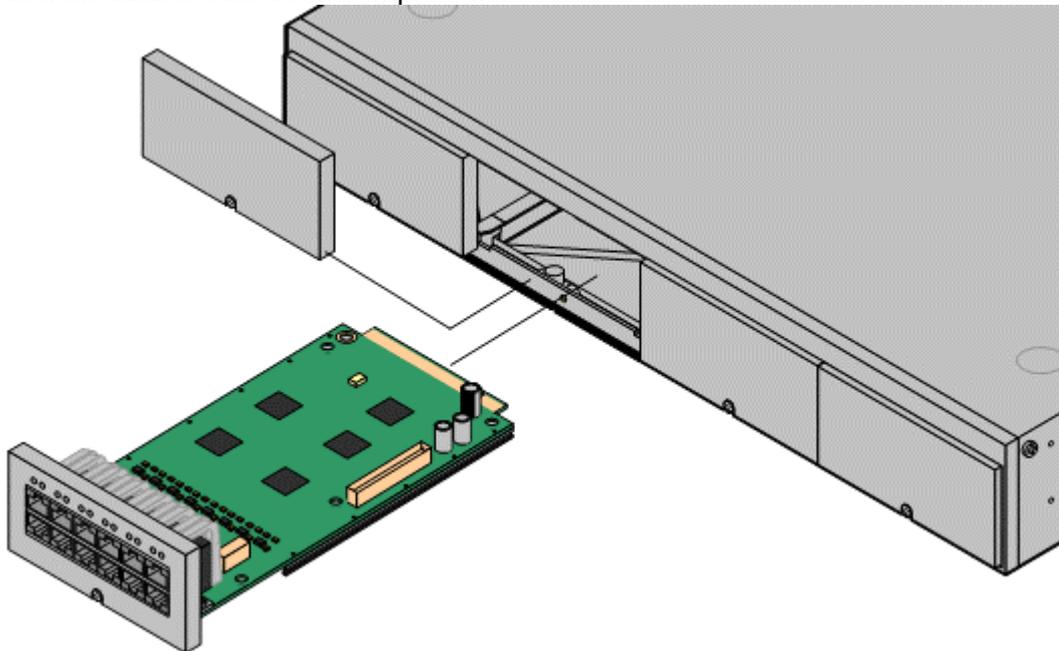
1. Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
2. During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.

### Tools Required.

1.  **5mm Flat-blade screwdriver.**
2.  **Anti-static wrist strap and ground point.**

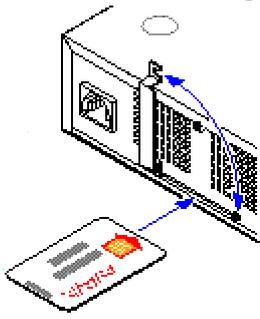
### Procedure: Installing a Carrier Card

1. Switch off power to the IP500 control unit.
2. Using a flat-bladed screwdriver, remove the cover from the slot on the front of the control unit that will be used for each card being installed. This cover is no longer required but should be retained until installation has been completed.



3. Allowing the card to rest against the bottom of the slot, begin sliding it into the control unit. When half inserted, check that the card rails have engaged with the slot edges by trying to gently rotate it. If the card does rotate remove it and begin inserting it again.
4. The card should slide in freely until almost fully inserted. At this point apply pressure at the base of the front of the card to complete insertion.
5. Using a flat-bladed screwdriver secure the carrier card.
6. Reapply power to the control unit. Initially each card should show a red LED (two if a daughter card is fitted) as the control unit restarts. After approximately 30 seconds these should change to flashing red as the card is started. These should then change to flashing every 5 seconds if the cards have started correctly.
7. Run the IP Office System Status Application and verify that the cards have all been recognized.
8. IP Office Manager can now be used to configure the extensions and trunk lines. For any IP500 VCM base cards, VCM Channel licenses must be added to the configuration to enable channels above the base 4.

## E. Inserting the Feature Key



The IP500 uses a smart card feature key dongle. In addition to feature licensing the IP500 control unit uses this feature key dongle to determine various systems defaults such as A-Law or Mu-Law operation, default short codes and trunk settings.

### ⚠ Warnings

1. The feature key is required for all IP500 control units and must be present when the system is started and during operation. This applies even if the IP500 is not using any licensed features.
2. The feature key slot cover must remain present to protect the card and the card reader from damage.
3. Correct anti-static protection steps should be taken before handling circuit boards.
4. During this process power to the IP Office control unit must be switched off and disconnected.

### 📦 Parts Required

#### 1. IP500 Feature Key

The correct key will depend on the locale. The listing below is typical and may not apply in all cases. Ensure that the serial number of the key, shown on the card, is recorded.

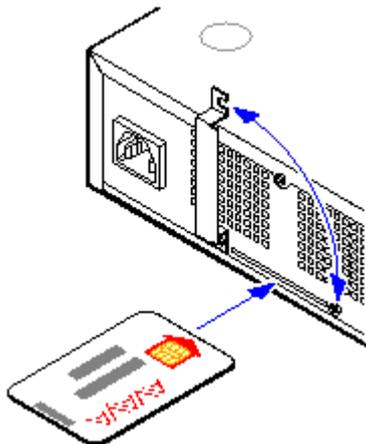
- **Mu-Law:** Used in North America and Korea.
- **A-Law:** Used in all other locales.

### 🔑 Tools Required:

1.  **5mm Flat-blade screwdriver.**

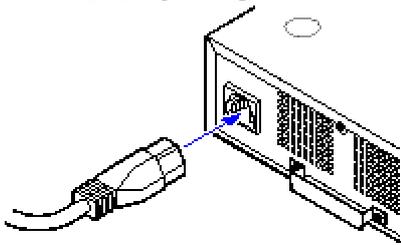
### 1. 2. 3. 4. Procedure

1. Locate the feature key slot on the rear of the IP500 control unit. The slot is adjacent to the power input socket and is protected by a metal cover.
2. Undo the screws on the cover until it can be rotated clear of the feature key card slot.



3. Insert the feature key. The card should be face up and inserted in the direction of the arrow on the card.
4. Rotate the slot cover back into position and tighten the screws.

## F. Applying Power



This procedure starts a new IP Office control unit without the unit being connected to any LAN. In this scenario the IP Office control unit will assume its default configuration settings.

 **Objective** - To power up the IP Office control unit to a known state with a known set of defaults.

 **Warnings**

1. When powering up the control unit for the first time do not connect the LAN or WAN ports of the control unit to any network.
2. The power cord must be connected directly from the control unit to the switched power outlet socket. The cord must not be fixed in anyway or routed through any permanent structure.

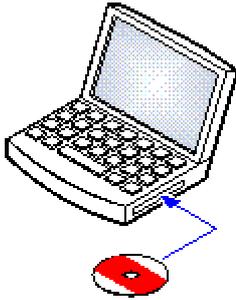
### Parts and Equipment Required

1.  Switched power outlet socket.
2.  IP Office Control Unit.
3.  Locale Specific Power Cord.

### Procedure

1. Connect the power cord from the power supply outlet to the power input socket on the rear of the control unit.
  - Power cords must not be attached to the building surface or run through walls, ceilings, floors and similar openings. Installation measures must be taken to prevent physical damage to the power supply cord, including proper routing of the power supply cord and provision of a socket outlet near the fixed equipment or positioning of the equipment near a socket outlet.
2. Switch on power to the control unit.
3. New IP Office 500 control units are supplied with a base software level of 4.0.0. The CPU LED on these units will flash red until the unit is upgraded to the required level of released IP Office core software.
4. The CPU LED on units that have already been upgraded from 4.0.0 will go through a green red cycle several times and then stay green on. During this time other LED's may flash as the unit goes through its power on self test cycle.

## H. Installing the IP Office Admin Applications



This procedure covers installation of applications in the IP Office Admin suite.

**Objective** - To install the applications necessary for the installation and maintenance of an IP Office system.

**Information Required**

1.  **Which IP Office Admin Suite applications are being installed?**

The following list indicates those that are required for installation and configuration:

- **System Monitor** - *Install* ✓  
Monitor is a tool intended primarily for Avaya technicians and engineers. However it is able to report on all aspects of IP Office operation and is therefore an important tool for diagnostics.
- **Feature Key Server** - *Not required.* ✗  
The Feature Key Server should only be installed if the PC will host the parallel port or USB port Feature Key dongle for the IP Office system.
- **Manager** - *Install* ✓  
This application is required to edit and manage the software on the IP Office system.
- **Voicemail Mail Lite** - *Optional*  
Only install this application if no other voicemail system, for example Voicemail Pro or embedded voicemail, is being installed. Note also that IP Office Lite is not supported by IP500 systems running in IP Office Standard Edition mode.
- **System Status Application** - *Install* ✓  
This application is used with IP Office 4.0 systems to show equipment and resource within the system, alarms and calls in progress.
- **Previous System Monitor** - *Not required.* ✗  
This application is only required for supporting IP400 systems running pre-IP Office 4.0 software. It is not required for IP500 control units.
- **Call Status** - *Not required.* ✗  
This application is only supported for pre-4.0 IP Office systems. For IP Office 4.0 and higher it has been replaced by the System Status Application above.

**Parts Required**

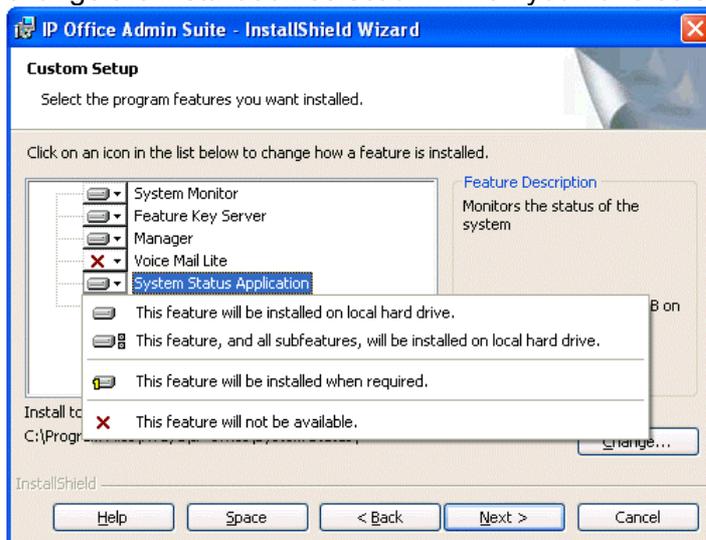
1.  **IP Office Administrator Applications CD.**
2.  **Windows PC**  
This should meet the requirements of the administrator applications being installed. If a server PC from the customer installation is available, for example for Voicemail Pro, use that PC. The specification below is just for IP Office Manager. If other applications are to be installed on the PC then their requirements should also be met.

Requirement	Minimum	Recommended
<b>Processor</b>	600MHz Pentium or AMD Opteron, AMD Athlon64, AMD Athlon XP.	800MHz Pentium or AMD Opteron, AMD Athlon64, AMD Athlon XP.
<b>RAM</b>	128MB	256MB
<b>HD Space</b>	1GB - 800MB for .NET2, 200MB for Manager.	1.4GB - 800MB for .NET2, 600MB for the full IP Office Admin suite.
<b>Display</b>	800 x 600 - 256 Colors	1024 x 768 - 16-bit High Color
<b>Operating System</b>	Windows XP Professional with SP2. Windows 2000 Professional with SP4. Windows 2000 Server with SP4. Windows 2003 Server. Windows 2003 SBS. Note: 64-bit versions of the operating systems above are not supported.	



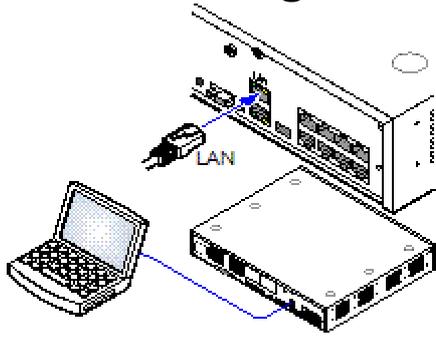
### Procedure: Installing the IP Office Admin Applications

1. Using the **Add or Remove Programs** option in the Windows Control Panel, check that the PC does not already have a version of the IP Office Admin suite installed.
  - If 'yes' and the suite is a pre-IP Office 3.2 version, remove the existing IP Office Admin suite via **Add/Remove Programs**.
  - If the existing suite is IP Office 3.2 or higher, it is possible to upgrade without removing the previous installation.
2. Insert the IP Office Administrator Applications CD. The installation process should auto start. If it does not auto start, open the CD contents and double-click **setup.exe**.
3. Select the language you want to use for the installation process. This does not affect the language used by Manager which will attempt to match your Windows regional setting. Click **Next >**.
4. Select whether only the current Windows logon account should be able to run the Admin Suite applications or whether they will be available to all users of the PC. Click **Next >**.
  - The previous selection does not affect the IP Office Feature key server application, if installed. That application runs as a service whenever the PC is running.
5. If required select the destination to which the applications should be installed. We recommend that you accept the default destination. Click **Next >**.
6. The next screen is used to select which applications in the suite should be installed. Clicking on each will display a description of the application. Click on the ▼ next to each application to change the installation selection. When you have selected the installations required, click **Next >**.



- a. For IP Office system installations, ensure that at minimum **System Monitor** and **Manager** are selected.
  - b. Only select **Voice Mail Lite** if this PC will also be the customer's Voicemail Lite server PC.
  - c. Deselect **Feature Key Server** unless this PC will be hosting a Parallel port or USB port Feature Key dongle for the customer's IP Office system.
7. Click **Install**.
  8. Installation of Windows .Net2 components may be required. If dialogs for this appear, follow the prompts to install .Net.
  9. If requested, reboot the PC.

## I. Connecting the Manager PC



At this stage we will directly connect the Manager PC to the new IP Office control unit. For this the PC will need to be set to a fixed IP address in the same subnet range as the IP Office control unit's default address (192.168.42.1/255.255.255.255).

**Objective** - Physically connecting the Manager PC and the IP Office without needing to adjust or configure any intervening equipment.

### Parts and Equipment Required

1.  **Manager PC.**
2.  **LAN Cable.**
  - IP Office Small Office Edition, IP406 V2 and IP500 control units: A standard RJ45-RJ45 LAN cable can be used.
  - IP412 Control Unit: A RJ45-RJ45 cross-over LAN cable is required.



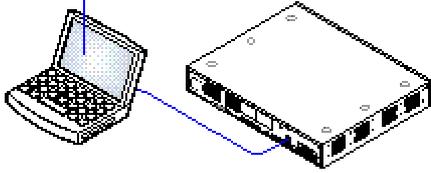
### Procedure: Direct Connection to a Defaulted IP Office Control Unit

1. Check that the TCP/IP properties for the Manager PC's Local Area Network connection are set as follow:
  - Fixed IP address: 192.168.42.203
  - Subnet mask: 255.255.255.255
  - Default gateway: 192.168.42.1.
2. Connect the LAN cable from the PC's LAN port the LAN 1 port on the IP Office control unit.
3. Check that the orange LED lamp on the IP Office LAN port is on. The green LED may also be flickering as it indicates traffic across the LAN connection.
4. Select **Start | Run** and enter **cmd**.
5. In the command window that appears enter **ping 192.168.42.1**. The results should show a number of ping replies from the IP Office. This confirms basic communication between the Manager PC and the IP Office.
6. If there are no ping replies
  1. Enter **ipconfig**. The results should list the IP address settings of the Manager PC as required above and with no mention of DHCP being used. Enter exit.
7. Check the cable connection.

## J. Start Manager



At this stage we will simple check that Manager is able to run and to see the connected IP Office control unit.

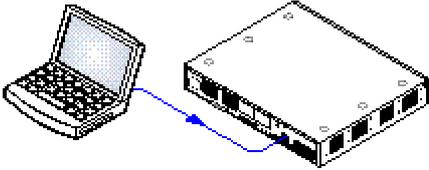


1. 2. 3. 4.

### Procedure: Receiving the Configuration

1. Select **Start | Programs | IP Office | Manager**.
2. If the PC has firewall software installed, you should be prompted as to whether you want to allow this program to access the network. Select **Yes** or **OK**.
3. Click in the main toolbar or select **File | Open Configuration** from the menu bar.
4. The **Select IP Office** window appears. After a few seconds it should list the control unit that is being setup. The default name used is the control units MAC address.
  - If the system required was not found, the address used for the search can be changed. Enter or select the required address in the **Unit/Broadcast Address** field and then click **Refresh** to perform a new search.
5. Click the check the box next to the system and then click **OK**.
6. The name and password request is displayed. The name and password must match one of those setup through the security settings. The default name and password for full configuration settings access is **Administrator** and **Administrator**.
7. Successful receiving of the configuration is shown by the full configuration tree being shown in the left-hand panel. With no configuration loaded the navigation pane shows just **BOOTP** and **Operator** entries.

## K. Upgrading the Core Software (IP500)



New IP500 control units are supplied with a basic level of software (4.0.0). That software is sufficient to allow LAN network connect to the control unit in order to then upgrade it to the level of IP Office software required.

 **Objective** - Upgrade the control unit to IP Office 4.0 software.

 **Information Required**

1.  **System Password** - For a new or defaulted system this is *password*.

 **Tools Required**

1.  **Manager PC** - The Upgrade Wizard tool is part of the Manager application.

### WARNINGS

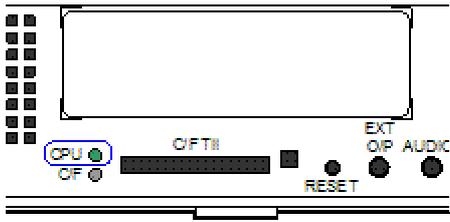
- **Check IP Office Technical Bulletins**  
Check the latest IP Office Technical Bulletin for the IP Office software release before proceeding any further. It may contain information relating to changes that occurred after this document was completed. Bulletins are available from <http://support.avaya.com>.
- **Multiple Managers**  
If more than one copy of Manager is running it is possible for the IP Office to request BIN files from a different Manager from the one that started the upgrade process. Ensure that only one copy of Manager is running when upgrading an IP Office system.



### **Procedure: Upgrade Procedure**

1. Using Manager, click  and receive the configuration from the IP Office. If not already done this action creates a **BOOTP** entry in Manager for the IP Office system. This action also confirms communication between the Manager PC and the IP Office.
2. Select **File | Save Configuration As...** and save a copy of the configuration file onto the PC. This action should be completed before upgrading any IP Office system.
3. Select **File | Advanced | Upgrade**.
4. The **UpgradeWiz** is started and scans for IP Office unit using the **Unit/Broadcast address**. Adjust this address and click **Refresh** if the expected modules are not shown.
5. For each the unit found, the **UpgradeWiz** displays the module type, its current version of software installed in the unit and the software version of the .bin file that Manager has available.
6. For those units and modules where manager detects that it has a higher version available, the tick box next to the unit or module is automatically selected.
7. For those modules which you want to upgrade, tick the check box. For modules where a later version of software is available the check box may have already been automatically ticked.
8. Select **Upgrade**.
9. The system password will be requested. Enter it and click **OK**.
10. The bin files required are transferred to the system and stored in temporary memory.
11. Once all the files have been transferred, the upgrade wizard will prompt whether it okay to proceed with the upgrade process. Select **Yes** to continue.
12. Each module being upgraded will delete its existing core software, restart and load the new software file that was transferred. This process may take several minutes for each unit. Do not cancel or close the upgrade wizard while this process is running.
13. Following the upgrade check that the upgrade wizard now shows that the selected units and modules have upgraded. It may be necessary to select **Refresh** to update the information in the upgrade wizard display.

## L. Checking the CPU LED



During normal operation, the CPU LED on the rear of the IP500 control unit should be green.

- **Note**  
New IP Office 500 control units are supplied with a base software level of 4.0.0. The CPU LED on these units will flash red until the unit is upgraded to the required level of released IP Office core software.

### Normal Power On Sequence

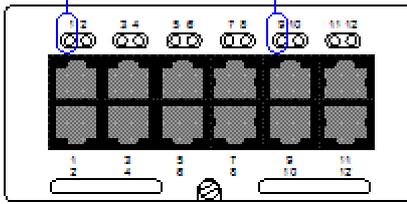
When power to the control unit is switched on, the normal sequence for the CPU LED is as follows.

1. **Steady Red for 3 seconds**
2. **Off for 10 seconds**
3. **Flashing alternate red/green for 4 seconds**
4. **Steady Green**

The LED should be steady green following successful start up. Note that the IP500 cards on the front of the control unit may still be going through their own start up process.

- **Flashing RED**  
A flashing red CPU LED at this stage indicates an error. The most likely cause is a missing Feature Key card.

## M. Check the Card LEDs



On all IP500 base cards, LED 1 is used to indicate general status. Okay status is indicated by a flash every 5 seconds.

When a trunk daughter card is fitted, LED is used to indicate the general status of that card. Okay status is indicated by a flash every 5 seconds.

### IP500 Analog Phone Base Card

#### Analog Extension Ports (1-8)

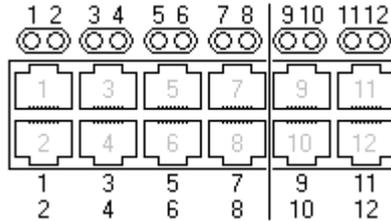
LED1 only is used.

LED1 is used for card status:

Red On - Error

Red Flashing - Initializing.

Red Flash every 5 seconds - Okay.



### IP500 Digital Station Base Card

#### Digital Station Ports (1-8)

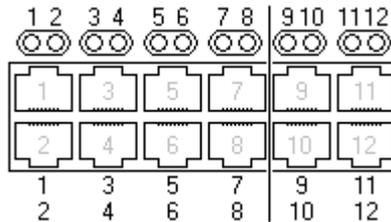
Green On - Phone detected.

LED1 is used for card status:

Red On - Error

Red Flashing - Initializing.

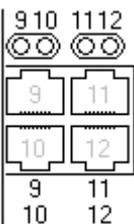
Red Flash every 5 seconds - Okay.



### IP500 VCM Base Card

- LEDs 1 to 8 are unlabelled. They are used to indicate voice compression channel usage. Each LED lit represents 12.5% of the available voice compression channel capacity in use (total card capacity rather than licensed capacity).
- LED1 is used for general card status. Flash every 5 seconds = Okay.

### IP500 Trunk Daughter Cards



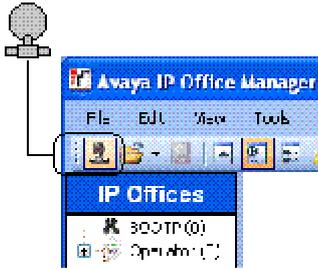
#### Daughter Card Ports (9-12)

The LED's for ports 9 and 10 are used as follows:

- Off:** No trunk present/Analog - Idle.
- Green on:** BRI/PRO trunk present.
- Green flashing:** Trunk in use.
- Red/Green Fast Flash (port 9) or Green Fast Flash (port 10):** Alarm indication signal (AIS) from the PRI trunk remote end.
- Red with Green Blink (port 9) or Green Blink (port 10):** PRI Port in loopback mode (set through IP Office System Monitor).
- LED 9 is also used for daughter card status. Flash every 5 seconds = Okay.

## N. Receiving the Configuration (IP500)

The process here applies to systems running IP Office 3.2 and higher.



**Objective** - Receive a configuration from an IP Office running IP Office 3.2 or higher software.

### Information Required

1.  **Service User Name and Password**

The defaults for full configuration access are **Administrator** and **Administrator**. However these should have been changed as part of the installation process, see **16. Configuring Security Settings**.

1.   
 2.   
 3.

### Procedure: Receiving the Configuration

1. Select **Start | Programs | IP Office | Manager**.
2. Click in the main toolbar or select **File | Open Configuration** from the menu bar.
3. The **Select IP Office** window appears. After a few seconds it should list the control unit that is being setup. The default name used is the control units MAC address.
  - If the system required was not found, the address used for the search can be changed. Enter or select the required address in the **Unit/Broadcast Address** field and then click **Refresh** to perform a new search.
4. Click the check the box next to the system and then click **OK**.
5. The name and password request is displayed. The name and password must match one of those setup through the security settings. The default name and password for full configuration settings access is **Administrator** and **Administrator**.
6. Successful receiving of the configuration is shown by the full configuration tree being shown in the left-hand panel. With no configuration loaded the navigation pane shows just **BOOTP** and **Operator** entries.

### IP Office Default Settings

The following are the basic default configuration settings for an IP Office system.

System	Name		MAC address of the control unit.	
		<b>System Password</b>	password	
		<b>License Server IP Address</b>	255.255.255.255	
LAN1		LAN1	LAN2/WAN	
		<b>IP address</b>	192.168.42.1.	192.168.43.1
		<b>IP Mask</b>	255.255.255.0	255.255.255.0
		<b>DHCP Mode</b>	Server	Server
		<b>No of DHCP IP Addresses</b>	200.	200.

- **Extensions and Users**  
A user is automatically created for each physical extension port detected in the system. Users are assigned extension numbers starting from 201. User names take the form Extn201, Extn202, ....
- **Hunt Group**  
A single hunt group 200 called **Main** is created and the first 10 users are placed into that hunt group as members.
- **Incoming Call Routes**  
Two default incoming call routes are created. Voice calls are routed to the hunt group **Main**. Data calls are routed to the RAS user **DialIn**.

## O. Adding Licences



32-Character license keys strings are used to activate various IP Office features. These keys are uniquely based on the feature being activated and the serial number of the Feature Key dongle installed with the IP Office system.

The IP500 uses licenses in the same way as other IP Office systems. However there are some licenses that are specific to the IP500 Office control unit and may be required during installation to ensure the systems correct operation.

- **IP Office Upgrade Standard to Professional**  
By default the IP500 runs in IP Office Standard Edition mode. For full IP Office operation an IP Office Upgrade Standard to Professional license must be added to the configuration.
- **IP500 Voice Networking**  
In addition to the upgrade from Standard Edition, if IP trunks are required for voice networking between the IP Office and other systems, IP500 Standard Networking licenses are required. This type of license is available as a base license for the first 4 channels and then additional licenses for any additional channels required.
- **VCM Channels**  
Each IP500 VCM base card only support 4 voice compression channels unlicensed. Any additional channels available on the card must be licensed by adding IP500 VCM Channels licenses

Licenses can be added individually to the IP Office's configuration. However the licence key file provided by Avaya from their license ordering web site generates a *License.csv* file containing all the ordered licenses. That file can be imported into the configuration.

### Parts and Equipment Required

#### 1. License Keys Documentation

Ensure that the Feature Key dongle serial number used to generate the license keys matches that of the Feature Key dongle installed and that all the licenses required have been included.

#### 1. Importing a License.csv File

1. Copy the *License.csv* file to the Manager PC.
2. Start **Manager** and receive the IP Office system's configuration.
3. Select **File | Import/Export | Import...**
4. Click the button next to Look In and browse to and select the folder containing the license file.
5. The file should be listed as Available along with an indication of the number of licenses it contains. Select the check box next to the file name and then click OK.
6. Click on  to send the configuration back to the IP Office.
7. Use **Manager** to receive the configuration again and check that the status of the licenses. They should now be **Valid**.

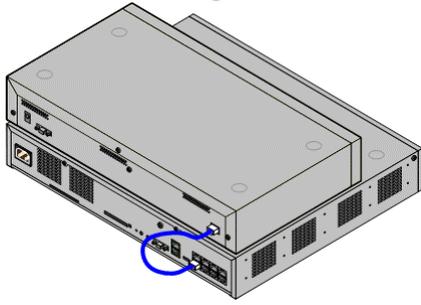
1.  
2.  
3.

## Manually Adding Licenses

Use this process to individually copy and paste license keys into the configuration. Cutting and pasting removes any errors that may be caused by the incorrect typing of any license key.

1. Start **Manager** and receive the IP Office system's configuration.
2. Select  **License**.
3. To add a license, click  and select **License**. Enter the new license and click **OK**.
4. The **Status** of the new license should show **Unknown** and name the license as expected. If its **Status** is **Unknown** and name **Invalid**, the most likely cause is incorrect entry of the license key characters.
5. Repeat the process for any other licences
6. Click on  to send the configuration back to the IP Office.
7. Use **Manager** to receive the configuration again and check that the status of the licenses. They should now be **Valid**.

## P. Adding External Expansion Modules (IP500)



External expansion modules connect to the IP Office control unit using a blue 1 meter (3'3") expansion interconnect cable supplied with the modules.

 **Objective** - Connect the external expansion modules and then restart the control unit so that the new modules are recognized.

Each module is supplied with an expansion connect cable and a power supply unit. An appropriate locale specific power cord for the power supply unit, and cables for the ports on the front of the module must be ordered separately.

### Warnings

1. No cable other than an Expansion Interconnect cable should be used. Use of any alternate cable will lead to system failure.
2. External expansion modules are not supported by an IP500 control unit running in Express Edition mode.

### Installation Requirements

1.  Installation space either on or under the existing IP Office control unit.
2.  Switched power outlet socket.
3.  Free **EXPANSION** port on the rear of the control unit.
4.  The control unit must have a valid IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional license.

#### 5. Grounding Requirements

##### 1. Functional Grounding

Connection of a functional ground is:

- Recommend for all modules.
- Connection of a functional ground is mandatory for Analog Trunk module.

##### 2. Protective Grounding

Connections of a protective ground via surge protection equipment is:

- Mandatory for Analog trunk modules in the Republic of South Africa.
- Mandatory for Digital Station and Phone modules connected to out of building extensions.
- Mandatory for Digital Station V2 and Phone V2 modules.



### Tools Required

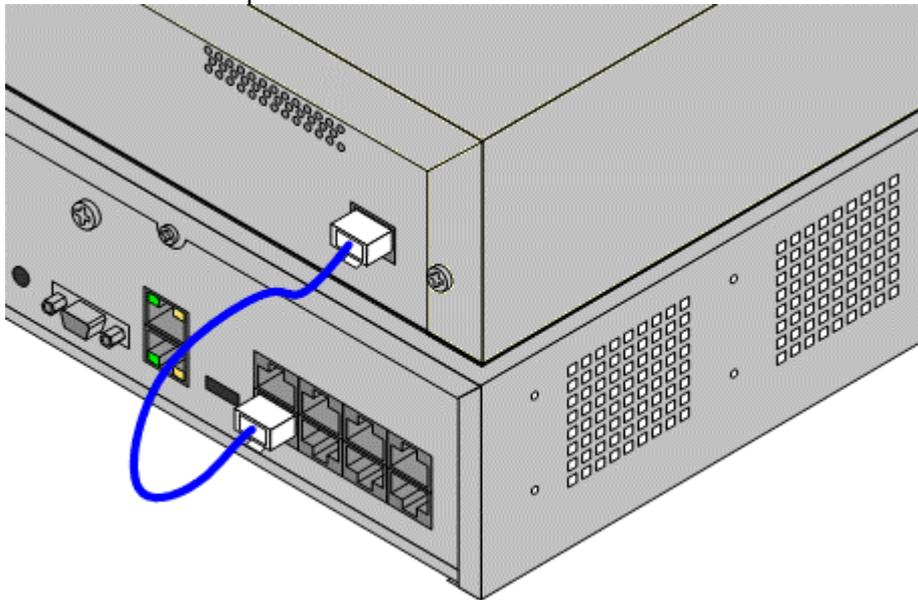
1.  Manager PC.
2.  Tools for rack mounting (*optional*).

## Parts and Equipment Required

1.  **External Expansion Module.**  
Each module is supplied with a suitable external power supply unit and a RJ45-RJ45 expansion interconnect cable.
2.  **Power cord for the power supply unit.**
3.  **Rack mounting kit (optional).**
4.  **Cable labelling tags.**

## Procedure

1. Switch off power to the IP Office control unit.
2. Attach the external expansion module's power supply.
3. Connect the blue expansion interconnect cable from the module's **EXPANSION** port to the first free **EXPANSION** port on the control unit.



4. Make careful note of the port used and include this detail on the cable label and any other system records.
5. Switch on power to the module. Wait for the center LED on the front of the module to change from red to green.
6. Switch on power to the control unit.
7. Once the control unit has rebooted, using Manager receive the system configuration.
8. Click on  **Unit** in the left-hand panel.
9. Check that the list of units shown in the right-hand panel is correct.
10. The external expansion modules should be upgraded to the same level of software as the control unit. Do this by repeating the IP Office upgrade process (see **K. Upgrading the Core Software**).

## Q. Configuring Security Settings (IP500)



Currently the system is defaulted, including the security passwords controlling access to the system's security and configuration settings.

 You should read and understand the Security Settings section of the IP Office Manager documentation. That section details the settings and operation of the IP Office security settings and is part of the Manager applications help file.

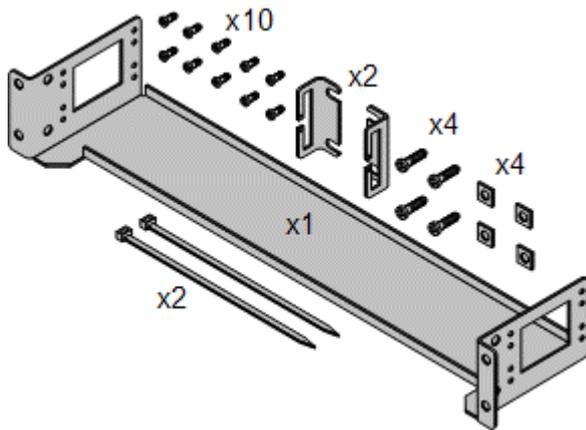
 **Objective** - Make the control unit configuration settings secure from unauthorized changes by changing the default passwords.

1.   
2.   
3. 

### Procedure

1. Select **Start | Programs | IP Office | Manager**.
2. Select **File | Advanced | Security Settings**.
3. The **Select IP Office** window appears. After a few seconds it should list the control unit that is being setup. The default name used is the control unit's MAC address.
  - If the system required was not found, the address used for the search can be changed. Enter or select the required address in the **Unit/Broadcast Address** field and then click **Refresh** to perform a new search.
4. Click the check the box next to the system and then click **OK**.
5. The name and password request is displayed. As the system has been upgrade to IP Office 3.2 software, the name and password now requested are a Service User name and password stored within the IP Office. The default name and password for security settings access are **security** and **securitypwd**.
6. The Manager should load and display the IP Office control unit's security settings.
7. Select  **General**. On the tab displayed, the **Security Administrator** section contains the default name and password used to access the IP Office's security settings. Click **Change** and set a new password. The default password is **securitypwd**. Click **OK**.
8. Click **OK** to save the changes to that tab.
9. Select  **Rights Groups** and then the **Administrator Group**.
10. Select the **System Status** tab and check that System Status Access is selected. This is required for the System Status Application.
11. Click **OK** to save the changes to that tab.
12. Select  **Service Users**. This tab shows the settings for one of the Service Users who have names and passwords used for access to the configuration settings on the IP Office control unit. Click **Change** and set a new password. The default password matches the name. Click **OK**.
13. Click **OK** to save the changes made on that tab.
14. Click > button to display the settings for the next Service User and repeat the process in the previous two steps to change their password.
15. Click **OK**.
16. The new security settings can now be sent to the IP Office control unit. Click .
17. The original name and password used to load the settings will be requested. Enter the details and click **OK**.

## R. Rack Mounting (IP500)



The IP500 control unit and IP500 external expansion units can be rack mounted if required into 19-inch rack systems. This requires an IP500 Rack Mounting Kit (SAP 700429202) for each unit.

The kit includes:

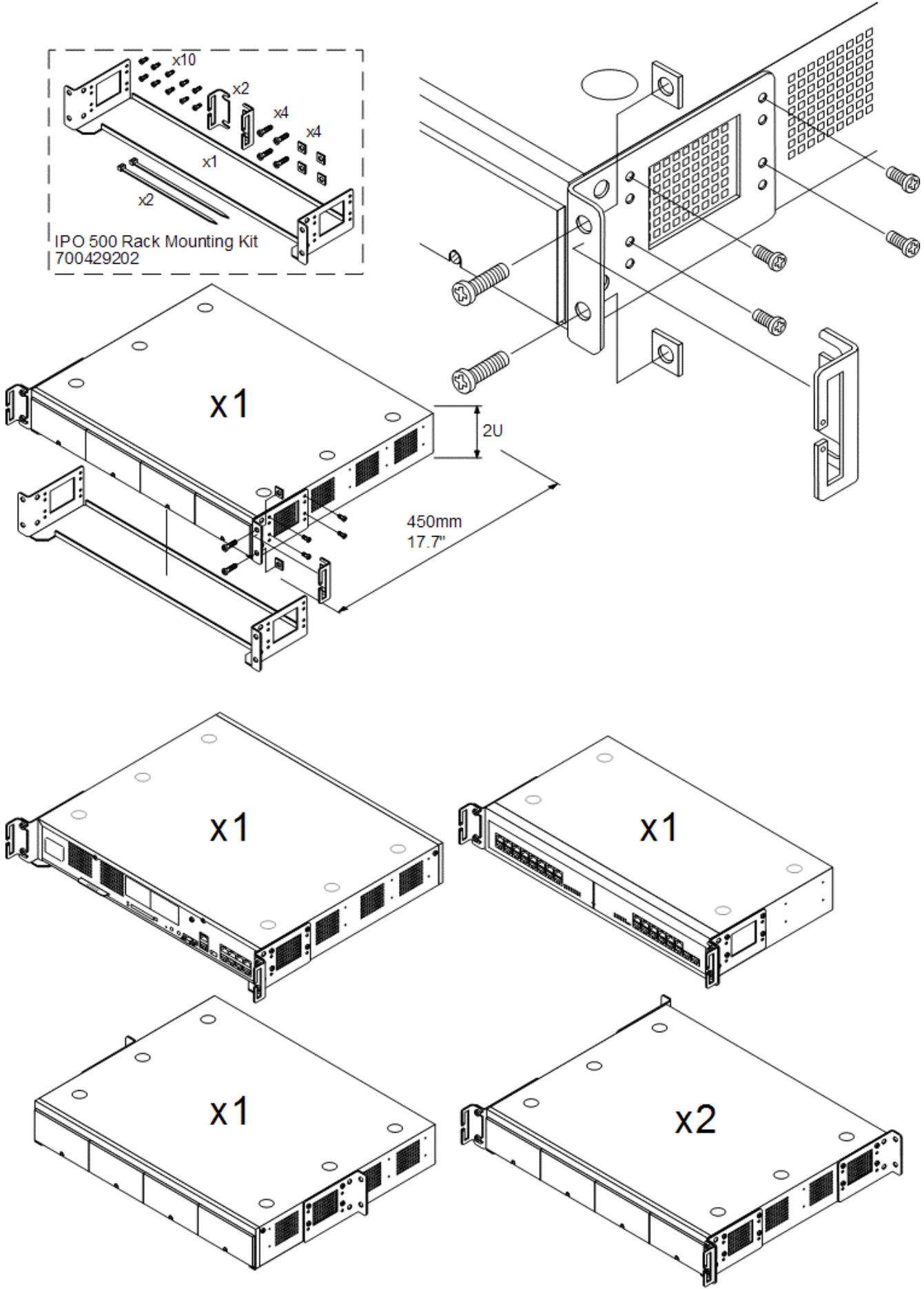
- A rack mounting bracket and screws for attachment of the bracket to the unit
- Nuts and bolts for rack attachment.
- Brackets and cable ties for cable tidying.

As indicated in the diagram following, the rack mounting bracket can be used in several positions on the unit. IP400 external expansion units used in an IP500 system can also be rack mounted but use a separate IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.

### Environmental Requirements

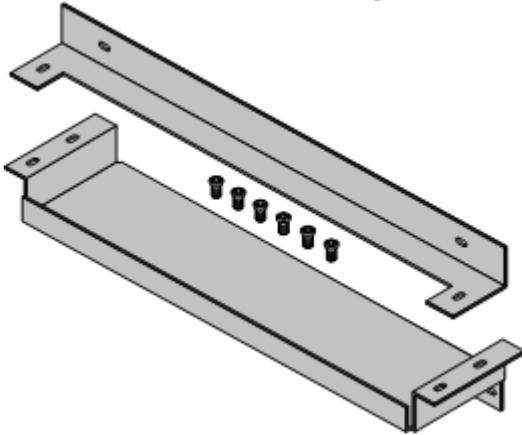
In addition to the existing environmental requirements for an IP Office system, the following additional factors must be considered when rack mounting a unit:

1. Rack Positioning - Ensure compliance with the rack manufacturers safety instructions. For example check that the rack legs have been lowered and fixing brackets have been used to stop toppling.
2. Elevated Operating Ambient - If installed in a closed or multi-unit rack assembly, the operating ambient temperature of the rack environment may be greater than room ambient. Therefore, consideration should be given to installing the equipment in an environment compatible with the maximum ambient temperature (T<sub>ma</sub>) specified by the manufacturer.
  - **Operating Temperature:** 0°C (32°F) to 40°C (104°F).
  - **Operating Humidity:** 10% to 95% non-condensing.
3. Reduced Air Flow - Installation of the equipment in a rack should be such that the amount of air flow required for safe operation of the equipment is not compromised. Proper ventilation must be maintained. The side ventilation slots on the IP500 control unit should not be covered or blocked.
4. Mechanical Loading - Mounting of the equipment in the rack should be such that a hazardous condition is not achieved due to uneven mechanical loading.
5. Circuit Overloading - Consideration should be given to the connection of the equipment to the supply circuit and the effect that overloading of the circuits might have on overcurrent protection and supply wiring. Appropriate consideration of equipment nameplate ratings should be used when addressing this concern.
6. Reliable Earthing - Reliable earthing of rack-mounted equipment should be maintained. Particular attention should be given to supply connections other than direct connections to the branch circuit (e.g. use of power strips).
7.  Only the screws (M3 x 6mm) provided with the mounting kit should be used to attach the brackets to the control unit.



- ⚠ Only the screws (M3 x 6mm) provided with the mounting kit should be used to attach the brackets to the control unit.

## S. Wall Mounting (IP500)

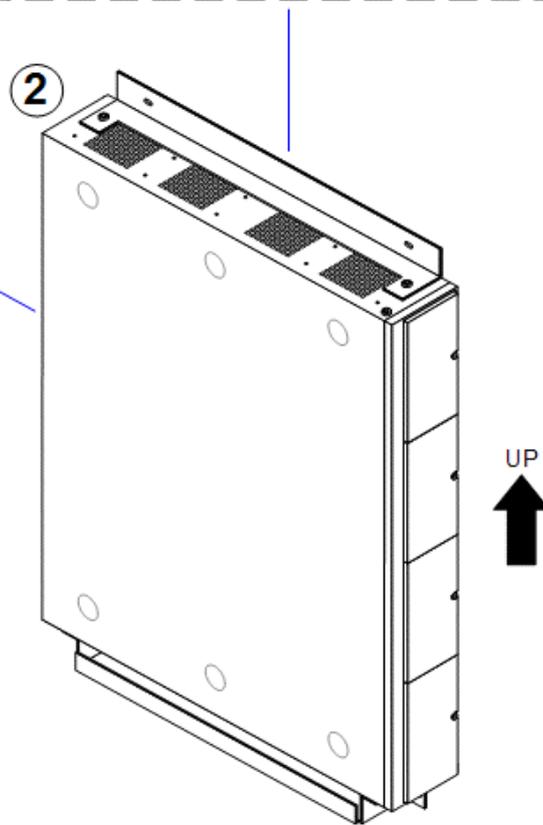
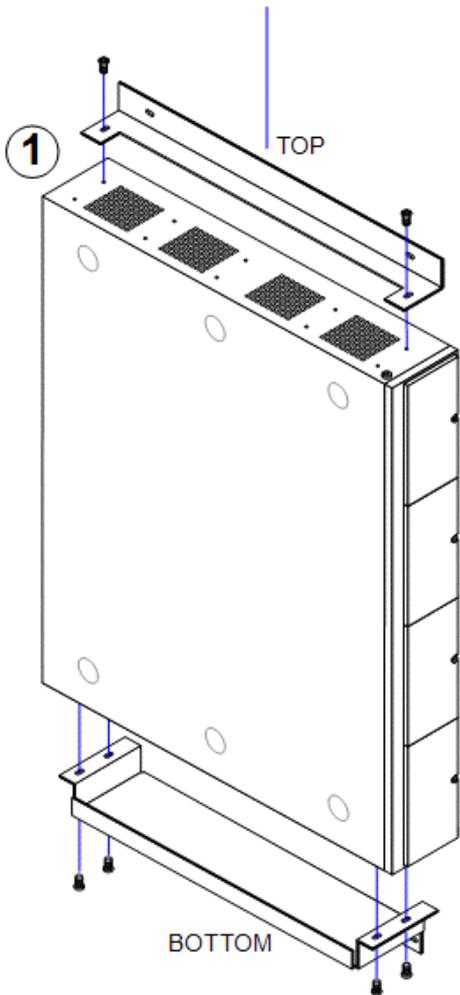
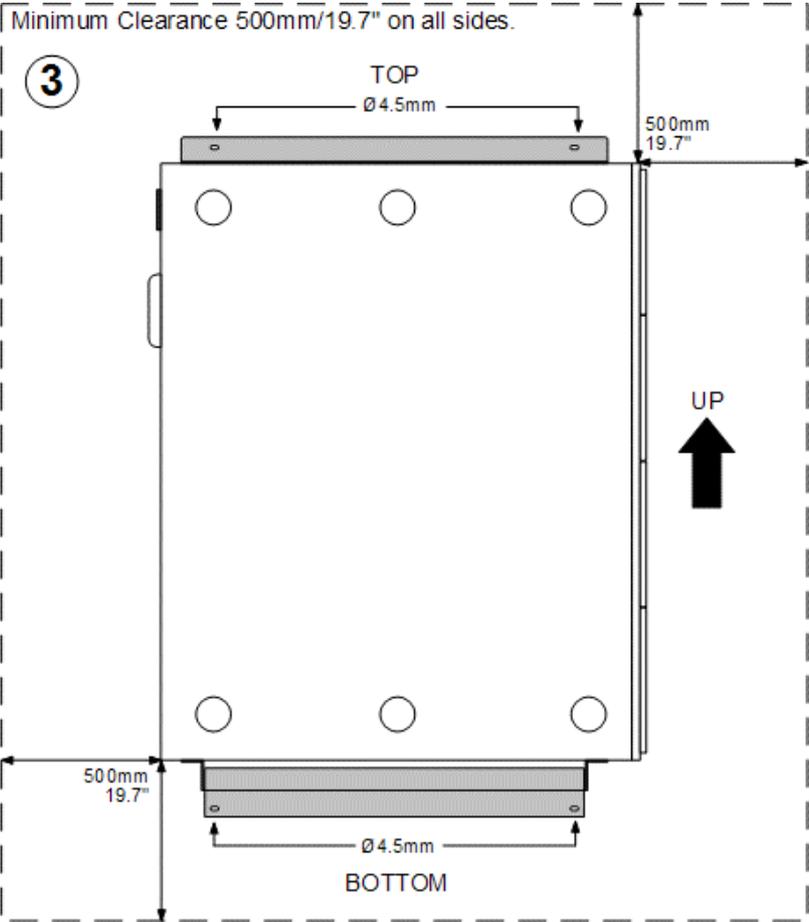
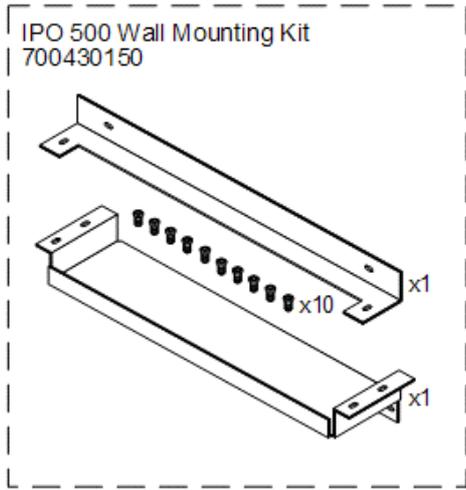


The IP500 control unit can be wall mounted. This requires an IP500 Wall Mounting Kit (SAP 700430150) plus additional 4.5mm fixtures and fittings suitable for the wall type. The wall mounting kit includes two brackets, one top and one bottom.

### Environmental Requirements

In addition to the existing environmental requirements for an IP Office system, the following additional requirements apply when wall mounting a unit:

- ⚠ The wall surface must be vertical, flat and vibration free.
- ⚠ A minimum clearance of 500mm (19.7 inches) is required on all sides.
- ⚠ The unit must be orientated as shown when mounted. That is with the base card slots facing right when viewed from in front of the unit.
- ⚠ The brackets must be used as shown, with the deeper tray-like bracket used at the bottom of the wall mounted control unit.
- ⚠ Only the screws (M3 x 6mm) provided with the mounting kit should be used to attach the brackets to the control unit.



-  Fix to solid vertical surface using wall fixings suitable for the wall type.
-  Orientation must be as shown.
-  A minimum clearance of 500mm/19.7" is required on all sides.

-  The brackets must be used as shown, with the deeper tray-like bracket used at the bottom of the wall mounted control unit.
-  Only the screws (M3 x 6mm) provided with the mounting kit should be used to attach the brackets to the control unit.

## T. Grounding (IP500)

Use of ground connections reduces the likelihood of problems in most telephony and data systems. This is especially important in buildings where multiple items of equipment are interconnected using long cable runs, for example phone and data networks.

All IP Office control units and external expansion modules must be connected to a functional ground. In some cases, such as ground start trunks, in addition to being a protective measure this is a functional requirement for the equipment to operate. In other cases it may be a locale regulatory requirement and or a necessary protective step, for example areas of high lightning risk.

-  **WARNING**

During installation do not assume that ground points are correctly connected to ground. Test ground points before relying on them to ground connected equipment.

The ground point on IP Office control units and external expansion modules are marked with a  or  symbol. Ground connections to these points should use a 14 AWG solid wire with either a green sleeve for a functional ground or green and yellow sleeve for a protective ground.

- **Additional protective equipment**

In addition to grounding, additional protective equipment will be required in the following situations. Refer to "Out of Building Telephone Installations".

- On any Digital Station or Phones external expansion module connected to an extension located in another building.
- In the Republic of South Africa, on all Analog Trunk external expansion modules (ATM16) and on any control units containing an analog trunk cards (ATM4/ATM4U).



### Tools Required

1.  M4 Cross-Head Screwdriver.
2.  Tools suitable for crimping a cable spade.



### Parts and Equipment Required

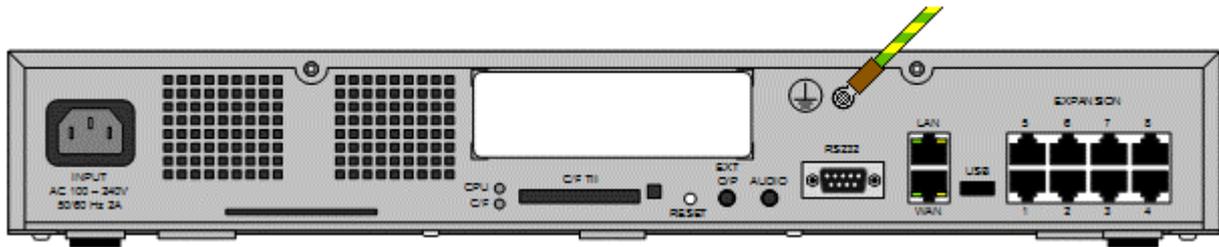
1.  14AWG Solid copper wire for ground connection.
2.  Cable sleeve matching local regulator requirements. Typically green for a functional ground and green/yellow for a protective ground.

1.  Procedure

The ground point on IP Office control units and expansion modules are marked with a  or  symbol. Ground connections to these points should use a 14 AWG solid wire with either a green sleeve for a functional ground or green and yellow sleeve for a protective ground.

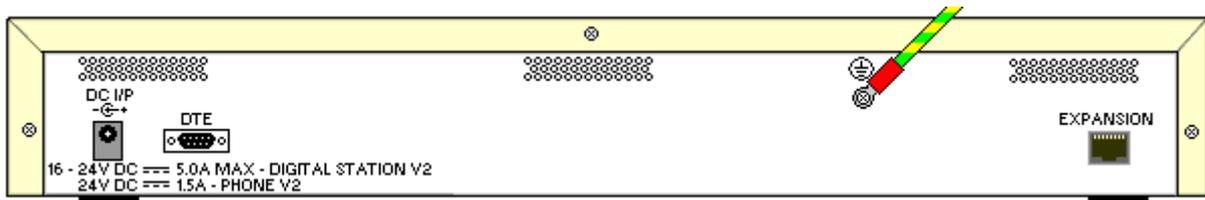
**IP500 Control Unit**

On IP500 control units the ground point is located above the RS232 DTE port.



**External Expansion Modules**

On expansion modules, the ground point is a 4mm screw located towards the right on the rear of the module.



- On some older modules, the dedicated ground point screw is not present. In those cases, the top-center cover fixing screw (3mm) can be used as an alternative ground connection point. A toothed washer should be added to ensure good contact.

## Running the System Status Application

In the previous process (Configuring Security Settings) the Administrator service user was configured to be able to use the IP Office System Status Application (SSA) with the control unit. This application is useful during the following installation processes as it can be used to validate the correct installation of equipment.

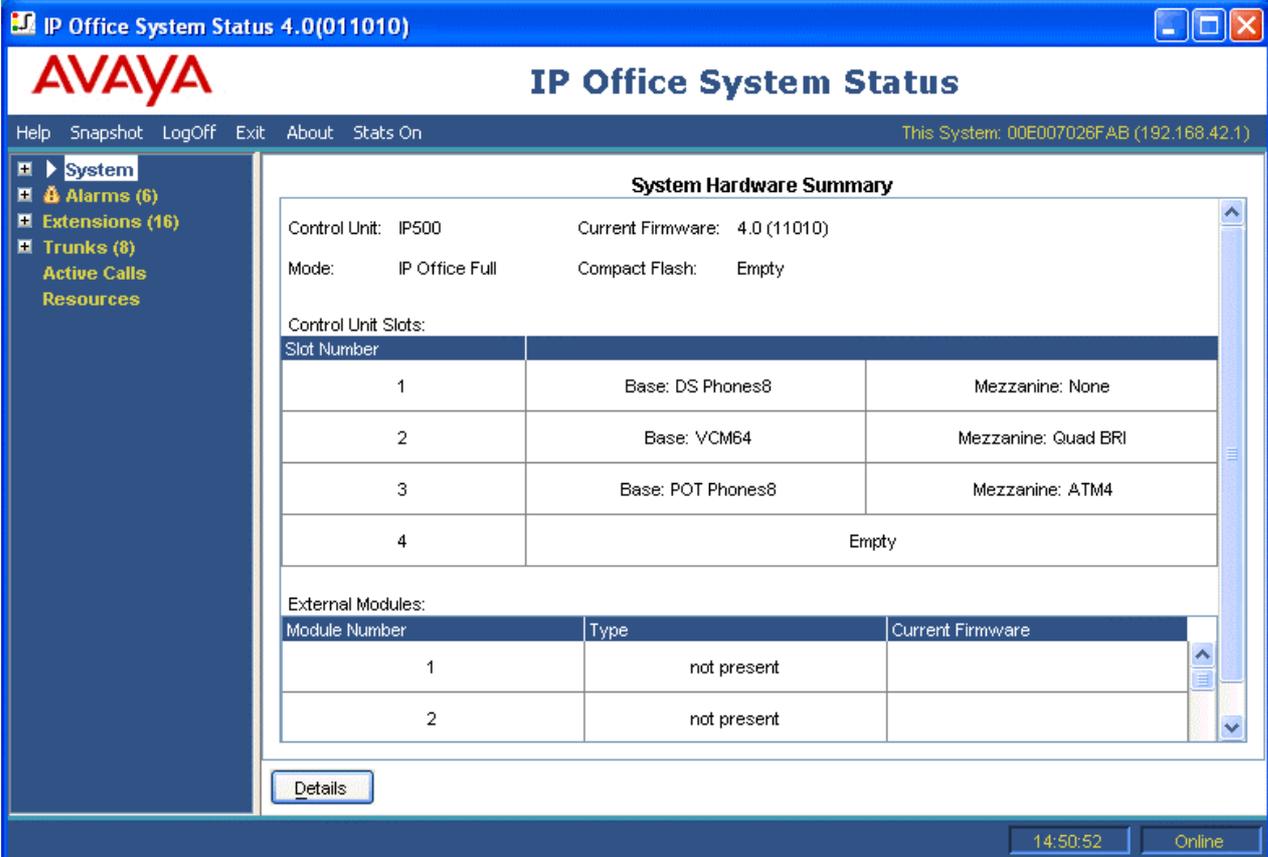
By default the System Status Application is enabled for the Administrator service user. For other service users, use of System Status Application must be enabled through the IP Office's security settings.

 **Objective** - Allow SSA to be used to check the correct installation of additional equipment.

1.   
2.   
3. 

### Procedure

1. Select **Start | Programs | IP Office | System Status**.
2. On the **Logon** menu enter the required details. For a default systems these will be:
  - **Control Unit IP Address:** 192.168.42.1
  - **Services Base TCP Port:** 50804
  - **User Name:** Administrator
  - **Password:** Administrator
3. Click **Logon**.
4. If the details are correct, SSA should show Waiting for connection and then the IP Office system status.



**System Hardware Summary**

Control Unit: IP500      Current Firmware: 4.0 (11010)  
 Mode: IP Office Full      Compact Flash: Empty

Control Unit Slots:

Slot Number	Base	Mezzanine
1	Base: DS Phones8	Mezzanine: None
2	Base: VCM64	Mezzanine: Quad BRI
3	Base: POT Phones8	Mezzanine: ATM4
4	Empty	

External Modules:

Module Number	Type	Current Firmware
1	not present	
2	not present	

Details

14:50:52      Online



---

# F. Phone Installation

---

## Installing Phones

This section does not cover the installation of IP and wireless phones. They are covered by the following separate documentation:

- **IP Office 3600 Series Installation Manual.**
- **IP Office 4600/5600 IP Phones Installation Manual.**
- **IP Office Compact DECT Installation Manual.**
- **IP DECT Installation Manual.**

This section assumes that phones are being connected to IP Office within an existing RJ45 structured cabling system. If phone connections are being made through older punchdown wiring systems then the installer is expected to be qualified and approved for that type of installation.

### Out of Building Connections

Connection to analog and digital phones not located in the same building as the IP Office is only supported with the addition of additional protective equipment and additional installation requirements. See Out of Building Telephone Installations.

## Installing 2400/5400 Series Phones

Normally, when the IP Office system is restarted and Manager is running, the system will compare the firmware loaded on 2400/5400 Series phones against those available in the Manager directory and automatically upgrade if necessary. There may be some rare cases where new firmware files are provided and it is necessary to force the phones to upgrade.

### Information Required

1.  **Planning Chart.**

This should indicate which extension should connect to which ports on the IP Office system. It should also include intended extension numbers and user details.

### Parts and Equipment Required

1.  **2400/5400 Series Phone**

Each phone includes a handset and handset cord. No line cord is included. A plastic-wedge is provided to change the phone's angle for wall or desk mounting. In addition for XX10 and XX20 models an adjustable desk stand is included.

2.  **Phone connection cable**

These phones are not supplied with a line cord. The cable required will depend on the ports provided at each user position.

1.  **RJ45-to-RJ11 Cable**

This type of cable will be required if an structured cabling system has been used.

2.  **RJ11-to-RJ11 Cable**

This type of cable is required if a traditional RJ11 phone socket has been provided at the user position.

3.  **IP Office connection cable**

Typically an RJ45-to-RJ45 cable is required for connection from the structured cabling system patch panel to the IP Office control unit or expansion unit DS port.

4.  **Wall Fixings**

The phone base is designed to fit directly onto a standard US telephone jack wall plate. Outside the US, two M3 pan-head screws are required, positioned 79mm apart vertically around the phones centerline.

### Tools Required

1.  **Manager PC**

During installation each 2400/5400 series phone requests software from Manager and then loads that software before becoming operational.

2.  **Desk Mounting**

No additional tools required.

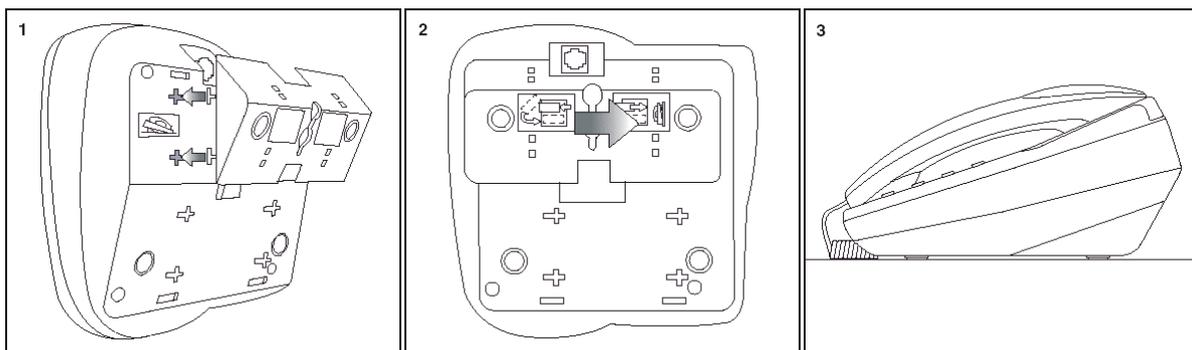
3.  **Wall Mounting**

If not using a US telephone jack wall plate; drills, screw-drivers and measures for the installation of M3 pan-head screws and wall fixings.



### Procedure: Desk Mounting

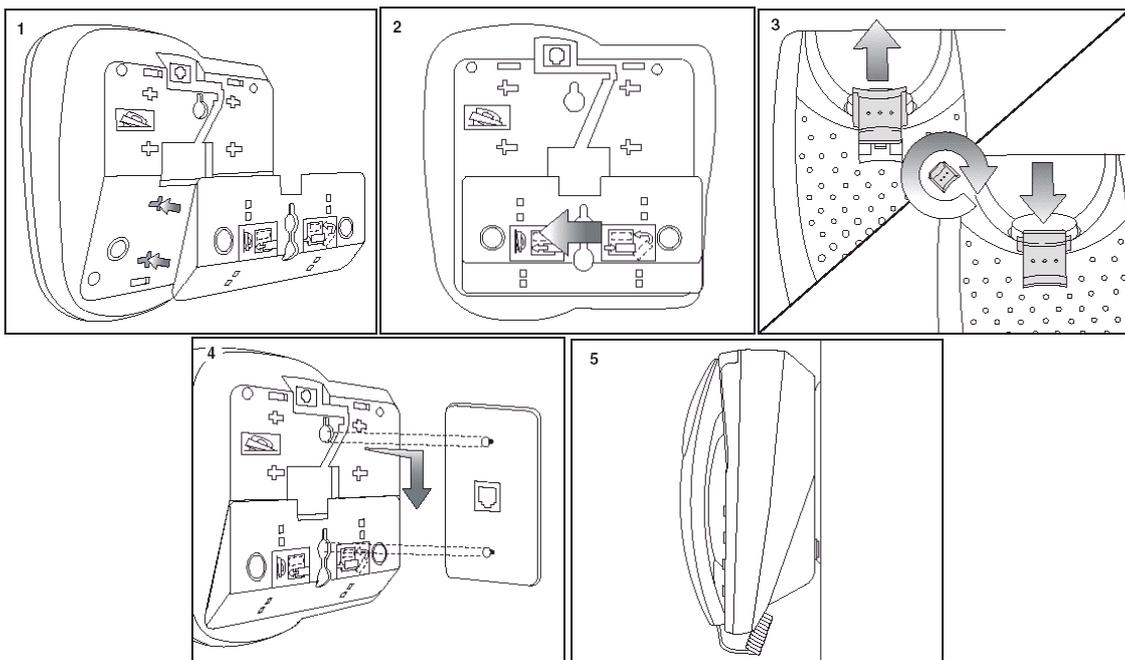
1. At the IP Office end, check that each DS port is connected to the appropriate port in the structured cabling system patch panel.
2. Start Manager. During installation each 2400/5400 series phone requests software from Manager and then loads that software before becoming operational.
3. Unpack the phone.
4. The phones are supplied with the plastic mounting wedge in the wall mounting position as this allows a smaller box size.
5. Slide off the plastic wedge and reattach it in the opposite position so that the phone is now angled for use on a desk.
6. Connect the handset cord to the handset.
7. Connect the handset cord to the port labelled  **HAC**. This is normally located on the left-hand side of the phone.
8. Connect the line cord to the port marked with a  symbol.
9. Connect the line cord to the desk socket.
10. The phone should display **Upgrading firmware, please wait** and then **FIRMWARE UPDATE IN PROGRESS**. Once this has completed the should briefly display **New Calls: 0** and then the current users name and extension number.
11. For XX10 and XX20 models, assemble the adjustable desk stand. Attach the stand to the base of the phone.





**Procedure: Wall Mounting**

1. If a standard US telephone jack wall plate is not being used, prepare the wall fixings for the M3 pan head screws being used to mount the phone.
2. At the IP Office end, check that each DS port is connected to the appropriate port in the structured cabling system patch panel.
3. Start Manager. During installation each 2400/5400 series phone requests software from Manager and then loads that software before becoming operational.
4. Unpack the phone.
5. The phones are supplied with the plastic mounting wedge in the wall mounting position as this allows a smaller box size.
6. Slide off the plastic wedge and remove the self-taping screw that is taped inside the wedge.
7. Reattach the plastic wedge in its original position. The self-taping screw can be used to lock the plastic wedge in position.
8. Just below the phones hook-switch is a small plastic square. Remove this and then reinsert it so that a plastic lug projects out towards the hook-switch. This helps ensure that the handset stays in position when the phone is wall mounted.
9. Connect the handset cord to the handset.
10. Connect the handset cord to the port labelled  **HAC**. This is normally located on the left-hand side of the phone.
11. Connect the line cord to the port marked with a  symbol.
12. Connect the line cord to the wall socket.
13. The phone should display **Upgrading firmware, please wait** and then **FIRMWARE UPDATE IN PROGRESS**. Once this has completed the should briefly display **New Calls: 0** and then the current users name and extension number.
14. The line cord can be run through the channel in the base of the phone to space at the center. This space can be used to conceal excess cable.
15. Slide the phone onto the exposed heads of the wall mounting position.

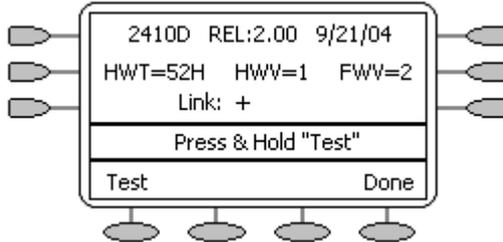


## Additional Procedures

1.   
2.   
3. 

### Procedure: Checking the Firmware on a 2410 or 5410 Phone

1. Press →  **Exit** to ensure that the phone has exited any other usage mode.
2. Press either of the display keys next to **MENU**.
3. Select **OPTION**.
4. Select **Self Test**. The display should now show details of the phone's currently installed firmware.

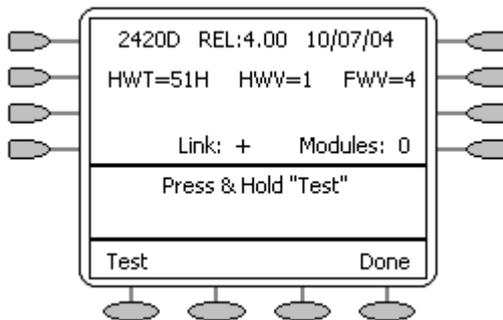


5. The firmware loaded into the phones has a major and minor version. The Major version in the example above is shown as “FWV=2” and the minor version is shown as “REL:2.00”.
6. Press →  **Exit** to exit self test mode.

1.   
2.   
3. 

### Procedure: Checking the Firmware on a 2420 or 5420 Phone

1. Select **OPTION**.
2. Select **Self Test**. The display should now show details of the phone's currently installed firmware.



3. The firmware loaded into the phones has a major and minor version. The Major version in the example above is shown as “FWV=4” and the minor version is shown as “REL:4.00”.
4. Press →  **Exit** to exit self test mode.



### Procedure: Forcing a Software Upgrade

-  **The following procedure should only be used if it has been determined that the 2400/5400 Series phones need to be manually forced to change their firmware. During this process the phone cannot be used.**
1. Locate the Manager program directory and within it the files **turn\_on.bat** and **turn\_off.bat**.
  2. Right-click on **turn\_on.bat** and select **Edit**.
  3. Locate the entry **<IP Address>** and replace this with the IP address of the IP Office system.
  4. Close the file and save the changes.
  5. Repeat steps 2 to 4 for the file **turn\_off.bat**.
  6. Ensure that Manager is running. Manager acts as the TFTP server from which the phones will request firmware files.
  7. Double-click on the file **turn\_on.bat**.
  8. A prompt window should appear asking you to wait and eventually if successful **Press any key to continue**.
  9. Within Manager, select **File | Advanced | Reboot** and reboot the IP Office system.
  10. Following the system restart, the 2400 and 5400 Series phones will display **Upgrading firmware, please wait** and then **FIRMWARE UPDATE IN PROGRESS**.
  11. Once all the phones have completed their upgrade, double-click on **turn\_off.bat**.

## Installing an EU24 Add-On

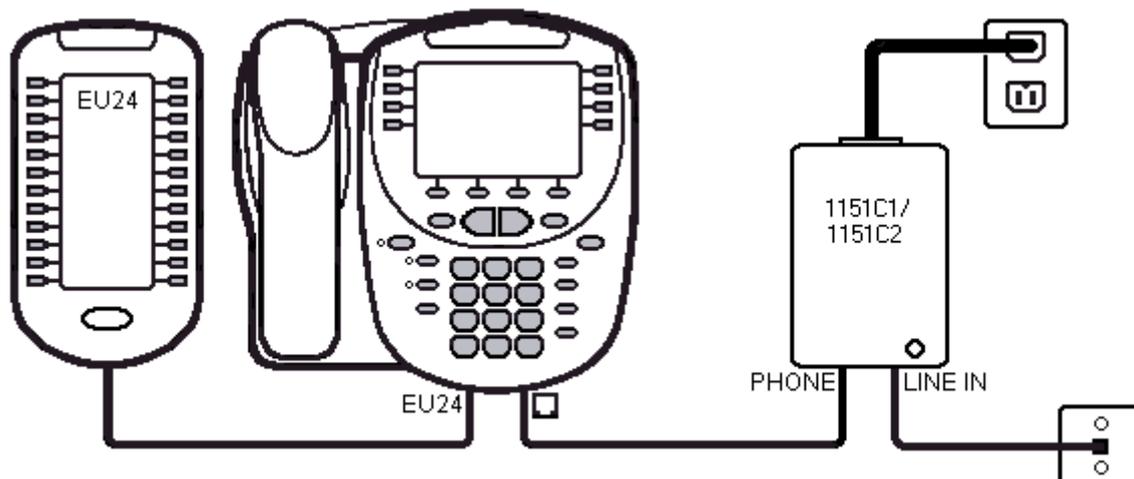
The EU24 add-on is supported on IP Office 3.0 and higher. It provides an additional 24 programmable feature keys for the associated phone. The action provided by each of these keys is set through the IP Office configuration. The EU24BL is supported on IP Office 3.1 or higher and provides a backlight function that matches the same facility on the 4621 phone.

A single EU24 or EU24BL is supported on the following phones. A maximum of eight EU24 and or EU24BL per IP Office system.

Phone	EU24	EU24BL
2420/5420	✓	✗
4620/5620	✓	✓
4621/5621	✓	✓
4625	✓	✓

- ⚠ **Use Only the Cables Supplied**  
 Only the cable supplied with the EU24/EU24BL should for connection to the EU24/EU24BL. This cable should only be connected to the port marked EU24 on suitable phones. Doing otherwise will cause damage to the EU24/EU24BL and the equipment to which it is attached.
- Additional Power Supply Must Be Used**  
 When used with DS port phones, the EU24 and EU24BL require the phone to use an additional power supply unit, either an Avaya 1151C1 or an Avaya 1151C2. For IP phones, use of PoE is only supported if the PoE is Class 3.

### Procedure: Installing an EU24/EU24BL



- Disconnect the existing phone cable from the phone socket to the phone. In the case of IP phones, this will be an existing CAT5 cable. For other phones this will be either an RJ45-to-RJ11 cable or an RJ11-to-RJ11 cable depending on the fixed socket type.
- Reconnect the same cable from the phone socket to the power supply unit's **LINE IN** socket.
- Connect the cable supplied with the PSU, from the power supply unit's **PHONE** socket to the socket marked  on the phone.
- Connect the cable supplied with the EU24/EU24BL from the EU24 to the port marked EU24 on the phone.
- Connect the power supply module to the power outlet socket.

## Basic Button Programming

Most Avaya phones have programmable button against which IP Office actions can be programmed. Full details of this are covered by the IP Office Button Programming and the IP Office Key and Lamp Operation manuals.

This section covers only the basic elements of button programming.

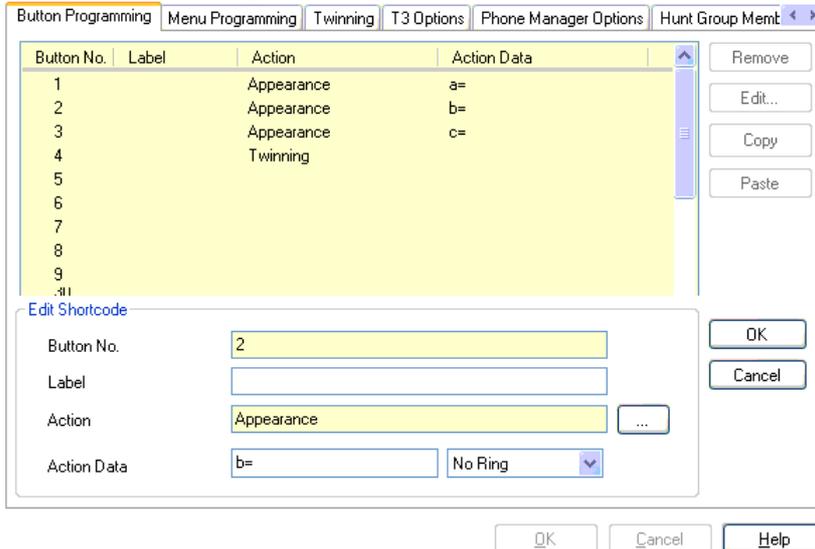
### Appearance Button Requirements

1. The first button must be a call appearance button.
2. Any other call appearance buttons must follow the first in a continuous block.
3. Except on phones with only two physical programmable buttons, the minimum recommend number of call appearance buttons is 3.
4. No call coverage, bridged or line appearance buttons can be programmed until a user has call appearance buttons.
5. Appearance buttons set on buttons not matched by the user's current associated phone are not used and are ignored by the IP Office.

## 1. Procedure

Using IP Office Manager, if only button programming changes are required, the configuration changes can be merged back to the IP Office system without requiring a reboot.

1. Using Manager load the current configuration from the IP Office.
2. Select the  **User** required to display their configuration details.
3. Select **Button Programming**.



Button No.	Label	Action	Action Data
1		Appearance	a=
2		Appearance	b=
3		Appearance	c=
4		Twinning	
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			

**Edit Shortcode**

Button No.

Label

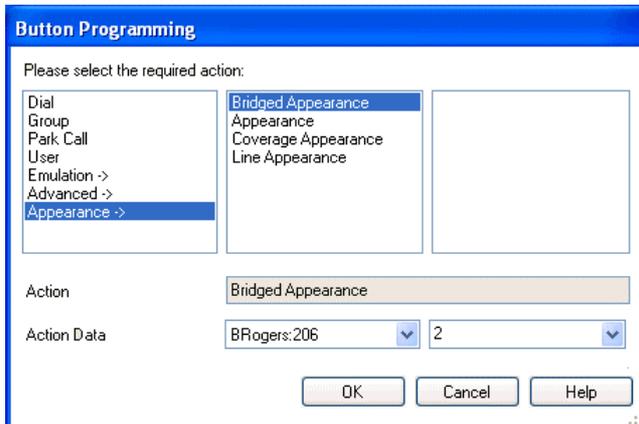
Action  ...

Action Data

OK Cancel

OK Cancel Help

- The number of button displayed is based on the phone associated with the user when the configuration was loaded. This can be overridden by selecting **Display All Buttons**. This may be necessary for users who switch between different phones using hot desking or have an expansion unit attached to their phone.
4. For the required button, either select the button and then click **Edit** or double-click the button.
  5. Edit the settings as required. Use the ... button to display the menu for selecting the required button action. Select the action and set the action data, then click **OK**.



Please select the required action:

Dial  
Group  
Park Call  
User  
Emulation ->  
Advanced ->  
Appearance ->

Bridged Appearance  
Appearance  
Coverage Appearance  
Line Appearance

Action

Action Data

OK Cancel Help

6. Click **OK**. Repeat for any other buttons.
7. Click **OK**.

An alternate method for the above programming is to right-click on the various fields. To do this start with the **Action** field, then **Action Data** and then **Label** if required.

## Changing Extension Numbers

A new or defaulted IP Office system numbers each extension in sequence, going by module and port order, starting from 201. An extension entry is created in the configuration and also an associated user entry. A similar process occurs when a new extension expansion module is detected.

- **⚠ Extension versus User**

It is important with IP Office to understand that "extension number" is a user property that belongs to and moves with the user. For example users can use hot desking to login on another phone and calls to that user's extension number will then go to that phone (the phone temporarily assumes their extension number and settings) until the user log off. The Base Extension value set against extensions in the IP Office configuration indicate the default associated user of the extension, it is not the extension number of that port.

### 🎯 Objective

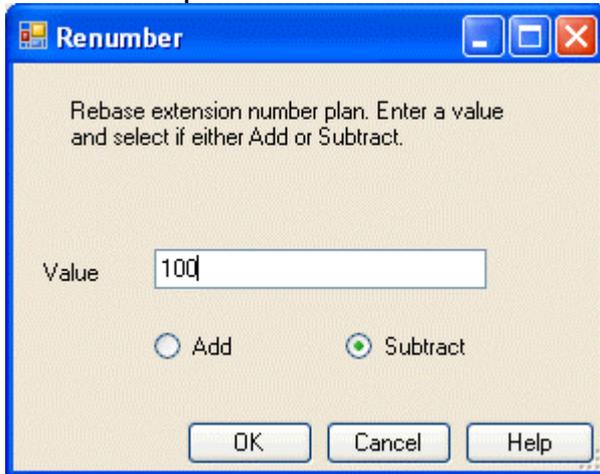
To change a user's or users' extension number.



#### Procedure 1: Renumbering all extensions and users

The following process allows all user extension numbers to be shift up or down by a set amount. Any settings linked to those numbers are adjusted including extension Base Extension settings. It does not affect hunt group extension numbers.

1. **⚠** This action alters extension settings and so requires a system reboot when the configuration is sent to the IP Office.
2. Select **Tools | Renumber Extension**.



3. Enter the amount by which you want to shift the current extension numbering of extensions and users.
4. Click **OK**.
5. If the configuration changes are complete, send the configuration back to the IP Office and select appropriate settings for the reboot.



## Procedure 2: Changing an Individual User's Extension Number

1. Select  **User**.
2. Locate and select the relevant user.
3. On the **User** tab, change the **Extension** number to the required new number.

User	
Name	SJones
Password	
Confirm Password	
Full Name	Steve Jones
Extension	202
Locale	
Priority	5
<input type="checkbox"/> Ex Directory	

4. Click on another field. If an error warning appears it will most likely be due to a conflict with an existing use of that extension number.
  - If this an error, click **Cancel** to return the user to their original extension number.
  - If this is intended as the other entry will be corrected click **OK** and then edit the other entry.
  - When **OK** is clicked, Manager will automatically propagate the number change to any hunt groups, incoming call routes, user buttons, bridged appearance buttons and call coverage appearance buttons associated with the user's original extension number.
5. If the user has an extension with which they are associated by being the extension's Base Extension setting, that setting is not automatically updated (even though we asked engineering for that feature). If the user should still be associated with that extension by default, the extension must be updated manually to match the user's new extension number.
  - a.  This part of the process requires an IP Office system reboot as it changes extension port settings.
  - b. Select  **Extension**.
  - c. Change the **Base Extension** number to match the user extension who should now be associated with that physical port by default.

Extn	
Extension Id	35
Base Extension	203
Caller Display Type	On
Reset Volume After Calls	<input type="checkbox"/>
Device type	 Avaya 5410
Module	BD
Port	1

- d. Click **OK**. Manager will probably give a validation error message due to a user being associated with two extensions. This can be ignored until all the user moves have been completed.
6. If changing several users repeat the process as required.
7. Click  to revalidate the configuration and check that no conflicts between users and associated extensions.
8. If the configuration changes are complete, send the configuration back to the IP Office and select appropriate settings for the reboot.

# Swapping Extension Users

Occasionally, for example for office moves, users may want to move all their settings permanently to another extension.

## Objective

Change the default user associated with an extension port.

1.   
2.   
3. 

### Procedure 1: Swapping Analog and Digital Extension Users Using Structured Cabling

For installations where structured cabling has been used, the simplest way to swap users is to swap the cable connections at the RJ45 patch panel. This moves the user settings between phones without requiring any change to the IP Office configuration. If done this way, ensure that records of the cable connections are updated.

1.   
2.   
3. 

### Procedure 2: Swapping Avaya 4600/5600 Series IP Extensions

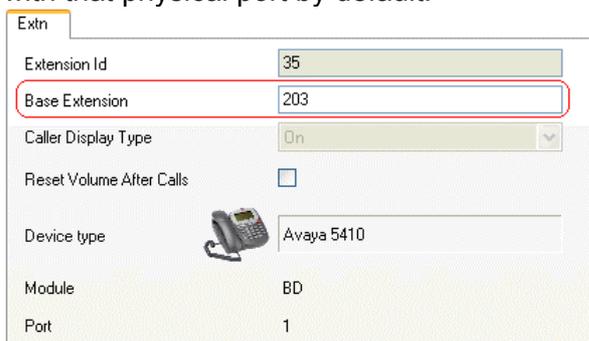
These phones cannot be swapped through cabling as the phone retains its settings including its default associated user. The phone can be physically exchanged. Alternatively the extensions can be disconnected and then as each is reattached reset using **HOLD RESET#**. Refer to the 4600/5600 IP Phone Installation manual.

1.   
2.   
3. 

### Procedure 3: Swapping Users Using Configuration Change

This method can be used when physical access to the system is not practical, for example for remote maintenance.

1.  This process requires an IP Office system reboot as it changes extension port settings.
2. Select  **Extension**.
3. Change the **Base Extension** number to match the user extension who should now be associated with that physical port by default.



Extn	
Extension Id	35
Base Extension	203
Caller Display Type	On
Reset Volume After Calls	<input type="checkbox"/>
Device type	Avaya 5410
Module	BD
Port	1

4. Click **OK**. Manager will probably give a validation error message due to a user being associated with two extensions. This can be ignored until all the user moves have been completed.
5. If swapping or moving several users repeat the process for another extension.
6. Click  to revalidate the configuration and check that no conflicts between users and associated extensions remain.
7. If the configuration changes are complete, send the configuration back to the IP Office and select appropriate settings for the reboot.

---

# G. External Trunk Configuration

---

## Trunk Configuration

This section cover the basic requirements for external trunk configuration. The exactly method of physical connection and configuration will vary with each trunk provider and so requires local telecoms experience. The topics covered here are general guidelines.

- **Clock Quality**  
Altering which digital trunk is used to provide the IP Office with its clock signal for call synchronization.
- **Unused Trunks**  
Disabling the use of trunks and trunk channels that are not available.
- **Prefix Dialing**  
On systems where a prefix is being used for external dialing, ensuring that the same prefix is added to incoming numbers in order to allow return calls.

## Clock Quality

### Summary

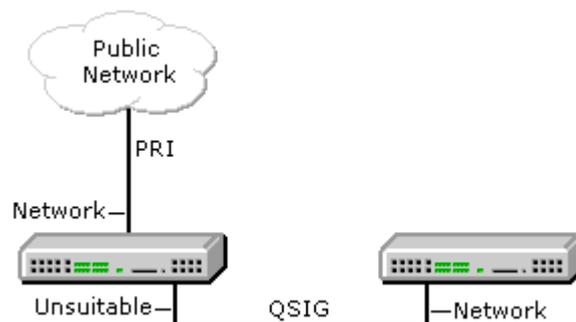
Any system where digital trunks are being used requires a clock signal for call synchronization between the switches at each end of the trunk. Typically the clock signal provided by a digital trunk from the central office exchange is the best quality and most reliable source.

The IP Office can obtain and use the clock signal from any of its digital trunks. However it will only use one trunk for its clock signal at any time and will ignore any other possible clock sources. If no clock source is available the IP Office can use its own internal clock if necessary.

The **Clock Quality** setting on each line is set to one of the following:

- **Network**  
If available, the clock signal from this trunk can be used as the IP Office's clock source.
- **Fallback**  
If available, the clock signal from this trunk can be used as the clock source only if none of the trunks set to Network are providing a clock source.
- **Unsuitable**  
The clock source from this trunk is never used as the IP Office's clock source.

In the example below the first IP Office is set to use the public network trunk as its clock source and ignoring the possible clock source from the QSIG trunk. However the other system is using the QSIG trunk as its clock source.



### Source Priority

When multiple trunks with the same setting are providing a clock signal, the trunk used is determined in the following order of priority.

- **Small Office Edition** - Trunks are used in the order of ports 1 to 4.
- **IP400 Control Units** - Trunks are used in the order Slot B ports 1 to 4, then Slot A ports 1 to 4.
- **IP500 Control Unit** - Trunks are used in the order of slots 1 to 4 and then by port on each slot.

### Viewing the Current Clock Source

The current clock source being used by an IP Office system is shown on the Resources page within the IP Office System Status Application.

**Objective** - Set a chosen digital trunk as the network clock source and set all other digital trunks as fallback or unsuitable.

1. ✓  
2. ✓  
3. □ **Procedure**

1. Within the IP Office configuration, select **Line**.
2. For each digital line, select the line and on the **Line** tab select whether that trunk should provide the clock source for the network or whether the trunk is unsuitable. For E1R2 trunks the **Clock Quality** setting is on the **Advanced** tab.

The screenshot shows the configuration page for a PRI 24 Line. The 'Clock Quality' dropdown menu is open, showing three options: 'Network', 'Fallback', and 'Unsuitable'. The 'Network' option is currently selected. Other configuration fields include: Line Number (01), Line SubType (T1), Channel Allocation (24 -> 1), Prefix (empty), Framing (ESF), Zero Suppression (B8ZS), Line Signalling (CPE), Haul Length (0-115 ft), Incoming Routing Digits (4), and Channel Unit (Foreign Exchange).

3. Ensure that only one trunk is set to **Network**. This should preferably be a direct digital trunk to the central office exchange.
4. One other trunk can be set a Fallback should the selected Network trunk connection be lost. If possible this should be a trunk from a different provider since that reduces the chances of both sources failing at the same time.
5. Ensure that all other digital trunks are set as **Unsuitable**.

# Unused Trunks

## Summary

Each IP Office trunk card provides a fixed number of trunk ports. For digital trunks each trunk provides a set number of digital channels. In cases where the number of trunks connected to the IP Office is lower or the number of channels provided is lower, those unused trunks and channel must be disabled.

**⚠** Failure to do this will cause problems with outgoing calls. For example, on a system with an ATM4 trunk card fitted but only two analog trunks actually connected, failure to disable the other two trunks within the IP Office configuration will cause 50% of outgoing call attempts to fail.

## 🎯 Objective

Remove unused trunks and channels from the IP Office configuration.

## 1. 2. 3. Procedure

1. Within the IP Office configuration, select **Line**.
2. For each line, set those lines or channels that are not connected or being used as out of service. The location of the relevant setting varies for each trunk type.

- **Analog Trunks**  
Set the **Trunk Type** to **Out of Service**.

- **BRI, E1 PRI, S0 and QSIG Trunks**  
Set the channels quantities to match the actual subscribed channels.

- **T1, T1 PRI and E1R2 Trunks**

Select the **Channels** tab. Select those channels that are not used and click **Edit**.

PRI 24 Line Channels

Channel	Groups	Line Appearance	Direction	Bearer	Type
1	0 0	705	Bothway	Any	Ground Start
2	0 0	706	Bothway	Any	Ground Start
3	0 0	707	Bothway	Any	Ground Start
4	0 0	708	Bothway	Any	Ground Start
5	0 0	709	Bothway	Any	Ground Start
6	0 0	710	Bothway	Any	Ground Start
7	0 0	711	Bothway	Any	Ground Start
8	0 0	712	Bothway	Any	Ground Start
9	0 0	713	Bothway	Any	Out Of Service
10	0 0	714	Bothway	Any	Out Of Service
11	0 0	715	Bothway	Any	Out Of Service
12	0 0	716	Bothway	Any	Out Of Service
13	0 0	717	Bothway	Any	Out Of Service
14	0 0	718	Bothway	Any	Out Of Service
15	0 0	719	Bothway	Any	Out Of Service
16	0 0	720	Bothway	Any	Out Of Service
17	0 0	721	Bothway	Any	Out Of Service
18	0 0	722	Bothway	Any	Out Of Service
19	0 0	723	Bothway	Any	Out Of Service
20	0 0	724	Bothway	Any	Out Of Service
21	0 0	725	Bothway	Any	Out Of Service
22	0 0	726	Bothway	Any	Out Of Service
23	0 0	727	Bothway	Any	Out Of Service
24	0 0	728	Bothway	Any	Out Of Service

Edit...

- For T1 set the **Type** to **Out of Service**.
- For T1 PRI set the **Admin** field to **Out of Service**.
- For E1R2 trunks set the **Line Signalling Type** to **Out of Service**.

# Prefix Dialing

Where a prefix has been implemented for outgoing calls, that same prefix needs to be added to trunk settings. The prefix is then used as follows;

- On incoming calls the prefix is added to any incoming ICLID received with the call. That allows the ICLID to be used by IP Office phones and applications to make return calls.
- Previously, on outgoing calls, any prefix on the digits received by the trunk to dial was removed since that prefix will not be valid at the central office exchange. Unlike previous IP Office releases, IP Office 4.0 does not do this and so whichever short codes are used to route a call to a trunk, they must be setup so as to remove the dialing prefix.

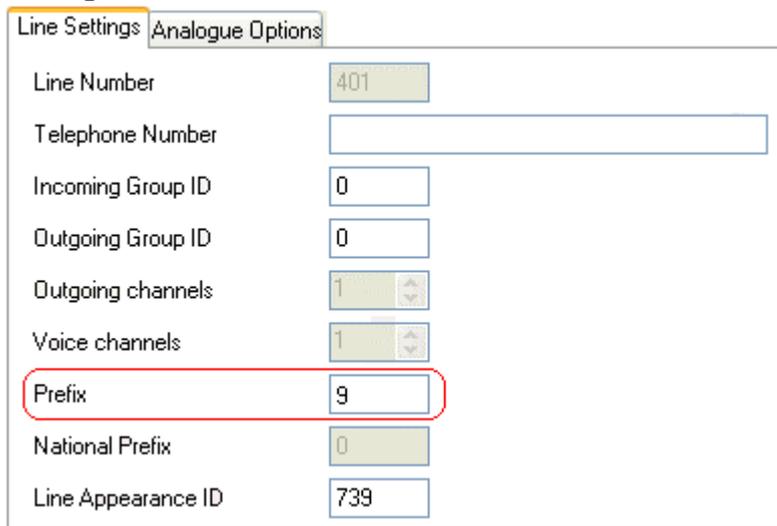
## Objective

Ensure the correct prefix is added to incoming calls.

## Procedure

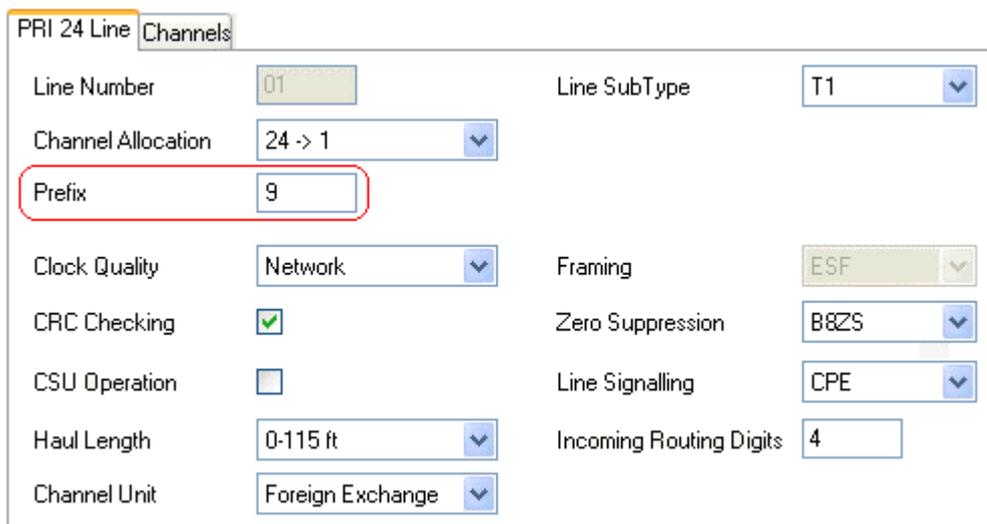
1. Within the IP Office configuration, select **Line**.
2. For each line enter the prefix. The location of the relevant setting varies for each trunk type.

- **Analog Trunks**



The screenshot shows the 'Line Settings' tab for an analog trunk. The 'Analogue Options' sub-tab is active. The 'Prefix' field is highlighted with a red circle and contains the value '9'. Other fields include Line Number (401), Telephone Number (empty), Incoming Group ID (0), Outgoing Group ID (0), Outgoing channels (1), Voice channels (1), National Prefix (0), and Line Appearance ID (739).

- **T1 and T1 PRI Trunks**



The screenshot shows the 'PRI 24 Line' configuration interface. The 'Channels' sub-tab is active. The 'Prefix' field is highlighted with a red circle and contains the value '9'. Other fields include Line Number (01), Line SubType (T1), Channel Allocation (24 -> 1), Clock Quality (Network), Framing (ESF), CRC Checking (checked), Zero Suppression (B8ZS), CSU Operation (unchecked), Line Signalling (CPE), Haul Length (0-115 ft), Incoming Routing Digits (4), and Channel Unit (Foreign Exchange).

- **BRI, E1 PRI, S0 and QSIG Trunks**

PRI Line	Short Codes	Channels	
Line Number	<input type="text" value="05"/>	Line SubType	<input type="text" value="ETSI"/>
Telephone Number	<input type="text"/>	TEI	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Prefix	<input type="text" value="9"/>	Number of Channels	<input type="text" value="20"/>
National Prefix	<input type="text" value="90"/>	Outgoing Channels	<input type="text" value="20"/>
International Prefix	<input type="text" value="900"/>	Voice Channels	<input type="text" value="20"/>
		Data Channels	<input type="text" value="20"/>
CRC Checking	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
Clock Quality	<input type="text" value="Network"/>	Line Signalling	<input type="text" value="CPE"/>



# H. Additional Processes

## Upgrading the Core Software

The installed IP Office Manager includes .bin core software files appropriate to the software level. It can be used to load those .bin file into the control unit and modules within the IP Office system.

### WARNINGS

- **Check IP Office Technical Bulletins**  
Check the latest IP Office Technical Bulletin for the IP Office software release before proceeding any further. It may contain information relating to changes that occurred after this document was completed. Bulletins are available from <http://support.avaya.com>.
- **WAN3 10/100 Modules**  
Upgrade each WAN3 10/100 module separately and only after having upgraded the control unit and any other expansion modules.
- **Upgrading pre-Level 2.1 Systems**  
For IP Office Systems with software Level 2.0 or earlier, the upgrade procedure must be done from a PC with a fixed IP address on the same subnet and LAN segment as the IP Office.
- **Multi-Stage Upgrades**  
Due to the need to adjust internal memory allocation and configuration storage, for some upgrades the control unit may need to perform multi-stage upgrade process. The table below indicates the require upgrade paths.

Control Unit	.bin File	Unvalidated Only	Validated
Small Office Edition	ip401ng.bin	2.0 > 2.1	2.1 > 3.0 > 3.1 > 3.2 > 3.2(999) > 4.1.
IP406 V2	ip406u.bin	–	2.1 > 3.0 > 3.0(999) > 3.1 > 3.1(999) > 3.2 > 4.1.
IP412	ip412.bin	1.3 > 2.1	2.1 > 3.0 > 3.1 > 3.2 > 4.1.
IP500	ip500.bin	–	4.0.0 > 4.1.

- **Multiple Managers**  
If more than one copy of Manager is running it is possible for the IP Office to request BIN files from a different Manager from the one that started the upgrade process. Ensure that only one copy of Manager is running when upgrading an IP Office system.
- **Other IP Office Applications**  
Upgrading the core software of the IP Office control unit may require upgrades to associated software. Typically IP Office is compatible with the previous release of most IP Office applications, however for each IP Office core software release there may be exceptions. These exceptions will be detailed in the Technical Bulletin for the IP Office core software release.

### Information Required

1.  **System Password** - For a new or defaulted system this is *password*.

### Tools Required

1.  **Manager PC** - The Upgrade Wizard tool is part of the Manager application.

**Procedure: Upgrade Procedure**

1. Using Manager, click  and receive the configuration from the IP Office. If not already done this action creates a **BOOTP** entry in Manager for the IP Office system. This action also confirms communication between the Manager PC and the IP Office.
2. Select **File | Save Configuration As...** and save a copy of the configuration file onto the PC. This action should be completed before upgrading any IP Office system.
3. Select **File | Advanced | Upgrade**.
4. The **UpgradeWiz** is started and scans for IP Office modules using the **Unit/Broadcast address**. Adjust this address and click **Refresh** if the expected modules are not shown.
5. For each the control unit and module found, the **UpgradeWiz** displays the module type, its current version of software installed in the unit and the software version of the .bin file that Manager has available.
6. For those units and modules where manager detects that it has a higher version available, the tick box next to the unit or module is automatically selected.
7. If any of the modules have pre-version 2.1 software installed, untick the **Validate** option.
  -  If this is the case, only continue with the upgrade process using a PC with a fixed IP address on the same LAN domain and physical LAN segment as the IP Office control unit.
8. If a multi-stage upgrade is necessary, use the following additional steps to select the appropriate interim software:
  - a. Right-click on the upgrade wizard and click **Select Directory**. Locate and select the directory containing the bin file for the intermediate software level.
  - b. The upgrade wizard should now list just the control unit as having upgrade software available. For the remainder of the upgrade as detailed below, the upgrade can be rerun again select the final software for the control unit.
9. For those modules which you want to upgrade, tick the check box. For modules where a later version of software is available the check box may have already been automatically ticked. If doing a multistage upgrade, only the control unit is selectable for the first stage.
  - For systems including WAN3 modules, untick the WAN3 modules. Each WAN3 module should be upgraded separately once the control unit and modules in the same system have been upgraded.
10. Select **Upgrade**.
11. The system password will be requested. Enter it and click **OK**.
12. **Validated Upgrade**  
If using the **Validated** option, a number of actions take place as follows;
  1. Firstly the upgrade wizard performs initial checks on the amount of free RAM memory available in the IP Office system to temporarily store the new BIN files during the upgrade process. If insufficient memory is available, you will be prompted whether to continue with an off-line upgrade or cancel upgrading.
    - If offline is selected, the IP Office is rebooted into offline mode. It may be necessary to use the Refresh option within the Upgrade Wizard to reconnect following the reboot. Validate upgrade can then be attempted to again check the amount of available RAM memory for transfer of BIN files. If the memory is still insufficient, the option is offered to either do an unvalidated upgrade or cancel.
  2. The bin files required are transferred to the system and stored in temporary memory.
  3. Once all the files have been transferred, the upgrade wizard will prompt whether it okay to proceed with the upgrade process. Select **Yes** to continue.

4. Each module being upgraded will delete its existing core software, restart and load the new software file that was transferred. This process may take several minutes for each unit. Do not cancel or close the upgrade wizard while this process is running.

### 13. **Unvalidated Upgrade**

This method of upgrading should be avoided unless absolutely necessary. It is only required for IP Office systems with pre-2.1 software and should only be done from a Manager PC with a fixed IP address running on the same LAN segment and subnet as the IP Office system. During the upgrade the units and modules erases their current software and then request the new software file from Manager.

14. Following the upgrade check that the upgrade wizard now shows that the selected units and modules have upgraded. It may be necessary to select **Refresh** to update the information in the upgrade wizard display.
15. Repeat the process as required. For example if doing a multi-stage control unit upgrade or if there are WAN3 modules in the system that are being upgraded separately.
16. Proceed to **16. Configuring Security Settings**.

## Creating a WAN Link

The following is a simplified process for creating a data link from Site A to Site B via the WAN ports.

**At Site A** on IP address 192.168.43.1.

1. **Create a Normal Service:**

The Service name can be any text and is used to identify this particular service. The account Name and password entered for the service are presented to the remote end, therefore must match the user name and password configured at Site B. The Encrypted Password option can only be used if the remote end also supports CHAP.

2. **Create a User:**

Under the **Dial In** tab, tick **Dial In On**. This User account is used to authenticate the connection from the Site B. Note that if the Service and User have the same name these two configuration forms are automatically linked and become an Intranet Service. The User password is displayed at the bottom of the Service tab as the Incoming Password.

3. **Setup RAS:**

If CHAP is to be used on this link then the Encrypted Password option must be checked in the Service and in the RAS service. The name of the RAS service must match the name of the Service at Site B. Note that if the RAS settings are given the same name as the Service and User they are automatically linked and become a WAN Service. Ensure that the Encrypted Password option is not checked when using a WAN Service.

4. **Edit the WANPort:**

Note: Do not create a new WANPort, this is automatically detected. If a WANPort is not displayed, connect the WAN cable, reboot the Control Unit and receive the configuration. The WANPort configuration form should now be added.

5. **Create an IP Route:**

In the IP Address field enter the network address of the remote end, not the IP address of the Control Unit. Under Destination select the Service created above.

**At Site B** on IP address 192.168.45.1

1. Repeat the above process but altering the details to create a route from Site B to Site A

## Music on Hold (MOH)

The IP Office can provide music on hold (MOH) in from either an internally stored file or from an externally connected audio input.

- **Legal Requirements**

You must ensure that any MOH source you use complies with copyright, performing rights and other local and national legal requirements.

- **Internal Music on Hold File**

The IP Office can use an internal music on hold file that it stores in its nonpermanent memory. If the IP Office loses power or is restarted, the file is loaded as follows:

- Following a reboot, the IP Office will try using TFTP to download a file called **holdmusic.wav**. The file properties should be: PCM, 8kHz 16-bit, mono, maximum length 30 seconds.
- The initial source for download is the system's configured TFTP server (**System | System | TFTP Server IP Address**). The default for this is a broadcast to the local subnet for any PC running a TFTP server.
- Manager acts as a TFTP server while it is running. If Manager is used as the TFTP server then the **holdmusic.wav** file should be placed in the Manager applications working directory.
- If no successful TFTP download occurs, the IP Office will automatically look for a **holdmusic.wav** file on the control unit's compact flash memory card if present and will download that file (Small Office Edition, IP406 V2 and IP500 control units with IP Office 3.1 or higher).
- If IP Office has not loaded a hold music file it will retry loading a hold music file approximately every five minutes.
- If an internal music on hold file is downloaded, the IP Office will automatically write a copy of that file to its compact flash memory card if present. This will overwrite any existing music on hold file stored on that card (Small Office Edition, IP406 V2 and IP500 control units with IP Office 3.1 or higher).
- If an internal music on hold file is downloaded, that file is used and overrides any external music on hold source if also connected.
- All the above operation can be cancelled by selecting **Use External Music on Hold (System | Telephony)** and restarting the IP Office.

- **External MOH:**

An external music source can be connected to the IP Office control unit. Connect a line out audio source to the 3.5mm port marked AUDIO on the back of the control unit.

- If the control unit downloads an internal **holdmusic.wav** file, the external audio port is ignored.
- The IP Office can be forced to use the external port and not download an internal music on hold file by selecting **Use External Music on Hold (System | Telephony)** and restarting the IP Office.

- **Default Music on Hold Tones**

If no external source is connected, no internal music on hold file is available and **Use External Music on Hold** is not selected; then the system will use a default tone for music on hold. The tone used is 425Hz repeated (0.2/0.2/0.2/3.4) seconds on/off cadence. This option is supported on IP Office 3.0(50) and higher.

### **Checking Music on Hold**

The IP Office has a default system short code that allows you to listen to a system's current music on hold.

1. At an idle extension, dial **\*34**.
2. You will hear the system's music on hold.

## IP500 Reset Button

The IP500 control unit includes a Reset button not found on other IP Office control unit.

Pressing the button while the control unit is starting up will pause the start up until the button is released.

The effect of pressing the button during normal operation will depend on how long the button is pressed and is indicated by the CPU LED.

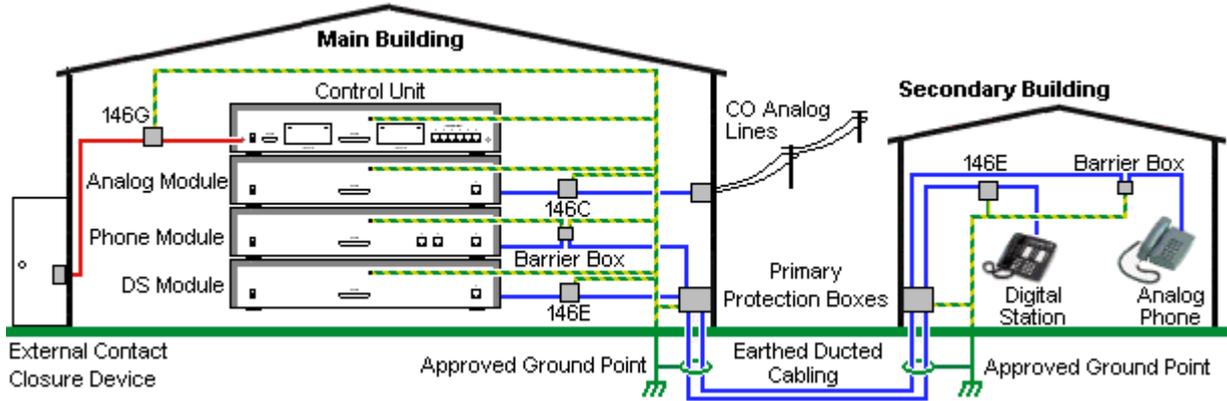
Press Duration (seconds)	CPU LED	Action	Summary
0 to 5.	Off	None	None
5 to 10.	Orange	Reboot When Free	Reboot when free with new incoming/outgoing call barring. A reboot using the reset button is recorded in the Audit Trail
10 to 30.	Flashing orange	Erase Configuration/ Immediate Reboot	Erase the configuration, alarm log and audit trail. Immediate reboot without waiting for active calls to end.
30 to 40.	Red	Erase All.	Erase configuration, alarm log and core software.
Over 40.	Flashing green	None	None

# Grounding and Protection Devices

## Out-of-Building Connections/Lightning Protection

The following are the only supported scenarios in which wired extensions and devices outside the main building can be connected to the IP Office system. In these scenarios, additional protection, in the form of protective grounding and surge protectors, must be fitted.

- ⚠ The fitting of additional protection does not remove the risk of damage. It merely reduces the chances of damage.



### Cabling Requirements

- Cables of different types, for example trunk lines, extensions, ground and power connections, should be kept separate.
- All cabling between building should be enclosed in grounded ducting. Ideally this ducting should be buried.
- A Primary Protection Box must be provided at the point where the cables enter the building. This should be three point protection (tip, ring and ground). Typically this would be gas tube protection provided by the local telephone company. The ground wire must be thick enough to handle all the lines being affected by indirect strike at the same time.

Connection Type	Protection Device Type	Requirement
<b>DS Phone Extensions</b> ⚠ <i>Digital Station Expansion module DS ports only.</i>	<b>Avaya 146E DS2 IROB</b> Supports up to 4 connections.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Connection from the expansion module to the phone must be via a surge protector <u>at each end</u> and via the primary protection point in each building.</li> </ul>
<b>Analog Phone Extensions</b> ⚠ <i>Phones Expansion module (POT or PHONE) ports only.</i>	<b>IP Office Barrier Box</b> Supports a single connection. Maximum of 16 on any expansion module.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The IP Office expansion module and control unit and IROB devices must be connected to the protective ground point in their building.</li> <li>The between building connection <u>must be</u> via earthed ducting, preferable underground. The cable <u>must not be</u> exposed externally at any point.</li> </ul>
<b>Analog Trunks</b>	<b>Avaya 146C CO Line Protector</b> Supports up to 4 two-wire lines.	For installations in the Republic of South Africa, the fitting of surge protection on analog trunks is a requirement. For other locations where the risk of lightning strikes is felt to be high, additional protection of incoming analog trunks is recommended.
<b>External Output Switch</b>	<b>Avaya 146G Surge Protector</b>	Connections from an IP Office Ext O/P port to an external relay device <u>must be</u> via a surge protector.

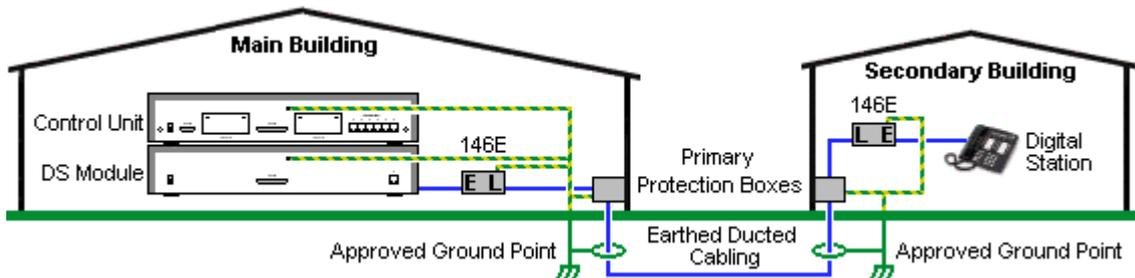
## DS Phone IROB Installation

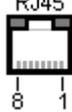
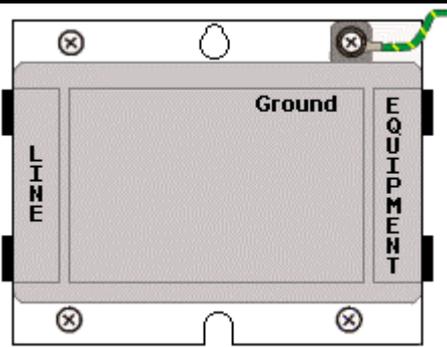
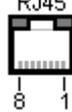
When DS phone extensions are required in another building, additional protective equipment must be used, in the form of IROB 146E devices and protective earth connections.

- **CAUTION:** Ports on the front of the Small Office Edition, IP403 and IP406 V2 control units must not be used for extensions that are external to the main building.

IROB 146E devices should be installed as per the instructions supplied with those devices. The ground points on the IP Office control unit and the DS modules must be connected to a protective ground using 18AWG wire with a green and yellow sleeve.

Typically the IROB's 2 RJ45 EQUIPMENT ports are straight through connected to the 2 RJ45 LINE ports. This allows existing RJ45 structured cabling, using pins 4 and 5, to be used without rewiring for up to two DS connection. However each of these ports can be used to connect a second extension using pins 3 and 6.

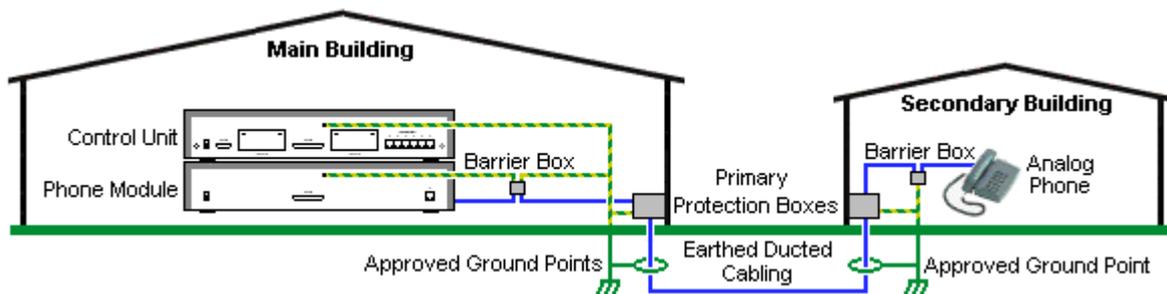


LINE	Signal	EQUIPMENT
	1	Not used.
	2	Not used.
	3	Ring II (Optional)
	4	Ring I
	5	Tip I
	6	Tip II (Optional)
	7	Not used.
	8	Not used.
		
		1
		2
		3
		4
		5
		6
		7
		8

## Analog Phone Barrier Boxes

Where analog phone extensions are required in another building, additional protective equipment must be used, in the form of IP Office Phone Barrier Boxes and protective earth connections.

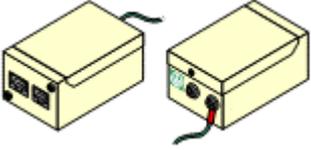
- The correct IP Office specific barrier boxes must be used. These modules have been designed specifically for the signalling voltages used by the IP Office system:
  - Only the IP Office Phone Barrier Box should be used with Phone V1 modules.
  - Only the IP Office Phone Barrier Box V2 should be used with Phone V2 modules.
  - No other type of analog phone barrier box should be used.
- Where more than 3 barrier boxes are required in a building, they must be rack mounted using a Barrier Box rack mounting kit.
- A maximum of 16 barrier boxes can be used with any Phone module.
- **CAUTION:** PHONE (POT) ports on the front of control units must not be used for extensions that are external to the main building.
- The Phone Barrier Box does not connect the ringing capacitor in Phone V1 modules.



Main Building	Barrier Box	Secondary Building
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>RJ11:</b> Connect to PHONE (POT) port on the Phone module using cable supplied with the barrier box.</li> <li>• <b>RJ45:</b> Connect to the secondary building barrier box via primary protection in both buildings.</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>RJ11:</b> Connect to analog phone. Cable not supplied.</li> <li>• <b>RJ45:</b> From main building via primary protection in both buildings.</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Center Screw:</b> Connect to main building protective ground (or ground terminal of Barrier Box Rack Mounting Kit). Use 18AWG (minimum) wire with a green and yellow sleeve.</li> <li>• <b>Right-Hand Screw:</b> Connect to ground point on Phone module using ground cable supplied with barrier box.</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Center Screw:</b> Connect to main building protective ground. Use 18AWG (minimum) wire with a green and yellow sleeve.</li> <li>• <b>Right-Hand Screw:</b> Not used.</li> </ul>

1. The following wires **must be** kept apart, that is not routed in the same bundle:

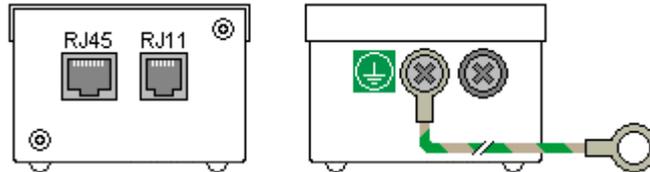
- Earth leads from the barrier box to the IP400 Phone modules.
- Internal wires, for example extension leads going directly to the IP400 Phone modules.
- Wires from external telephone going directly to the barrier boxes.

IP Office Barrier Boxes		SAP Code
	<b>IP400 Phone Barrier Box (81V)</b> Use with Phone V1 module. Includes an RJ45 to RJ11 cable and a functional earth lead.	700293897
	<b>IP400 Phone Barrier Box V2 (101V)</b> Use with Phone V2 module. Includes an RJ45 to RJ11 cable and a functional earth lead.	192228
	<b>Barrier Box Rack Mounting Kit</b>	700293905

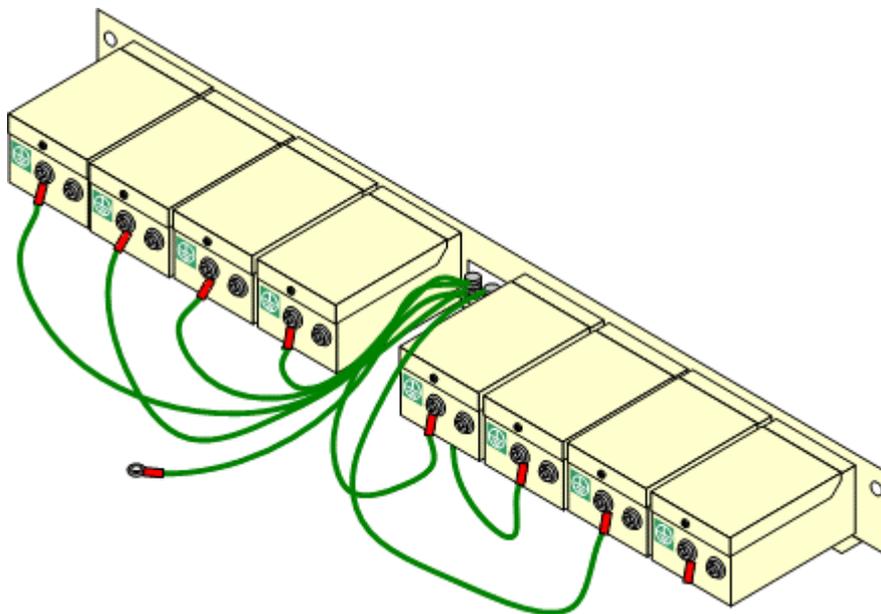
## Rack Mounting Barrier Boxes

Where more than 3 Phone Barrier Boxes are used they **must be** rack mounted. The Barrier Box Rack Mounting Kit (SAP Code 700293905) supports up to 8 Phone Barrier Boxes.

1. Unscrew the two screws arranged diagonally at the front of each barrier box and use these same screws to reattach the barrier box to the rack mounting strip.
2. Each barrier box is supplied with a solid green ground wire connected to its functional ground screw. Remove and discard this wire. Connect a green/yellow ground wire to the protective earth screw in the center of the Point on the back of the Barrier Box.



3. The rack mounting strip has threaded M4 earthing pillars. Connect the other end of the barrier box ground wire, using M4 washers and nuts, to the earthing pillar on that side of the rack mounting strip.



4. Using 14AWG wire with green and yellow sleeve, connect one of the earthing pillars to the buildings protective earth.
5. Using 14AWG wire with green and yellow sleeve, connect the other earthing pillar to the Phone module.
6. Ensure that the following wires are not routed together in the same bundle:
  - Earth lead from the barrier box to the IP400 Phone 8/16/32.
  - Internal wires, e.g. wires going directly to the IP400 Phone 8/16/32.
  - Wires from external telephone going directly to the barrier boxes.

---

## External Output Port

---

### Using the External Output (Door) Port

All the IP Office control units are equipped with a **EXT O/P** port. The port is marked as **EXT O/P** and is located on the back of the control unit adjacent to the power supply input socket.

The port can be used to control up to two external devices such as door entry relay switches. The usual application for these switches is to activate relays on door entry systems. However, as long as the criteria for maximum current, voltage and if necessary protection are met, the switches can be used for other applications.

The switches can be switched closed, open or pulsed (closed for 5 seconds and then open). This can be done in a number of ways:

- Using IP Office short codes.
- Through the Door tab in Phone Manager Pro.
- Through the Door Release option in IP Office SoftConsole.
- Via the Open Door action in Voicemail Pro.

### Default Short Codes

The following are the default short codes in the IP Office configuration for external output switch operation. They use the short code features **Relay On** (*closed*), **Relay Off** (*open*) and **Relay Pulse**.

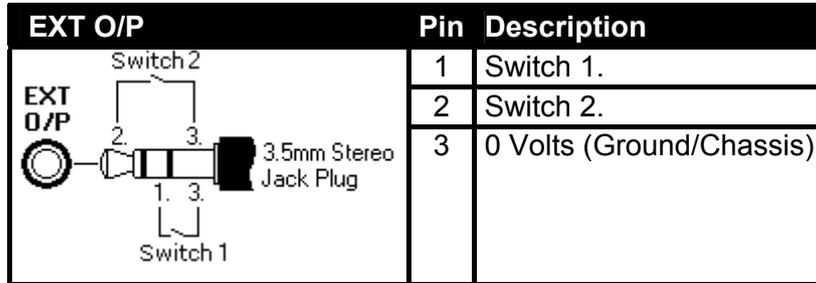
State	Switch 1	Switch 2
<b>Closed</b>	*39	*42
<b>Open</b>	*40	*43
<b>Pulse</b>	*41	*44

## EXT O/P Port

These ports are found on the rear of all IP Office control units. They are used for connection to external switching relays. The port uses a standard 3.5mm stereo jack plug for connection.

The IP Office is able to open (high resistance), close (low resistance) or pulse (close for 5 seconds and then open) two switches within the port. Either switch can be operated separately. These switches are intended for activation of external relays in systems such as door opening systems.

- **CAUTION:** In installations where this port is connected to a device external to the building, connection must be via an Avaya 146G Surge Protector and a protective ground connection must be provided on the IP Office control unit.



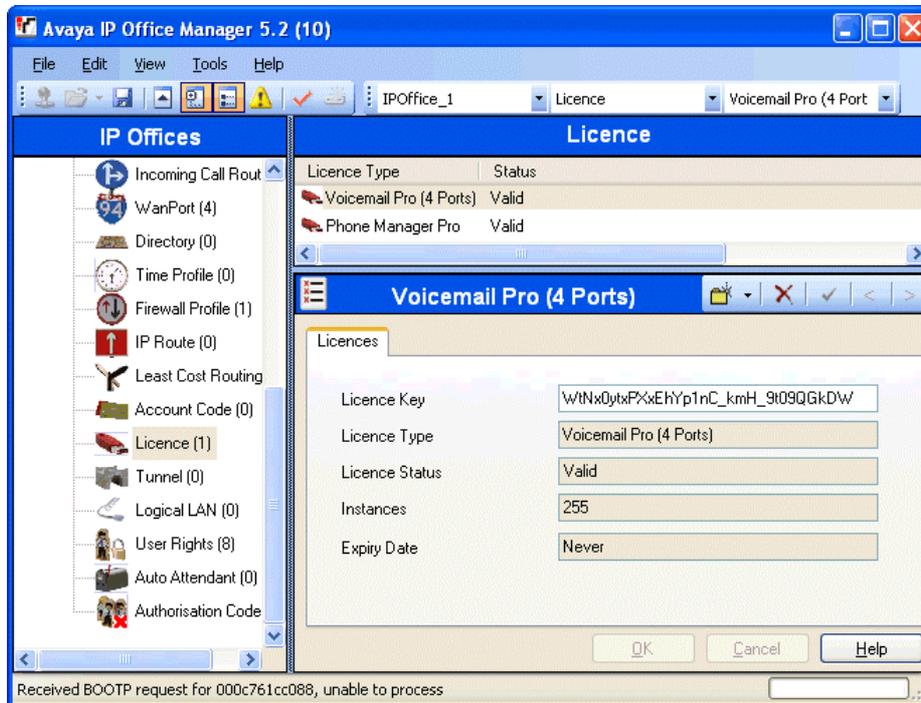
- **Switching Capacity:** 0.7A.
- **Maximum Voltage:** 55V d.c.
- **On state resistance:** 0.7 ohms.
- **Short circuit current:** 1A.
- **Reverse circuit current capacity:** 1.4A.
- Ensure that pins 1 and 2 are always at a positive voltage with respect to pin 3.

3.5mm stereo audio jack plugs are frequently sold as pre-wired sealed modules. It may be necessary to use a multi-meter to determine the wiring connections from an available plug. Typically 3 (common to both relays) is the cable screen.

# Licensing

## License Keys

Various IP Office features and applications require entry of license keys into the system's configuration. The license keys are unique 32-character codes based on the feature being activated and the serial number of the IP Office system's Feature Key dongle.



- **Example 1: Enabling Software Features**

In the example above, the IP Office system has a valid Phone Manager Pro license. In this case the license is for 20 instances. That means that up to 20 IP Office users can be configured to use Phone Manager Pro simultaneously. Their previously license free Phone Manager Lite software will automatically change to display Phone Manager Pro features.

- **Example 2: Enabling Software and Features**

The example above the IP Office also a license for Voicemail Pro. This initial Voicemail Pro license provide for 4 ports between the IP Office system and the Voicemail Pro PC. Additional Voicemail Pro (ports) licenses can be added to cumulative increase the number of port up to the limit supported by the particular type of IP Office control unit.

When a license key is entered into the IP Office configuration, the following information is shown.

- **Status:** The status, which is Unknown until the configuration file is sent back to the IP Office system.
- **License:** The name of the licensed feature. This may differ from the ordered RFA name.
- **Instances:** Depending on the license, this may be the number of ports enabled or number of simultaneous users of the licensed feature. Sometime the number of instances is specified in the license name.
- **Expires:** Most purchased licenses have no expiry setting. For some features, trial licenses may be available which will have an expiry date.

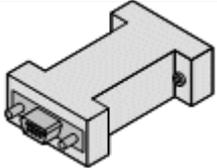
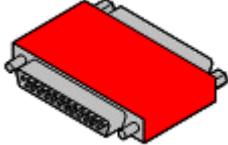
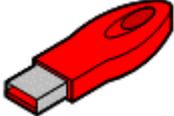
## Feature Key Dongles

Various IP Office features and applications require entry of a licence key or keys into the system's configuration. Each licence key is a unique 32-character number based on the feature being activated and the serial number of a Feature Key dongle installed somewhere with the IP Office system.

- 
**PC-Less Licensing**  
 Uses a feature key dongle inserted or attached to the rear of the control unit. This method can be used with any of the IP Office control units supported by IP Office 4.0 and is mandatory with the IP500 control unit.

- 
**PC-Base Licensing**  
 This method uses a dongle attached to a PC running the IP Office Feature Key server application. This PC must be on the same LAN segment as the IP Office control unit. Typically the dongle and IP Office Feature Key server application are installed on the same PC as the IP Office Voicemail Lite or Voicemail Pro application if present.

There are three type of Feature Key dongle available. The serial number is printed either directly onto the dongle or onto a label on the dongle.

Feature Key Type	Description	SOE	IP406	IP412	IP500	SAP Code
<b>Smart Card</b> 	Inserts into a dedicated slot on the rear of the IP500 control unit. This card is required on IP500 systems even if not using any IP Office licenses.	✗	✗	✗	✓	MU-Law 700417470 A-Law 700417488
<b>Serial</b> 	Plugs directly into the DTE serial port on the rear of the control unit allowing PC-less operation.	✓	✓	✓	✗	700293095
<b>Parallel</b> 	Plugs into the appropriate port on a PC running the IP Office Feature Key server application. This PC must on the same LAN segment as the IP Office control unit.	✓	✓	✓	✗	700185234
<b>USB</b> 		✓	✓	✓	✗	700261506

## Installation Requirements

### Software

- The IP Office Administration CD contains the Feature Key Server software. This is required for use with USB and parallel port licence keys.

### Feature Key

- Ensure that the serial number on the Feature Key dongle is noted and recorded in a safe location. The number is printed on the Feature Key dongle and prefixed with SN.

### Feature Key Server PC

Only required if using a Parallel Port or USB Feature Key. Not applicable if using a Serial Port Feature Key dongle.

- Windows 2000, 2003 or XP are strongly recommended as the Feature Key Server is then able to install as a service, giving greater reliability.
- The server PC should be located in a secure area. The Feature Key device is fundamental to the correct operation of many features, so a record of its location and serial number must be kept.
- Parallel Port Feature Key:
  - A 25-pin Parallel port 1, set to bidirectional operation in the PC's BIOS.
  - Bidirectional parallel port operation is the normal default on most PCs.
  - **WARNING:** Do not connect a printer to the parallel port Feature Key dongle. Poorly wired printer cables or printers that have not been earthed correctly can cause the parallel port Feature Key to stop working.
- USB Feature Key:
  - USB 1.1 or 2.0. Type A connector.
  - IP Office 1.4 Admin suite or later.

### Network

- The PC should be configured and tested for TCP/IP networking.
- It should be on the same network segment as the IP Office. That is data traffic between the IP Office and the Feature Key Server PC should not require routing.
- The PC should have a fixed IP address. Whilst PC's in a DHCP network usually retain the same IP address between reboots this is not guaranteed.
  - If the IP Office is acting as a DHCP server, then in default it uses addresses 192.168.42.2 to 192.168.42.201 for DHCP clients. This leaves addresses between 192.168.42.202 and 192.168.42.254 free for devices that require fixed IP addresses.

## Serial Port Feature Key Installation

1. Plug the serial port Feature Key dongle into the serial port on the IP Office control unit (IP Office Small Office Edition, IP406 V2 and IP412 control units).
2. Start **Manager** and receive the IP Office system's configuration.
3. Select  **System**.
4. On the **System** tab, the **License Server IP Address** field is used to set the location of the feature key. For a serial port license key, set the **License Server IP Address** to be blank.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Select  **License**.
7. To add a license, click  and select License. Enter the new license click **OK**.
8. The **Status** of the new license should show **Unknown** and name the license as expected. If its **Status** is **Unknown** and name **Invalid**, the most likely cause is incorrect entry of the license key characters.
9. Click on  to send the configuration back to the IP Office. The menu that appears will indicate whether a reboot is required.
10. Use Manager to receive the configuration again and check that the status of the license. It should now be **Valid**.

---

## Parallel Port / USB Feature Key Installation

1. Plug the Feature Key dongle into the PC's parallel or USB port.
2. Insert the IP Office Administrator Applications CD and let the installation wizard auto-start.
3. If some IP Office administrator application have been previously installed, select **Modify** when the **Modify, Repair or Remove** option menu appears.
4. In the **Select Features** menu, ensure that Feature Key Server is selected. Do not change any other options as this will trigger their removal if already installed.
5. Having installed the software, the system will reboot.
  - The Feature Key Server installs itself as a service. It appears as **Key Server** in the Services Panel.
  - In the **Add/Remove Programs** panel, an entry **Sentinel System Driver** appears. This is part of the Feature Key Server.
6. Following installation and reboot, the Feature Key Server appears as an icon  in the Windows System Tray.
  - Right-click on the icon and select **About** to display the server software version and the Feature Key device number.
  - If the icon appears as a white block with a red cross through it, then there is some error. The most likely error is that the Feature Key is missing from the parallel or USB port.
7. Start **Manager** and receive the IP Office system's configuration.
8. Select  **System**.
9. On the **System** tab, the **License Server IP Address** field is used to set the location of the feature key. The default is a 255.255.255.255 broadcast address. This is okay for many sites, but it is recommend that the IP address of the PC running the Feature Key Server is entered.
10. Click **OK**.
11. Select  **License**.
12. To add a license, click  and select License. Enter the new license click **OK**.
13. The **Status** of the new license should show **Unknown** and name the license as expected. If its **Status** is **Unknown** and name **Invalid**, the most likely cause is incorrect entry of the license key characters.
14. Click on  to send the configuration back to the IP Office. The menu that appears will indicate whether a reboot is required.
15. Use Manager to receive the configuration again and check that the status of the license. It should now be **Valid**.

## So8 BRI Module

---

### So8 Example 1

In this example, calls on DID 123456 are routed to the first port of the SO8 expansion module. That port has been configured as Line Group ID 701.

1. **Configure an Incoming Call Routing:**

The destination is a short code that directs the call to the correct line group ID that contains the S0 lines. The Bearer Capability has been set to Any, to allow data and voice via this route.

- **Line Group ID:** 0
- **Incoming Number:** 123456
- **Destination:** 123456
- **Bearer Capability:** Any

2. **Create a System Short Code:**

This matches the destination in the Incoming Call Route.

- **Short Code:** 123456
- **Telephone Number:** 123456
- **Line Group ID:** 701
- **Feature:** Dial

3. Send the configuration to the Control Unit.

Any call coming into the main system on DID 123456 will now be passed directly to the first port.

**If you wish to assign DID's from your main pool to individual ports and avoid network charges when dialing between them, try variations on the following:**

1. You have **DID** ranges, for example: 7325551000 to 7325551099. You wish to assign 7325551000-19 to port 1 and 7325551020-20 to port 2 etc.

2. **Configure Incoming Call Route:**

The # is used here instead of "n" to avoid problems with "Main". The minus sign means the number is processed from the left and so will wait for the whole number.

- **Line Group ID:** 701
- **Incoming Number:** -100x
- **Destination:** #

3. Repeat for Line Group ID 702 etc.

4. Create Short codes, for example:

- **Short Code:** 100x
- **Telephone Number:** .
- **Line Group ID:** 701
- **Feature:** Dial

S0 calls dialed without the area code are handled locally without network charges. Calls with area calls will go via the network.

---

## So8 Example 2: Video Conference

In this example, calls are routed to a Polycom Viewstation module connected to a S0 port of the IP Office system.

The following settings were used on 4 incoming data channels of a PRI line:

- **Line Number:** 5
- **Channel Allocation:** 23 -> 1
- **Switch Type:** 5ESS
- **Line Sub Type:** PRI
- **Provider:** AT&T
- **Channels:** 1-4
- **Incoming Line Group:** 95
- **Outgoing Line Group:** 95
- **Direction:** Bothway
- **Bearer:** Data
- **Service:** Accunet (this is a important)
- **Admin:** In Service

To route an incoming video call on the PRI lines configured above to an SO8 module requires the following:

1. Create a dial short code that has the SO port as its destination Line Group. For this example the following was used:
  - **Short Code:** 1500
  - **Number:** .
  - **Feature:** Dial
  - **Line Group:** 601 (the SO8 port number)
2. Create an Incoming Call Routing that routes the appropriate calls to that short code. For this example the following was used:
  - **Line Group:** 95 (identifies calls using the PRI lines configured above)
  - **Destination:** 1500 (the short code created above)
  - **Bearer:** Any

To allow the video device on the S0 port to make outgoing calls to the PRI lines also requires a short code.

1. For this example the following was used:
  - **Code:** 91N;
  - **Number:** N
  - **Feature:** Dial
  - **Line Group:** 95

## Polycom Video Module Settings

The Polycom modules used in the previous example were the Viewstation 128, Viewstation 256 and Viewstation MP.

The Polycom module must have software that supports 'Standard ETSI ISDN' (European ISDN) and have its ISDN Switch Protocol setting set to 'Standard ETSI Euro-ISDN'

The following were the settings used during testing:

Characteristics	Admin/Software and Hardware/Software
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Polycom View Station 512 MP.</li> <li>• NTSC UIS Interface.</li> <li>• View Station PVS 1419.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Software:</b> 7.0.1.</li> <li>• <b>Network Interface:</b> S/T Interface.</li> <li>• <b>ISDN Version:</b> IEUS v18:a00320</li> </ul>
Admin/General Setup	Admin/Video Network/ISDN Video Network
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Country:</b> USA</li> <li>• <b>Language:</b> English (USA)</li> <li>• <b>Auto Answer:</b> Yes</li> <li>• <b>AllowDial:</b> Yes</li> <li>• <b>Allow User Setup:</b> Yes</li> <li>• <b>Maximum Time on Call:</b> 480.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Country Code:</b> 1</li> <li>• <b>Area Code:</b> 732</li> <li>• <b>Number A:</b> blank</li> <li>• <b>Number B:</b> blank</li> <li>• <b>ISDN Switch Protocol:</b> Standard ETSI Euro-ISDN.</li> </ul>
User Setup	Admin/Video Network/IMUX
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto Answer:</b> Yes</li> <li>• <b>PIP:</b> Auto</li> <li>• <b>Far Control of Near Camera:</b> Yes</li> <li>• <b>MP Mode:</b> Auto</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Numbers:</b> blank</li> <li>• <b>SPID:</b> blank</li> <li>• <b>Audio Quality:</b> 168KB/s</li> <li>• <b>Advanced Dialing:</b> Dial Channels in Parallel</li> </ul>
System Information	Admin/Software and Hardware/Hardware
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Release:</b> 7.0.1</li> <li>• <b>Model:</b> VS: 512</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Camera:</b> NTSC</li> <li>• <b>Video Comm Interface:</b> ISDN_Quad_BRI</li> <li>• <b>Network Interface Type:</b> S/T Interface</li> </ul>
Admin/Video Network	Admin/Video Network/Call Preference
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>MultiPoint Setup:</b> Auto</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ISDN Video Calls (H:320):</b> Yes</li> </ul>

---

# SNMP

---

## SNMP Introduction

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is a standard network protocol that allows the monitoring and management of data devices across a network.

An SNMP agent can be built into network devices such as routers and hubs. An SNMP manager application (for example CastleRock or HP OpenView) can then communicate with those devices.

This communication can be:

- **Polling:** *Supported by IP Office 2.0 and above*  
Some SNMP manager applications send out polling messages to the network. They then record the responds of any SNMP enabled devices (agents). This allows the manager to create a network map and to raise an alarm when devices previously present do not respond.
  - Most SNMP manager applications can also do simple IP address polling to locate non-SNMP enabled devices. However this method of polling does not identify the device type or other information.
  - SNMP polling including details about the responding device. For example an IP Office control unit's response includes the control unit type, level of software, routing table information, up time, etc.
- **Traps:** *Supported by IP Office 2.0 and above*  
When certain events occur, a devices SNMP agent can send details of the event to the SNMP manager. This is called an SNMP 'trap'. These appear in the event log of the SNMP manager. Most SMNP manager's can be configured to give additional alerts in response to particular traps.
- **Management:** *Not supported by IP Office 2.0 and above*  
Some SNMP agents support device management and configuration changes through the SNMP manager interface.

IP Office 2.0 and above allows IP Office Control Units to act as read-only SNMP v1 agents. It can include the sending of events traps to up to two different SNMP manager addresses.

- IP Office 3.2 supports the use of SMTP to email SNMP alarms. This allows the IP Office's SNMP alarms to be used without having to setup an SNMP manager application.

IP Office SNMP operation has been tested against Castle Rock SNMPc-EE 5.1.6c and HP OpenView Network Node Manager 6.41.

- A MIB file exists for the SNMP monitoring of Avaya 4600 and 5600 Series IP phones. The MIB file can be obtained from the Avaya support website (<http://support.avaya.com>).
- The Avaya IP DECT system can also be monitored using SNMP. Refer to the IP DECT Installation manual.

## Installing the IP Office MIB Files

To allow full communication between an SNMP agent and an SNMP manager, the SNMP manager must load MIB files (Management Information Base) specific to the SNMP agent device and the features it supports. These MIB files contain details of the information the agent can provide and the traps that it can send. Full details of the structure of the IP Office MIB files, MIB groups within those files and event traps can be found in the "IP Office Installation Manual".

The MIB files for IP Office operation are included on the IP Office Admin CD in the folder **C:\snmp\_mibs**. The actual files required and the method of loading depend on the SNMP manager application being used. The details below cover the two SNMP manager applications tested.

### HP Open View Network Node Manager

1. Copy the following MIB files to the applications MIBs folder.

	MIB File	Source
a.	rfc2737-entity-mib.mib	<i>snmp_mibs\standard folder on OpenView Install CD.</i>
b.	avayagen-mib.mib	<i>snmp_mibs\IPOffice folder on IP Office Admin CD.</i>
c.	ipo-prod-mib.mib	<i>snmp_mibs\IPOffice folder on IP Office Admin CD.</i>
d.	ipo-mib.mib	<i>snmp_mibs\IPOffice folder on IP Office Admin CD.</i>
e.	inet-address-mib.mib	<i>snmp_mibs\Standard folder on IP Office Admin CD.</i>
f.	rfc2213-integrated-services-mib.mib	<i>snmp_mibs\standard folder on OpenView Install CD.</i>
g.	diffserv-dscp-tc.mib	<i>snmp_mibs\Standard folder on IP Office Admin CD.</i>
h.	diffserv-mib-hpov.mib	<i>snmp_mibs\Standard folder on IP Office Admin CD.</i>
i.	ipo-phones-mib.mib	<i>snmp_mibs\IPOffice folder on IP Office Admin CD.</i>

2. Start the OpenView Network Node Manager console.
3. Select **Options** and then **Load/Unload MIBs: SNMP**.
4. Select **Load** and select all the MIB files listed above.
5. Select **Compile**.

**CastleRock SNMPc 5.1.6c and earlier**

1. Copy the following MIB files to the applications MIBs folder, normally *C:\Program Files\SNMPc Network Manager\mibfiles*.

	<b>MIB file</b>	<b>Source</b>
a.	ENTITY-MIB	snmp_mibs\Standard on IP Office Admin CD.
b.	AVAYAGEN-MIB.mib	snmp_mibs\IPOffice on IP Office Admin CD.
c.	IPO-PROD-MIB.mib	snmp_mibs\IPOffice on IP Office Admin CD.
d.	IPO-MIB.mib	snmp_mibs\IPOffice on IP Office Admin CD.
e.	INET-ADDRESS-MIB.mib	snmp_mibs\Standard on IP Office Admin CD.
f.	INTEGRATED-SERVICES-MIB	snmp_mibs\Standard on IP Office Admin CD.
g.	DIFFSERV-DSCP-TC.mib	snmp_mibs\Standard on IP Office Admin CD.
h.	DIFFSERV-MIB.mib	snmp_mibs\Standard on IP Office Admin CD.
i.	IPO-PHONES-MIB.mib	snmp_mibs\IPOffice on IP Office Admin CD.

2. In SNMPc select **Config | MIB Database**.
3. Select Add and select the MIB files listed above in the order listed.

**CastleRock SNMPc V5.0.1**

The MIB installation instructions provided above are correct for CastleRock SNMPc V5.0.8 and later. For V5.0.1 of CastleRock SNMPc the following must be carried out:

1. Copy all of the IP Office MIBs and standard MIBs from the IP Office Administrator Applications CD to the SNMPc mibfiles directory.
2. In the SNMPc mibfiles directory open the files STANDARD.mib and SNMPv2-SMI.mib in Notepad.
3. In the SNMPv2-SMI.mib file find the definition of zeroDotZero and copy this to the clipboard.
4. In the STANDARD.MIB file find the SNMPv2-SMI section and paste in the definition of zeroDotZero from the clipboard before the end of this section (just before the END statement).
5. Save the modified STANDARD.MIB file.
6. Add the MIB file SNMP-FRAMEWORK-MIB.mib to the MIB database using the instructions provided in the IP Office installation guide.
7. Add all the MIB files listed in the instructions provided in the IP Office installation guide in the order given.
8. Compile the MIBs ready for use.

The reason for this is: The IPO-PHONES-MIB.mib relies upon the DIFFSERV-MIB.mib for the definition of the textual convention of IndexInteger. The DIFFSERV-MIB needs the definition of the textual convention zeroDotZero which is normally defined in SNMPv2-SMI.mib. However including SNMPv2-SMI.mib in the MIB file compilation list results in errors due to conflicts with what appear to be internal definitions within SNMPc and the SNMPv2-SMI section in its STANDARD.mib file. Therefore to resolve the issue the required definition of zeroDotZero must be placed in the SNMPv2-SMI section in SNMPc's STANDARD.mib file.

## Enabling SNMP and Polling Support

In order for the IP Office control unit to be discovered and polled by an SNMP manager, its SNMP agent must be enabled and placed in the same read community as the SNMP manager.

To enable the SNMP agent:

1. In Manager, receive the control unit's configuration.
2. Double-click **System** from the Configuration Tree panel and select the **SNMP** tab.
3. Tick **SNMP Enabled**.
4. In **SNMP Port**, enter the UDP port number used by the IP Office SNMP agent to listen for and respond to SNMP traffic. The normal default is **161**.
5. In **Community (Read-only)**, enter the community to which the device belongs for read access. This community name must match that used by the SNMP manager application when sending requests to the device. The community **public** is frequently used to establish communication and then changed (at both the SNMP agent and manager ends) for security.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Send the configuration back to the IP Office and select reboot.
8. Following the IP Office reboot, the SNMP manager should be able to discover the control unit.
9. The control unit's response will include details of the control unit type and the current level of core software.

---

## Enabling SNMP Trap Sending

In Manager, receive the control unit's configuration.

1. Double-click **System** from the Configuration Tree panel and select the **SNMP** tab.
2. Ensure that **SNMP Enabled** is ticked.
3. Using either **Trap Destination 1** or **Trap Destination 2**, enter the following information:
  - Enter the **IP Address** of the PC running the SNMP manager application.
  - Enter the **Port** on which the traps messages should be sent. This is the UDP port on which the IP Office sends SNMP trap messages. The default is **162**.
  - Set the **Community** that will be used by the agent and the SNMP manager. The community **public** is frequently used to establish communication and then changed (at both the SNMP agent and manager ends) for security.
  - Select the **Events** which should be sent:
    - **Generic:**  
Events such as soft reboot (warm start), hard reboot (cold start), links up/down (transition in the status of a PPP or frame relay interface) or SNMP community mismatch.
    - **Entity:**  
Failures, errors and changes of state in IP Office modules and trunk interfaces. Note: Does not include WAN3, Modem2 and ATM4.
    - **Licence:**  
Changes of state in the communication with the Feature Key Server.
    - **Phone Change:**  
Changes to the type of DS or IP phone connected to a port.
4. Click on **OK**.
5. Send the configuration back to the IP Office and select reboot.

## Trap Generation

### RFC1215 Generic SNMP Traps

Trap	Cause
warmStart	Soft reboot.
coldStart	Unexpected reboot such as a power outage.
linkDown	Transition of an interface (PPP or Frame-Relay) from the up operational state into the down operational state.
linkUp	Transition of an interface (PPP or Frame-Relay) from the down operational state into the up operational state.
authenticationFailure	SNMP request with mismatched community for the type of operation.

### IPO-MIB

Trap	Cause
<i>ipoGenEntityFailureEvent</i>	A physical entity has fails in its operation
<i>ipoGenEntityOperationalEvent</i>	A physical entity becomes operational again after having failed.
<i>ipoGenEntityErrorEvent</i>	A transitory error is detected for a physical entity.
<i>ipoGenEntityChangeEvent</i>	A non-error change event is detected for a physical entity.
<i>ipoGenLKSCommsFailureEvent</i>	Loss of communication with a configured License Key Server.
<i>ipoGenLKSCommsOperationalEvent</i>	Communication with the configured License Key Server established or reestablished.
<i>ipoGenLKSCommsErrorEvent</i>	<i>Currently not used.</i>
<i>ipoGenLKSCommsChangeEvent</i>	<i>Currently not used.</i>
<i>ipoGenVMSCommsFailureEvent</i>	Loss of communication to the voicemail system.
<i>ipoGenVMSCommsOperationalEvent</i>	Link to the voicemail system established or reestablished.
<i>ipoGenVMSCommsErrorEvent</i>	<i>Currently not used.</i>
<i>ipoGenVMSCommsChangeEvent</i>	<i>Currently not used.</i>
<i>ipoGenDSCommsFailureEvent</i>	Loss of communication to the delta server.
<i>ipoGenDSCommsOperationalEvent</i>	Communication to the delta server established or reestablished.
<i>ipoGenDSCommsErrorEvent</i>	<i>Currently not used.</i>
<i>ipoGenDSCommsChangeEvent</i>	<i>Currently not used.</i>

The traps above are generated for the physical entities as follows:

### Expansion Modules

Trap	Phone	Digital Station	Analog Trunk	S08	WAN3
<i>ipoGenEntityFailureEvent</i>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗
<i>ipoGenEntityOperationalEvent</i>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗
<i>ipoGenEntityErrorEvent</i>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗
<i>ipoGenEntityChangeEvent</i>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗

Where:

- *ipoGenEntityFailureEvent* and *ipoGenEntityOperationalEvent* traps are issued in relation to connecting cable disconnection and reconnection or power changes.
- *ipoGenEntityErrorEvent* trap is issued for transitory communication errors across the cabling to an expansion module.
- *ipoGenEntityChangeEvent* trap is issued for mismatch(es) in expansion modules discovered at controller start up and those present in the system configuration.

### Trunk Interfaces

Trap	Analog	BRI	E1	E1R2	T1	PRI
<i>ipoGenEntityFailureEvent</i>	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
<i>ipoGenEntityOperationalEvent</i>	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

- Where *ipoGenEntityFailureEvent* and *ipoGenEntityOperationalEvent* traps are issued in relation to link status changes.

### Integral Modules

Trap	Modem	Voice Compressor
<i>ipoGenEntityFailureEvent</i>	✗	✓
<i>ipoGenEntityOperationalEvent</i>	✗	✓

- Where *ipoGenEntityFailureEvent* and *ipoGenEntityOperationalEvent* traps are issued for voice compressor modules in relation to data access problems that result in code reload

### Other Plug-In Modules

- The *ipoGenEntityChangeEvent* trap is issued for changes to the PCMCIA card slot population on the IP Office Small Office Edition control unit.

### IPhone-MIB:

Trap	Cause
<i>ipoPhonesChangeEvent</i>	Upon change of a DS or IP extension phone type after normal start-up. No traps are issued for PHONE (POT) extensions as the presence or absence of such phones cannot be established hence the <i>ipoPhonesType</i> for such extensions is always <i>potPhone</i> .

## DTE Port Maintenance

---

### DTE Port Overview

The DTE port on the back of IP Office control units is not normally used when configuring an IP Office system. However, in extreme cases, the DTE port can be used to default the system's configuration or to erase its core software if necessary.

- ** WARNING**

Due to the drastic nature of these actions, they should only be performed if absolutely necessary to return a system back to working order. In both cases, you must make every effort to ensure that you have a backup copy of the system configuration.

The DTE ports on IP Office expansion modules are not used for any maintenance or diagnostics except under instruction from Avaya.

## RS232 DTE Port

These ports are found on the rear of all IP Office control units and external expansion modules. The DTE ports on external expansion modules are not used.

The RS232 DTE ports on the control units can be used for system maintenance and connection of serial terminal adaptors. On IP400 control units the port can also be used for connection of the IP Office serial port licence key dongle.

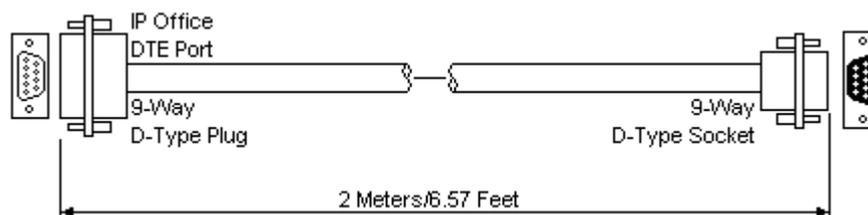
An asynchronous terminal program such as HyperTerminal is also required. Configure this for operation via a PC serial port, as follows:

<b>Bits per second</b>	38,400	<b>Parity</b>	None	<b>Flow Control</b>	None
<b>Data bits</b>	8	<b>Stop Bits</b>	1	<b>Settings   Emulation</b>	TTY

## DTE Cables

These cables are used for system maintenance and diagnostics under Avaya guidance. They can also be used for connection of RS232 serial terminal adaptor equipment to the IP Office control unit.

The cable required depends on the IP Office control unit.



IP Office 9-Way RS232 DTE Port	Signal	PC/Terminal Adaptor
3	← Receive data	3
2	→ Transmit Data	2
7	← RTS (Request To Send)	7
8	→ CTS (Clear To Send)	8
6	→ DSR (Data Set Ready)	6
5	■ Ground	5
1	→ DCD (Data Carrier Detect)	1
4	← DTR (Data Terminal Ready)	4
9	→ RI (Ring Indicator)	9

## Erasing the Configuration

The following processes erases the configuration held in the IP Office control unit's memory. That include both the current configuration in RAM memory and the backup configuration stored in non-volatile Flash memory. Following this the IP Office will restart with a default configuration.

This process should be performed from a PC with a fixed IP address, directly connected to the IP Office control unit and with the IP Office system disconnected from any network. Following this process, the control unit's IP address will default to 192.168.42.1.

-  Do not perform any of these processes unless absolutely necessary. The IP Office's configuration settings can be default through Manager using the **File | Advanced | Erase Configuration** command.

1. ✓  
2. ✓  
3. □

### Procedure: Erasing the Configuration via Debug

This process erases the IP Office's configuration settings but does not alter its security settings. It is easier to use than the boot loader method.

1.  **WARNING:** Ensure that you have a backup copy of the IP Office's configuration before performing this action.
2. Attach the serial cable between the PC and the DTE port on the IP Office control unit.
3. Start the terminal program on your PC. Ensure that it has been setup as listed in DTE Port Settings. Within a HyperTerminal session, the current settings are summarized across the base of the screen.
4. Enter **AT** (note upper case). The control unit should respond **OK**.
5. Enter **AT-DEBUG**. The control unit should response with the time and date and then **Hello>** to show it is ready to accept commands.
6. To erase the current configuration in RAM memory enter **eraseconfig**. The **Hello>** command prompt reappears when the action is completed.
7. To erase the backup configuration stored in non-volatile Flash memory enter **erasenvconfig**. The **Hello>** command prompt reappears when the action is completed.
8. To reboot the IP Office enter **reboot**. The IP Office will reboot and restart with a defaulted configuration.
9. Close the terminal program session.
10. Manager can now be used to alter and then upload an old configuration file or receive and edit the control unit's now defaulted configuration.



### Procedure: Erasing the Configuration and Security Settings via the Boot Loader

This process defaults the IP Office security settings and its configurations settings.

1. **⚠ WARNING:** Ensure that you have a backup copy of the IP Office's configuration before performing this action.
2. Attach the serial cable between the PC and the DTE port on the IP Office control unit.
3. Start the terminal program on your PC. Ensure that it has been setup as listed in DTE Port Settings. Within a HyperTerminal session, the current settings are summarized across the base of the screen.
4. Enter **AT** (note upper case). The control unit should respond **OK**.
5. Switch off power to the IP Office control unit.
6. Power on the control unit while repeatedly pressing the escape key until you get a **Loader** message. Below is an example.

```
P12 Loader 2.4  
CPU Revision 0x0900
```

5. Enter **AT** (note upper case). The control unit should respond **OK**.
6. To erase the current configuration in RAM memory enter **AT-X3**. A typical response is **Sector Erases (Config)** followed by a series of **OK** responses.
7. To erase the backup configuration stored in non-volatile Flash memory enter **AT-X2**. A typical response is **Sector 2 Erase (NV Config)** followed by **OK**.
  - **IP Office 403 only:** If running an IP Office 403 control unit, enter **AT-X4**.
8. Switch power to the control unit off and then back on. Within the terminal program you should see various messages as the control unit performs various start up tasks.
9. Close the terminal program session.
10. Manager can now be used to alter and then upload an old configuration file or receive and edit the control unit's now defaulted configuration.

## Defaulting Security Settings

The following processes can be used to default the security settings of an IP Office system running IP Office 3.2 or higher.

1.   
2.   
3. 

### Procedure: Defaulting Security Settings

This process defaults the IP Office's security settings but does not alter its configuration settings.

1. Attach the serial cable between the PC and the DTE port on the IP Office control unit.
2. Start the terminal program on your PC. Ensure that it has been setup as listed in DTE Port Settings. Within a HyperTerminal session, the current settings are summarized across the base of the screen.
3. Enter **AT** (note upper case). The control unit should respond **OK**.
4. Enter **AT-SECURITYRESETALL**.
5. You will be prompted to confirm the control unit's MAC address before continuing. Enter the address.
6. The control unit will respond **OK** when the action has been completed.
7. Close the terminal program session.
8. Manager can now be used to receive and edit the control unit's now defaulted security settings.

1.   
2.   
3. 

### Procedure: Defaulting the Configuration and Security Settings via the Boot Loader

This process defaults the IP Office security settings and its configurations settings.

1.  **WARNING:** Ensure that you have a backup copy of the IP Office's configuration before performing this action.
2. Attach the serial cable between the PC and the DTE port on the IP Office control unit.
3. Start the terminal program on your PC. Ensure that it has been setup as listed in DTE Port Settings. Within a HyperTerminal session, the current settings are summarized across the base of the screen.
4. Enter **AT** (note upper case). The control unit should respond **OK**.
5. Switch off power to the IP Office control unit.
6. Power on the control unit while repeatedly pressing the escape key until you get a **Loader** message. Below is an example.

```
P12 Loader 2.4  
CPU Revision 0x0900
```

7. Enter **AT** (note upper case). The control unit should respond **OK**.
8. To erase the current configuration in RAM memory enter **AT-X3**. A typical response is **Sector Erases (Config)** followed by a series of **OK** responses.
9. To erase the backup configuration stored in non-volatile Flash memory enter **AT-X2**. A typical response is **Sector 2 Erase (NV Config)** followed by **OK**.
  - **IP Office 403 only:** If running an IP Office 403 control unit, enter **AT-X4**.
10. Switch power to the control unit off and then back on. Within the terminal program you should see various messages as the control unit performs various start up tasks.
11. Close the terminal program session.
12. Manager can now be used to alter and then upload an old configuration file or receive and edit the control unit's now defaulted configuration.

## Erasing the Operational Software

This process should be performed from a PC with a fixed IP address, directly connected to the IP Office control unit and with the IP Office system disconnected from any network. During the process, the control unit's IP address may default to a value in the 192.168.42.1 to 192.168.42.10 range. If this occurs it may be necessary to amend the BOOTP entry in Manager to match the address the system is using.

-  Do not perform any of the following processes unless **absolutely** necessary. The IP Office software can normally be upgraded through Manager using the **File | Advanced | Upgrade** command.
-  This process erases the operational software. Before attempting this process you **must know** the MAC and IP addresses of the system, plus have a backup copy of its configuration and the correct .bin file for the control unit type and level of software.
-  The presence of any firewall blocking TFTP and or BOOTP will cause this process to fail.

1.  
2.  
3. □

### Procedure: Erasing the Core Software via Debug

1. Run Manager. In the **BOOTP** entries, check that there is an entry that matches the MAC Address, IP Address and .bin file used by the system (the first two details can be found in the **Module** settings in the system's configuration file).
2. If an entry is not present, create a new entry. Then close and restart Manager.
3. Under **File | Preferences** ensure that Manager is set to 255.255.255.255. Also check that **Enable BootP Server** is checked.
4. Select **View | TFTPLog**.
5. Check that the required .bin file is present in Manager's working directory.
6. Attach the serial cable between the PC and the DTE port on the IP Office control unit.
7. Start the terminal program on your PC. Ensure that it has been setup as listed in DTE Port Settings. Within a HyperTerminal session, the current settings are summarized across the base of the screen.
8. Arrange the program windows so that the Terminal program and Manager TFTP Log are visible at the same time.
9. Enter **AT** (note upper case). The control unit should respond **OK**.
10. Enter **AT-DEBUG**. The control unit should response with the time and date and then **Hello>** to show it is ready to accept commands.
11. To erase the current configuration in RAM memory enter **upgrade**.
12. The IP Office will erase its current software and then send out a BootP request on the network for new software. Manager will respond and start transferring the software using TFTP.

**Procedure: Erasing the Core Software via the Boot Loader**

1. Run Manager. In the **BOOTP** entries, check that there is an entry that matches the MAC Address, IP Address and .bin file used by the system (the first two details can be found in the **Module** settings in the system's configuration file).
2. If an entry is not present, create a new entry. Then close and restart Manager.
3. Under **File | Preferences** ensure that Manager is set to 255.255.255.255. Also check that **Enable BootP Server** is checked.
4. Select **View | TFTPLog**.
5. Check that the required .bin file is present in Manager's working directory.
6. Attach the serial cable between the PC and the DTE port on the IP Office control unit.
7. Start the terminal program on your PC. Ensure that it has been setup as listed in DTE Port Settings. Within a HyperTerminal session, the current settings are summarized across the base of the screen.
8. Arrange the program windows so that the Terminal program and Manager TFTP Log are visible at the same time.
9. Switch off power to the IP Office control unit.
10. Power on the control unit and press the escape key every second until you get a **Loader** message. Below is an example.

```
P12 Loader 2.4  
CPU Revision 0x0900
```

11. Enter **AT** (note upper case). The control unit should respond **OK**.
12. Enter **AT-X**. The control unit should respond **Multi-Sector Erase**.
13. The control unit will now request the .bin file it requires from Manager. This process appears in the TFTPLog.
14. If the file transfers does not appear to be taking place, check that the IP address shown in the TFTPLog matches the BOOTP entry. Adjust the BOOTP entry if necessary.
15. When completed the system will reboot.

---

# System Components

---

## System Components

This sections contains overviews and summaries of the individual components used to build an IP Office system. These are the units supported by IP Office 4.0 core software.

Not that some units, though supported, may no longer be available from Avaya. Also availability and support for items may vary between different locales and should always be confirmed with the local Avaya office.

---

## Unsupported Items

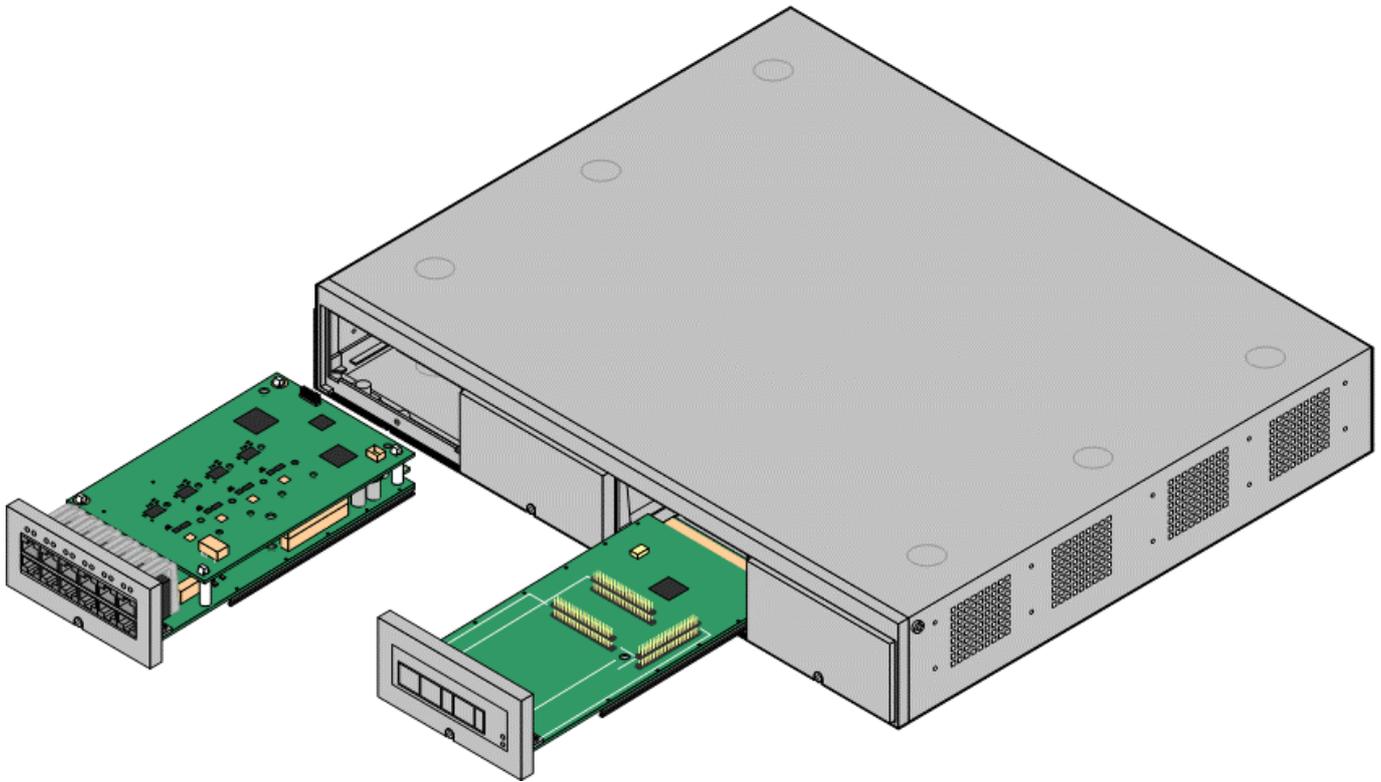
The following items supported in the previous release IP Office 3.2 are not supported with IP Office 4.0. These items may appear to function when connected but they have not been tested with IP Office 4.0. Avaya will not resolve any problems reported with these items and IP Office 4.0 software.

- **Hardware**
  - IP403 Office control unit.
  - IP406 V1 Office control unit.
  
- **Telephones**
  - 4606, 4612 and 4624.
  - TransTalk 9040.

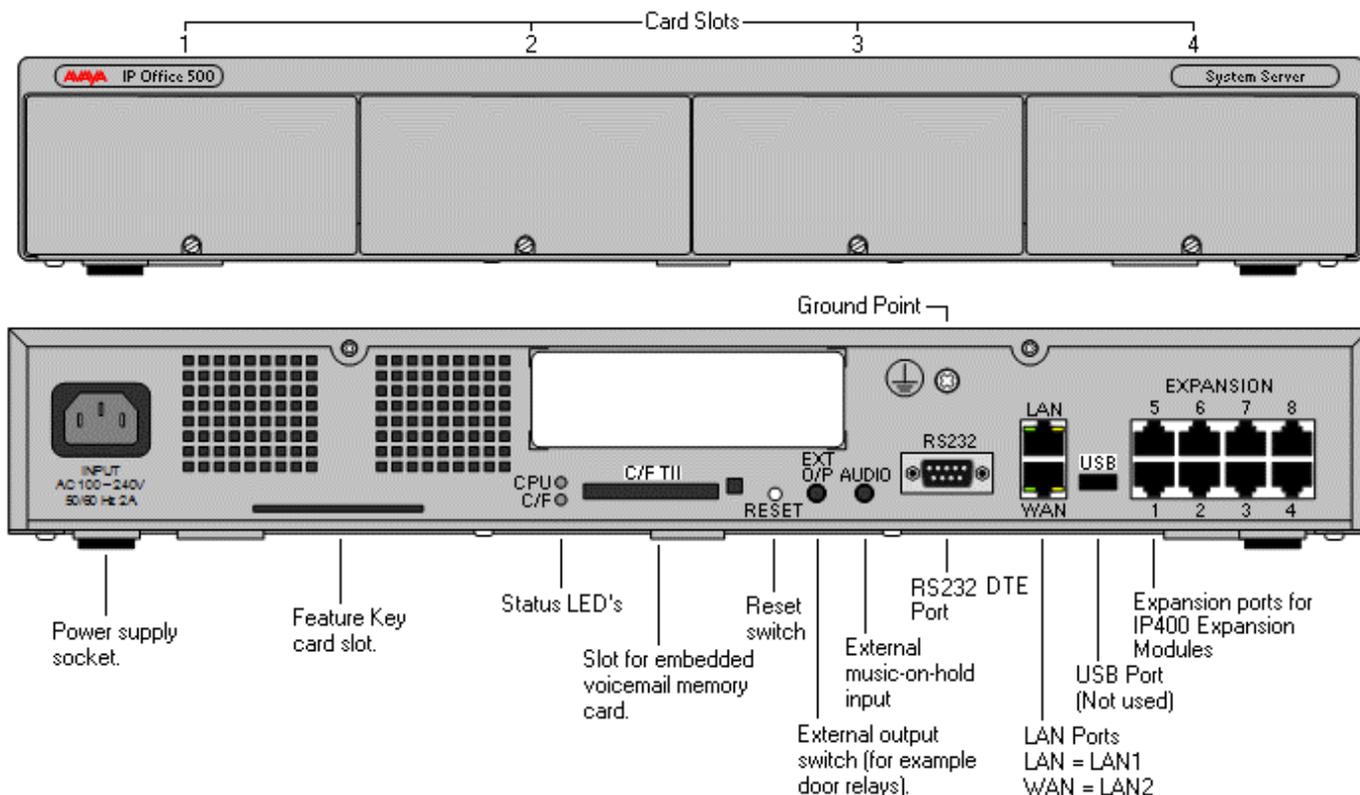
## Control Units

### IP500 System Unit

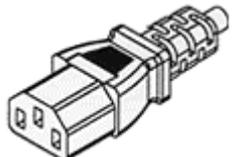
The slots are numbered 1 to 4 from left to right. They can be used in any order. However if the capacity for a particular type of card is exceeded, the card in the rightmost slot will be disabled. The unit must not be used with uncovered slots.



Feature	Capacity
<b>Maximum Extensions</b>	32 using base cards and 32 maximum in IP Office Standard Edition mode. 272 using expansion modules and IP phones in IP Office Profession Edition mode.
<b>Conference Parties</b>	64. Silence suppression is applied to conferences with more than 10 parties.
<b>Trunks Cards</b>	4. Any combination of IP500 trunk daughter cards and up to 2 IP400 trunk cards.
<b>VCM Card Slots</b>	4. Up to a maximum of 128 channels using 2 IP500 VCM cards and or 2 IP400 VCM cards.
<b>Voicemail Channels</b>	Maximum 30 usable for Voicemail Pro/TAPI WAV connection sessions (subject to available licenses).
<b>Locales</b>	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP Office core software level 4.0 minimum.</li> <li>Bin file = ip500.bin.</li> </ul>
<b>Power Supply</b>	Internal power supply unit.
<b>Mounting</b>	Free-standing, rack mounted (requires IP500 Rack Mounting Kit) or wall mounted (requires IP500 Wall Mounting Kit).
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 365mm/14.4". Height: 73mm/2.9"/2U. Clearance: 90mm minimum all sides, 220mm at front. 500mm all side when wall mounted.
<b>Memory</b>	Maximum configuration file size: 1024KB.

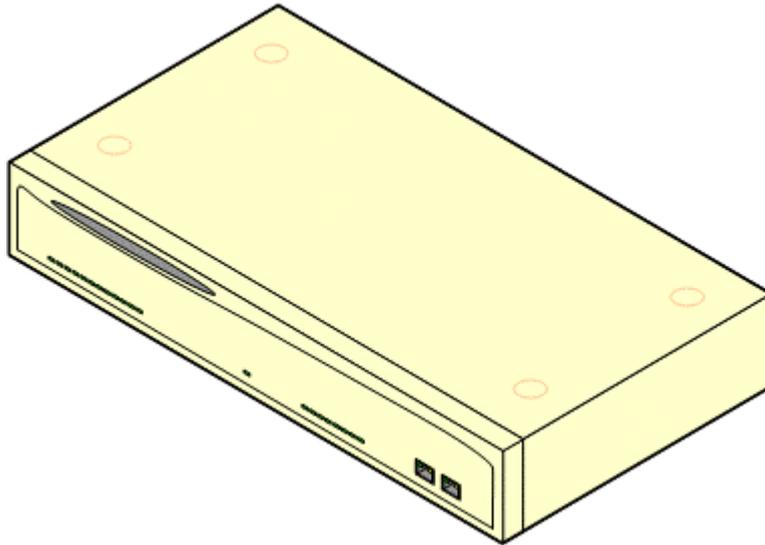


Ports	Description
<b>AUDIO</b>	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for external music on hold source input.
<b>INPUT</b>	DC power input port.
<b>RS232</b>	9-Way D-Type socket. Used for system maintenance.
<b>EXPANSION</b>	RJ45 socket. Used for direct connection to external expansion module using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the expansion module.
<b>EXT O/P</b>	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for switching external relay systems such as door entry controls. The port contains two independent switches controlled by the IP Office.
<b>LAN</b>	RJ45 sockets. These ports form a managed layer 3 Ethernet switch. The ports are full-duplex 10/100Mbps auto-sensing, MDI crossover ports.
<b>WAN</b>	
	Used for connection of a function or protective ground. Use of a ground for all systems is recommended and for some locales may be a regulatory requirement.

Name	Description	Country	SAP Code
IPO 500 Base Unit	IP Office 500 Base Unit		700417207
Smart Card Feature Key	Smart Card Feature Key (MU-Law)		700417470
	Smart Card feature Key (A-Law)		700417488
 IEC60320 C13 Earthed Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
	China	China	700261977
IP500 Rack Mounting Kit	IP500 Rack Mounting Kit		700429202
IP500 Wall Mounting Kit	IP500 Wall Mounting Kit		700430150
IP500 Blanking Plate Kit	IP500 Blanking Plate Kit		700429194

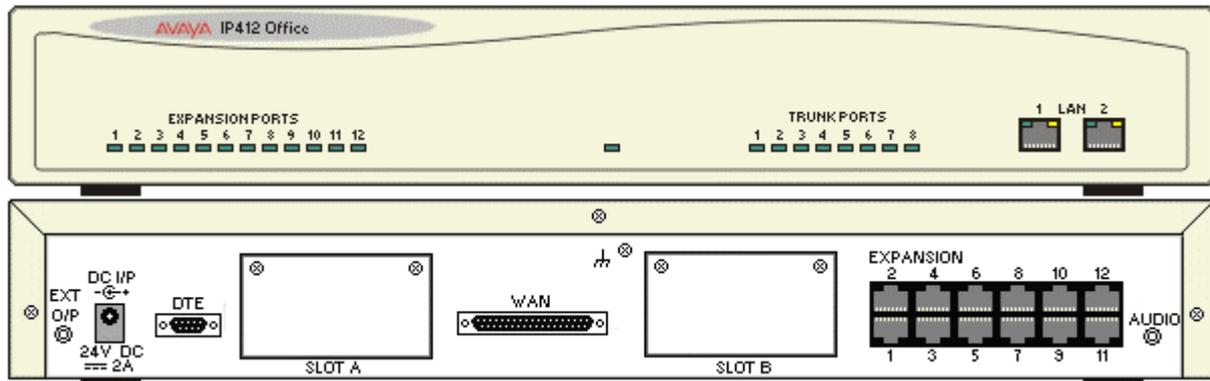
## IP412 Control Unit

The IP412 control unit supports up to 12 Expansion modules. Its LAN ports act as a managed layer 3 Ethernet switch with optional internal firewall for traffic between the two ports.



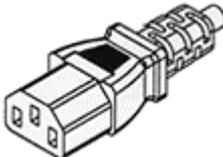
Feature	Capacity
<b>Maximum Extensions</b>	360 of various types in combination. Analog only: 360. DS only: 360. IP only: 360.
<b>Conference Parties</b>	128 (2 banks of 64. Conferences cannot combine resources from both banks. When a conference is started, the bank with the most free resource is used).
<b>Trunks Cards</b>	2 Trunk card slots. All types supported.
<b>VCM Card Slots</b>	2 up to maximum voice compression channels capacity of 60 channels.
<b>Voicemail Channels</b>	30 usable for Voicemail Pro/TAPI WAV connection sessions (subject to available licenses).
<b>Locales</b>	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP Office core software level 1.3 minimum.</li> <li>Bin file = ip412.bin.</li> </ul>
<b>Power Supply</b>	<p>The unit is supplied with an earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the unit's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Older units were supplied with a 2-Pin, 40W external power supply unit which used a locale specific locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord not supplied with the unit.</li> </ul>
<b>Mounting</b>	The unit is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The unit can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
<b>Weight</b>	Unboxed: 3.0Kg/6.7lbs. Boxed: 4.3Kg/9.6lbs.
<b>Memory</b>	Maximum configuration file size: 1024KB.

## IP412 Connections



Ports	Description
<b>AUDIO</b>	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for external music on hold source input.
<b>DC I/P</b>	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya earthed 60W external power supply unit supplied with the control unit.
<b>DTE</b>	9-Way D-Type socket. Used for system maintenance. Suitable for direct connection of IP Office Serial Port Feature Key dongle.
<b>EXPANSION</b>	RJ45 socket. Used for direct connection to external expansion modules using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the expansion module.
<b>EXT O/P</b>	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for switching external relay systems such as door entry controls. The port contains two independent switches controlled by the IP Office.
<b>LAN</b>	RJ45 socket. These ports form a managed layer 3 Ethernet switch. The ports are half-duplex 10/100Mbps auto-sensing, MDI crossover ports.
<b>SLOT A</b>	Used for trunk cards of all types except WAN port trunk card. Normally Slot B should be used first. Trunks cards are supplied with replacement external blanking plates suitable for the trunk card port connections.
<b>SLOT B</b>	
<b>WAN</b>	37-Way D-Type socket. Used for the connection of V.24, V.35 or X.21 WAN service.
	Used for connection of a function or protective ground. Use of a ground for all systems is recommended and for some locales may be a regulatory requirement. On older modules where this screw is not present, the left-hand fixing screw of Slot B can be used.

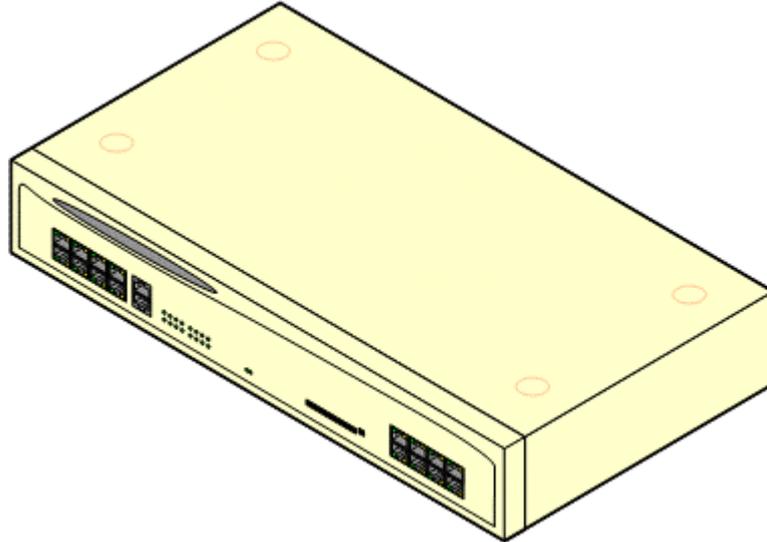
All control units are available in either North America or Rest of World variants. The choice controls various default settings of the unit. For E911 support a North American variant control unit must be used. The companding can be changed once a unit is installed. Control units are supplied with an external power supply unit but not a locale specific power cord.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP412 Office	A-Law	Rest of World	700234479
	U-Law	North America	700350408
 IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
	China	China	700261977
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

## IP406 V2 Control Unit

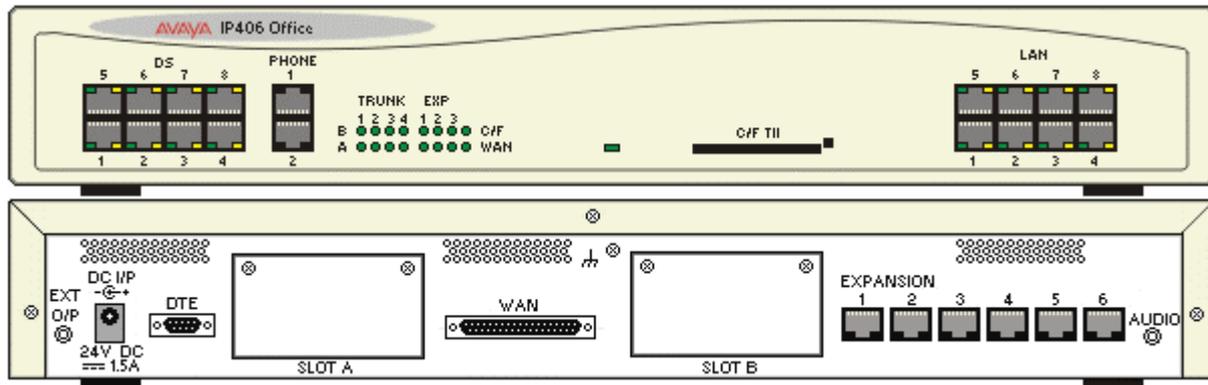
The IP406 V2 includes 8 digital station (DS) and 2 analog phone (PHONE) ports. It includes an eight port Ethernet LAN switch (unmanaged Layer 2) and Compact Flash card slot for an optional embedded voicemail memory card. It supports up to 6 external expansion modules plus IP extensions controlled through its LAN interface.

The IP406 V2 also includes automatic gain control (AGC) on its conference chip and performs IPSec tunneling through hardware rather than software.



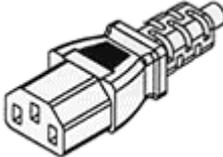
Feature	Capacity
<b>Maximum Extensions</b>	190 of various types in combination. Analog only: 182. DS only: 188. IP only: 190.
<b>Conference Parties</b>	64. Conference chip includes automatic gain control (AGC).
<b>Trunks Cards</b>	2 Trunk card slots. All types supported. Dual PRI trunk cards in Slot A only.
<b>VCM Card Slots</b>	1 up to maximum voice compression channels capacity of 30 channels.
<b>Voicemail Channels</b>	Maximum 20 usable for Voicemail Pro/TAPI WAV connection sessions (subject to available licenses).
<b>Locales</b>	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP Office core software level 2.1(27) minimum.</li> <li>Bin file = ip406u.bin.</li> </ul>
<b>Power Supply</b>	The unit is supplied with an earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the unit's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the unit.
<b>Mounting</b>	The unit is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The unit can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
<b>Weight</b>	Unboxed: 3.0Kg/6.7lbs. Boxed: 4.3Kg/9.6lbs.
<b>Memory</b>	Maximum configuration file size: 256KB.

## IP406 V2 Connections



Ports	Description
<b>AUDIO</b>	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for external music on hold source input.
<b>C/F TII</b>	Type 2 Compact Flash socket. Used for optional embedded voicemail card.
<b>DC I/P</b>	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya un-earthed 45W external power supply unit supplied with the control unit.
<b>DS</b>	RJ45 socket. Digital Station port. Used for connection of IP Office supported DS phones. Not suitable for out-of-building connections.
<b>DTE</b>	9-Way D-Type socket. Used for system maintenance. Suitable for direct connection of IP Office Serial Port Feature Key dongle.
<b>EXPANSION</b>	RJ45 socket. Used for direct connection to external expansion modules using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the expansion module.
<b>EXT O/P</b>	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for switching external relay systems such as door entry controls. The port contains two independent switches controlled by the IP Office.
<b>LAN</b>	These ports form an unmanaged layer 2 Ethernet switch. The ports are full-duplex 10/100Mbps auto-sensing, auto-MDI/MDIX.
<b>PHONE</b>	Used for connection of analog phones. Not suitable for out-of-building connections. Four-wire analog phones should be connected via a master socket containing ringing capacitors.
<b>SLOT A</b>	Used for trunk cards of all types except WAN port trunk card. Normally Slot B should be used first. Dual PRI trunk cards supported in Slot A only. Trunks cards are supplied with replacement external blanking plates suitable for the trunk card port connections.
<b>SLOT B</b>	
<b>WAN</b>	37-Way D-Type socket. Used for the connection of V.24, V.35 or X.21 WAN service.
	Used for connection of a function or protective ground. Use of a ground for all systems is recommended and for some locales may be a regulatory requirement.

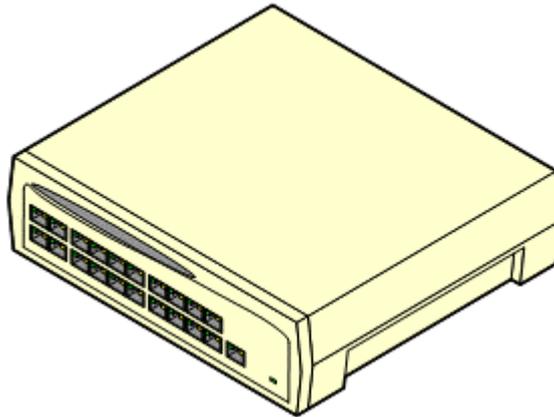
All control units are available in either North America or Rest of World variants. The choice controls various default settings of the unit. For E911 support a North American variant control unit must be used. The companding can be changed once a unit is installed.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP406 V2 Office DS.	A-Law	Rest of World	700343536
	U-Law	North America	700359946
 IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
	China	China	700261977
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

Control units are supplied with an external power supply unit but not a locale specific power cord.

## Small Office Edition

The IP Office Small Office Edition control unit shares many of the features of the other IP Office control units, however it does not support any expansion modules. Small Office Edition control units include various numbers of integral DS, PHONE (POT) and Analog ports.

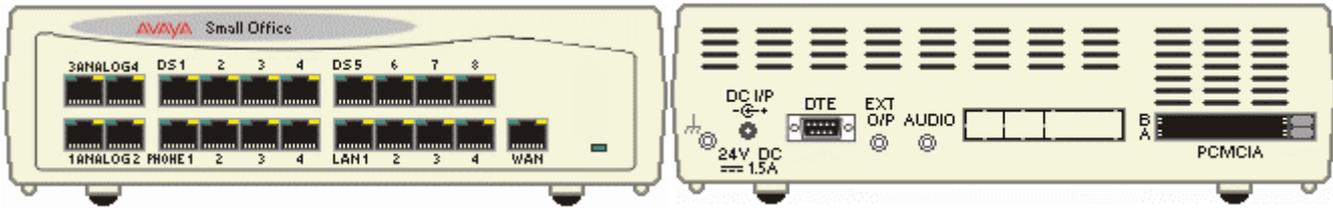


Small Office Edition Model	Analog Trunks	Analog Extensions	Digital Stations	Voice Compression Channels
2T+4A (3 VoIP)*	2	4	0	3
4T+8A (3 VoIP)*	4	8	0	3
4T+4A+8DS (3 VoIP)	4	4	8	3
4T+4A+8DS (16 VoIP)	4	4	8	16

\*These models are still supported but are no longer available from Avaya. Previous models that included integral DT ports are not supported on IP Office 3.0 or higher.

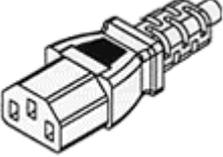
Feature	Capacity
<b>Maximum Extensions</b>	28 of various types in combination. Analog only: 4. DS only: 8. IP only: 16.
<b>Conference Parties</b>	21 with a maximum of 8 parties in any particular conference.
<b>Trunks Cards</b>	1 Trunk card slot for ATM4, Quad BRI, Single T1 PRI or single WAN port trunk cards. Sections of the rear panel are removable to provide cable connection to the installed trunk card. For the WAN port card a complete replacement back panel is provided.
<b>VCM Card Slots</b>	None. Either 3 or 16 voice compression channels are pre-built into the module.
<b>Voicemail Channels</b>	Maximum 10 usable for Voicemail Pro/TAPI WAV connection sessions (subject to licenses).
<b>Locales</b>	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP Office core software level 2.0 minimum.</li> <li>Bin file = ip401ng.bin.</li> </ul>
<b>Power Supply</b>	The unit is supplied with a 3-Pin 45W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the unit.
<b>Mounting</b>	The unit is designed as a free-standing module that can also be wall mounted via fixing brackets in the base.
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 255mm/10.0". Depth: 241mm/9.5". Height: 76mm/3.0".
<b>Weight</b>	Unboxed: 1.2Kg/2.64lbs. Boxed: 2.17Kg/4.77lbs.
<b>Memory</b>	Maximum configuration file size: 192KB.

## Small Office Edition Connections



Ports	Description
<b>AUDIO</b>	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for external music on hold source input.
<b>ANALOG</b>	Used for connection of external analog trunks. Loop-start only.
<b>DC I/P</b>	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya earthed 60W external power supply unit supplied with the control unit.
<b>DS</b>	Digital Station port. Used for connection of IP Office supported DS phones. Not suitable for out-of-building extensions.
<b>DTE</b>	9-Way D-Type socket. Used for system maintenance. Suitable for direct connection of IP Office Serial Port Feature Key dongle.
<b>EXT O/P</b>	3.5mm Stereo jack socket. Used for switching external relay systems such as door entry controls. The port contains two independent switches controlled by the IP Office.
<b>LAN</b>	RJ45 socket. These ports form an unmanaged layer 2 Ethernet switch. The ports are full-duplex 10/100Mbps auto-sensing, auto-MDI/MDIX ports.
<b>PCMCIA</b>	Dual PCMCIA card slot. Used for optional Embedded Voicemail card and wireless access point card. Cards are not hot-swappable and order of slot usage is not significant.
<b>PHONE</b>	RJ45 socket. Used for connection of analog phones. Intended for two-wire analog phones. For connection to 4-wire analog phones connection should be via a master socket with ringing capacitors. During power failure, PHONE port 1 is directly connected to ANALOG trunk port 2. Not suitable for out-of-building connections. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On some older Small Office Edition control units, these ports are labeled as <b>POT</b> rather than <b>PHONE</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>WAN</b>	RJ45 socket. 10/100Mbps Ethernet LAN port. Acts as LAN2 within the configuration.
	3.5mm Jack socket. Function ground point. Used for connection of a function or protective ground. Use of a ground for all systems is recommended and for some locales may be a regulatory requirement.

All control units are available in either North America or Rest of World variants. The choice controls various default settings of the unit. For E911 support a North American variant control unit must be used. The companding can be changed once a unit is installed.

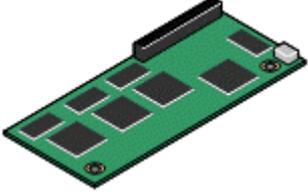
Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
Small Office Edition 4T+4A+8DS (3 VoIP)	A-Law	Rest of World	700280209
	U-Law	North America	700350424
Small Office Edition 4T+4A+8DS (16 VoIP)	A-Law	Rest of World	700280217
	U-Law	North America	700350432
 IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
	China	China	700261977
Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

Control units are supplied with an external power supply unit but not a locale specific power cord.

## Internal Cards

### Modem Cards

A modem card allows the IP Office to answer incoming modem calls up to V.90. There are two variants of modem card available:

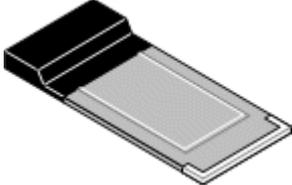
Variants	Country	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500	SAP Code
 <p><b>Modem 2 Card</b> Provides 2 modem channels. Supported from IP Office 1.0 onwards.</p>	All	✗	✓	✓	✗	700185226
	<p><b>Internal Modem Card</b> Provides 12 modem channels except on the IP403 where it only provides 4. Supported from IP Office 2.1(27) onwards.</p>	All	✗	✓	✓	✗

- The cards are supplied with 2 plastic stand off pillars for installation.
- The first analog trunk on Small Office Edition control units and on modules fitted with an ATM4 or ATM4U trunk card, can be set to answer V.32 analog modem calls. Whilst in this mode, the trunk cannot be used for voice calls.

### Wireless Card

This card is supported by the Small Office Edition control unit only and allows the unit to act as an 802.11b wireless access point. The card can be inserted into either of the control units two PCMCIA slots.

- ⚠ These cards are not hot swappable. Removal of the card while the IP Office control unit is powered is not recommended.

Wireless Card	Country	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500	SAP Code
 <p>Small Office Edition Wireless Card</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use of the card requires entry of a Small Office WiFi license (<i>IP400 WiFi Access Point RFA</i>) into the IP Office configuration.</li> </ul>	All	✓	✗	✗	✗	700289739

## Embedded Voicemail Memory Cards

These cards are supported on the Small Office Edition and the IP406 V2 control units. They are specially formatted Compact Flash cards that provide embedded voicemail operation and can also be configured for basic auto-attendant support.

Use of these cards for voicemail does not require a license.

- ⚠ These cards are not hot swappable. Removal of the cards while the IP Office control unit is powered may cause loss or corruption of messages and prompts.

Variant		Country	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500	SAP Code
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Small Office Edition</b> Uses a 64MB Compact Flash cards fitted into a PCMCIA slot caddy. The card provides up to 10 hours storage for compressed prompts, greetings and messages. Operation of the card uses the one of the Small Office's voice compression channels for each call.</li> </ul>	All	✓	✗	✗	✗	700289721
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>IP406 V2</b> Uses a 512MB Compact Flash card. This card provides up to 15 hours storage for uncompressed prompts, greetings and messages. Operation of this card does not require voice compression channels.</li> </ul>	All	✗	✓	✗	✓	700343460

- From IP Office 3.0 onwards, the prompt files for the following languages are pre-installed on the Avaya memory cards.
  - Danish (dan)
  - German (deu)
  - English-UK (eng)
  - English-US (enu)
  - Spanish (esp)
  - Spanish-Mexico (esm)
  - Spanish-Argentina (ess)
  - Finnish (fin)
  - French (fra)
  - French-Canadian (frc)
  - Italian (ita)
  - Japanese (jpn)
  - Korean (kor)
  - Dutch (nld)
  - Norwegian (nor)
  - Portuguese (ptg)
  - Portuguese-Brazilian (ptb)
  - Russian (rus)
  - Swedish (sve)
  - Chinese (chs)
- For full details of embedded voicemail setup and configuration, refer to the Embedded Voicemail Installation manual.
- Memory cards in these slots can also be used for storage of files normally obtained via TFTP transfer. For example the music-on-hold wav file and supported 4600 Series/5600 Series software files. This will however reduce storage space for prompt and message files if embedded voicemail is being used. Non-Avaya memory cards can be used for this function.

## Voice Compression Module Cards (VCM's)

VCM's are optional cards that can be installed inside all IP Office system control units except the Small Office Edition. Each VCM provides a number of voice compression channels, indicated by a number suffix. For example, a VCM 8 has 8 voice compression channels.

- Small Office Edition control units have either 3 or 16 built in voice compression channels with 40ms echo cancellation.

VCM Cards	SAP Code	Small Office Edition	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
25ms echo cancellation.	VCM5*	700185119	×	✓	×
	VCM10*	700185127	×	✓	×
	VCM20*	700185135	×	✓	×
	VCM30	700293939	×	✓	✓
64ms echo cancellation.	VCM4	700359854	×	✓	✓
	VCM8	700359862	×	✓	✓
	VCM16	700359870	×	✓	✓
	VCM24	700359888	×	✓	✓
Number of VCM cards.		0	1	2	2
Maximum number of channels.		3/16	30	60	128

- Support for VCM 20 on IP403 was added at IP Office 1.3
- \*These modules are still supported on some systems but are no longer available from Avaya.
- For the IP500 control unit an IP500 Carrier Card is required, up to a maximum of 2 carrier cards. Channels can also be added using up to 2 IP500 VCM base cards with VCM licenses.

## IP400 Trunks Cards

### Analog Trunk Card Universal (ATM4U)

This card supersedes the previous Analog Trunk cards and is referred to as the "ATM4U". It can be identified by a label on the base of the card.

The card is supported on IP Office software 2.1(36) and higher. Unlike the previous ATM4 card, the same ATM4U card variant can be used in all locales.

For systems running IP Office software 3.1 or higher, the echo cancellation used on each trunk can be switched off or on (16ms).

The card provides 4 RJ45 sockets for analog trunk connections. The card only supports loop-start trunks. For ground-start trunks an Analog Trunk expansion module should be used.

- **Power Failure Operation**

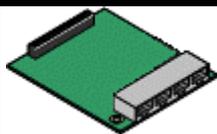
There are no power failure extension connections provided for the analog trunk card. If this is a requirement, the ATM16 expansion module should be used.

- **⚠ WARNING**

In all IP Office installations, any module or control unit using analog trunk connections must be connected to a functional earth.

- **⚠ WARNING**

Within the Republic of South Africa and in areas of high lightning risk, any module or control unit using analog trunk connections must be connected to a protective ground and to surge protection equipment (an Avaya 146G Surge Protector).

ATM4U Trunk Card	Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
 ATM4 Uni (Loop-Start)	All	700359938	✗	✓	✓	✓

- The card include two plastic stand off pillars for installation and a replacement blanking plate for the rear of IP400 control units.
- For the IP500 control unit an IP500 Carrier Card is required, up to a maximum of 2 carrier cards.

## Analog Trunk Card (ATM4)

The Analog Trunk card is also referred to as the "ATM4". It provides 4 RJ45 sockets for analog trunk connections. The card only supports loop-start trunks.

The card is available in a number of locale specific variants as detailed below.

- **Power Failure Operation**

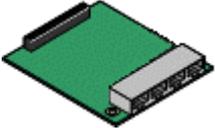
There are no power failure extension connections provided for the analog trunk card.

- **⚠ WARNING**

In all IP Office installations, any module or control unit using analog trunk connections must be connected to a functional earth.

- **⚠ WARNING**

Within the Republic of South Africa and in areas of high lightning risk, any module or control unit using analog trunk connections must be connected to a protective ground and to surge protection equipment (an Avaya 146G Surge Protector).

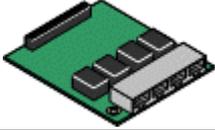
ATM4 Trunk Cards		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
	IP400 Analog 4 (Loop-Start)	North and South America	700185192	×	✓	✓	×
	IP400 Analog 4 EU (Loop-Start)	Europe	700241672	×	✓	✓	×
	IP400 Analog 4 NZ (Loop-Start)	New Zealand	700241706	×	✓	✓	×

- These cards include two plastic stand off pillars for installation and a replacement blanking plate for the rear of IP400 control units.

## BRI Trunk Cards (Quad BRI)

The BRI trunk card is also referred to as the "Quad BRI". It provides 4 RJ45 sockets for ETSI BRI trunk connections, with each trunk supporting 2B+D channels.

- The trunk card ports include 100 ohm termination.

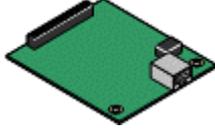
Variant		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
	IP400 BRI	All	700185168	✓	✓	✓	✓
	IP400 BRI 8 (UNI)	All except China	700262017	✓	✓	✓	✓

- These cards include two plastic stand off pillars for installation and a replacement blanking plate for the rear of IP400 control units.
- For the IP500 control unit an IP500 Carrier Card is required, up to a maximum of 2 carrier cards.

## T1 PRI Trunk Cards

These trunk cards support 23B+D primary rate (US PRI) trunks and 24B T1 robbed-bit trunks. The mode of operation is selected within the IP Office configuration.

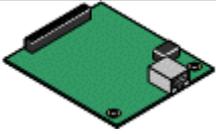
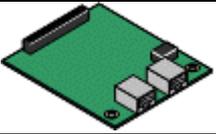
The T1 PRI card includes an integral CSU/DSU that can be activated through the IP Office Monitor application.

PRI Trunk Cards		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
	IP400 PRI 24 T1	North America	700185200	✗	✓	✓	✓
	IP400 PRI 48 T1	North America	700185218	✓	✓	✓	✓

- These cards include two plastic stand off pillars for installation and a replacement blanking plate for the rear of IP400 control units.
- For dual port cards the IP406 V2 only supports a single dual card in Slot A.
- For the IP500 control unit an IP500 Carrier Card is required, up to a maximum of 2 carrier cards.

## E1 PRI Trunk Cards

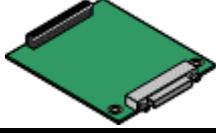
These cards support primary rate trunks providing 30B+D channels.

E1 PRI trunk Cards	Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
	IP400 PRI 30 E1 (1.4)	All except China and CALA.	700272461	✗	✓	✓
	IP400 PRI 60 E1	All except China and CALA.	700185184	✗	✓	✓

- These cards include two plastic stand off pillars for installation and a replacement blanking plate for the rear of IP400 control units.
- For dual port cards the IP406 V2 only supports a single dual card in Slot A.
- For the IP500 control unit an IP500 Carrier Card is required, up to a maximum of 2 carrier cards.

## WAN Trunk Card

This trunk card provides a single 37-way D-type WAN port.

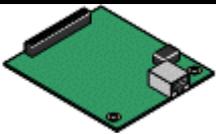
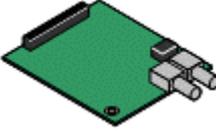
WAN Cards	Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
	IP400 WAN Expansion	All	700289713	✓	✗	✗

- The card is supplied with two plastic stand off pillars for installation and a replacement rear panel for the Small Office Edition control unit.

## E1R2 PRI Trunk Cards

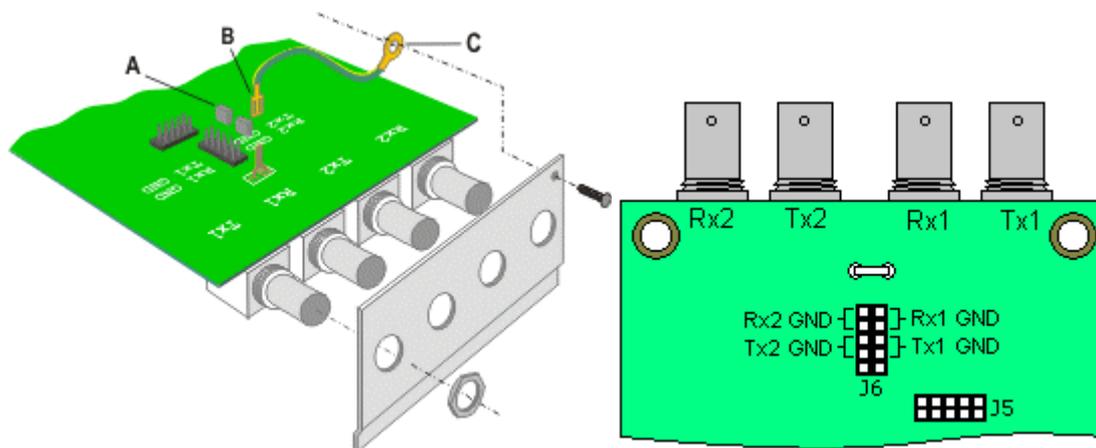
These cards support E1 trunks with R2 signalling. Each trunk provides up to 30B+D channels.

E1R2 PRI trunk cards are available with either RJ45 or coaxial cable connectors.

E1R2PRI trunk Cards		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
	IP400 PRI 30 E1R2 RJ45	CALA, Korea, China	700241631	✗	✓	✓	✓
	IP400 PRI 60 E1R2 RJ45		700241649	✗	✓	✓	✓
	IP400 PRI 30 E1R2 COAX	CALA	700241656	✗	✓	✓	✗
	IP400 PRI 60 E1R2 COAX		700241664	✗	✓	✓	✗

- These cards include two plastic stand off pillars for installation and a replacement blanking plate for the rear of IP400 control units.
- For E1R2 coaxial card, a ground-jumper cable and coaxial connector locking rings are included.
- For dual port cards the IP406 V2 only supports a single dual card in Slot A.
- For the IP500 control unit an IP500 Carrier Card is required, up to a maximum of 2 carrier cards.

E1R2 coax trunk cards must be grounded correctly and require the IP Office control unit to be connected to a protective ground. Normally the ends of one connection is grounded. For example, if the exchange Tx1 is grounded, the IP Office Rx1 should also be grounded. However this must be confirmed with the line provider to establish which ends they want grounded.

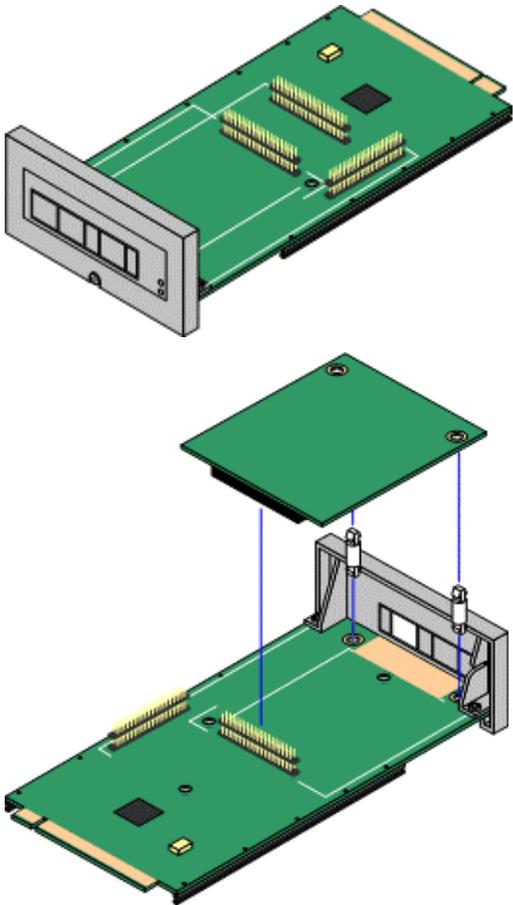


1. Connect the ground strap spade end (B) supplied with the card to the spade connection on the card and the other end (C) to the chassis with the long securing screw also supplied with the card.
2. Use the two jumpers supplied with the card, match the ground selection of the line provider. For example, if the line provider has grounded their Tx1, place a jumper across the two Rx1 pins of jumper block J6.

# IP500 Base Cards

## IP500 Legacy Card Carrier Base Card

The IP500 Legacy Card Carrier base card can be used to fit IP Office IP400 cards into the IP500 control unit. This can include IP400 trunk and IP400 VCM cards. Up to 2 Legacy Card Carrier cards are supported in an IP500 control unit.



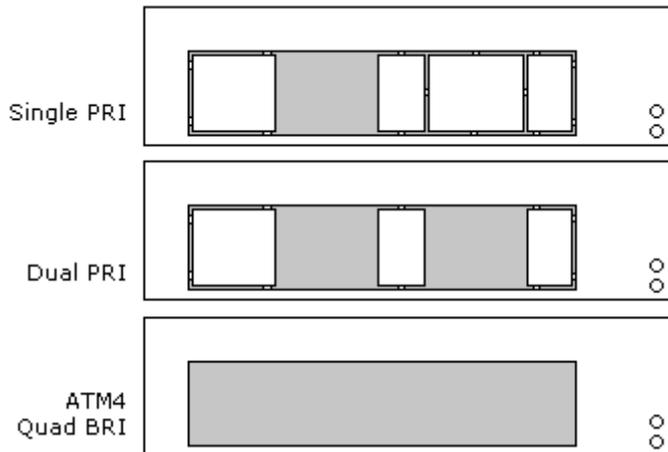
- **Maximum per IP500 Control Unit: 2.**
- **IP500 Daughter Card Support: X.**
- **IP400 Card Support:**

✓ PRI T1	✓ BRI-8 (UNI)
✓ Dual PRI T1	✓ ANLG 4 Uni (US only)
✓ PRI 30 E1 (1.4)	✓ VCM 4
✓ Dual PRI E1	✓ VCM 8
✓ PRI 30 E1R2 RJ45	✓ VCM 16
✓ Dual PRI E1R2 RJ45	✓ VCM 24
	✓ VCM 30

- Cards not listed are not supported.

Name	Description	SAP Code
IPO 500 Carrier Card	IP Office 500 Carrier Card	700417215

Panels on the front of the carrier card can be snapped off to match the port connects when fitting an IP500 trunk card.



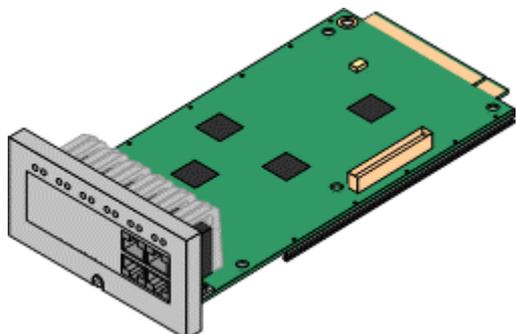
## IP500 VCM Cards

This type of card is used to add voice compression channels to the IP500 control unit. Those channels are used for VoIP calls including IP extensions and or IP trunks.

The IP500 VCM card is available in two variants; 32 channels and 64 channels. Each card provides 4 unlicensed VCM channels. Additional channels are enabled through the use of IP500 VCM licenses.

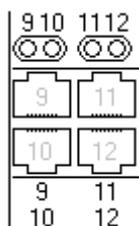
The IP500 control unit supports up to 128 voice compression channels, using IP500 VCM cards and or IP400 VCM cards on an IP500 carrier card.

Both cards have 4 RJ45 ports for that are used for connections when an IP500 daughter card is fitted.



- **Codecs:** G.711, G729 and G.723 with 64ms echo cancellation.
- **Maximum per IP500 Control Unit:** 2.
- **IP500 Daughter Card Support:** ✓ 1.

- LEDs 1 to 8 are unlabelled. They are used to indicate voice compression channel usage. Each LED lit represents 12.5% of the available voice compression channel capacity in use (total card capacity rather than licensed capacity).
- LED1 is used for general card status. Flash every 5 seconds = Okay.



### Daughter Card Ports (9-12)

LED use depends daughter card type:

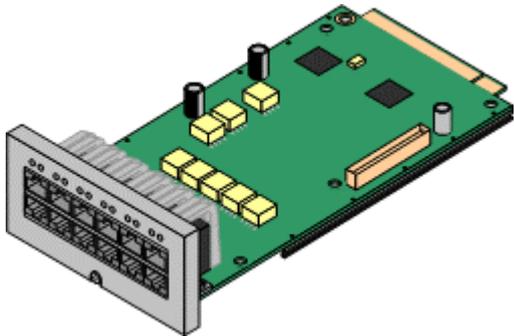
- **Analog Trunk:**  
Green flash in use.
- **BRI:**  
Green on when trunk present  
Green flashing when trunk in use.

LED 9 is used for daughter card status. Flash every 5 seconds = Okay.

Name	Description	SAP Code
IPO 500 MC VCM 32	IP Office 500 Media Card Voice Coding Module 32	700417389
IPO 500 MC VCM 64	IP Office 500 Media Card Voice Coding Module 64	700417397
IPO LIC IP500 VCM LIC 4 CH	IP500 Addition VCM Channels License: 4 Channels	202961
IPO LIC IP500 VCM LIC 8 CH	IP500 Addition VCM Channels License: 8 Channels	202962
IPO LIC IP500 VCM LIC 16 CH	IP500 Addition VCM Channels License: 16 Channels	202963
IPO LIC IP500 VCM LIC 28 CH	IP500 Addition VCM Channels License: 28 Channels	202964
IPO LIC IP500 VCM LIC 60 CH	IP500 Addition VCM Channels License: 60 Channels	202965

## IP500 Digital Station Base Card

This card is used to add digital station (DS) extension ports to the IP500 control unit. It provides 8 RJ45 DS extension ports for use with Avaya digital phones not including IP phones. A further 4 RJ45 ports are provided for trunk connections when an IP500 trunk card is fitted to this card.



- Provides 8 DS ports for digital stations supported by IP Office 4.0 (except 4406D, 4412D and 4424D).
- **Maximum per IP500 Control Unit: 3.**
- **IP500 Daughter Card Support: ✓ 1.**

### Digital Station Ports (1-8)

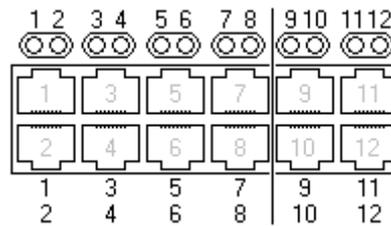
Green On - Phone detected.

LED1 is used for card status:

Red On - Error

Red Flashing - Initializing.

Red Flash every 5 seconds - Okay.

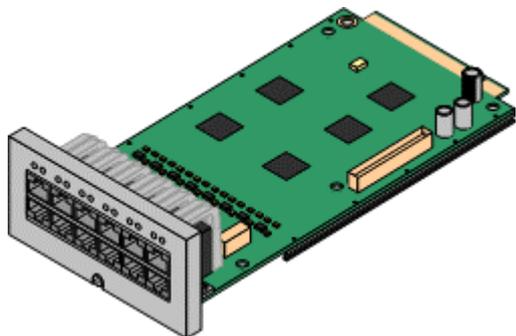


Name	Description	SAP Code
IPO 500 Extn Card Dgtl Sta 8	IP Office 500 Extension Card Digital Station 8	700417330

## IP500 Analog Phone Base Card

This card is used to add analog phone extension ports to the IP500 control unit. It is available in two variants, providing either 2 or 8 analog extension ports.

The cards have 8 RJ45 extension ports for use with analog phone devices. A further 4 RJ45 ports are provided for trunk connections when an IP500 trunk card is fitted to this card.



- Provides either 8 or 2 analog ports depending on card variant:
  - Supports ICLID modes DTMFA, DTMFC, DTMFD, FSK and UK20.
  - REN 2 (1 for external bell device).
  - Off-Hook current: 25mA
  - Ring Voltage: 40V.
- **Maximum per IP500 Control Unit: 4.**
- **IP500 Daughter Card Support: ✓ 1.**
- The Analog Phone 8 provides a power fail port when fitted with an IP500 Analog Trunk daughter card. During power failure extension port 8 is connected to the analog trunk port 12.
- Intended for connection to two-wire analog phones, the ports do not include a ringing capacitor. For connection to 4-wire analog phones, connection should be via a master socket with ringing capacitors.

### Analog Extension Ports (1-8)

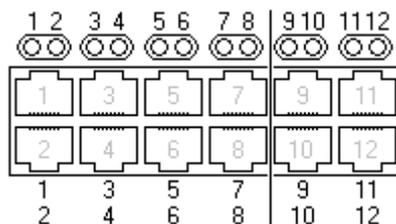
LED1 only is used.

LED1 is used for card status:

Red On - Error

Red Flashing - Initializing.

Red Flash every 5 seconds - Okay.

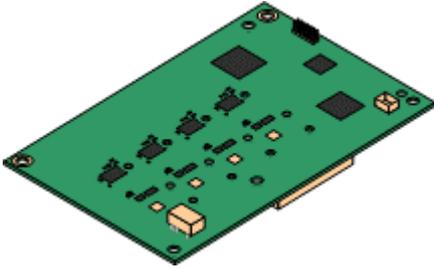


Name	Description	SAP Code
IPO 500 Extn Card Phone 2	IP Office 500 Extension Card Phone 2	700431778
IPO 500 Extn Card Phone 8	IP Office 500 Extension Card Phone 8	700417231

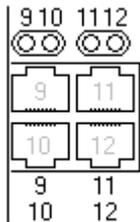
# IP500 Daughter Cards

## IP500 Analog Trunk Daughter Card

This card can be added to an IP500 base card to provide that card with support for 4 loop-start analog trunks. This card can be fitted to any IP500 base card except the IP500 Carrier base card.



- **Ports/Channels**  
4 Loop-start analog trunk ports. Connections via the host IP500 base card.
  - DTMF, ICLID, Busy tone detection.
  - Over-voltage and lightning protection (may still require additional protection equipment see Lightning Protection/Out-of-Building Connections).
  - DTMF and LD dialing.
  - Adjustable echo cancellation (default 16ms). Selectable to **Off, 8, 16, 32, 64** and **128** milliseconds.
  - Power Fail Port when fitted to an IP500 Analog Phone 8 base card. During power failure extension port 8 is connected to the analog trunk port 12.
- **License:** No license required. Supported by IP Office Standard and IP Office Professional Edition modes.
- **Maximum per IP500 Control Unit:** 4.
- **IP Office Software Level:** 4.0+.



### Daughter Card Ports (9-12)

The LED's on ports 9 to 12 are used as follows:

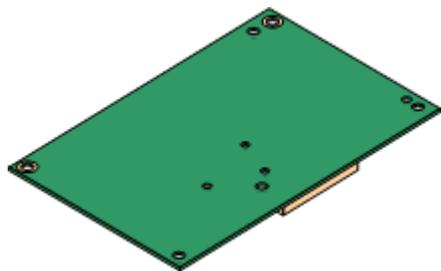
- **Green on:** Card fitted.
- **Green flashing:** Trunk in use.
- LED 9 is also used for daughter card status. Flash every 5 seconds = Okay.

Name	Description	SAP Code
IPO 500 Trnk Anlg 4 Uni	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Analog 4 Universal	700417405

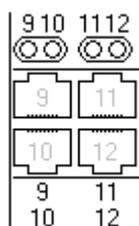
## IP500 BRI Trunk Daughter Cards

This card can be added to an IP500 base card to provide that card with support for BRI trunks. This card can be fitted to any IP500 base card except the IP500 Carrier base card.

The card is available in 8 channel (4 physical trunks) or 4 channel (2 physical trunks) variants.



- **Ports/Channels**  
2 or 4 BRI trunk ports. Connections via ports 9 to 12 of the host IP500 base card.
  - Each trunk port supports 2B+D channels.
  - ETSI or AusTS013 basic rate protocol set through the IP Office configuration.
- **License:** No license required. Supported by IP Office Standard and IP Office Professional Edition modes.
- **Maximum per IP500 Control Unit:** 4.
- **IP Office Software Level:** 4.0+.
- This card is approved for use in the following countries:
  - Brazil
  - China.
  - India.
  - Argentina.
  - Australia.
  - New Zealand.
  - Russia.
  - South Africa.
  - United Arab Emirates (UAE).
  - Croatia.
  - European Union (EU).



### Daughter Card Ports (9-12)

The LED's for ports 9 to 12 are used as follows:

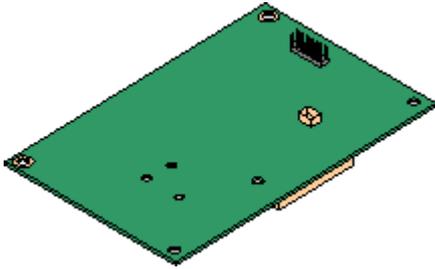
- **Off:** No trunk present.
- **Green on:** Trunk present.
- **Green flashing:** Trunk in use.
- LED 9 is also used for daughter card status. Flash every 5 seconds = Okay.

Name	Description	SAP Code
IPO 500 Trnk BRI 4 Uni	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Basic Rate 4 Universal	700417413
IPO 500 Trnk BRI 8 Uni	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Basic Rate 8 Universal	700417421

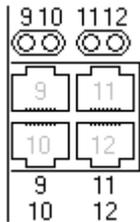
## IP500 PRI Universal Trunk Daughter Card

This card can be added to an IP500 base card to provide that card with support for PRI trunks. This card can be fitted to any IP500 base card except the IP500 Carrier base card.

The card is available in single port or dual port variants.



- **Ports/Channels**  
1 or 2 PRI trunk ports. Connections via ports 9 and 10 of the host IP500 base card. Each port supports the following PRI modes. On dual port cards both ports use the same mode. The mode can be switched within the IP Office configuration.
  - E1 PRI (30B+D channels per port).
  - E1R2 PRI (30B channels per port).
  - T1 robbed bit (24B channels per port).
  - T1 PRI (23B+D channels per port).
  - Port 11 and 12 can be used as test points for connection of test and monitoring equipment for the adjacent port.
- **License**  
The IP Office systems supports 8 B-channels for each IP500 PRI-U port fitted, using in-service channels from port 9 of slot 1 upwards. Additional B-channels up to the capacity of ports installed and PRI mode selected require **IP500 Universal PRI (Additional Channels)** licenses added to the configuration. D-channels are not affected by licensing.
- **Maximum per IP500 Control Unit: 4.**
- **Software Level: 4.1+.**



### Daughter Card Ports (9-12)

The LED's for ports 9 and 10 are used as follows:

- **Off:** No trunk present.
- **Green on:** Trunk present.
- **Green flashing:** Trunk in use.
- **Red/Green Fast Flash (port 9) or Green Fast Flash (port 10):** Alarm indication signal (AIS) from the trunk remote end.
- **Red with Green Blink (port 9) or Green Blink (port 1):** Port in loopback mode (set through IP Office System Monitor).
- LED 9 is also used for daughter card status. Flash every 5 seconds = Okay.

Name	Description	SAP Code
IPO 500 TRNK PRI 1 UNI	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Primary Rate 1 Universal	700417439
IPO 500 TRNK PRI 2 UNI	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Primary Rate 2 Universal	700417462

When installed in IP Office 500 with an U-Law Feature Key dongle, the card will default T1 PRI mode. When installed in an IP Office 500 with an A-Law Feature Key dongle the card will default to E1 PRI mode. The required mode can be selected within IP Office Manager by right-clicking on the line icon and selecting **Change Universal PRI Card Line Type** and then selecting the required line type.

## IP400 Expansion Modules

### IP400 Analog Trunk Module

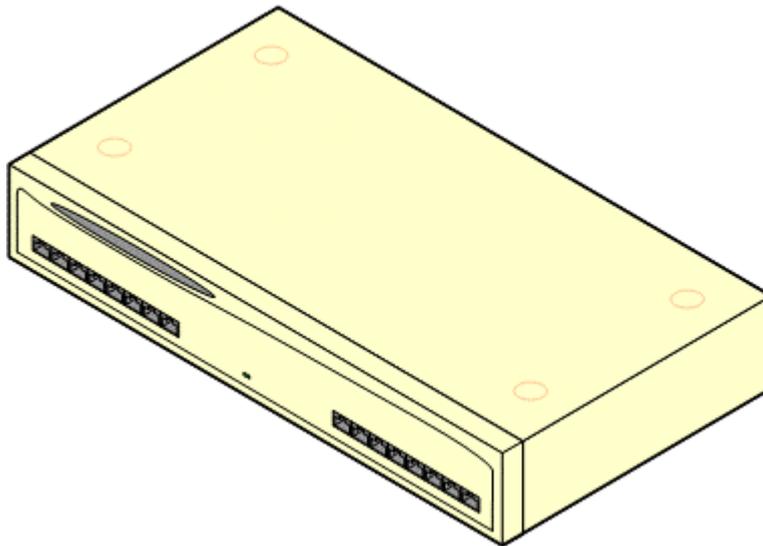
The IP400 Analog Trunk module (also known as the ATM16) is used to add 16 additional analog trunks to an IP Office system. The module supports both loop-start and, with suitable grounding, ground-start trunks.

- **IMPORTANT**

In all IP Office installations, any module being used for analog trunk connections must be connected to a functional earth.

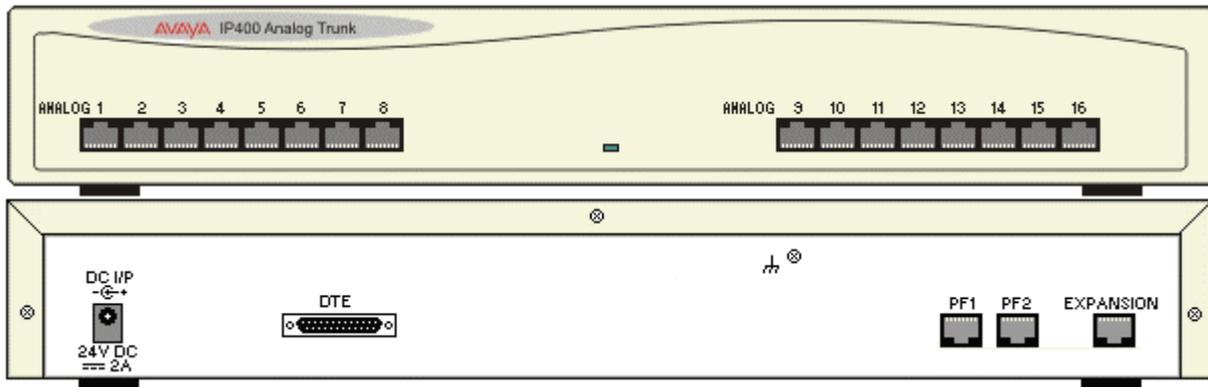
- **WARNING**

Within the Republic of South Africa and in areas of high lightning risk, any module using analog trunk connections must be connected to a protective ground and to surge protection equipment (an Avaya 146G Surge Protector).



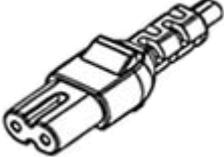
Feature	Details
<b>Supported on</b>	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition. Use on the IP Office 500 control unit requires the unit to be configured with an <b>IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional</b> license.
<b>Locales</b>	Specific variants are provided for different IP Office locales, see below.
<b>Software Level</b>	IP Office core software level 1.0 minimum. Bin file = naatm16.bin.
<b>Included</b>	Power supply unit ( <i>see below</i> ) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
<b>Power Supply</b>	The module is supplied with a 2-pin, 40W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>Mounting</b>	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
<b>Weight</b>	Unboxed: 2.9Kg/6.6lbs. Boxed: 4.2Kg/9.4lbs.

**Analog Trunk Module Connections**



Ports	Description
<b>ANALOG</b>	RJ45 socket. Used for connection to analog trunks. Ports can be configured as either loop-start or ground-start trunks through the IP Office configuration. In the event of power failure, Analog ports 1 and 2 are directly connected to analog extension ports PF1 and PF2 respectively. If used the connected phones must be clearly labeled as power failure devices. This is only supported for loop-start analog trunks.
<b>DC I/P</b>	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya 40W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>DTE</b>	25-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
<b>EXPANSION</b>	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
<b>PF</b>	RJ45 socket. Power failure analog extension ports. See Analog section above.
	Ground point. Used for connection of a protective or functional ground if required. On older modules where this screw is not present, the top-center cover screw should be used instead. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>IMPORTANT</b> In all IP Office installations, any module being used for analog trunk connections <u>must be</u> connected to a functional earth.</li> <li>• <b>⚠ WARNING</b> Within the Republic of South Africa and in areas of high lightning risk, any module using analog trunk connections <u>must be</u> connected to a protective ground and to surge protection equipment (an Avaya 146G Surge Protector).</li> </ul>

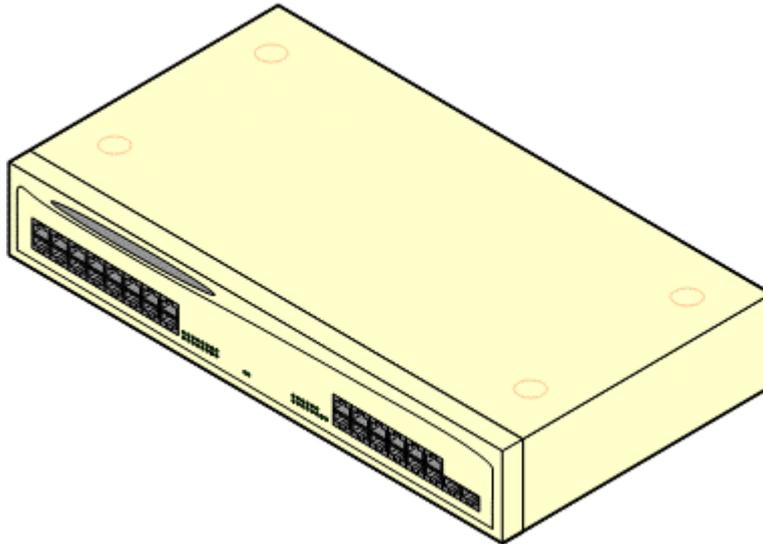
All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP400 Analog Trunk 16	America	America	700211360
	Europe	Europe	700241680
	New Zealand	New Zealand	700241698
 IEC60320 C7 Power Cord	CEE7/16	Europe	700213382
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700213374
	NEMA1-15	America	700213390
	Korea	Korea	700254519
	China	China	700314172
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

## IP400 Digital Station V2

The IP400 Digital Station V2 (also known as DS V2) is used to add additional DS ports to an IP Office system. The DS V2 is available in 16 and 30 port variants, referred to as DS16 V2 and DS30 V2 respectively.

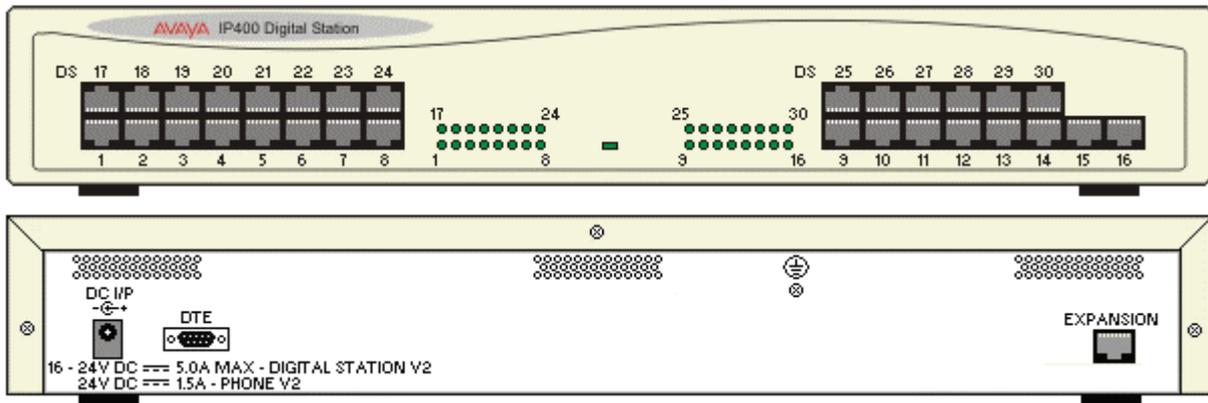


The DS V2 supersedes the original IP400 Digital Station, now referred to as a DS V1. The module version is indicated by labels both the base and the rear of the module. Key changes are:

- The DS ports have been rotated 180° to allow easier connection access.
- The port status LED's have been moved and grouped adjacent to the ports.
- The DTE serial port on the rear of the module has been changed to a 9-pin D-type socket.
- The DS V2 uses an earthed 3-pin 60W external power supply unit.

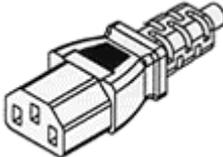
Feature	Details
<b>Supported on</b>	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition. Use on the IP Office 500 control unit requires the unit to be configured with an <b>IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional</b> license.
<b>Locales</b>	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	IP Office core software level 2.1(31) minimum. Bin file = nadcpV2.bin.
<b>Included</b>	Power supply unit ( <i>see below</i> ) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
<b>Power Supply</b>	The module is supplied with a Earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply module. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>Mounting</b>	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
<b>Weight</b>	Unboxed: 3.5Kg/7.8lbs. Boxed: 4.8Kg/10.8lbs. (Based on DS30 V2)

**Digital Station V2 Connections**



Ports	Description
<b>DC I/P</b>	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya earthed 60W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>DS</b>	RJ45 socket. Digital Station port. Used for connection of IP Office supported DS phones. If connected to an out-of-building extension, the connection must be made via additional IROB 146E barrier devices in addition to the buildings primary protection. The module must also be connected to a protective ground.
<b>DTE</b>	9-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
<b>EXPANSION</b>	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
	Protective Ground point. Use of a protective ground is required for all installations, see Grounding (Earthing). Where the module is connected to analog extensions in another building, an IP Office Phone Barrier Box V2 (101V) is required at both ends, see Lightning Protection/Out-of-Building Connections.

All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system.

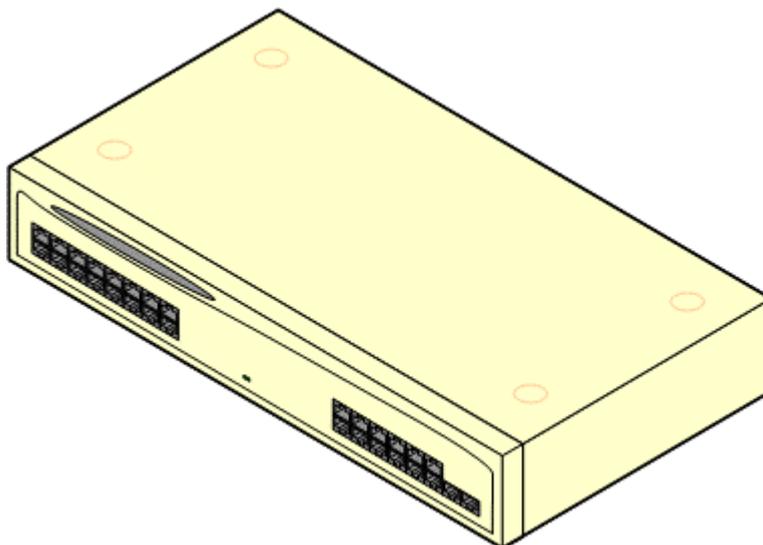
Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP400 Digital Station V2	16 Ports	All	700359839
	30 Ports		700359847
 IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
	China	China	700261977
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

## IP400 Digital Station V1

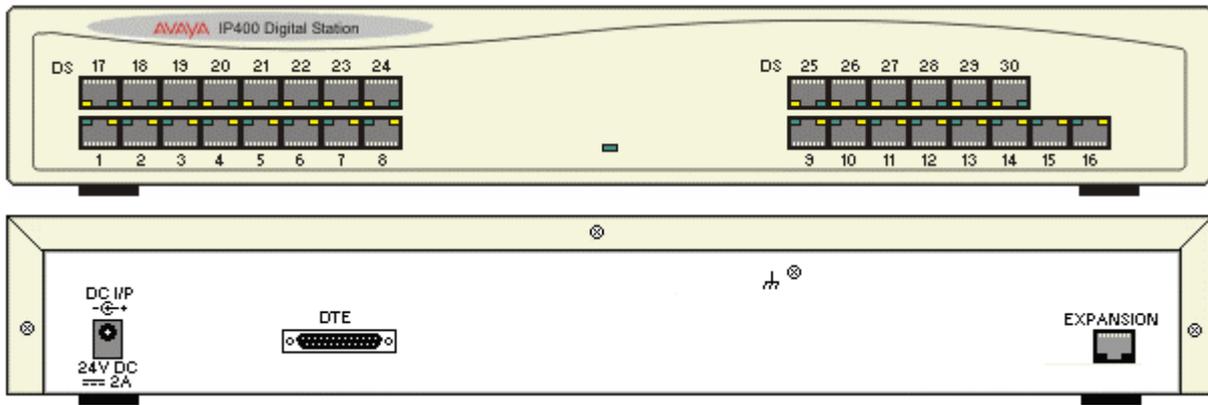
The IP400 Digital Station module (also known as DS module) is used to add additional DS ports to an IP Office system.

The DS module is available in 16 and 30 port variants, referred to as DS16 and DS30 modules respectively. The IP400 Digital Station Module has been superseded by the IP400 Digital Station Module V2.



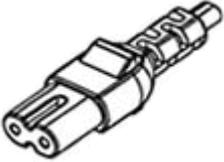
Feature	Details
<b>Supported on</b>	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition. Use on the IP Office 500 control unit requires the unit to be configured with an <b>IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional</b> license.
<b>Locales</b>	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	IP Office core software level 1.0 minimum. Bin file = nadcp-16.bin.
<b>Included</b>	Power supply unit ( <i>see below</i> ) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
<b>Power Supply</b>	The module is supplied with a 2-pin, 40W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>Mounting</b>	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
<b>Weight</b>	Unboxed: 3.5Kg/7.8lbs. Boxed: 4.8Kg/10.8lbs. (Based on DS30).

**Digital Station Module Connections**



Ports	Description
<b>DC I/P</b>	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya 40W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>DS</b>	Digital Station port. Used for connection of IP Office supported DS phones. If connected to an out-of-building extension, the connection must be made via additional IROB 146E barrier devices in addition to the buildings primary protection. The module must also be connected to a protective ground.
<b>DTE</b>	25-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
<b>EXPANSION</b>	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
	Ground point. Used for connection of a protective or functional ground if required. On older modules where this screw is not present, the top-center cover screw should be used instead. Must be connected if any out-of-building extensions are connected to this module.

All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system.

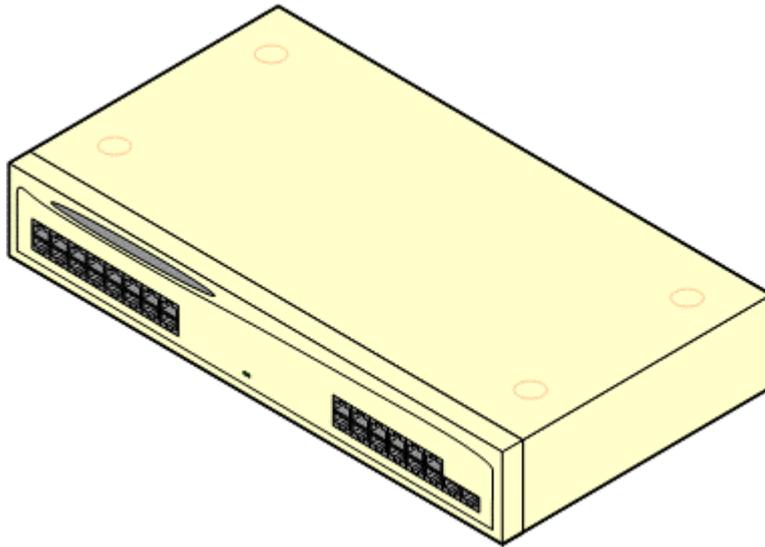
Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP400 Digital Station	16 Ports	All	700184807
	30 Ports		700184880
 IEC60320 C7 Power Cord	CEE7/16	Europe	700213382
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700213374
	NEMA1-15	America	700213390
	Korea	Korea	700254519
	China	China	700314172
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

## IP400 Phone Module V2

The IP400 Phone V2 module (also known as the Phone V2 module) is used to add additional PHONE ports to an IP Office system. PHONE ports are used for analog phones.

The Phone V2 module is available in 8, 16 and 30 port variants, referred to as the Phone 8, Phone 16 and Phone 30 respectively.

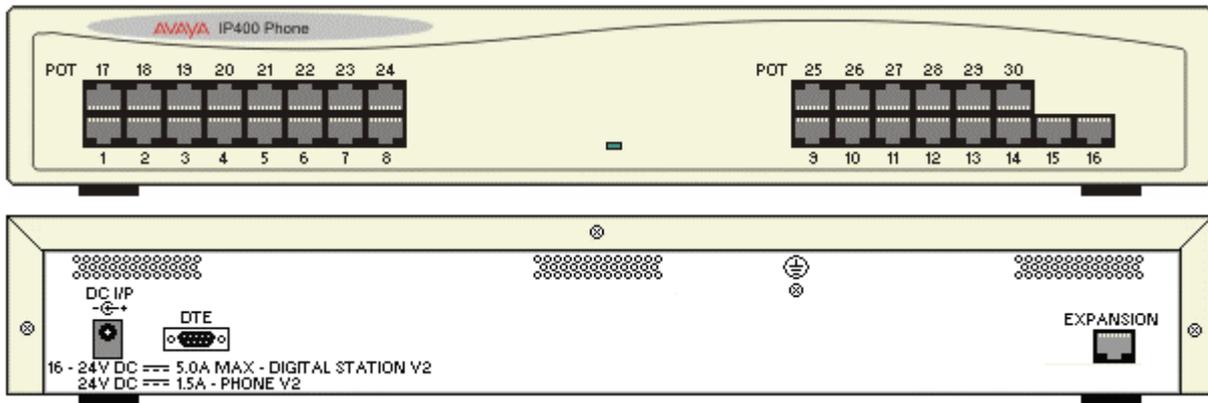


The Phone V2 module supersedes the original IP400 Phone module, now referred to as the Phone V1. The module version is indicated by labels on both the base and the rear of the module. Key changes are:

- The Phone V2 uses an earthed 3-pin 60W external power supply unit.
- With IP Office 3.1, the message waiting indication (MWI) on each port can be configured for **None, On, 51V Stepped, 81V, Line Reversal A** or **Line Reversal B**. **On** uses the default determined by the system locale. Ports on a Phone V2 module can additionally be configured for **101V** operation.
- These ports do not include a ringing capacitor. Therefore for connection to 4-wire analog phones where this is a requirement (typically the United Kingdom and New Zealand), connection should be via a Master socket containing ringing capacitors.
- The DTE serial port on the rear of the module has been changed to a 9-pin D-type socket.

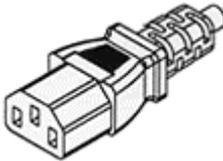
Feature	Details
<b>Supported on</b>	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition. Use on the IP Office 500 control unit requires the unit to be configured with an <b>IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional</b> license.
<b>Locales</b>	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	IP Office core software level 2.1(36) minimum. Bin file = dvpots.bin.
<b>Included</b>	Power supply unit ( <i>see below</i> ) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
<b>Power Supply</b>	The module is supplied with a Earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>Mounting</b>	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
<b>Weight</b>	Unboxed: 3.1Kg/6.94lbs. Boxed: 4.4Kg/9.7lbs. (Based on Phone 30 V2)

**Phone Module V2 Connections**



Ports	Description
<b>DC I/P</b>	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya earthed 60W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>DTE</b>	9-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
<b>EXPANSION</b>	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
<b>PHONE</b>	RJ45 socket. Used for connection of analog phones. Intended for two-wire analog phones. For connection to 4-wire analog phones connection should be via a master socket with ringing capacitors. If connected to an out-of-building extension, the connection must be made via additional IP Office Barrier Boxes in addition to the buildings primary protection. The module must also be connected to a protective ground.
	Protective Ground point. Use of a protective ground is required for all installations, see Grounding (Earthing). Where the module is connected to analog extensions in another building, an IP Office Phone Barrier Box V2 (101V) is required at both ends, see Lightning Protection/Out-of-Building Connections.

All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system.

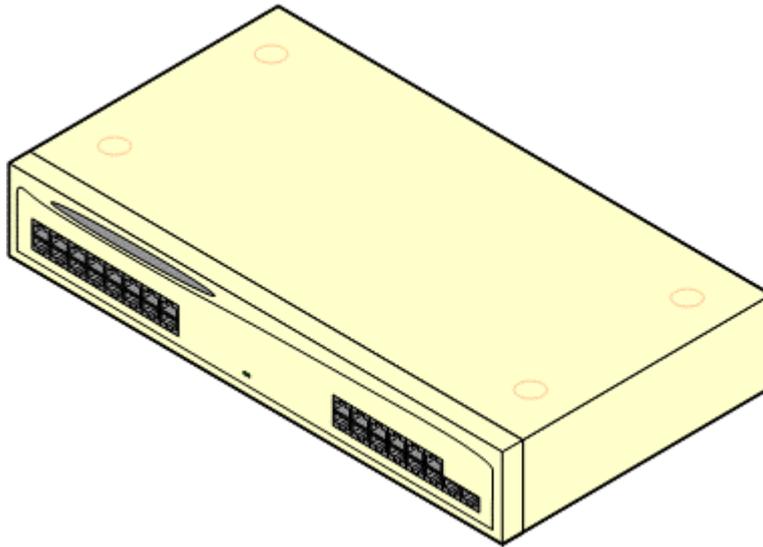
Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP400 Phone V2	8 Ports	All	700359896
	16 Ports		700359904
	30 Ports		700359912
 IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
	China	China	700261977
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

## IP400 Phone Module

The IP400 Phone module (also known as the Phone V1 module) is used to add additional POT ports to an IP Office system. POT ports are used for analog phones.

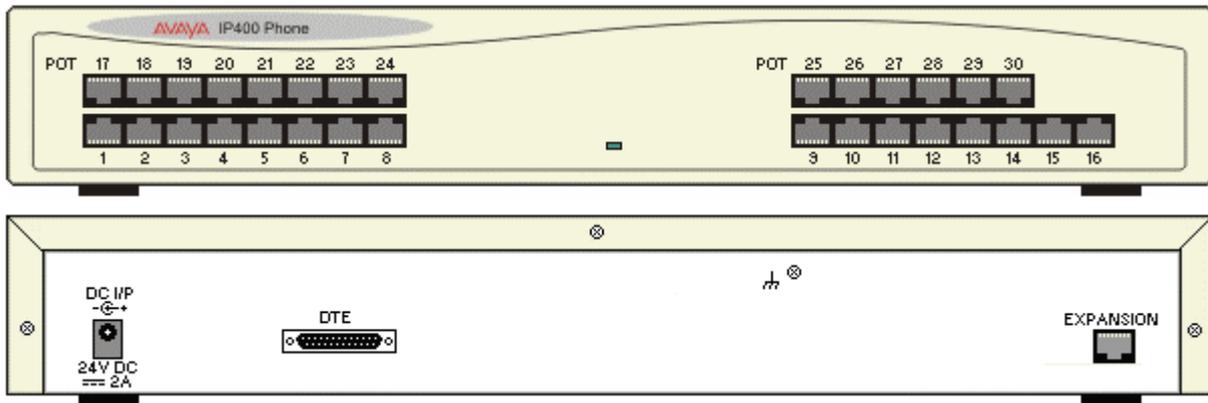
The Phone module is available in 8, 16 and 30 port variants, referred to as the Phone 8, Phone 16 and Phone 30 respectively. The IP400 Phone Module has been superseded by the Phone Module V2.



- With IP Office 3.1 and higher, the message waiting indication (MWI) on each **POT** port can be configured for **None**, **On**, **51V Stepped**, **81V**, **Line Reversal A** or **Line Reversal B**. **On** uses the default determined by the system locale. POT ports on a Phone V2 module can additionally be configured for **101V** operation.

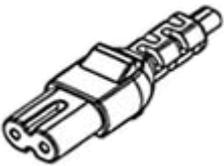
Feature	Details
<b>Supported on</b>	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition. Use on the IP Office 500 control unit requires the unit to be configured with an <b>IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional</b> license.
<b>Locales</b>	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	IP Office core software level 1.0 minimum. Bin file = napots16.bin.
<b>Included</b>	Power supply unit ( <i>see below</i> ) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
<b>Power Supply</b>	The module is supplied with a 2-pin, 40W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>Mounting</b>	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
<b>Weight</b>	Unboxed: 3.1Kg/6.94lbs. Boxed: 4.4Kg/9.7lbs. (Based on Phone 30 V2)

**Phone V1 Module Connections**



Ports	Description
<b>DC I/P</b>	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya 40W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>DTE</b>	25-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
<b>EXPANSION</b>	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
<b>POT</b>	RJ45 socket. Used for connection of analog phones. If connected to an out-of-building extension, the connection must be made via additional IP Office Barrier Box devices in addition to the buildings primary protection. The module must also be connected to a protective ground.
	Function ground point. Used for connection of a protective or functional ground if required. On older modules where this screw is not present, the top-center cover screw should be used instead. Must be connected if any out-of-building extensions are connected to this module.

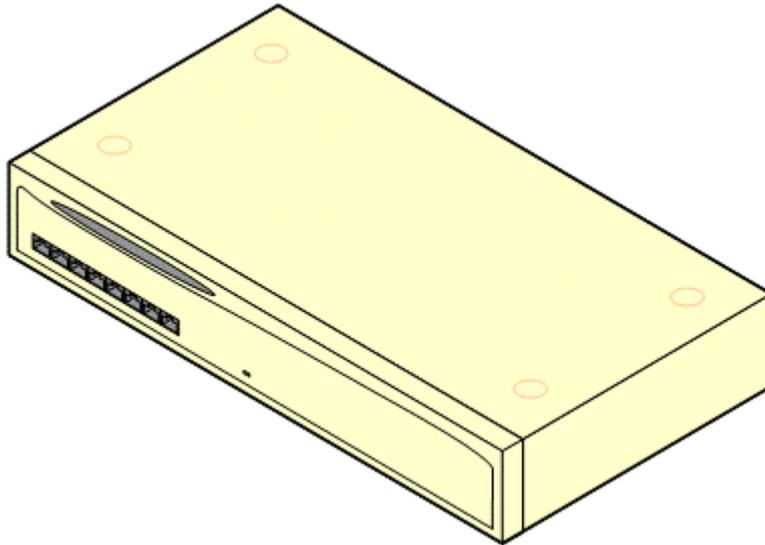
All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP400 Phone V1	8 Ports	All	700184773
	16 Ports		700184781
	30 Ports		700184799
 IEC60320 C7 Power Cord	CEE7/16	Europe	700213382
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700213374
	NEMA1-15	America	700213390
	Korea	Korea	700254519
	China	China	700314172
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

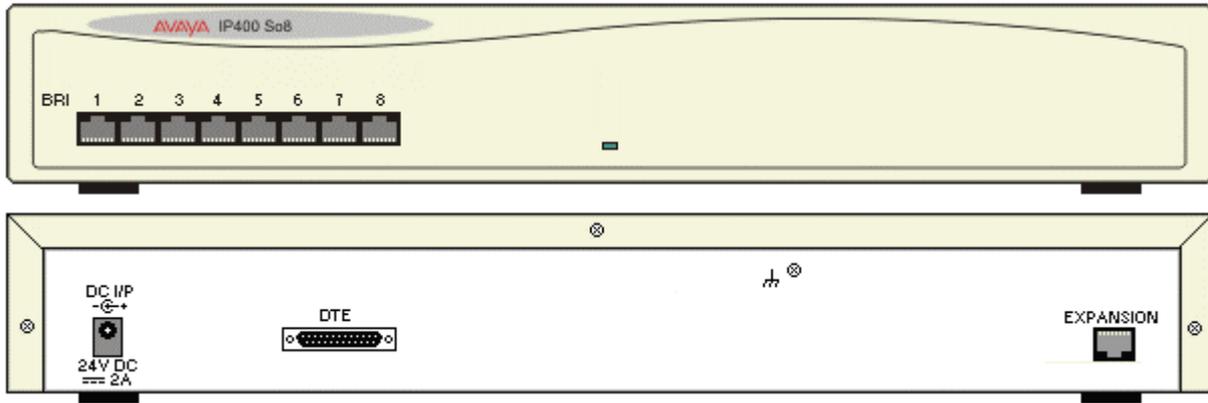
## IP400 So8 Module

The So8 module is used to add ETSI BRI S0-interface ports to the IP Office system. These ports can then be used for the connection of ISDN devices.



Feature	Details
<b>Supported on</b>	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition. Use on the IP Office 500 control unit requires the unit to be configured with an <b>IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional</b> license.
<b>Locales</b>	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	IP Office core software level 1.0 minimum. Bin file = nas0-16.bin.
<b>Included</b>	Power supply unit ( <i>see below</i> ) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
<b>Power Supply</b>	The unit is supplied with an earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the unit's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Older units were supplied with a 2-Pin, 40W external power supply unit which used a locale specific locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord.</li> </ul>
<b>Mounting</b>	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
<b>Weight</b>	Unboxed: 2.8Kg/6.3lbs. Boxed: 4.1Kg/9.2lbs.

**So8 Module Connections**



Ports	Description
<b>BRI</b>	RJ45 socket. Used for connection of ISDN terminal devices. Note: These ports appear a lines within the IP Office configuration. However they cannot be used for connection to external BRI lines.
<b>DC I/P</b>	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya 60W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>DTE</b>	25-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
<b>EXPANSION</b>	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
	Function ground point. Used for connection of a protective or functional ground if required. On older modules where this screw is not present, the top-center cover screw should be used instead.

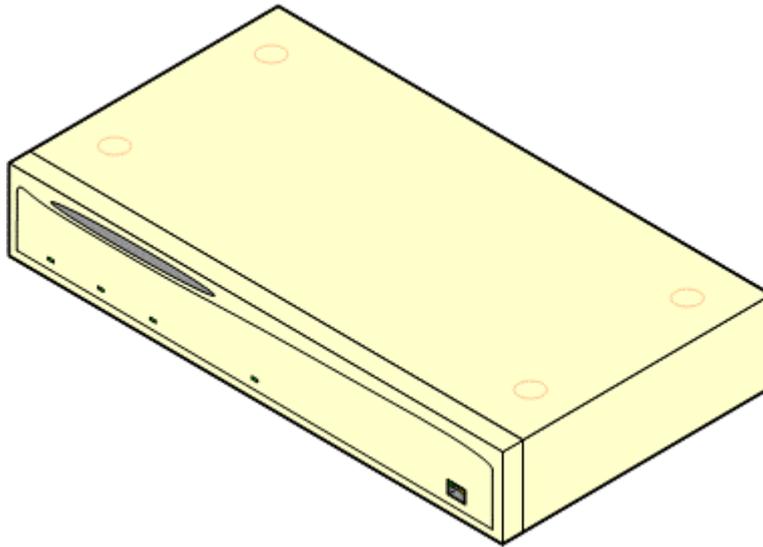
All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system. Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP400 So8		All	700185077
	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
	China	China	700261977
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

## IP400 WAN3 10/100 Module

The IP400 WAN3 10/100 module can be used to add an additional 3 WAN ports to an IP Office system. These ports are used for V.24, V.35 and X.21 WAN services.

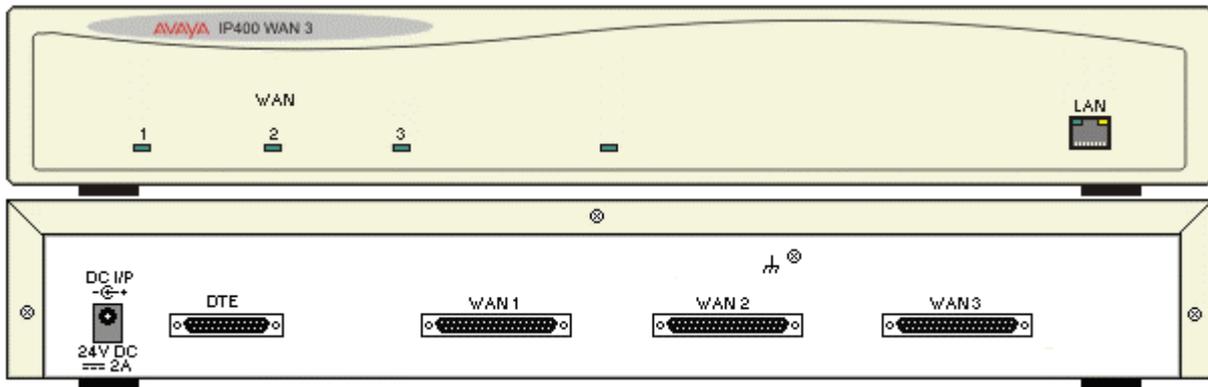
Unlike other external expansion modules the WAN3 10/100 module connects to the IP Office control unit via LAN ports. It has its own IP address, which is obtained by DHCP.



The WAN3 exists in two variants. The original WAN3 only supported a 10Mbps LAN connection and is not supported on IP Office 3.2 and higher. The WAN3 has been superseded by the WAN3 10/100 which supports a 10Mbps/100Mbps LAN connection.

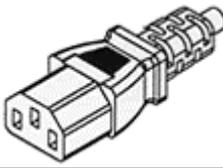
Feature	Details
<b>Supported on</b>	All IP400 control units except Small Office Edition and IP500.
<b>Locales</b>	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	WAN3 10/100: IP Office core software level 1.4 minimum. Bin file = ipwan3.bin.
<b>Included</b>	Power supply unit ( <i>see below</i> ) and LAN Interconnect cable.
<b>Power Supply</b>	The unit is supplied with an earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the unit's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Older units were supplied with a 2-Pin, 40W external power supply unit which used a locale specific locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord.</li> </ul>
<b>Mounting</b>	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP400 Rack Mounting Kit.
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
<b>Weight</b>	Unboxed: 2.8Kg/6.3lbs. Boxed: 4.1Kg/9.2lbs.

**WAN3 Module Connections**



Ports	Description
<b>DC I/P</b>	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya 40W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>DTE</b>	25-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
<b>EXPANSION</b>	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
<b>LAN</b>	RJ45 socket. Used for direct connection to a LAN port on the IP Office control unit. A LAN Interconnect cable is supplied with the module for that purpose. When connecting to an IP412 control unit a LAN crossover cable should be used.
<b>WAN</b>	<p>These ports support a single synchronous data connection, which can be X.21, V.35 or V.24/V.28. The selection of the required interface is automatically determined from the pin-out of the cable plugged into the WAN port. This cable <b>must be</b> connected before power is applied for auto detection to work. Connection to a Digital Leased Circuit is made by connecting the WAN port on the rear of the module to the existing Network Terminating Module (NTU) via the appropriate X.21, V.35 or V.24 cable. These WAN ports are identical to those on the IP406 V2 and IP412 control units.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>These WAN ports must be clocked externally, the IP Office does not provide a clock signal. The clock signal is usually provided by the service provider but under some circumstances (for example laser, microwave or baseband modems) extra provision must be made by the installer.</li> </ul>
	Function ground point. Used for connection of a protective or functional ground if required. On older modules where this screw is not present, the top-center cover screw should be used instead.

All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system. Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

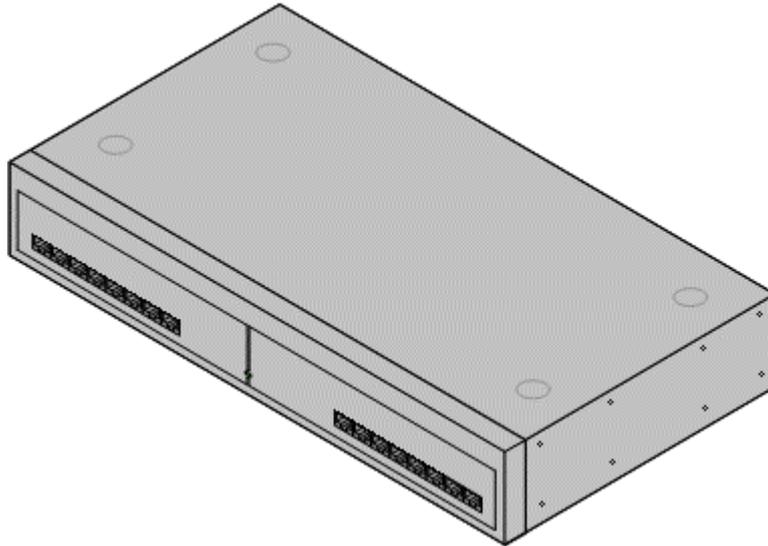
Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IP400 WAN3		All	700185028
IP400 WAN3 10/100			700262009
	CEE7/16	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
	China	China	700261977
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700210800

## IP500 Expansion Modules

### IPO 500 Analog Trunk 16

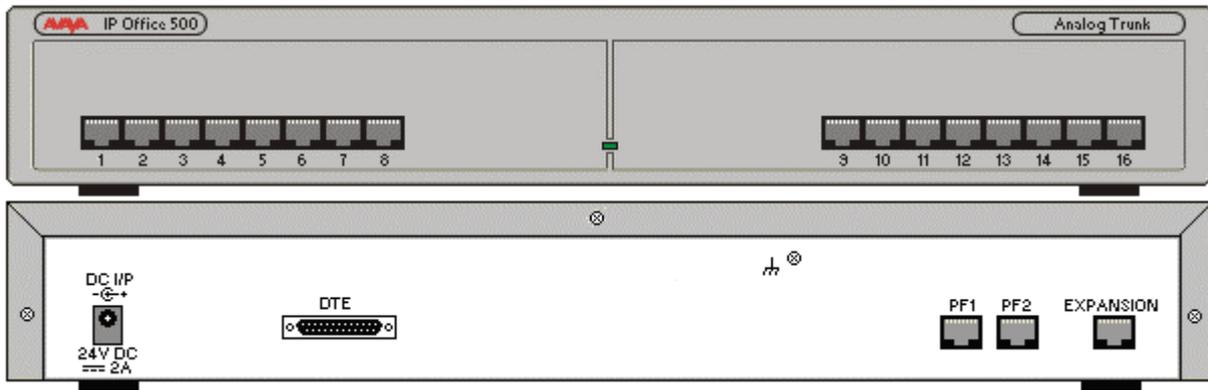
The IPO 500 Analog Trunk module can be used to add 16 additional analog trunks to an IP Office system. The module supports both loop-start and, with suitable grounding, ground-start trunks.

- IMPORTANT**  
 In all IP Office installations, any module being used for analog trunk connections must be connected to a functional earth.
- ⚠ WARNING**  
 Within the Republic of South Africa and in areas of high lightning risk, any module using analog trunk connections must be connected to a protective ground and to surge protection equipment (an Avaya 146G Surge Protector).



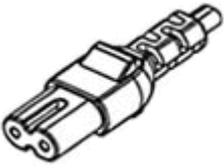
Feature	Details
<b>Supported on</b>	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition. Use on the IP Office 500 control unit requires the unit to be configured with an <b>IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional</b> license.
<b>Locales</b>	Specific variants are provided for different IP Office locales, see below.
<b>Software Level</b>	IP Office core software level 1.0 minimum. Bin file = naatm16.bin.
<b>Included</b>	Power supply unit ( <i>see below</i> ) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
<b>Power Supply</b>	The module is supplied with a 2-pin, 40W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>Mounting</b>	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP500 Rack Mounting Kit.
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
<b>Weight</b>	Unboxed: 2.9Kg/6.6lbs. Boxed: 4.2Kg/9.4lbs.

**IPO 500 Analog Trunk Module Connections**



Ports	Description
<b>ANALOG</b>	RJ45 socket. Used for connection to analog trunks. Ports can be configured as either loop-start or ground-start trunks through the IP Office configuration. In the event of power failure, Analog ports 1 and 2 are directly connected to analog extension ports PF1 and PF2 respectively. If used the connected phones must be clearly labeled as power failure devices. This is only supported for loop-start analog trunks.
<b>DC I/P</b>	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya 40W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific IEC60320 C7 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>DTE</b>	25-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
<b>EXPANSION</b>	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
<b>PF</b>	RJ45 socket. Power failure analog extension ports. See Analog section above.
	Ground point. Used for connection of a protective or functional ground if required. On older modules where this screw is not present, the top-center cover screw should be used instead. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>IMPORTANT</b> In all IP Office installations, any module being used for analog trunk connections <u>must be</u> connected to a functional earth.</li> <li>• <b>⚠ WARNING</b> Within the Republic of South Africa and in areas of high lightning risk, any module using analog trunk connections <u>must be</u> connected to a protective ground and to surge protection equipment (an Avaya 146G Surge Protector).</li> </ul>

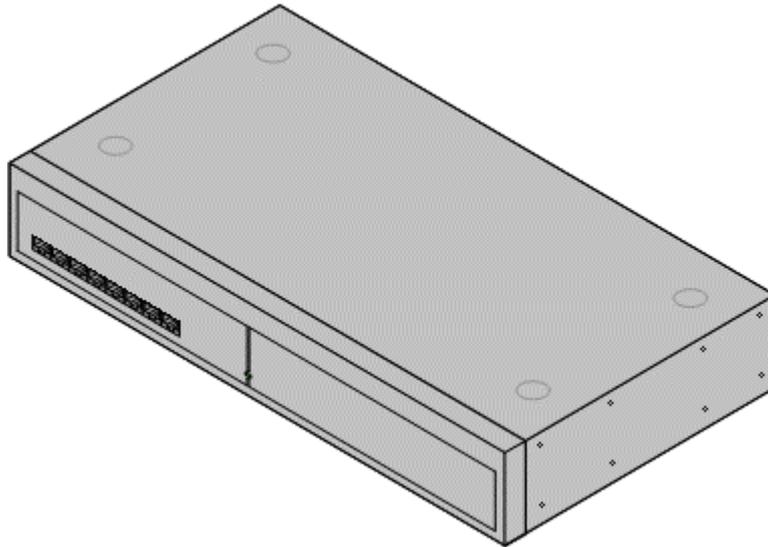
All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IPO 500 Analog Trunk 16	America	America	700449473
	CEE7/16	Europe	700213382
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700213374
	NEMA1-15	America	700213390
	Korea	Korea	700254519
	China	China	700314172
IP500 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700429202

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

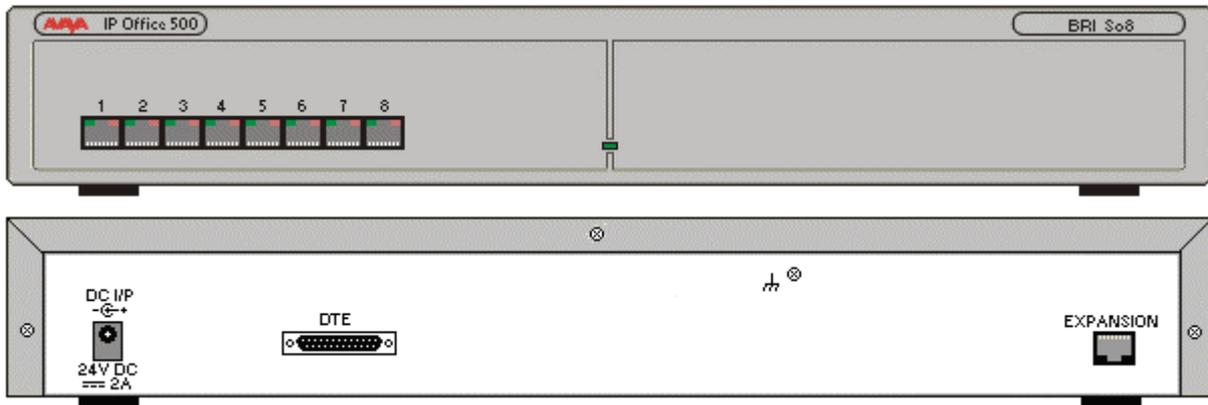
## IPO 500 BRI SO8

The So8 module can be used to add ETSI BRI S0-interface ports to the IP Office system. These ports can then be used for the connection of ISDN devices.



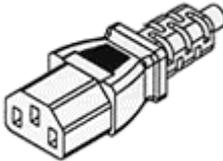
Feature	Details
<b>Supported on</b>	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition. Use on the IP Office 500 control unit requires the unit to be configured with an <b>IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional</b> license.
<b>Locales</b>	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	IP Office core software level 1.0 minimum. Bin file = nas0-16.bin.
<b>Included</b>	Power supply unit ( <i>see below</i> ) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
<b>Power Supply</b>	The unit is supplied with an earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the unit's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the unit.
<b>Mounting</b>	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP500 Rack Mounting Kit.
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8"/2U.
<b>Weight</b>	Unboxed: 2.8Kg/6.3lbs. Boxed: 4.1Kg/9.2lbs.

**IPO 500 So8 Module Connections**



Ports	Description
<b>BRI</b>	RJ45 socket. Used for connection of ISDN terminal devices. Note: These ports appear as lines within the IP Office configuration. However they cannot be used for connection to external BRI lines.
<b>DC I/P</b>	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya 60W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>DTE</b>	25-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
<b>EXPANSION</b>	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
	Function ground point. Used for connection of a protective or functional ground if required. On older modules where this screw is not present, the top-center cover screw should be used instead.

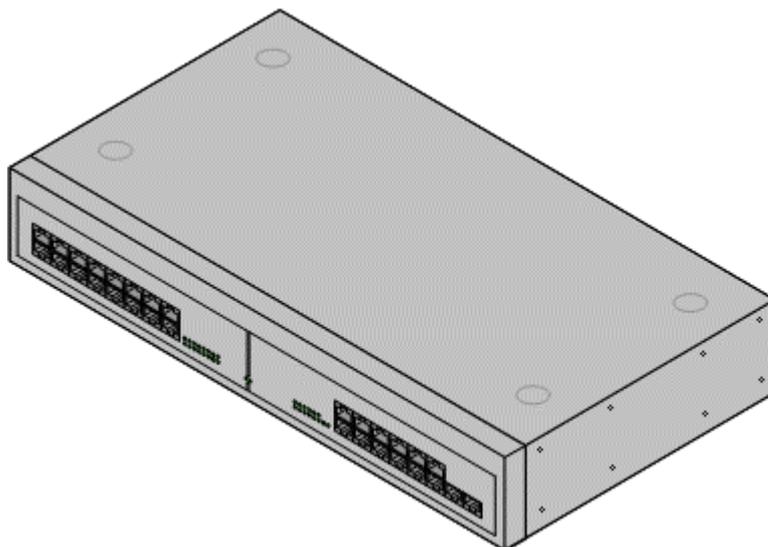
All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system. Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IPO 500 BRI So8		All	700449515
	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
	China	China	700261977
IP500 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700429202

## IPO 500 Digital Station

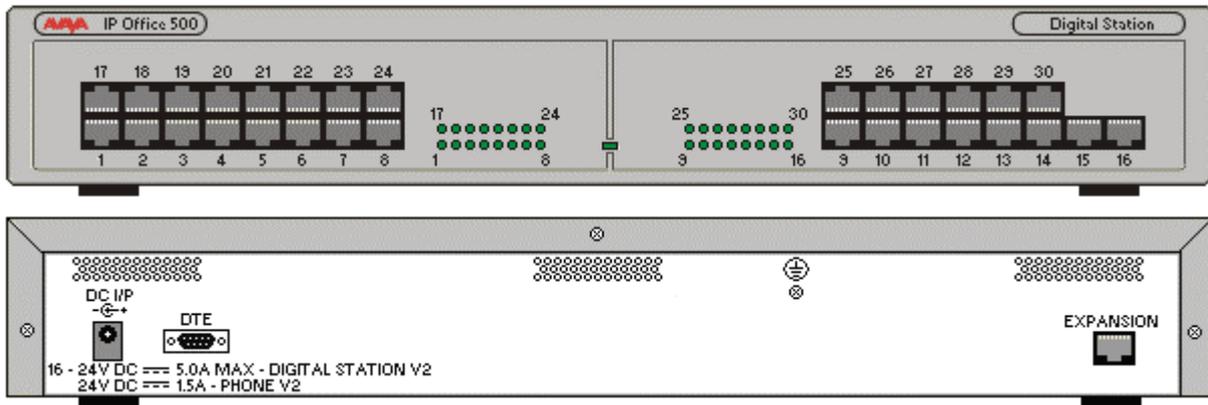
IPO 500 Digital Station modules can be used to add additional DS ports to an IP Office system. Note that this requires the IP Office 500 control unit to be configured with an **IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional** license.

The module is available in 16 and 30 port variants, referred to as the IPO 500 Digital Station 16 and IPO 500 Digital Station 30 respectively.



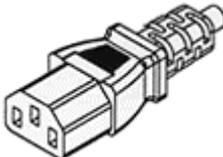
Feature	Details
<b>Supported on</b>	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition. Use on the IP Office 500 control unit requires the unit to be configured with an <b>IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional</b> license.
<b>Locales</b>	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	IP Office core software level 2.1(31) minimum. Bin file = nadcpV2.bin.
<b>Included</b>	Power supply unit ( <i>see below</i> ) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
<b>Power Supply</b>	The module is supplied with a Earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply module. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>Mounting</b>	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP500 Rack Mounting Kit.
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8".
<b>Weight</b>	Unboxed: 3.5Kg/7.8lbs. Boxed: 4.8Kg/10.8lbs. (Based on DS30 V2)

**IPO 500 Digital Station Connections**



Ports	Description
<b>DC I/P</b>	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya earthed 60W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>DS</b>	RJ45 socket. Digital Station port. Used for connection of IP Office supported DS phones. If connected to an out-of-building extension, the connection must be made via additional IROB 146E barrier devices in addition to the buildings primary protection. The module must also be connected to a protective ground.
<b>DTE</b>	9-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
<b>EXPANSION</b>	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
	Protective Ground point. Use of a protective ground is required for all installations, see Grounding (Earthing). Where the module is connected to analog extensions in another building, an IP Office Phone Barrier Box V2 (101V) is required at both ends, see Lightning Protection/Out-of-Building Connections.

All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system.

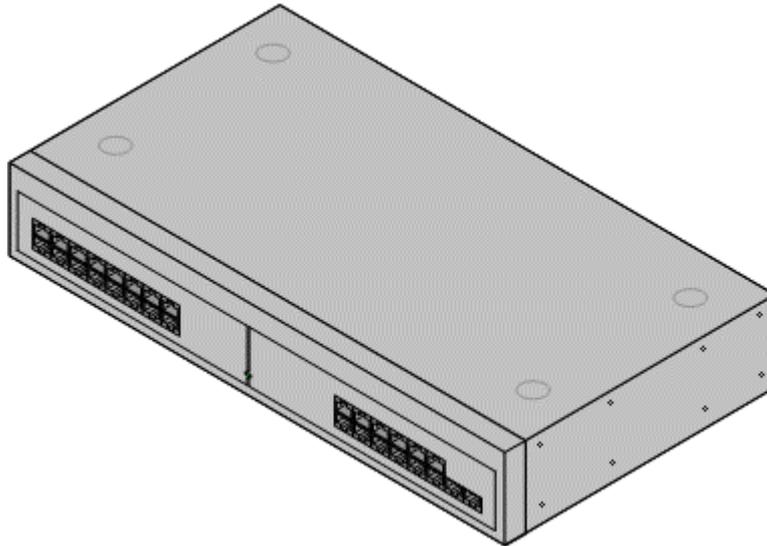
Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IPO 500 Digital Station	16 Ports	All	700449499
	30 Ports		700426216
 IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
	China	China	700261977
IP500 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700429202

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

## IP500 Phone

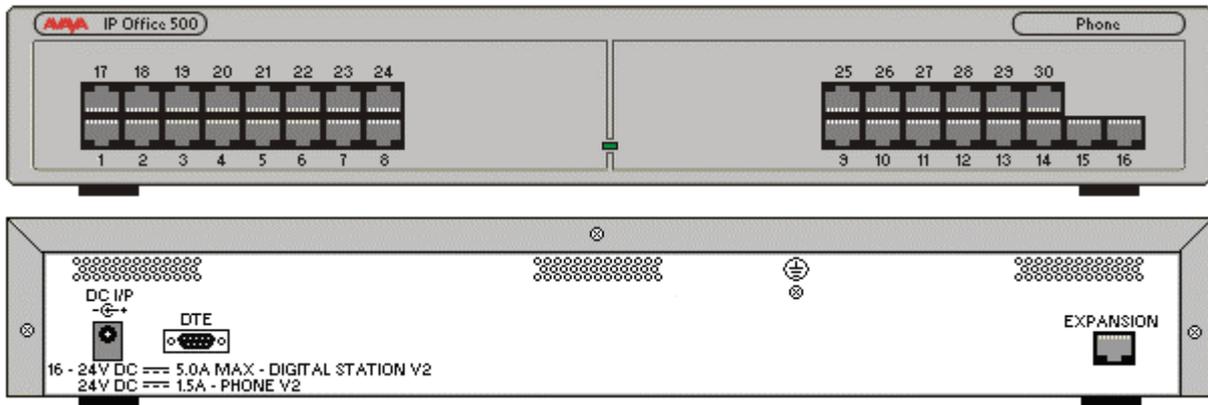
IPO 500 Phone modules can be used to add additional PHONE ports to an IP Office system. Note that this requires the IP Office 500 control unit to be configured with an **IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional** license.

The module is available in 16 and 30 port variants, referred to as the IPO 500 Phone 16 and IPO 500 Phone 30 respectively.



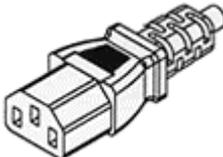
Feature	Details
<b>Supported on</b>	All IP Office control units except Small Office Edition. Use on the IP Office 500 control unit requires the unit to be configured with an <b>IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional</b> license.
<b>Locales</b>	Supported in all IP Office locales.
<b>Software Level</b>	IP Office core software level 2.1(36) minimum. Bin file = dvpots.bin.
<b>Included</b>	Power supply unit ( <i>see below</i> ) and Expansion Interconnect cable.
<b>Power Supply</b>	The module is supplied with a Earthed 3-Pin, 60W external power supply unit. The PSU has an integral power cord for connection to the module's DC I/P socket. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>Mounting</b>	The module is designed as a free-standing module that can be stacked on or under other IP Office modules. The module can be rack mounted in a 19" rack system using the optional IP500 Rack Mounting Kit.
<b>Dimensions</b>	Width: 445mm/17.5". Depth: 245mm/9.7". Height: 71mm/2.8".
<b>Weight</b>	Unboxed: 3.1Kg/6.94lbs. Boxed: 4.4Kg/9.7lbs. (Based on Phone 30 V2)

**IPO 500 Phone Connections**



Ports	Description
<b>DC I/P</b>	DC power input port. Used for connection of the power lead from an Avaya earthed 60W external power supply unit supplied with the expansion module. A locale specific IEC60320 C13 power cord for the external PSU is required but is not supplied with the module.
<b>DTE</b>	9-Way D-Type socket. For Avaya use only.
<b>EXPANSION</b>	RJ45 Socket. Used for direct connection to an Expansion port on an IP Office control unit using the Expansion Interconnect cable supplied with the module.
<b>PHONE</b>	RJ45 socket. Used for connection of analog phones. Intended for two-wire analog phones. For connection to 4-wire analog phones connection should be via a master socket with ringing capacitors. If connected to an out-of-building extension, the connection must be made via additional IP Office Barrier Boxes in addition to the buildings primary protection. The module must also be connected to a protective ground.
	Protective Ground point. Use of a protective ground is required for all installations, see Grounding (Earthing). Where the module is connected to analog extensions in another building, an IP Office Phone Barrier Box V2 (101V) is required at both ends, see Lightning Protection/Out-of-Building Connections.

All expansion modules are supplied with a base software level and should be upgraded to match the core software of the control unit in the IP Office system.

Item	Variant	Country	SAP Code
IPO 500 Phone	16 Ports	All	700449507
	30 Ports	All	700426224
 IEC60320 C13 Power Cord	CEE7/7	Europe	700289762
	BS1363	United Kingdom	700289747
	NEMA5-15P	America	700289770
	China	China	700261977
IP500 Rack Mounting Kit		All	700429202

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

## Phones

### 2402D

In addition to the two physical programmable buttons, the  **FEATURE** key plus **0-9**, **\*** and **#** can be used to access an addition 12 programmable slots.

On IP Office, the 2402D display is not used.

2402D	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 2    .
	Headset Socket	✗
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✗
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Display	Not used.
	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradable Firmware	✓

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✗  SPEAKER	✗  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✓  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
2402D	Multi-Grey	700381973
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

**2410D**

2410D	Feature	2410
	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓12. (6 buttons x 2 pages).
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Display	29 characters x 5 lines. (168 x 80 pixels).
	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradable Firmware	✓

**Standard DCP Phone Keys**

✓  SPEAKER	✓  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✓  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
2410	Multi-Grey	700381999
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

## 2420D

2420D	Feature	Details
	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	1.4+
	Programmable Buttons	✓24 (8 buttons x 3 pages)
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Display	29 characters x 7 lines.
	Supported Add-Ons	EU24, 201B.
	Upgradable Firmware	✓

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓  SPEAKER	✓  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✓  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
2420	Multi-Grey	700381585
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
201B Recorder Interface Module		700381635
20B Stand		700381650
EU24	Multi-Grey	700381817
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

## 3616

This is an 802.11b WiFi phone. It connects to the IP Office via a wireless access point and Avaya Voice Priority Processor (AVPP).

3616	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP network.
	IP Office Release	2.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓6.
	Headset Socket	✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✗
	Upgradable Firmware	✗

Variant	SAP Code
3616 Wireless Phone	700413040
Additional battery pack for 3616	700277387
Desktop charger for 3616.	700412901
Clip for 3616	700413057
3616/3626 Configuration Cradle	700375934

## 3620

This is an 802.11b WiFi phone. It connects to the IP Office via a wireless access point and Avaya Voice Priority Processor (AVPP).

The 3620 is similar to the 3616 but has been designed for use in healthcare environments. It is waterproof and has a back lit display.

3616	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP network.
	IP Office Release	3.2+
	Programmable Buttons	✓6.
	Headset Socket	✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✗
	Upgradable Firmware	✗

Variant	SAP Code
3620 Wireless Phone	700413065
Additional battery pack.	700277387
Desktop charger.	700412901
Clip	700413057
Configuration Cradle	700375934

## 3626

This phone is similar to the 3616 in functionality. However the 3626 has a ruggedized construction. This is an 802.11b WiFi phone. It connects to the IP Office via a wireless access point and Avaya Voice Priority Processor (AVPP).

3626	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP network.
	IP Office Release	2.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓6.
	Headset Socket	✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✗
	Upgradable Firmware	✗

Variant	SAP Code	
3626 Wireless Phone	700413024	
Additional battery pack for 3626	700277395	
Desktop charger for 3626	700412919	
3626 Gang changer	700412927	
Clip for 3626	700413131	
3626 Vinyl case with keypad cover	700412984	
3626 Carry case	Yellow	700289309
3626 Carry case with keypad cover	Black	700289317
	Yellow	700289325
3616/3626 Configuration Cradle	700375934	

## 3641

The Avaya 3641 IP Wireless Telephone is a WiFi telephone that runs using H.323.



The 3641 supports the following features:

- Lightweight innovative design .
- Simple to use.
- 802.11a, 802.11b and 802.11g standard-compatible.
- Transmission type Direct Sequence Spread Spectrum (DSSS).
- FCC certification Part 15.247.
- Management of telephones via DHCP and TFTP.
- Voice encoding G711.
- Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) - 40bit and 128 bit. WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK.
- 5x16 character alphanumeric, plus status indicators.
- 4 hours talk time and 80 hours standby. Extendable with optional battery packs to 8 hours talk time and 160 hours standby.

## 3645

The Avaya 3645 IP Wireless Telephone is a WiFi telephone that runs using H.323.



The 3645 supports the following features:

- Lightweight innovative design .
- Simple to use.
- 802.11a, 802.11b and 802.11g standard-compatible.
- Transmission type Direct Sequence Spread Spectrum (DSSS).
- FCC certification Part 15.247.
- Management of telephones via DHCP and TFTP.
- Voice encoding G711.
- Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) - 40bit and 128 bit. WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK.
- 5x16 character alphanumeric, plus status indicators.
- 4 hours talk time and 80 hours standby. Extendable with optional battery packs to 8 hours talk time and 160 hours standby.
- Can be enabled for Push-to-talk (walkie-talkie) feature for broadcast between employees.

**3701**

The 3701 is an Avaya DECT handset supported on IP Office when using Avaya IP DECT base stations.

3701	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP network
	IP Office Release	3.1+
	Programmable Buttons	✗
	Headset Socket	✗
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✗
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Upgradable Firmware	✗

Variant	SAP Code	
3701	700346802	
Belt Clip	700346885	
Phone Charger	700346828	
Power Adaptor for Charger	European	700346836
	UK	700346844
	Australia	700378318
8-Phone Gang Charger	700346851	
Power Adaptor for Rack Mount Charger	Global	700346869

**3711**

The 3711 is an Avaya DECT handset supported on IP Office when using Avaya IP DECT base stations.

3711	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP network
	IP Office Release	3.1+
	Programmable Buttons	✗
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Upgradable Firmware	✗

Variant	SAP Code	
3711	700346810	
Belt Clip	700346885	
Phone Charger	700346828	
Power Adaptor for Charger	European	700346836
	UK	700346844
	Australia	700378318
8-Phone Gang Charger	700346851	
Power Adaptor for Rack Mount Charger	Global	700346869

**3810**

The phone uses a wireless 900MHz digital protocol to connect to its base station. The base station connects to an IP Office DS port. The base station also requires a power outlet socket. Additional power outlet sockets are required for the phone charger.

Depending on coverage overlap, between three and five 3810's can be connected to the same IP Office.

This phone is supported in North America only.

3810	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	2.1+
	Programmable Buttons	✓4.
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Upgradable Firmware	✗

Item	SAP Code
3810 Set - Includes phone, base station, charger, belt clip and power supply units for charger and base station.	700305105

## 4406D+

This phone is supported in North America only (A-Law only). Not supported on the IP500 Digital Station card.

4406D+	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	1.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 6 
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓ / ✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Display	16 characters x 2 lines.
	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradable Firmware	✗

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓  SPEAKER	✗  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✗  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✗  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Item	SAP Code
4406D+ (Black)	108199027
4406D+ (White)	108199019
Small 4400 Series Stand (Black)	108541194
Stand 4400 Series Stand (White)	108541202

**4412D+**

This phone is supported in North America only (A-Law only). Not supported on the IP500 Digital Station card.

Note: A maximum of twenty-seven 4412D telephones are supported on the DS30 (version 2) expansion module at PCS level 5. Earlier DS30 expansion modules will only support sixteen of these telephones.

4412D+	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	1.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 24 (12  /12  ).
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Display	24 characters x 2 lines.
	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradable Firmware	✗

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓  SPEAKER	✗  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✗  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✗  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Item	SAP Code	
4412D+	Black	108199050
	White	108199043
Large 4400 Series Stand for 4412D+/4424D+	Black	108541269
	White	108541277

## 4424D+

This phone is supported in North America only (A-Law only). Not supported on the IP500 Digital Station card.

Note: A maximum of twenty-four 4424D telephones are supported on the DS30 (version 2) expansion module at PCS level 5. Earlier DS30 expansion modules will only support sixteen of these telephones.

4424D+	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DS ports.
	IP Office Release	1.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 24  .
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Display	24 characters x 2 lines.
	Supported Add-Ons	4450 x 2.
	Upgradeable Firmware	✗

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓  SPEAKER	✗  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✗  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✗  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Item	SAP Code	
4424D+	Black	108199084
	White	108199076
Large 4400 Series Stand for 4412D+/4424D+	Black	108541269
	White	108541277
4450 DSS Add-On	Black	108199696
	White	108199407
Small 4400 Series Stand for 4450.	Black	108541194
	White	108541202
Power Supply for 4450	108596412	

**4601**

This phone requires a separate power supply, using either a Avaya 1151C1 or 1151C2 power supply unit and power cord or an 802.3af Power over Ethernet (PoE) source. For RoHS compliance the 4601 has been replaced by the 4601+, however the two phones are functionally the same.

4601+	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP Network.
	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓2
	Headset Socket	✗
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✗/✗
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Typical Off-Hook Power Consumption	3.5W (Class 2)
	Display	None.
	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradeable Firmware	✓
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	✗/✗

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✗  SPEAKER	✗  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✓  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
4601+	Multi-Grey	700381890
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia and New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

## 4602IP, 4602SW

These phones are similar in physical appearance and functions. However the 4602SW+ includes a PC data pass-through port which gives priority to phone traffic. The 4602IP is no longer available from Avaya.

The 4602SW+ is the RoHS compliant replacement for the 4602SW which is no longer available.

This phone requires a separate power supply, using either a Avaya 1151C1 or 1151C2 power supply unit and power cord or a 802.3af Power over Ethernet (PoE) source.

4602/4602SW	Feature	4602IP	4602SW+
	Connects via	IP network.	
	IP Office Release	1.3+	
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 2 ☐    * *	
	Headset Socket	✗	
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✗	
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓	
	Typical Off-Hook Power Consumption	3.5W (Class 2)	
	Display	24 characters x 2 lines.	
	Supported Add-Ons	None.	
	Upgradable Firmware	✓	
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	✗/✗	✓/✓

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✗  SPEAKER	✗  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✓  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
4602IP	Multi-Grey	700221260
4602SW+	Multi-Grey	700381916
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia and New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

## 4610SW

This phone requires a separate power supply, using either a Avaya 1151C1 or 1151C2 power supply unit and power cord or a 802.3af Power over Ethernet (PoE) source.

4610SW	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP network.
	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 24 (6 buttons x 4pages).
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓.
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Typical Off-Hook Power Consumption	5W (Class 2)
	Display	29 characters x 5 lines (168 x 80 pixels)
	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradable Firmware	✓
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	✓/✓

### Standard DCP Phone Keys

✓  SPEAKER	✓  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✗  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
4610SW	Multi-Grey	700381957
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord.	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia and New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

## 4620IP, 4620SW

These phones are similar in physical appearance and functions. However the 4620SW's PC data pass-through port gives priority to phone traffic.

This phone requires a separate power supply, using either a Avaya 1151C1 or 1151C2 power supply unit and power cord or a 802.3af Power over Ethernet (PoE) source.

4620IP/4620SW	Feature	4620IP	4620SW
	Connects via	IP network.	
	IP Office Release	2.0+	
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 24 (12 buttons x 2 pages).	
	Headset Socket	✓	
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓	
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓	
	Typical Off-Hook Power Consumption	4W (Class 3)	5.9W (Class 3)
	Display	29 characters x 7 lines (168 x 132 pixels)	
	Supported Add-Ons	EU24, EU24BL.	
	Upgradeable Firmware	✓	
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	✓/✗	✓/✓

### Standard DCP Phone Keys

✓  SPEAKER	✓  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✗  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
4620IP	Multi-Grey	700212186
4620SW	Multi-Grey	700259674
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
EU24	Multi-Grey	700381817
EU24BL	Multi-Grey	700381544
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

## 4621SW

The 4621 is similar in physical appearance and function to the 4620SW. However the 4621SW includes a backlight function for the screen.

This phone requires a separate power supply, using either a Avaya 1151C1 or 1151C2 power supply unit and power cord or a 802.3af Power over Ethernet (PoE) source.

4621SW	Feature	4621SW
	Connects via	IP network.
	IP Office Release	3.0(577)+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 24 (12 buttons x 2 pages).
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Typical Off-Hook Power Consumption	5.75W (Class 2)
	Display	29 characters x 7 lines (168 x 132 pixels)
	Supported Add-Ons	EU24, EU24BL.
	Upgradeable Firmware	✓
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	✓/✓

### Standard DCP Phone Keys

✓  SPEAKER	✓  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✗  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
4621SW	Multi-Grey	700345192
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
EU24	Multi-Grey	700381817
EU24BL	Multi-Grey	700381544
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

## 4625SW

The 4625 is similar in physical appearance and function to the 4621SW. However the 4625SW includes a color display.

This phone requires a separate power supply, using either a Avaya 1151C1 or 1151C2 power supply unit and power cord or a 802.3af Power over Ethernet (PoE) source.

4625SW	Feature	4625SW
	Connects via	IP network.
	IP Office Release	3.2+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 24 (12 buttons x 2 pages).
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Typical Off-Hook Power Consumption	6.45W (Class 3)
	Display	29 characters x 7 lines (168 x 132 pixels)
	Supported Add-Ons	EU24, EU24BL.
	Upgradeable Firmware	✓
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	✓/✓

### Standard DCP Phone Keys

✓  SPEAKER	✓  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✗  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
4625SW	Multi-Grey	700381551
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
EU24	Multi-Grey	700381817
EU24BL	Multi-Grey	700381544
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

## 5402D

This phone is similar in physical appearance and functions to the 2402D. However the 5402 phone is only supported on IP Office.

In addition to the two physical programmable buttons, the  **FEATURE** key plus **0-9**, **\*** and **#** can be used to access an addition 12 programmable slots.

5402	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	3.0+.
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 2  <b>  *.</b>
	Headset Socket	✗
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✗
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Display	24 characters x 2 lines.
	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradable Firmware	✓

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✗  SPEAKER	✗  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✓  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
5402	Multi-Grey	700345309
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

**5410**

This phone is similar in physical appearance and functions to the 2410. However the 5410 phone is only supported on IP Office.

5410	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 12 (6 buttons x 2 pages).
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Display	29 characters x 5 lines. (168 x 80 pixels).
	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradable Firmware	✓

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓  SPEAKER	✓  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✓  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant		SAP Code
5410	Multi-Grey	700345291
5410 (RoHS compliant)	Multi-Grey	700382005
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

**5420D**

This phone is similar in physical appearance and functions to the 2420. However the 5420 is only supported on IP Office.

5420D	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓24 (8 buttons x 3 pages)
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Display	29 characters x 7 lines.
	Supported Add-Ons	EU24, 201B.
	Upgradable Firmware	✓

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓  SPEAKER	✓  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✓  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
5420D	Multi-Grey	700339823
5420D (RoHS compliant)	Multi-Grey	700381627
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
201B Recorder Interface Module		700381635
20B Stand		700381650
EU24	Multi-Grey	700381817
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

## 5601

This phone is similar in physical appearance and functions to the 4601. However the 5601 phone is only supported on IP Office. The 5601+ is the RoHS compliant version that has replaced the previous 5601 IP model but is otherwise the same.

This phone requires a separate power supply, using either a Avaya 1151C1 or 1151C2 power supply unit and power cord or a 802.3af Power over Ethernet (PoE) source.

5601	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP Network.
	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓2
	Headset Socket	✗
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✗/✗
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Typical Off-Hook Power Consumption	3.5W (Class 2)
	Display	None.
	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradeable Firmware	✓
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	✗/✗

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✗  SPEAKER	✗  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✓  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
5601IP	Multi-Grey	700345366
5601+ (RoHS compliant)	Multi-Grey	700381908
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

## 5602

The 5602IP and 5602SW phones are similar in physical appearance and functions. However the 5602SW includes a PC data pass-through port which gives priority to phone traffic. The 5602IP is no longer available from Avaya. The 5602IP is no longer available from Avaya. The 5602SW+ is the RoHS compliant version that has replaced the previous 5602SW model but is otherwise the same.

This phone requires a separate power supply, using either a Avaya 1151C1 or 1151C2 power supply unit and power cord or a 802.3af Power over Ethernet (PoE) source.

5602IP/5602SW	Feature	5602IP	5602SW
	Connects via	IP network.	
	IP Office Release	3.0+	
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 2   *	
	Headset Socket	✗	
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✗	
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓	
	Typical Off-Hook Power Consumption	4.1W (Class 2)	
	Display	24 characters x 2 lines.	
	Supported Add-Ons	None.	
	Upgradable Firmware	✓	
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	✗/✗	✓/✓

### Standard DCP Phone Keys

✗  SPEAKER	✗  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✓  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
5602IP	Multi-Grey	700345341
5602SW	Multi-Grey	700381825
5602SW+ (RoHS compliant)	Multi-Grey	700381932
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
EU24	Multi-Grey	700381817
EU24BL	Multi-Grey	700381544
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

## 5610SW

This phone requires a separate power supply, using either a Avaya 1151C1 or 1151C2 power supply unit and power cord or a 802.3af Power over Ethernet (PoE) source.

5610	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	IP network.
	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓24 (6 buttons x 4 pages).
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓.
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Typical Off-Hook Power Consumption	5W (Class 2)
	Display	29 characters x 5 lines (168 x 80 pixels)
	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradable Firmware	✓
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	✓/✓

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓  SPEAKER	✓  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✗  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
5610SW	Multi-Grey	700345333
5610SW (RoHS compliant)	Multi-Grey	700381965
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
EU24	Multi-Grey	700381817
EU24BL	Multi-Grey	700381544
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

**5620**

This phone is similar in physical appearance and functions to the 4620SW. It is no longer available from Avaya, having been replaced by the 5621.

This phone requires a separate power supply, using either a Avaya 1151C1 or 1151C2 power supply unit and power cord or a 802.3af Power over Ethernet (PoE) source.

5620	Feature	5620IP
	Connects via	IP network.
	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 24 (12 buttons x 2 pages).
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Typical Off-Hook Power Consumption	5.9W (Class 3)
	Display	29 characters x 7 lines (168 x 132 pixels)
	Supported Add-Ons	EU24, EU24BL.
	Upgradeable Firmware	✓
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	✓/✓

**Standard DCP Phone Keys**

✓  SPEAKER	✓  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✗  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
5620IP	Multi-Grey	700339815
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
EU24	Multi-Grey	700381817
EU24BL	Multi-Grey	700381544
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

## 5621

This phone is similar in physical appearance and functions to the 4621SW.

This phone requires a separate power supply, using either a Avaya 1151C1 or 1151C2 power supply unit and power cord or a 802.3af Power over Ethernet (PoE) source.

5621	Feature	5620IP
	Connects via	IP network.
	IP Office Release	3.2+
	Programmable Buttons	✓24 (12 buttons x 2 pages).
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Typical Off-Hook Power Consumption	5.9W (Class 3)
	Display	29 characters x 7 lines (168 x 132 pixels)
	Supported Add-Ons	EU24, EU24BL.
	Upgradeable Firmware	✓
	PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority	✓/✓

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓  SPEAKER	✓  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✗  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
5621SW	Multi-Grey	700345982
5621SW (RoHS compliant)	Multi-Grey	700385982
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
EU24	Multi-Grey	700381817
EU24BL	Multi-Grey	700381544
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

**6408D**

These phones no longer available from Avaya.

6408D	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	1.0+.
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 8  .
	Headset Socket	✗
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Display	24 characters x 2 lines.
	Supported Add-Ons	None.
	Upgradable Firmware	✗

**Standard DCP Phone Keys**

✓  SPEAKER	✗  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✗  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✗  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Item	SAP Code
6408D+ (Grey)	70020100
6408D+ (White)	70020092
6408 Stand (Grey)	108933169
6408 Stand (White)	108933177

## 6416D

These phones no longer available from Avaya. An additional 24 programmable buttons can be added using an XM24 and power supply unit.

6416D	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	1.0+.
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 16 
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Display	24 characters x 2 lines.
	Supported Add-Ons	XM24
	Upgradable Firmware	✗

Standard DCP Phone Keys			
✓  SPEAKER	✓  HEADSET	✓  MUTE	✓  VOLUME UP
✗  MESSAGES	✓  HOLD	✓  TRANSFER	✓  VOLUME DOWN
✓  DROP	✓  REDIAL	✓  CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
6416D+M	Grey	108807611
	White	108807603
6416/6424D+M Stand	Grey	848219127
	White	848219119
XM24	Grey	700406523
	White	700406515
XM24 Stand	Grey	108272378
	White	108272386
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia and New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

**6424D**

An additional 24 programmable buttons can be added using an XM24 and power supply unit.

6424D	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	1.0+.
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 24 🇩🇪.
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Display	24 characters x 2 lines.
	Supported Add-Ons	XM24
	Upgradeable Firmware	✗

**Standard DCP Phone Keys**

✓ 🔊 SPEAKER	✓ 🎧 HEADSET	✓ 🚫 MUTE	✓ ▲ VOLUME UP
✗ ✉ MESSAGES	✓ 🛑 HOLD	✓ ➡️ TRANSFER	✓ ▼ VOLUME DOWN
✓ ↻ DROP	✓ 🔄 REDIAL	✓ 🗣 CONFERENCE	

Variant	SAP Code	
6424D+M	Grey	108807595
	White	108807587
6416/6424D+M Stand	Grey	848219127
	White	848219119
XM24	Grey	700406523
	White	700406515
XM24 Stand	Grey	108272378
	White	108272386
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700345447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700345454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord.	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia and New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

## T3 Classic

This phone is supported in Europe only (U-Law only). The T3 Classic has 2 Link ports for optional add-on T3 Headset and or T3 DSS units (up to 2 further T3 DSS units can be chained from the first T3 DSS).

The IP Office supports T3 UPN and IP phones. It does not support T3 IPN phones. Previous restrictions against using T3 phones on systems with other types of digital stations no longer apply.

T3 Classic	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DS port.
	IP Office Release	3.1+.
	Programmable Buttons	4.
	Headset Socket*	
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	/
	Message Waiting Lamp	
	Upgradeable Firmware	

\*Using optional T3 Headset Link unit.

Variant	Colour	SAP Code
T3 UPN Classic	Black	700380272
	White	700380306
T3 IP Classic	Black	700414733
	White	700414725
T3 DSS Unit	Black	700380322
	White	700380330
T3 DSS Expansion Unit	Black	700380348
	White	700380355
T3 IP Power Supply Unit		700414766
AEI/Headset Link for T3 IP		700414774
Power Supply for T3 IP DSS		700414790
Headset Link for T3 UPN		700380363

## T3 Comfort

This phone is supported in Europe only (U-Law only). The T3 Classic has 2 Link ports for optional add-on T3 Headset and or T3 DSS units (up to 2 further T3 DSS units can be chained from the first T3 DSS).

The IP Office supports T3 UPN and IP phones. It does not support T3 IPN phones. Previous restrictions against using T3 phones on systems with other types of digital stations no longer apply.

T3 Comfort	Feature	T3 Comfort
	Connects via	DS ports.
	IP Office Release	3.1+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 10.
	Headset Socket*	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Upgradeable Firmware	✗

\*Using optional T3 Headset Link unit.

Variant	Colour	SAP Code
T3 UPN Comfort	Black	700380280
	White	700380314
T3 IP Comfort	Black	700414758
	White	700414741
T3 DSS Unit	Black	700380322
	White	700380330
T3 DSS Expansion Unit	Black	700380348
	White	700380355
T3 IP Power Supply Unit	700414766	
AEI/Headset Link for T3 IP	700414774	
Power Supply for T3 IP DSS	700414790	
Headset Link for T3 UPN	700380363	

## T3 Compact

This phone is supported in Europe only (U-Law only). The T3 Classic has 1 Link port for optional add-on T3 Headset or T3 DSS units (up to 2 further T3 DSS units can be chained from the first T3 DSS).

The IP Office supports T3 UPN and IP phones. It does not support T3 IPN phones. Previous restrictions against using T3 phones on systems with other types of digital stations no longer apply.

T3 Compact	Feature	T3 Compact
	Connects via	DS ports.
	IP Office Release	3.1+
	Programmable Buttons	✓10.
	Headset Socket	✓
	Handsfree Speaker/Microphone	✓/✓
	Message Waiting Lamp	✓
	Upgradeable Firmware	✗

\*Using optional T3 Headset Link unit.

Variant	Colour	SAP Code
T3 UPN Compact	Black	700380264
	White	700380298
T3 IP Compact	Black	700414717
	White	700414709
T3 DSS Unit	Black	700380322
	White	700380330
T3 DSS Expansion Unit	Black	700380348
	White	700380355
T3 IP Power Supply Unit		700414766
AEI/Headset Link for T3 IP		700414774
Power Supply for T3 IP DSS		700414790
Headset Link for T3 UPN		700380363

## Phone Add-Ons

### 4450

Provides an additional 60 programmable buttons for 4424D+ phones. Connects to the phone's **ADJ** port. An additional power supply unit and power outlet socket are required for the phone. A second 4450 can be chained from the first.

4450	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	DSS port on phone.
	Supported by	4424D+
	Maximum per phone	2.
	Maximum per IP Office	2.
	Additional requirements	4450 power supply unit on phone.
	IP Office Release	1.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 60 (50x  / 10x  ).

Item	SAP Code
4450 (Black)	108199696
4450 (White)	108199407
Small 4400 Series Stand (Black)	108541194
Small 4400 Series Stand (White)	108541202
Power Supply for 4450	108596412

## EU24

Provides an additional 24 programmable buttons.

- ⚠ Only the cable supplied with the EU24/EU24BL should for connection to the EU24/EU24BL. This cable should only be connected to the port marked EU24 on suitable phones. Doing otherwise will cause damage to the EU24/EU24BL and the equipment to which it is attached.

EU24	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	EU24 port on phone.
	Supported by	2420, 4620, 4621, 4625, 5420, 5620, 5621.
	Maximum per phone	1.
	Maximum per IP Office	8.
	Additional Requirements	1151C1 or 1151C2 power supply or Class 3 PoE.
	IP Office Release	3.0+
	Programmable Buttons	✓24.

Variant	SAP Code	
EU24 1XU-A Expansion Module	Multi-Grey	700381817
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

## EU24BL

Provides an additional 24 programmable buttons. The EU24BL is physically similar to the EU24 but includes a backlight function that matches 4621 phone.

- ⚠ Only the cable supplied with the EU24/EU24BL should for connection to the EU24/EU24BL. This cable should only be connected to the port marked EU24 on suitable phones. Doing otherwise will cause damage to the EU24/EU24BL and the equipment to which it is attached.

EU24BL	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	EU24 port on phone.
	Supported by	4620, 4621, 4625, 5620, 5621.
	Maximum per phone	1.
	Maximum per IP Office	8.
	Additional requirements	1151C1 or 1151C2 power supply or Class 3 PoE.
	IP Office release	3.1+.
	Programmable Buttons	✓24.

Variant	SAP Code	
EU24BL 2XU-A Backlighted Expansion Module	Multi-Grey	700381544
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

## T3 DSS

The T3 DSS provides an additional 36 programmable keys for phones in the supported T3 series. The T3 DSS is moulded and designed to be attached to the associated phone. Signalling is achieved by cable connection to the Link port on the T3 phone. A further two T3 DSS units can be chained from the first T3 DSS.

T3 DSS	Feature	Detail
	Connects via	Link port on phone.
	Supported by	T3 Compact, T3 Classic, T3 Comfort
	Maximum per phone	3.
	Maximum per DS module	-.
	Additional requirements	None.
	IP Office release	3.1+.
	Programmable Buttons	✔ 36.

Variant	Colour	SAP Code
T3 DSS Unit	Black	700380322
	White	700380330
T3 DSS Expansion Unit	Black	700380348
	White	700380355

## 201B Recorder Interface Module

The 201B Recorder Interface Module (RIM) is supported for use with 2420 and 5420 phones. It provides the phone with a 3.5mm mini-RCA jack socket for connection of recording devices. It also provides two headset sockets which can be used in place of the phones existing headset socket (the phone and the RIM sockets can not be used at the same time).

- The 201B is the RoHS compliant replacement for the 201A. The 20B stand is the RoHS complaint replacement for the 20A stand.

To install the 201B, the phones existing stand must be removed and be replace by a 20B stand (also called the 20B Module Adapter Base). This is an expanded stand that includes two slots, into one of which the 201B can be inserted. However only one 201B is supported per phone.

Use of the 20B and therefore the 201B requires the phone to be powered by a 1151C1 or 1151C2 power supply unit. Full installation instructions are included with the 20B Stand.

Variant		SAP Code
201B Recorder Interface Module		700381635
20B Stand		700381650
EU24	Multi-Grey	700381817
1151C1 Power Supply	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia/New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

## XM24

Connects to the XM24 port on the base of 6416 and 6424 phones. Requires the phone to have a separate power supply using an Avaya 1151C1 or 1151C2 power supply unit and a power outlet socket are required.

XM24	Feature	XM24
	Connects via	XM24 port on phone.
	Supported by	6416+, 6424+
	Maximum per phone	1.
	Maximum per IP Office	2.
	Additional requirements	1151C1 or 1151C2 PSU for phone.
	IP Office Release	1.0+.
	Programmable Buttons	✓ 24.

Variant		SAP Code
XM24	Grey	700406523
	White	700406515
XM24 Stand	Grey	108272378
	White	108272386
1151C1 Power Supply.	With CAT5 cable.	700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable.	700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord	USA	405362641
	Europe	407786623
	Australia and New Zealand	407786631
	India	407790991
	United Kingdom	407786599
	Argentina	408161453

## Applications

### Call Status

This is a simple application that shows current calls in progress on the IP Office system. It is intended for use by IP Office installers and maintainers.

Call Status is not supported for IP Office 4.0 and higher systems. It is included in the IP Office Admin suite to assist with maintenance of pre-4.0 IP Office systems.

Details	
CD	IP Office 4.1 User and Admin CD Set (700449457)
DVD	IP Office 4.1 Applications DVD (700449465)
IP500	Call status is not supported with IP Office 4.0 and therefore not supported on IP500 systems.
License	✘ No license required.

Minimum PC Requirements						XP Pro	Vista	2000 Pro	2000 Server	2003 Server
Variant	RAM	HD	Pentium	Celeron	AMD					
Call Status	64MB	50MB	PIII 800MHz	Celeron 3 800Mhz	Athlon B 65-0MHz	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

- For Windows XP minimum RAM 256MB.
- Vista support excludes Home Basic and Home Premium editions.

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
Call Status	CallStatus\callstatus.exe	UDP 50798.

## Compact Business Center (CBC)

This is a licensed application. It receives data from the IP Office Delta Server application. The CBC is able to show details of calls handled by up to 3 selected hunt groups. It can also display details of IP Office trunk usage. The CBC retains calls details for 31 days.

Details	
CD	–
DVD	Compact Contact Center 5.2 DVD (700451545)
IP500	✓ IP Office Standard Edition, ✓ IP Office Professional Edition.
License	✓ Compact Business Center (IP400 CBC - 171993)
Additional	Delta Server installed on the same or another PC.

Minimum PC Requirements						XP Pro	Vista	2000 Pro	2000 Server	2003 Server
Variant	RAM	HD	Pentium	Celeron	AMD					
CBC	256MB	10GB	PIII 800Mhz	Celeron 3 800Mhz	Athlon B 650Mhz	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

- Also requires Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher.
- Vista support excludes Home Basic and Home Premium editions.

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
CBC	CCC\CBC\CBC.exe	

## Compact Contact Center (CCC)

CCC is a reporting application designed for use in call centers. It provides a range of both real-time and historical reporting options. CCC consists of CCC Server applications that receive call information from the IP Office Delta Server, and a number of client applications for the display of that information. CCC and its clients are controlled by a range of licenses entered into the IP Office configuration.

The CCC server applications are listed below. Typically they are installed onto the same PC:

- **CCC Archiver**  
The Archiver manages the collection and storage of call activity information.
- **Wallboard Server**  
Wallboards provide current information on the number of calls waiting, response times and service levels. Wallboard Manager provides the ability to control both physical wallboards and PC wallboards. The Wallboard server must be installed on the same PC as the Delta Server.

The CCC clients are:

- **Call Center View (CCV):**  
Provides a realtime information about call center activity.
- **Alarm Reporter:**  
Provides real-time and past 7-days information on alarms that have occurred within the call center.
- **PC Wallboard:**  
The PC Wallboard allows call center agents and supervisors to display real-time call center performance information on their Windows PC screen.
- **Report Manager:**  
Provides in depth historical reporting on calls, agents and groups.
- **Workforce Management:**  
This application allows CCC to share information with a third-party agent scheduling application - Blue Pumpkin.

Details	
CD	–
DVD	Compact Contact Center 5.2 DVD (700451545)
IP500	✗ IP Office Standard Edition, ✓ IP Office Professional Edition.
License	✓ Licensed application. See below.
Additional	Delta Server installed.

Minimum PC Requirements						XP Pro	Vista	2000 Pro	2000 Server	2003 Server
Variant	RAM	HD	Pentium	Celeron	AMD					
CCC Server	512MB	10GB	1.4GHz	1.7GHz	1.4GHz	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓
" plus VMPro	512MB	30GB*	Pentium 4 2.8GHz.	Not tested.	Athlon XP 3000+ All Athlon 64	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓
Wallboard Server	128MB	10GB	1.4GHz	1.7GHz	1.4GHz	✓	✗	✓	✗	✗
Wallboard Client	128MB	10GB	PIII 800MHz	Celeron 3 800MHz	Athlon B 650Mhz	✓	✗	✓	✗	✗
PC Wallboard						✓	✗	✓	✗	✗
Call Center View (CCV)						✓	✗	✓	✗	✗
CCC Reporter	Any PC with Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher.					✓	✗	✓	✓	✓

- If VM Pro and CCC are run on the same server, CCC is limited to up to a maximum of 25 agents, 8 ports of VM Pro and on Windows server operating systems only.
- \*For all voicemail servers, also allow 1MB per minute for messages and greeting storage.
- For Windows XP minimum RAM 256MB.

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports	Ports
Archiver	CCC\Archiver\ArchiverSQL.exe	TCP 8081. TCP 8082. TCP 8083. TCP 8084. TCP 8085. TCP 8086. TCP 8087. TCP 8088. TCP 8089.	UDP 8081. UDP 8082. UDP 8083. UDP 8084. UDP 8085. UDP 8086. UDP 8087. UDP 8088. UDP 8089.
CCV	CCC\CallCentreView\CallCentreView.exe		
CCC Alarm Reporter	CCC\CCVAlarmReporter\CCVAlarmReporter.exe		
Wallboard DBMGR	CCC\DBMgr\DBMgr.exe		
PC Wallboard	CCC\PCWallboard\PCWallboard.exe		TCP 2127. UDP 2127.
CCC Reporter Admin	CCC\Reporting\Admin.exe	TCP 8081. TCP 8082. TCP 8083. TCP 8084. TCP 8085. TCP 8086. TCP 8087. TCP 8088. TCP 8089.	UDP 8081. UDP 8082. UDP 8083. UDP 8084. UDP 8085. UDP 8086. UDP 8087. UDP 8088. UDP 8089. UDP 50800.
CCC Reporter	CCC\Reporting\bin\CCCReporter.exe		
CCC User Access	CCC\User Access\CCCUUserAccess.exe		
Wallboard Server	CCC\WBServer\WbServer32.exe		TCP 2127. UDP 2127.

License	Description	RFA Name	SAP	
<b>CCC Server</b>	Enables the CCC Server applications (Archiver and Wallboard Manager) with support for 1 supervisor, reporting on 5 agents, and one PC Wallboard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This license is a pre-requisite for all the following CCC licensing.</li> </ul>	CCC SVR		171994
<b>CCC Agents</b>	Enables various numbers of additional agents (5, 10, 20, 50) for CCC reporting.	CCC AGT	5	171995
			10	174469
			20	174470
			50	174471
<b>CCC Supervisors</b>	Enables additional supervisors (1, 5, 10, 20) up to the maximum of 21 supported supervisors. Each supervisor also allows reporting on 5 agents and one instance of a PC Wallboard.	CCC SUP	1	171996
			" 5	184730
			" 10	184731
			" 20	184732
<b>CCC PC Wallboards</b>	Enables additional CCC PC Wallboards for 5, 10, 20, 50 agents.	CCC PCW	5	172786
			" 10	174472
			" 20	174473
			" 50	174474
<b>CCC Spectrum Wallboards</b>	Enables the operation of between 4 Spectrum wallboards (not Ferrograph). Licenses are cumulative up to a maximum of 16 wallboards.	CCC Wallboard	4	176196
<b>Report Viewer</b>	Allows additional users (5, 10, 20) access to historic reports.	CCC Report	5	184726
			10	184727
			20	184728
<b>CCC Agent Rostering</b>	Enables the Agent Rostering Interface for CCC which provides connection to a 3rd party Agent Rostering package (Blue Pumpkin).	CCC Rostering		171997
<b>CCC Designer (users)</b>	Enables CCC Report Designer, which permits a <u>supervisor</u> to design and customize their own reports. One license per user. Note: requires the user to have Crystal Report Writer software.	CCC Designer		171999

## Conferencing Center

This is a server application that is accessed via web browser. It allows users with a conference center password to book conferences. Details of the conference invitees can be entered and those people set to receive either an email or, using IP Office Voicemail Pro, a call asking them to join the conference.

Access to the conference center for configuration and conference booking is via web browser.

Details	
CD	IP Office Conference Center 4.0 (700428576)
DVD	IP Office 4.1 Applications DVD (700449465)
IP500	✗ IP Office Standard Edition, ✓ IP Office Professional Edition.
License	✓ Conferencing Center (IP400 Conferencing Center RFA - 182302)
Languages	English, French, German, Italian, Latin Spanish, Swedish.
Additional	Voicemail Pro server. MS Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher.

Minimum Server PC Requirements						XP Pro	Vista	2000 Pro	2000 Server	2003 Server
Variant	RAM	HD	Pentium	Celeron	AMD					
Conference Center	512MB	80GB	P4 2.4GHz	Not tested.	Athlon XP 3000+ Athlon64	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓

- While Windows XP Professional or Windows 2000 Professional can be used but will typically support a maximum of 10 web clients.
- Client PC: For conference booking and web conference access any Windows PC running Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher.
- For conversion of files to .MHT format, Microsoft Office is required on the client PC.
- When IP Office Conferencing Center is installed, 5 conference slots are reserved by the IP Office control unit for its own use (call recording, etc) and are not available to IP Office Conferencing Center or for general conference usage.

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
Conference Center	ECSConference\ConferenceService.exe	ALL 50801. ALL 8089. UDP 50791. UDP 50795.

## ContactStore

The Voicemail Pro can be used for manual and automatic call recording. Those recording are placed into the mailbox specified for the user or hunt group whose call is being recorded and are then treated as normal messages.

Contact Store allows those recordings to be redirected into a database on the ContactStore PC. This allows recordings to be archived and searched separately from user messages. This application requires entry of a license into the IP Office configuration.

Details	
CD	IP Office Voicemail Pro 4.1 CD's (700448954) (2nd CD contains ContactStore)
DVD	IP Office 4.1 Applications DVD (700449465)
IP500	✗ IP Office Standard Edition, ✓ IP Office Professional Edition.
License	✓ VMPro Recordings Administrators (IP400 ContactStore for IPO RFA - 187166)
Additional	User access to ContactStore requires the user PC to have Microsoft Explorer 5.5 or higher.

Minimum PC Requirements						XP Pro	Vista	2000 Pro	2000 Server	2003 Server
Variant	RAM	HD	Pentium IV	Celeron	AMD					
VM Pro Server and Contact Store	512MB	20GB*1	P4 2.8GHz	Not Tested.	Athlon XP 3000+ All Athlon 64.	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓
ContactStore	512MB	10GB*2	2.4GHz			✓	✗	✓	✓	✓

- \*1: For all voicemail servers, also allow 1MB per minute for messages and greeting storage.
- \*2: Also allow 7.2MB per hour for recordings in the Contact Store disk partition.
- If installed onto the same PC as Voicemail Pro, the ContactStore must use a separate disk partition from Voicemail Pro.

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
Contact Store	Witness\tomcat5024\bin\tomcat5.exe	TCP 8888. UDP 50791. UDP 50795.

## Delta Server

Applications such as CCC and CBC do not communicate directly with the IP Office system. They communicate across the LAN with a PC running the IP Office Delta Server application. This application receives call information from the IP Office systems which it then shares with other applications. The Delta Server does not require a license in the IP Office configuration. Only one Delta Server can be used with each IP Office system.

Delta Server installs as a Windows service. Access to the application is through web browser on the PC to the address ***http://localhost:8080***.

- **Delta Server SMDR Output**

The Delta server can be configured to output a call log of all calls made and received by the IP Office system. This is called a SMDR call log. The Delta server send these records to an SMDR file stored on the PC and which can then be accessed by 3rd-party call logging applications. The Delta Server can also send SMDR records to a remote IP address.

Details	
CD	IP Office 4.1 User and Admin CD Set (700449457)
DVD	IP Office 4.1 Applications DVD (700449465)
IP500	✓ IP Office Standard Edition, ✓ IP Office Professional Edition.
License	✗ No license required.
Languages	Brazilian Portuguese, English (UK), English (US), Dutch, French, French Canadian, Italian, Latin Spanish, Spanish.
Additional	Microsoft Explorer 6.0 or higher is required for viewing Delta Server

Minimum PC Requirements						XP Pro	Vista	2000 Pro	2000 Server	2003 Server
Variant	RAM	HD*	Pentium	Celeron	AMD					
Delta Server	256MB	10GB	PIII 800MHz	Celeron 3 800MHz	Athlon B 650Mhz	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

- Vista support excludes Home Basic and Home Premium editions.

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
Delta Server PWA	CCC\DeltaServer\DeltaServerHTTPPasswordAssistant.exe	
SMDR CR	CCC\DeltaServer\SMDRClientResponse.exe	
SMDR SR	CCC\DeltaServer\SMDRServerResponse.exe	
Delta Server Service V5	CCC\DeltaServer\DeltaServerService.exe	TCP 8080. UDP 50800.
Delta Server Service Management Assistant V5	CCC\DeltaServer\DeltaServerManagementAssistant.exe	

## Feature Key Server

This application is required for IP Office systems where licenses are being validated against a parallel or USB port Feature Key dongle. It must be installed on the same PC as the dongle. The application installs as a service and appears as an icon in the PC's system tray. It has no configuration settings.

Feature key server is not required for IP Office systems with a serial port dongle or smart card attached directly to the IP Office control unit.

Details	
CD	IP Office 4.1 User and Admin CD Set (700449457)
DVD	IP Office 4.1 Applications DVD (700449465)
IP500	This application is no required for the IP500.
License	✘ No license required.

Minimum PC Requirements						XP Pro	Vista	2000 Pro	2000 Server	2003 Server
Variant	RAM	HD	Pentium	Celeron	AMD					
Feature Key Server	256MB	1MB	PIII 800Mhz	Celeron 3 800Mhz	Athlon B 650Mhz	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

- Vista support excludes Home Basic and Home Premium editions.

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
Feature Key Server	KeyServe\keyserve.exe	UDP 50800.

## Manager

This tool is used to access all parts of the IP Office configuration. Different levels of access can be defined to control which parts of the configuration the Manager user can view and alter. Manager is also used to upgrade the software files used by an IP Office system. When running it also acts as a TFTP server from which some Avaya phones can request new software.

Note that IP Office Manager's software level is always two higher than the IP Office core software with which it is released. For example IP Office 4.0 core software is released with IP Office Manager 6.0.

IP Office Manager 6.0 is backwards compatible and can be used to manage IP Office systems running software from IP Office 2.1 to IP Office 4.0.

Details	
CD	IP Office 4.1 User and Admin CD Set (700449457)
DVD	IP Office 4.1 Applications DVD (700449465)
IP500	✓ IP Office Standard Edition, ✓ IP Office Professional Edition.
Languages	English, Brazilian, Dutch, French, German, Italian, Spanish (Mexican).
License	✗ No license required.

PC Requirements	Minimum	Recommended
<b>Operating System</b>	Windows XP Professional with SP2. Windows Vista (Vista support excludes Home Basic and Home Premium editions.) Windows 2000 Professional with SP4. Windows 2000 Server with SP4. Windows 2003 Server. Windows 2003 SBS. Note: 64-bit versions of the operating systems above are not supported.	
<b>Processor</b>	600MHz Pentium or AMD Opteron, AMD Athlon64, AMD Athlon XP.	800MHz Pentium or AMD Opteron, AMD Athlon64, AMD Athlon XP.
<b>RAM</b>	128MB	256MB
<b>Hard Disk Space</b>	1GB - 800MB for .NET2, 200MB for Manager.	1.4GB - 800MB for .NET2, 600MB for the full IP Office Admin suite.
<b>Display</b>	800 x 600 - 256 Colors	1024 x 768 - 16-bit High Color

- For Windows XP minimum RAM 256MB.

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
IP Office Manager	Manager\manager.exe	TCP Port 50802. TCP Port 50804. TCP Port 50812. UDP Port 50798.
IP Office Upgrade Wizard	Manager\upgradewiz.exe	UDP Port 50798.

## Monitor (Sysmon)

Monitor is a tool that can show all activity on the IP Office system in great detail. As a consequence, interpretation of Monitor traces requires a high-level of data and telephony protocol knowledge. Despite that however, all IP Office installers and maintainers need to understand how to run Monitor when necessary as Avaya may request copies of Monitor traces to resolve support issues.

For IP Office 4.0 and higher, the System Status Application has been added to provide more easily interpreted information than is provided by Monitor.

- Two versions of Monitor are included in the IP Office Admin applications suite, one for IP Office 4.0 systems and one for pre-4.0 IP Office systems. Care should be taken to ensure that the correct version is used when monitoring an IP Office system.

Details	
CD	IP Office 4.1 User and Admin CD Set (700449457)
DVD	IP Office 4.1 Applications DVD (700449465)
IP500	✓ IP Office Standard Edition, ✓ IP Office Professional Edition.
License	✗ No license required.

Minimum PC Requirements						XP Pro	Vista	2000 Pro	2000 Server	2003 Server
Variant	RAM	HD	Pentium	Celeron	AMD					
Manager	128MB	10GB	PIII 800MHz	Celeron 3 800MHz	Athlon B 650Mhz	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

- For Windows XP minimum RAM 256MB.

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
System Monitor	Monitor\sysmonitor.exe	UDP 50794.

## MS-CRM

The Avaya IP Office MS-CRM component allows the IP Office system to be used to make and receive calls for users using the Microsoft MS-CRM application.

Details	
CD	IP Office 4.1 User and Admin CD Set (700449457)
DVD	IP Office 4.1 Applications DVD (700449465)
Languages	English.
IP500	✗ IP Office Standard Edition, ✓ IP Office Professional Edition.
License	✓ License application. See below.

- Phone Manager Pro PC Softphone also requires the user PC to have a speaker and microphone installed and the user associated with an IP extension on the IP Office.

License	Description	RFA Name	SAP
<b>MS-CRM</b>	Enables IP Office support for MS-CRM.	IP400 Microsoft CRM Intgr	180588

## Phone Manager

Phone Manager is an application that allows the user to control and monitor their own phone through their PC. For Avaya phone's that support handsfree operation, Phone Manager can be used to make and answer calls. During usage, the Phone Manager records details of calls made, answered and missed. It can also be configured to show the status of other users on the system. Phone Manager also allows the user to access and change many of the setting stored in the IP Office configuration that relate to their own phone operation, for example their forwarding destination numbers.

Though installed as a single set of software, that same software can operate in several modes:

- **Phone Manager Lite**  
The default mode of Phone Manager. Requires no license, this application can be installed for any IP Office user.
- **Phone Manager Pro**  
Users configured for Professional Edition mode are able to access a range of additional features. Phone manager Pro requires entry of licenses into the IP Office system. The licenses also control the number of simultaneous Phone Manager Pro users. The user's Phone Manager software then automatically changes from Lite mode to Professional Edition mode.
- **Phone Manager Pro PC Softphone (formerly called Phone Manager iPro)**  
This is a PC softphone mode of Phone Manager operation. The user acts as a VoIP extension, making calls through the speaker and microphone of their PC. This mode requires further licenses in addition to the Phone Manager Pro licenses.

Details	
CD	IP Office 4.1 User and Admin CD Set (700449457)
DVD	IP Office 4.1 Applications DVD (700449465)
Languages	Brazilian, Chinese (Simplified), Danish, Dutch, English, French, Finnish, German, Italian, Korean, Latin Spanish, Norwegian, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish.
IP500	✔ IP Office Standard Edition, ✔ IP Office Professional Edition.
License	✔ License application. See below.

Minimum PC Requirements						XP Pro	Vista	2000 Pro	2000 Server	2003 Server
Variant	RAM	HD	Pentium	Celeron	AMD					
Phone Manager Lite	64MB	160MB	PIII 800MHz	Celeron 3 800MHz	Athlon B 650MHz	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗
Phone Manager Pro						✓	✓	✓	✗	✗
Phone Manager Pro PC Softphone		1GB				✓	✗	✓	✗	✗

- Phone Manager Pro PC Softphone also requires the user PC to have a speaker and microphone installed and the user associated with an IP extension on the IP Office.
- Vista support excludes Home Basic and Home Premium editions.

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
Phone Manager	Phone Manager\PhoneManager.exe	UDP 50796. UDP 50799.
Phone Manager VOIP Server	Phone Manager\iClaritySvr.exe	UDP 1719. UDP 1720.

License	Description	RFA Name	SAP	
<b>Phone Manager Pro (per user)</b>	Enables Phone Manager Pro for 1, 5, 10, 20, 50, 100 or unlimited users. The user's Phone Manager mode is set through the IP Office configuration ( <b>User   Telephony   Phone Manager Type</b> ).	IP400 Phone Manager Pro	1	177468
			5	177469
			10	177470
			20	177471
			50	177472
			100	177473
			unlimited	177474
<b>Phone Manager Pro IP Audio Enabled (per user)</b>	Enables Phone Manager Pro IP softphone operation for a user.  Note: Also requires the user to have a Phone Manager Pro license.	IP400 IPPRO	1	171992
			5	174463
			10	174464
			20	174465
			50	174466
			100	174467

## SoftConsole

This is a licensed application. It is intended for telephone system operators or receptionists. It displays details of calls directed to the user and allows them to quickly see the status of the callers required destination and transfer the call. The SoftConsole user is able to access a range of details about the status of users and groups on the IP Office system.

Up to 4 simultaneous SoftConsole users can be licensed.

Details	
CD	IP Office 4.1 User and Admin CD Set (700449457)
DVD	IP Office 4.1 Applications DVD (700449465)
Languages	Brazilian, Chinese (Simplified), Danish, Dutch, English, French, Finnish, German, Italian, Korean, Latin Spanish, Norwegian, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish.
IP500	✓ IP Office Standard Edition, ✓ IP Office Professional Edition.
License	✓ License application. See below.

Minimum PC Requirements						XP Pro	Vista	2000 Pro	2000 Server	2003 Server
Variant	RAM	HD	Pentium	Celeron	AMD					
SoftConsole	128MB	1GB	PIII 800MHz	Celeron 3 800MHz	Athlon B 650MHz	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗

- Vista support excludes Home Basic and Home Premium editions.

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
SoftConsole	SoftConsole\SoftConsole.exe	UDP 50799. UDP 50796.

License	Description	RFA Name	SAP
SoftConsole (users)	Adds one additional SoftConsole user. A maximum of four SoftConsole user can be licensed.	IP400 SoftConsole	171987

## System Status Application (SSA)

This tool provides a wide range of information about the current status of an IP Office 4.0 or higher system. It includes available resources and components within the system. This includes details of current call in progress. Details of the number of alarms are recorded and the time date of the most recent alarms.

When required for diagnostics escalation SSA is able to take a snap shot image of the IP Office system's status including a copy of its current configuration.

Use of SSA requires an IP Office service user name and password that has been configured for System Status access in the IP Office's security settings.

Details	
CD	IP Office 4.1 User and Admin CD Set (700449457)
DVD	IP Office 4.1 Applications DVD (700449465)
IP500	✓IP Office Standard Edition, ✓ IP Office Professional Edition.
License	✗ No license required.

PC Requirements	Minimum	Recommended
<b>Operating System</b>	Windows XP Professional with SP2. Windows Vista (Vista support excludes Home Basic and Home Premium editions.) Windows 2000 Professional with SP4. Windows 2000 Server with SP4. Windows 2003 Server. Windows 2003 SBS. Note: 64-bit versions of the operating systems above are not supported.	
<b>Processor</b>	600MHz Pentium or AMD Opteron, AMD Athlon64, AMD Athlon XP.	800MHz Pentium or AMD Opteron, AMD Athlon64, AMD Athlon XP.
<b>RAM</b>	128MB	256MB
<b>Hard Disk Space</b>	1GB - 800MB for .NET2, 200MB for Manager.	1.4GB - 800MB for .NET2, 600MB for the full IP Office Admin suite.
<b>Display</b>	800 x 600 - 256 Colors	1024 x 768 - 16-bit High Color

- For Windows XP minimum RAM 256MB.

## TAPI

IP Office TAPI is a client PC application that allows TAPI compliant applications to interact with the IP Office.

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
TAPI2	TAPI\tspi2w.tsp	UDP 50797.

IP Office TAPI can be used unlicensed to make and answer calls from TAPI compliant applications. For CTI developers, it can be licensed to provide additional functionality.

License	Description	RFA Name	SAP
<b>CTI Link Pro</b>	Enables CTI Link Pro functionality (TAPI <i>Link Pro</i> and DEV <i>Link Pro</i> ).	IP400 CTI	171988
<b>Wave User</b>	Allows streaming of WAV files, using TAPI <i>Link Pro</i> , for 3rd party voice applications. This is a per user license.  Note that TAPI WAV calls use system data channels taken from the same pools as used for voicemail ports. The maximum number of simultaneous TAPI WAV user calls and voicemail users is determined by the IP Office control unit type; Small Office Edition = 10, IP406 = 20, IP412 = 30, IP Office 500 = 30.	IP400 TAPI WAV	177466

## Voicemail Lite

This application does not require an IP Office license. It can be installed from the IP Office Administrator Applications CD to a Windows PC on the IP Office LAN. It provides voicemail operation for all IP Office users and groups, using the PC hard-disk to store prompts and messages. Only 4 simultaneous connections to leave or play messages are supported.

Details	
CD	IP Office 4.1 User and Admin CD Set (700449457)
DVD	IP Office 4.1 Applications DVD (700449465)
Languages	Chinese (Mandarin), Danish, German, Greek, English UK), English (US), Spanish, Latin Spanish, Finnish, French, French Canadian, Hungarian, Italian, Korean, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Brazilian, Swedish.
IP500	✗ IP Office Standard Edition, ✓ IP Office Professional Edition.
License	✗ No license required.

Minimum PC Requirements						XP Pro	Vista	2000 Pro	2000 Server	2003 Server
Variant	RAM	HD	Pentium IV	Celeron	AMD					
Voicemail Lite	256MB	2GB*	1.4GHz	1.7GHz	1.4GHz	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

- \*Also allow 1MB per minute for message and prompt storage.
- Vista support excludes Home Basic and Home Premium editions.

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
Voicemail Lite	Voicemail Server\VMLite.exe	UDP 50791.

## Voicemail Pro

This application requires various licenses entered into the IP Office configuration to control the features it offers and the number of simultaneous connections, up to 30 on the IP412 and IP500 control units. The operation of Voicemail Pro can be customised to provide special services.

The Voicemail Pro software can be installed as separate Voicemail Pro client and server parts. This allows the remote administration of the Voicemail Pro server from a PC with just the Voicemail Pro client installed. A copy of the client is automatically installed locally with the Voicemail Pro server.

Source	
CD	IP Office Voicemail Pro 4.1 CD's (700448954)
	ScanSoft TTS CD's (700293921)
DVD	IP Office 4.1 Applications DVD (700449465)
Languages	Chinese (Mandarin and Cantonese), Danish, German, Greek, English (UK), English (US), Spanish, Latin Spanish, Finnish, French, French Canadian, Hungarian, Italian, Korean, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Brazilian, Swedish.
IP500	✗ IP Office Standard Edition, ✓ IP Office Professional Edition.
License	✓ See below.

The Voicemail Pro server part of the software consists of several components in addition to the core server software, these are:

- Campaigns**  
 The Voicemail Pro can be configured to run a campaign. This consists of a series of questions for which the Voicemail Pro records the callers answer or key presses. The resulting recordings can then be played back by users. The web aspect of campaigns allows user to perform this playback and processing of campaign recordings via their web browser. This requires a web server to be run on the same PC as the Voicemail Pro software.
- Text to Speech (TTS)**  
 Through adding additional licenses, the Voicemail Pro is able to use the TTS functions of Windows to speak text and numbers to callers in addition to recording prompts. This is intended mainly for scenarios where the Voicemail Pro is obtaining text and number values from a customer database.
- Integrated Messaging Service (IMS)**  
 Both Voicemail Pro and Voicemail Lite support a feature called voicemail email to send messages or message alerts to a users email. This however is a one-way process. IMS allows this to become a two-way process, where users can play voicemail messages through their email mailbox or voicemail mailbox. IMS interoperates with the customer's Exchange server and the user's Outlook.

Minimum PC Requirements						XP	Vista	2000	2000	2003
Variant	RAM	HD*	Pentium	Celeron	AMD	Pro		Pro	Server	Server
Voicemail Pro Server	256MB	2GB	1.4GHz	1.7GHz	1.4GHz	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
plus IMS and or Web Campaigns	512MB		P4 2.8GHz	Not tested.	Athlon XP 3000+	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓
plus IVR and or TTS	512MB	20GB			All Athlon 64	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

- \*Also allow 1MB per minute for message and prompt storage.
- Vista support excludes Home Basic and Home Premium editions.

Component	Location - %ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IP Office\	Ports
Voicemail Pro Service	Voicemail Pro\VM\vmprov5svc.exe	UDP 50791. UDP 50795. ALL 50801. ALL 8089.
VMP Pro Database	Voicemail Pro\VM\VMPDBSvc.exe	
VPIM Client	Voicemail Pro\VPIMClient.exe	
VMP Pro VPIM DBSVR	Voicemail Pro\VPIM\vpimdbsvr.exe	
VMP Pro VPIM Receiver	Voicemail Pro\VPIM\VPIMReceiver.exe	
VMP Pro VPIM Server	Voicemail Pro\VPIM\VPIMServer3.exe	
IMS Admin	Voicemail Pro\IMS\IMSAdmin.exe	
IMS Service Restart	Voicemail Pro\IMS\IMSServiceRestart.exe	
IMS Gateway Service	Voicemail Pro\IMS\UMServer.exe	TCP 445. TCP 593. UDP 445. UDP 593
IMS Voice Service	Voicemail Pro\IMS\VMServer.exe	
IMS Security	Voicemail Pro\VM\IMSSec.exe	
IMS Client for Outlook	%ProgramFiles%\Avaya\IMS Client\UMSForm.exe	TCP 445. TCP 593. UDP 445. UDP 593.

License	Description	RFA Name	SAP	
<b>Voicemail Pro (4 ports)</b>	Enables Voicemail Pro plus 4 ports.	IP400 Voicemail Pro	171991	
<b>Additional Voicemail Pro (ports)</b>	Adds additional ports (2, 4, 8 or 16) to an existing Voicemail Pro, up to the maximum number of ports supported by the IP Office control unit type.  Maximum: Small Office Edition = 10, IP406 V2 = 20, IP412 = 30, IP500 = 30.	IP400 Voicemail Pro	2	174459
			4	174460
			8	174461
			16	174462
<b>Networked Messaging</b>	Enables VPNM (Voicemail Pro Networked Messaging) functionality within Voicemail Pro. This allows message exchange with remote Voicemail Pro systems and Avaya Interchange systems.	IP400 Networked Messaging	182297	
<b>Integrated Messaging</b>	Enables IMS operation with Voicemail Pro. Enables synchronization to MS Exchange email systems with a form within Outlook to control voicemail playback.	IP400 Integrated Messaging Pro	171990	
<b>VMPro TTS (ScanSoft)</b>	Enables use of text to speech facilities using Avaya supplied TTS software with Voicemail Pro. One license per simultaneous instance of TTS usage.	IP400 Avaya TTS	182299	
<b>VMPro TTS (Generic)</b>	Enables use of text to speech facilities using third party TTS software with Voicemail Pro. One license per simultaneous instance of TTS usage.	IP400 3rd Party TTS	182303	
<b>VMPro VB Script</b>	Enables VB Script functionality with Voicemail Pro.	IP400 VB Scripting	182300	
<b>VMPro Database Interface</b>	Enables 3rd party database support within Voicemail Pro call flows.	IP400 3rd Party IVR	182298	
<b>VMPro Recordings Administrators</b>	Enables integration between Voicemail Pro and the Avaya Contact Store for IP Office application. ContactStore can be run unlicensed from the date of the first recorded call.	IP400 ContactStore for IPO	187166	

## IP Office Ports

Most PC firewalls will request the user to allow various exceptions when a newly installed application is first run. However this may not always be the case, especially if the firewall is located elsewhere than the user's PC.

---

### Adding Firewall Exceptions

The file **avayafw.bat** can be used to open up the necessary firewall exceptions for IP Office applications. The file can be downloaded from <http://marketingtools.avaya.com/knowledgebase/tools/firewall>.

It only works for:

- The default Windows XP/Windows 2003 firewall.
- The application must be installed for the exception to be created.
- The application must be installed in the default location.

Whilst **avayafw.bat** only works subject to the conditions above, for other firewalls study of this file will indicate the necessary application files and ports for which exceptions need to be created.

## Ports Used

The list below details many of the IP ports used by IP Office control units and IP Office applications. Many of these are standard ports for different IP traffic protocols.

◀ Indicates a port on the IP Office control unit. ▶ indicates a port on the PC running an IP Office application.

\* Indicates that the port and or protocol can be changed.

Port	Protocol	Function
▶ 25*	SMTP (TCP)	Email system alarms from the IP Office to SMTP server.
▶ 37	Time (UDP)	Time requests from the IP Office to a Time Server (RFC868).
◀ 53	DNS (UDP)	Domain Name Service responses.
◀ 67	BOOTP/DHCP	DHCP server operation.
▶ 68	BOOTP/DHCP	DHCP client operation.
◀ 69	TFTP (UDP)	File requests to the IP Office.
▶ 69	TFTP (UDP)	File requests by the IP Office.
◀ 161*	SNMP (UDP)	From SNMP applications.
▶ 162*	SNMP Trap (UDP)	To addresses set in the IP Office configuration.
◀ 500	IKE (UDP)	Key exchange for IPsec protocol.
▶ 389*	LDAP (TCP)	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol.
▶ 520	RIP (UDP)	To and from the IP Office to other RIP devices. For RIP1 and RIP2 (RIP1 compatible) the destination address is a subnet broadcast, eg. 192.168.42.255. For RIP2 Multicast the destination address is 224.0.0.9.
◀ 520	RIP (UDP)	
◀ 1701	L2TP (UDP)	Layer 2 tunneling protocol.
◀ 1718	H.323	H.323 Discovery
◀ 1719	H.323 RAS (UDP)	H.323 Status. VoIP device registering with the IP Office.
▶ 1720	H.323/H.245 (UDP)	H.323 Signalling. Data to a registered VoIP device.
▶ 2127	(UDP)	PC Wallboard to CCC Wallboard Server.
◀▶ 5060	SIP (UDP/TCP)	SIP Line Signalling
▶ 8080	HTTP (TCP)	Browser access to the Delta Server application.
▶ 8089	Enconf (UDP)	From the IP Office to the Conferencing Center Server Service. User access to the conference center is direct via HTTP sessions.
▶ 8888	HTTP (TCP)	Browser access to the IP Office ContactStore (VRL) application.
◀▶ 49152 to 53247*	RTP/RTCP (UDP)	Dynamically allocated ports used during VoIP calls for RTP and RTCP traffic. The port range can be adjusted through the <b>System   Gatekeeper</b> tab.
▶ 50791	IPO Voicemail (UDP)	To voicemail server address.
◀ 50793	IPO Solo Voicemail (UDP)	From IP Office TAPI PC with Wave drive user support.
◀ 50794	IPO Monitor (UDP)	From the IP Office Monitor application.
◀ 50795	IPO Voice Networking (UDP)	Small Community Network signalling (AVRIP) and BLF updates. Each system does a broadcast every 30 seconds. BLF updates are sent required up a maximum of every 5 seconds.
◀ 50796	IPO PCPartner (UDP)	From an IP Office application (for example Phone Manager or SoftConsole). Used to initiate a session between the IP Office and the application.
◀ 50797	IPO TAPI (UDP)	From an IP Office TAPI user PC.
▶ 50798	(UDP)	IP Office Manager and UpgradeWizard
▶ 50799	IPO BLF (UDP)	Broadcast to the IP Office LAN and the first 10 IP addresses registered from other subnets.
▶ 50800	IPO License Dongle (UDP)	To the License Server IP Address set in the IP Office configuration.
◀ 50801	EConf (UDP)	Conference Center Service to IP Office.
◀ 50802	Discovery (TCP)	IP Office discovery from Manager.
◀ 50804*	HTTP (TCP)	IP Office configuration settings access.
◀ 50805*	HTTPS (TCP)	TLS Secure "
◀ 50808*	HTTP (TCP)	IP Office system status access.
◀ 50812*	HTTP (TCP)	IP Office security settings access.
◀ 50813*	HTTPS (TCP)	TLS Secure "

CDR from the IP Office is sent to the port number and IP address defined during configuration and using either TCP or UDP as selected.

---

## Ports

IP Office Monitor can be used to display IP packet details including the source and destination Port numbers. As well as displaying the port numbers (in decimal), IP Office Monitor also displays the names of more commonly used ports including IP Office specific ports.

For example "src = 23" is interpreted as "src = 23 (Telnet)".

The list below details the ports currently decoded by IP Office Monitor. For a full list of assigned non-IP Office ports see <http://www.iana.org/assignments/port-numbers>.

- 20 File Transfer [Default Data]
- 21 File Transfer [Control]
- 23 Telnet
- 25 Simple Mail Transfer
- 37 Time
- 43 Who Is
- 53 Domain Name Server
- 67 Bootstrap Protocol Server
- 68 Bootstrap Protocol Client
- 69 Trivial File Transfer
- 70 Gopher
- 79 Finger
- 80 World Wide Web-HTTP
- 115 Simple File Transfer Protocol
- 123 Network Time Protocol
- 137 NETBIOS Name Service
- 138 NETBIOS Datagram Service
- 139 NETBIOS Session Service
- 156 SQL Service
- 161 SNMP
- 162 SNMPTRAP
- 179 Border Gateway Protocol
- 1719 H.323Ras
- 1720 H.323/H.245
- 50791 IPO Voicemail
- 50792 IPO Network DTE
- 50793 IPO Solo Voicemail (i.e. Wave driver for TAPI)
- 50794 IPO Monitor
- 50795 IPO Voice Networking
- 50796 IPO PCPartner
- 50797 IPO TAPI
- 50798 IPO Who-Is response
- 50799 IPO BLF
- 50800 IPO License Dongle
- 50801 EConf

---

## Protocols

IP Office Monitor, as well as displaying the Protocol number (in decimal) of packets, also displays the names of the more common Protocols. For example "pcol = 1" is decoded as "pcol = 1 (ICMP)".

Protocol numbers currently decoded by IP Office Monitor are:

- 1 - Internet Control Message [ICMP]
- 2 - Internet Group Management [IGMP]
- 6 - Transmission Control [TCP]
- 8 - Exterior Gateway Protocol [EGP]
- 9 - Interior Gateway Protocol [IGP]
- 17 - User Datagram [UDP]
- 41 - Ipv6 [IPV6]
- 46 - Reservation Protocol [RSVP]
- 47 - General Routing Encapsulation [GRE]
- 58 - ICMP for IPv6 [IPv6-ICMP]
- 111 - IPX in IP [IPX-In-IP]
- 115 - Layer Two Tunneling Protocol [L2TP]
- 121 - Simple Message Protocol [SMP]

## Specification for IP Office Application PC's

Ethernet attached PC running as a recommended minimum Microsoft Windows 2000/2003/XP Professional, with the following minimum supported PC specification:

### Notes:

1. Windows ME, Windows 95 and NT4 Operating Systems are no longer supported by Avaya.
2. CBC requires the associated Delta Server application to be installed on a Windows 2000/XP workstation or a 2000/2003 server. Windows 2003 server requires Delta Server 4.0(33) or above.
3. IMS and Web Campaigns options within Voicemail Pro are only supported on Windows Servers. Aspects of operation such as Voicemail to E-mail, Integrated Messaging Pro (IMS), Web Campaigns, etc, are subject to further requirements. Please refer to the Voicemail Installation and Administration manual. Integrated Messaging Pro (IMS) is supported on Microsoft Exchange 5.5, 2000 and 2003. The R3.0GA release of Voicemail Pro does not support IMS operation with Outlook 2003 operating in cache mode. The R3.0 maintenance release will provide this support.
4. For Phone Manager/PC Softphone Avaya recommends the use of Windows XP/2000.
5. Conferencing Center Web Client simply requires Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher (no other application required).
6. Although a server application, IP Office SMDR can also run on a Windows 2000, 2003 and Windows XP client Operating Systems but should not run on the same PC as a CBC or CCC Delta Server.
7. Windows 98 is only supported on IP Office V2.1 and V3.0 applications; it is not supported on IP Office 3.1 applications and above. Systems that are upgraded to V3.1 should have also have any Windows 98 PCs that are running IP Office applications upgraded to use Windows 2000, Windows XP or later operating systems.
8. Windows Small Business Server 2003 is supported for the same applications as Windows 2003 Server.
9. 64-Bit versions of Microsoft operating systems are not currently supported with IP Office applications.

### Product Key

- VM Lite = Voicemail Lite.
- VM Pro = Voicemail Pro.
- IMS = Integrated Messaging Pro.
- CM = Campaign Manager.
- TTS = Text To Speech.
- IVR = Third Party Database Access.
- CS = ContactStore.
- CBC = Compact Business Center.
- CCC = Compact Contact Center.

**Server Applications Dependencies**

<b>Applications</b>	<b>Minimum PC Resources</b>	<b>Intel Pentium</b>	<b>Intel Celeron</b>	<b>AMD</b>	<b>Notes</b>
VM Lite	256MB RAM 2GB drive.*	Any 1.4GHz	Any 1.7GHz	Any 1.4GHz	Attempting to run the applications on lower specification PC's may cause degradation of operation and will not be supported.
VM Pro	256MB RAM 2GB drive.*	Any 1.4GHz.	Any 1.7GHz.	Any 1.4GHz.	To avoid replacing the server when adding new applications we recommend that a Pentium 4 2.8GHz (or equivalent) is used when possible.
VM Pro + IMS + CM	512MB RAM 2GB drive.*	Pentium4 2.8GHz.	Not tested	Athlon XP 3000+ All Athlon64.	
VM Pro + IVR + TTS	512MB RAM 20GB drive.*	Pentium4 2.8GHz	Not tested	Athlon XP 3000+ All Athlon64.	If the database being queried is located on the VM Pro server the query speed of the database will be affected by the amount of memory available. Please take into account the memory requirements of the database being queried.
VM Pro + CS	512MB RAM 20GB drive.*	Pentium4 2.8GHz	Not tested	Athlon XP 3000+ All Athlon64.	
VM Pro + CCC	512MB RAM 30GB drive.*	Pentium4 2.8GHz	Not tested	Athlon XP 3000+ All Athlon64.	VM Pro and CCC can be run on the same server OS up to a maximum of 25 agents, 8 ports of VM Pro.
VM Pro + CBC	512MB RAM 120GB drive.*	Pentium4 2.8GHz.	Not tested	Athlon XP 3000+ All Athlon64.	The client PC needs to be Pentium III, 800MHz with 128MB RAM minimum.
CCC	512MB RAM 10GB drive.	Any 1.4GHz.	Any 1.7GHz.	Any 1.4GHz.	
Conferencing Center Server	512MB RAM 80GB drive.	Pentium4 2.8GHz.	Not tested	Athlon XP 3000+ All Athlon64.	
CBC/SMDR	256MB RAM 10GB drive. IE6.0 or higher.	Pentium III 800MHz.	Celeron3 800Mhz	Athlon B 650MHz	The Delta Server and CBC can be installed on either the same PC or on separate PC's. In both cases these are the minimum PC specifications.
Feature Key Server PC	256MB RAM 1MB free disk space.	Pentium III 800MHz.	Celeron3 800Mhz.	Athlon B 650MHz.	

\*For all voicemail servers, also allow 1MB per minute for message and greeting storage.

**Client Applications Dependencies**

<b>Applications</b>	<b>Minimum PC Resources</b>	<b>Intel Pentium</b>	<b>Intel Celeron</b>	<b>AMD</b>	<b>Notes</b>
Conferencing Web Client	IE 6.0 or above.	Any.	Any.	Any.	Any desktop machine can be used as long as it is capable of running IE6.
Phone Manager Lite/Pro	64MB RAM 160MB HD.	Pentium III 800MHz.	Celeron 3 800Mhz.	Athlon B 650MHz.	A sound card is needed if audio features are required.
Phone Manager PC SoftPhone	64MB RAM 1GB HD.	Pentium III 800MHz.	Celeron 3 800Mhz.	Athlon B 650MHz.	A sound card is needed.
SoftConsole	128MB RAM 1GB HD.	Pentium III 800MHz.	Celeron 3 800Mhz.	Athlon B 650MHz.	A maximum of four SoftConsole applications can be run per system, a license controls the number of simultaneous SoftConsole users. A sound card is needed if audio features are required.
ContactStore Web client	IE 6.0 or above.	Any	Any	Any	Any desktop machine can be used as long as it is capable of running IE6.
IP Office Manager	128MB RAM 1GB HD.	Pentium 4 600Mhz.	Not tested	AMD Opteron, Athlon 64 or Athlon XP.	For Windows XP, minimum recommend RAM increases to 256MB.
Call Status	64MB RAM 50MB HD.	Pentium III 800MHz.	Celeron 3 800Mhz.	Athlon B 650MHz.	For OS of Windows XP, minimum RAM increases to 256MB
System Monitor	128MB RAM 10GB HD.	Pentium III 800MHz.	Celeron 3 800Mhz.	Athlon B 650MHz.	For OS of Windows XP, minimum RAM increases to 256MB
Contact Center View (CCV)	128MB RAM 10GB HD.	Pentium III 800MHz.	Celeron 3 800Mhz.	Athlon B 650MHz.	For OS of Windows XP, minimum RAM increases to 256MB
CCC Reporter	IE 6.0 or above.	Any	Any	Any	Any desktop machine can be used as long as it is capable of running IE6.
Wallboard Server	128MB RAM 10GB HD.	Any 1.4GHz.	Any 1.7GHz.	Any 1.4GHz.	The Wallboard Server must reside on the same PC as the Delta Server
Wallboard Client	128MB RAM 10GB HD.	Pentium III 800MHz.	Celeron 3 800Mhz.	Athlon B 650MHz.	For OS of Windows XP, minimum RAM increases to 256MB
PC Wallboard	128MB RAM 10GB HD.	Pentium III 800MHz.	Celeron 3 800Mhz.	Athlon B 650MHz.	For OS of Windows XP, minimum RAM increases to 256MB

## Operating Systems for IP Office

The range of Windows operating systems against which IP Office applications are tested and supported has been expanded to include Windows 2003 server. The following table gives a summary of the Server & Client Operating Systems (OS) on which various IP Office applications are tested and supported for IP Office.

Microsoft Server OS's <sup>1,9</sup>	IP Office Manager	CBC <sup>2</sup>	CCC v5 Server	VM Lite	VM Pro <sup>3</sup>	SMDR <sup>6</sup>	Conferencing Center Server
Windows 2000 server	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Windows 2003 server <sup>8</sup>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Windows XP Professional	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓	✗

Microsoft Client OS's <sup>1,9</sup>	IP Office Manager	CBC <sup>2</sup>	CCC Clients	VM Lite	VM Pro <sup>3</sup>	Soft Console	Phone Manager	Conferencing Center Client <sup>5</sup>
Windows XP Professional	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Windows Vista	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Windows 2000 Professional	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

- Vista support excludes Home Basic and Home Premium editions.

# Licence Keys

## License Keys General

**License** shows the name as it appears in the IP Office configuration. **RFA Name** is the name used for the orderable item.

License	Description	RFA Name	SAP	
<b>Advanced Small Community Networking</b>	This license is used to enable the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>View advertised hunt groups from other systems within the system configuration.</li> <li>Host remote hot deskers from other systems.</li> <li>Host hunt groups containing members from other systems.</li> </ul>	IPO LIC ADVANCED NTWKG	202966	
<b>SIP Trunk Channels</b>	These licenses are used to configure the maximum number of simultaneous SIP trunk calls supported.	IPO LIC SIP TRNK RFA	1	202967
			5	202968
			10	202969
			20	202970
<b>DECT Integration (ports)</b>	Enables enhanced DECT integration with the IP Office system. Used with Compact DECT and DECT DCU. Not used with Avaya IP DECT.	IP400 CTI DECT	8	171989
			16	174457
			24	174458
<b>Conferencing Center</b>	Enables the IP Office Conferencing Center application.	IP400 Conferencing Center	182302	
<b>SoftConsole (users)</b>	Adds one additional SoftConsole user. A maximum of four SoftConsole user can be licensed.	IP400 SoftConsole	171987	
<b>Compact Business Center</b>	Enables the CBC application for one user.	IP400 CBC	171993	
<b>Small Office Edition WiFi</b>	Enables use of the wireless card with the Small Office Edition control unit.	IP400 Access Point	182197	
<b>MS-CRM</b>	Allows operation between IP Office and MS-CRM server and clients.	IP400 Microsoft CRM Intgr	180588	
<b>IPSec Tunneling</b>	Enables the IP Office to initiate and terminate IPSec and L2TP tunnels.	IP400 IPSec VPN	182301	
<b>Mobile Twinning</b>	Enables the use of the IP Office 3.2+ mobile twinning features.	Mobile Twinning	1	195569
			5	195570
			10	195571
			20	195572
			50	195573
<b>VPN IP Extensions</b>	IP Office 4.1+. Used in conjunction with the <b>Extension   VoIP   VPN Phone Allowed</b> setting to license the operation of 46XX Series and 56XX Series phones using VPNremote firmware.	VPN Phone	1	213980
			5	213981
			10	213982
			25	213983
			50	213984
			100	213985
			Unlimited	213986
10 Trial	213987			
<b>IP End-points</b>	Controls the number of 3rd party H.323 devices supported by IP Office. No license is required for Avaya 4600 and 5600 series telephones. IP enabled Phone Manager Pro is licensed separately.	IP400 IP Endpoint	1	174956
			5	174957
			10	174958
			20	174959
			50	174960
			100	174961

## Licenses Keys IP500

**License** shows the name as it appears in the IP Office configuration. **RFA Name** is the name used for the orderable item.

License	Description	RFA Name		SAP
<b>IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional</b>	Required to upgrade an IP500 from Standard Edition mode to Professional Edition mode.	IP500 IPO EXP UPG TO PRO		202959
<b>IP500 Voice Networking</b>	Used with the IP500 to enable support for SCN, QSIG and H323 IP trunks. A base license is required first to which additional licenses can then be added. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For IP Office 4.0, this license is only supported in Professional Edition mode.</li> <li>For IP Office 4.1+ this license is supported in Standard Edition and Professional Edition modes.</li> </ul>	IP500 VOICE NTWKG BASE 4 LIC	4	202960
		IP500 VOICE NTWKG ADD LIC	-	205450
<b>IP500 Universal PRI (Additional channels)</b>	The IP Office systems supports 8 B-channels for each IP500 PRI-U port fitted, using in-service channels from port 9 of slot 1 upwards. Additional B-channels up to the capacity of ports installed and PRI mode selected require <b>IP500 Universal PRI (Additional Channels)</b> licenses added to the configuration. D-channels are not affected by licensing.	IP500 T1 Channels Add	2	21580
			8	21581
			32	21582
		IP500 E1 Channels Add	2	21583
			8	21584
			22	21585
		IP500 E1R2 Channels Add	2	21586
			8	21587
			22	21588
<b>IP500 VCM Channels</b>	Used with IP500 VCM modules to enable additional channels. Each IP500 VCM base card supports 4 unlicensed channels with additional channels requiring licenses.	IP500 VCM LIC 4 CH	+4	202961
		IP500 VCM LIC 8 CH	+8	202962
		IP500 VCM LIC 16 CH	+16	202963
		IP500 VCM LIC 28 CH	+28	202964
		IP500 VCM LIC 60 CH	+60	202965

## License Keys CCC

**License** shows the name as it appears in the IP Office configuration. **RFA Name** is the name used for the orderable item.

License	Description	RFA Name	SAP		
<b>CCC Server</b>	Enables the CCC Server application (Archiver and Wallboard Manager) with support for 1 supervisor, reporting on 5 agents, and one PC Wallboard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This license is a pre-requisite for all the following CCC licensing.</li> </ul>	IP400 CCC SVR	171994		
<b>CCC Agents</b>	Enables various numbers of additional agents (5, 10, 20, 50) for CCC reporting.	IP400 CCC AGT	5	171995	
			10	174469	
			20	174470	
			50	174471	
<b>CCC Supervisors</b>	Enables additional supervisors (1, 5, 10, 20) up to the maximum of 21 supported supervisors.	IP400 CCC SUP	1	171996	
			" 5	5	184730
			" 10	10	184731
			" 20	20	184732
<b>CCC PC Wallboards</b>	Enables additional CCC PC Wallboards for 5, 10, 20, 50 agents.	IP400 CCC PCW	5	172786	
			" 10	10	174472
			" 20	20	174473
			" 50	50	174474
<b>CCC Spectrum Wallboards</b>	Enables the operation of between 4 Spectrum wallboards (not Ferrograph). Licenses are cumulative up to a maximum of 16 wallboards.	IP400 CCC Wallboard	4	176196	
<b>Report Viewer</b>	Allows additional users (5, 10, 20) access to historic reports.	IP400 CCC Report	5	184726	
			10	184727	
			20	184728	
<b>CCC Agent Rostering</b>	Enables the Agent Rostering Interface for CCC which provides connection to a 3rd party Agent Rostering package (Blue Pumpkin). No longer supported.	IP400 CCC Rostering		171997	
<b>CCC Designer (users)</b>	Enables CCC Report Designer, which permits a <u>supervisor</u> to design and customize their own reports. One license per user. Note: requires the user to have Crystal Report Writer software.	IP400 CCC Designer		171999	
<b>CTI Link Pro</b>	Required for the CCC Email and CCC Chat licenses above.	IP400 CTI		171988*	

## License Keys CTI

**License** shows the name as it appears in the IP Office configuration. **RFA Name** is the name used for the orderable item.

License	Description	RFA Name	SAP
<b>CTI Link Pro</b>	Enables CTI Link Pro functionality (TAPI <i>Link Pro</i> and DEV <i>Link Pro</i> ).	IP400 CTI	171988
<b>Wave User</b>	<p>Allows streaming of WAV files, using TAPI<i>Link Pro</i>, for 3rd party voice applications. This is a per user license.</p> <p>Note that TAPI WAV calls use system data channels taken from the same pools as used for voicemail ports. The maximum number of simultaneous TAPI WAV user calls and voicemail users is determined by the IP Office control unit type; Small Office Edition = 10, IP406 = 20, IP412 = 30, IP500 = 30.</p>	IP400 TAPI WAV	177466

## License Keys Phone Manager

**License** shows the name as it appears in the IP Office configuration. **RFA Name** is the name used for the orderable item.

License	Description	RFA Name		SAP
<b>Phone Manager Pro (per seat)</b>	Enables Phone Manager Pro for 1, 5, 10, 20, 50, 100 or unlimited users. The user's Phone Manager mode is set through the IP Office configuration ( <b>User   Telephony   Phone Manager Type</b> ).	IP400 Phone Manager Pro	1	177468
			5	177469
			10	177470
			20	177471
			50	177472
			100	177473
			unlimited	177474
<b>Phone Manager Pro IP Audio Enabled (per user)</b>	Enables Phone Manager Pro IP softphone operation for a user.  Note: Also requires the user to have a Phone Manager Pro license.	IP400 IPPRO	1	171992
			5	174463
			10	174464
			20	174465
			50	174466
			100	174467

- In addition to entering Phone Manager licenses, each user is individually configured for the expected Phone Manager type.
- During operation, the number of Phone Manager license keys available and the number unused can be checked. Run Phone Manager and select **Help | About**. Holding down the **Ctrl** and **Shift** keys, click on the software version number.

## License Keys Voicemail

**License** shows the name as it appears in the IP Office configuration. **RFA Name** is the name used for the orderable item.

License	Description	RFA Name	SAP	
<b>AUDIX Voicemail</b>	Enables IP Office to use a remote Intuity Audix or Modular Messaging for voicemail. Does not require a local Voice Mail Pro server.	IP400 AUDIX	177467	
<b>Voicemail Pro (4 ports)</b>	Enables Voicemail Pro plus 4 ports.	IP400 Voicemail Pro	171991	
<b>Additional Voicemail Pro (ports)</b>	Adds additional ports (2, 4, 8 or 16) to an existing Voicemail Pro, up to the maximum number of ports supported by the IP Office control unit type.  Maximum: Small Office Edition = 10, IP406 V2 = 20, IP412 = 30, IP500 = 30.	IP400 Voicemail Pro	2	174459
			4	174460
			8	174461
			16	174462
<b>Networked Messaging</b>	Enables VPNM (Voicemail Pro Networked Messaging) functionality within Voicemail Pro. This allows message exchange with remote Voicemail Pro systems and Avaya Interchange systems.	IP400 Networked Messaging	182297	
<b>Integrated Messaging</b>	Enables IMS Pro operation with Voicemail Pro. Enables synchronization to MS Exchange email systems with a form within Outlook to control voicemail playback.	IP400 Integrated Messaging Pro	171990	
<b>VMPro TTS (Scansoft)</b>	Enables use of text to speech facilities using Avaya supplied TTS software with Voicemail Pro. One license per simultaneous instance of TTS usage.	IP400 Avaya TTS	182299	
<b>VMPro TTS (Generic)</b>	Enables use of text to speech facilities using third party TTS software with Voicemail Pro. One license per simultaneous instance of TTS usage.	IP400 3rd Party TTS	182303	
<b>VMPro VB Script</b>	Enables VB Script functionality with Voicemail Pro.	IP400 VB Scripting	182300	
<b>VMPro Database Interface</b>	Enables 3rd party database support within Voicemail Pro call flows.	IP400 3rd Party IVR	182298	
<b>VMPro Recordings Administrators</b>	Enables integration between Voicemail Pro and the Avaya Contact Store for IP Office application. ContactStore can be run unlicensed from the date of the first recorded call.	IP400 ContactStore for IPO	187166	

## IP DECT Licenses

These licenses are for Avaya IP DECT. They differ from normal IP Office licenses in that they are entered into the Avaya IP DECT Mobility Manager (ADMM) base station of the IP DECT system and not into the configuration of the IP Office system. The licenses are based on the PARK number of the ADMM base station.

License	Description	RFA Name	SAP
<b>1 Base Station</b>	Allows a single base station (that being the ADMM).	IP DECT IPO MOBMGR 1 RFP LIC:CU	700379027
<b>2 Base Stations</b>	Allows up to 2 base stations.	IP DECT IPO MOBMGR 2 RFP LIC:CU	700379035
<b>3-5 Base Stations</b>	Allows up to 5 base stations.	IP DECT IPO MOBMGR 3-5 RFP LIC:CU	700379043
<b>&gt;5 Base Stations</b>	Allows up to 32 base stations.	IP DECT IPO MOBMGR >5 RFP LIC:CU	700379050
<b>Upgrade to 2</b>	Upgrade to allow up to 2 base stations.	IP DECT IPO UPG TO A 2 BASE STATION LIC:CU	700379068
<b>Upgrade to 3-5</b>	Upgrade to allow up to 5 base stations.	IP DECT IPO UPG TO A 2 BASE STATION LIC:CU	700379076
<b>Upgrade to &gt;5</b>	Upgrade to allow up to 32 base stations.	IP DECT IPO UPG TO A 2 BASE STATION LIC:CU	700379084

## 45-Day Trial Licenses

These licenses differ from other IP Office licenses in that they are time based and expire 45 days after issue. Each trial licenses will only be issued once for a particular Feature Key dongle serial number.

License	RFA Name	SAP
Voicemail Pro Networked Messaging	IPO TRIAL NTKWD MSGING LIC:DS	189776
3rd Party Database/IVR	IPO TRIAL 3RD PARTY IVR RFA LIC:DS	189777
Avaya Text-to-Speech for IP Office (1 port)	IPO TRIAL AVAYA TTS RFA 1 LIC:CU	189778
VB Scripting	IPO TRIAL VB SCRIPTING RFA LIC:DS	189779
Conferencing Center	IPO TRIAL CONF CENTER RFA LIC:DS	189780
Third Party Text to Speech (1 port)	IPO TRIAL 3RD PRY TTS RFA LIC:CU	189781
Voicemail Pro (4 ports)	IPO TRIAL VM PRO RFA LIC:DS	189782
SoftConsole (1 user)	IPO TRIAL SOFTCONSOLE/BLF RFA LIC:CU	189783
Phone Manager PC Softphone (10 user)	IPO TRIAL IPPRO RFA 10 LIC:CU	189784
Phone Manager Pro (10 user)	IPO TRIAL PMGR PRO RFA 10 LIC:CU	189785
Centralized Voicemail with Avaya Messaging	IPO TRIAL ACM CENTRAL VM LIC:DS	189786
Integrated Messaging Pro	IPO TRIAL INTG MSGING PRO RFA LIC:DS	189787
Mobile Twinning	IPO LIC MOBILE TWINNING TRIAL RFA 5	195574
VPN IPsec	IPO TRIAL IPSEC VPN RFA LIC:DS	189788
IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional	IPO LIC IP500 STD UPG TO PRO TRIAL	205822
VPN IP Phone	IPO LIC VPN PHONE 10 TRIAL	213987

---

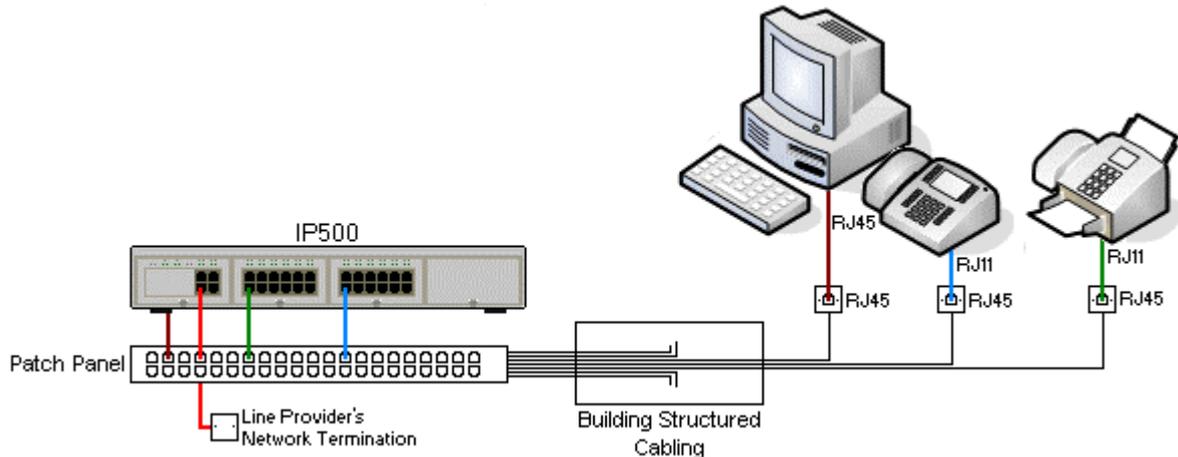
## Ports and Cables

---

### Cables

The IP Office systems are designed primarily for use within an RJ45 structured cabling system using CAT3 unshielded twisted-pair (UTP) cabling and RJ45 sockets.

A structured cabling system is one where cables are run from a central RJ45 patch panel in the communications/data room to individual RJ45 sockets at user's desk. All wires in each cable between the patch panel and the desk socket are connected straight through. This arrangement allows devices connected at the patch panel to be swapped to match the type of device that needs to be connected at the user socket. For example, making one user socket a phone port and another user socket a computer LAN port, without requiring any rewiring of the cables in between.



- **Traditional IDC Punchdown Wiring Installations**

Where necessary, the far end RJ45 plug can be stripped from IP Office cables and wired into traditional wiring systems using punch-block connectors. This type of installation should be performed by an experienced wiring technician.

- **Trunk Connections**

The majority of IP Office trunk ports use RJ45 connectors for acceptance of an RJ45-to-RJ45 cable. However, connection at the line providers end may require use of a different plug type in order to match the line providers equipment.

- **RJ11 Phone Connectors**

Many phones use RJ11 sockets and are supplied with RJ11-to-RJ11 cables. RJ11 plugs can be inserted into RJ45 sockets and in many case the connection will work. However this is not recommended or supported as the connection lock is not truly positive and may become disconnected. An RJ45-to-RJ11 cable is available for these connections.

## Standard IP Office Cables

The following are Avaya standard cables available for use with IP Office systems. The maximum length is applicable if the standard Avaya cable is replaced with an alternate cable.

Cable	Description	SAP Code	Standard Length	Maximum Length
<b>9-Way DTE Cable</b>	Connects to control unit RS232 DTE port. 9-Way D-type plug to 9-way D-type socket.	–	2m/6'6".	2m/6'6".
<b>Structured Cabling DS Line Cable</b>	Connects from RJ45 sockets to RJ11 socketed DS and analog phones.	700047871	4m/13'2".	See table below.
<b>BRI/PRI Cable</b>	Connects BRI/PRI trunk ports to the line providers network termination point. RJ45 to RJ45. Red.	700213440	3m/9'10".	–
<b>Expansion Interconnect Cable</b>	Connects the control unit to expansion modules (except WAN3 modules). RJ45 to RJ45. Blue.	700213457	1m/3'3".	1m/3'3".
<b>LAN Cable</b>	Connects from IP Office LAN ports to IP devices. RJ45 to RJ45. Grey.	700213481	3m/9'10".	100m/328'.
<b>LAN Interconnect Cable</b>	Connects WAN3 module to the control unit. Replace with a LAN crossover cable for IP412 control units. Green.	700213465	1m/3'3".	–
<b>LAN Crossover Cable</b>	Used for connection of IP devices to LAN ports on the IP412 control unit. Black	700213473	3m/9'10".	100m/328'.
<b>V.24 WAN Cable</b>	37-Way D-type plug to 25-way D-type plug.	700213416	3m/9'10".	5m/16'5"
<b>V.35 WAN Cable</b>	37-Way D-type plug to 34-way MRAC plug.	700213424	3m/9'10".	5m/16'5"
<b>X.21 WAN Cable</b>	37-Way D-type plug to 15-way D-type plug.	700213408	3m/9'10".	5m/16'5"

The table below details the maximum total cable distances for DS and analog extensions using different cable types.

Telephone	Unshielded Twisted-Pair (UTP) - 50nf/Km			
	AWG22 (0.65mm)	AWG24 (0.5mm)	AWG26 (0.4mm)	CW1308
2400/5400 Series	1200m/3937'.	1000m/3280'.	670m/2200'.	400m/1310'.
4406D Phone	1000m/3280'.	1000m/3280'.	400m/1310'.	400m/1310'.
4412D Phone	1000m/3280'.	700m/2295'.	400m/1310'.	400m/1310'.
4424D	500m/1640'.	500m/1640'.	400m/1310'.	400m/1310'.
6400 Series	1000m/3280'.	1000m/3280'.	400m/1310'.	400m/1310'.
T3 Series (Upn)	1000m/3280'.	1000m/3280'.	400m/1310'.	–
Analog Phones	1000m/3280'.	1000m/ 3280'.	400m/1640'.	800m/2620'.

## IP Office Port Types

The following port types are found on IP Office systems:

Port	Found on	Description
<b>ANALOG</b>	ATM4 Trunk card (x4). Analog Trunk expansion module (x16).	Used for the connection of external analog trunks.
<b>AUDIO</b>	All IP Office control units (x1).	Used for input of an external music on hold source.
<b>BRI</b>	Quad BRI trunk card (x4). So8 expansion module (x8).	Used for connection of BRI trunks (Quad BRI trunk card) and ISDN terminals devices (So8 module).
<b>DC I/P</b>	All control units (x1). All expansion modules (x1).	Power input from external power supply unit.
<b>DS</b>	IP403 control unit (x8). IP406 V2 control unit (x8). Digital Station expansion modules (x16/x30).	Connection of Avaya digital station phones supported by IP Office.
<b>RS232/ DTE</b>	All control units (x1). All expansion modules (x1).	Used for control unit maintenance under Avaya guidance. On expansion modules not used.
<b>EXPANSION</b>	All control units (x various). All expansion modules except WAN3 (x1).	Used for interconnection of external expansions modules and control units.
<b>EXT O/P</b>	All control units (x1).	Used to control external relay systems. The port provides two switchable (on, off and pulse) controls.
	All modules (x1).	Used for connection of functional or protective ground if required.
<b>LAN</b>	All control units (x various).	10/100Mbps Ethernet LAN ports.
<b>PF</b>	Analog Trunk expansion module (x2).	Analog power fails ports.
<b>PHONE (POT)</b>	IP403 control unit (x2). IP406 V2 control unit (x2). Phones expansion modules (x8/x16/x30).	Analog phone extension ports. On older units these ports are labeled as POT ports.
<b>PRI</b>	Single PRI trunk cards (x1). Dual PRI trunk cards (x2).	PRI trunk ports.
<b>USB</b>	IP500 Control Unit (x1).	Not used.
<b>WAN</b>	All control units (x1). WAN3 expansion module (x3).	WAN interface ports. V.24, V.35 and X.21 through cable selection.
	Small Office Edition (x1)	RJ45 Ethernet port. Acts as Layer 3 ethernet switch to the modules LAN ports.

## ANALOG Port

These ports are analog trunk ports. The IP400 ATM4 analog trunk cards and IP500 analog trunk cards only support loop-start trunks. The ATM16 Analog Trunk module supports both loop-start and ground-start trunks, switchable within the IP Office configuration.

ANALOG	Pin	Description
	1	<i>Not used.</i>
	2	<i>Not used.</i>
	3	<i>Not used.</i>
	4	Ring.
	5	Tip.
	6	<i>Not used.</i>
	7	<i>Not used.</i>
	8	<i>Not used.</i>

- **Off-Hook Current:** 25mA.
- **⚠ IMPORTANT**  
In all IP Office installations, any module being used for analog trunk connections must be connected to a functional earth.
- **⚠ WARNING**  
Within the Republic of South Africa and in areas of high lightning risk, any module using analog trunk connections must be connected to a protective ground and to surge protection equipment (an Avaya 146G Surge Protector).

## AUDIO Port

This port is found on the rear of all IP Office control units. It is used for the input of an external music-on-hold sound source. Note that if the IP Office has loaded an internal music-on-hold sound file, any input from this socket is ignored.

The port is a 3.5mm stereo jack socket suitable for use with the most standard audio leads and connection to the 'headphone' output socket of most audio systems.

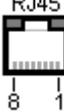
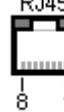
The use of a 'headphone' socket allows simple volume adjustment. Connection via a 'Line Out' socket may require additional equipment in order to adjust the volume level.

Pin No.	Description
Common	● Common
Left	← Audio In - Left Channel.
Right	← Audio In - Right - Channel.

- Input impedance: 10k /channel. Maximum a.c. signal – 200mV rms.

## BRI Port (So)

The BRI ports found on the front of the So8 module are BRI-S interface ports for connect to ISDN terminal devices.

IP Office		Wire		ISDN Terminal	
BRI	RJ45	BRI		PIN	RJ45
	1	–	White/Orange	1	
	2	–	Orange/White	2	
	3	← Rx-A	White/Green	3	
	4	→ Tx-B	Blue/White	4	
	5	→ Tx-A	White/Blue	5	
	6	← Rx-B	Green/White	6	
	7	–	White/Brown	7	
	8	–	Brown/White	8	

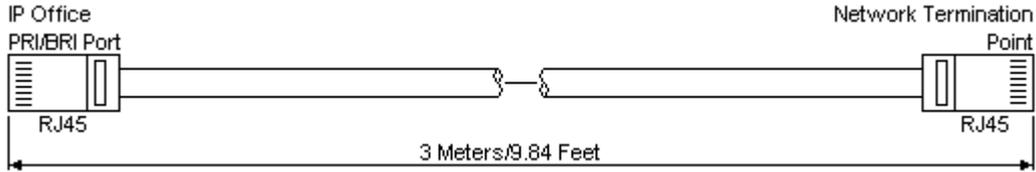
- The IP Office So8 module BRI ports include 100ohm terminating resistors.
- Connection assumes that the ISDN device includes terminating resistors. If this is not the case, 100ohm (+/-5%) resistors must be connected across the receive wire pair and the transmit wire pair in the junction box immediately before the ISDN terminal.
- BRI ports found on the rear of control units fitted with Quad BRI trunk cards are BRI-T interface ports for connection to external BRI trunk services, see BRI Port (Trunk).

## BRI Port

These ports are BRI-T interface ports for connection to external BRI trunk services. Note that BRI ports found on the IP400 So8 module are BRI-S interface ports for connect to ISDN terminal devices, see BRI Port (So).

## PRI/BRI Trunk Cable

This cable is used to connect from IP Office BRI/PRI trunk ports to the line providers network termination equipment. If that equipment does not use RJ45 sockets, the cable may need to be stripped and rewired or an alternate cable used. The appropriate signal pin-outs and wire colours are detailed below.



IP Office				Wire	Network Termination	
BRI	RJ45	BRI	PRI		PIN	RJ45
 8 1	1	–	← Rx-A	White/Orange	1	 8 1
	2	–	← Rx-B	Orange/White	2	
	3	→ Tx-A	–	White/Green	3	
	4	← Rx-A	→ Tx-A	Blue/White	4	
	5	← Rx-B	→ Tx-B	White/Blue	5	
	6	→ Tx-B	–	Green/White	6	
	7	–	–	White/Brown	7	
	8	–	–	Brown/White	8	

- **Supply:** BRI/PRI trunks cards are not supplied with these cables.
- **Cable Color:** Red.
- **SAP Code:** 700213440.
- **Standard Length:** 3m/9'10".
- **Maximum Length:** 5m/16'5".
- Though not used pins 7 and 8 are through connected for ease of construction.

## DC I/P Port

Found on all IP Office control units and expansion modules. Used for connection from the external power supply unit supplied with the control unit or module.

- No other type of power supply unit should be used with the module or module unless specifically indicated by Avaya.
- Power cords must not be attached to the building surface or run through walls, ceilings, floors and similar openings.

## DS Ports

These ports are used for connection from an RJ45 structured cabling system to digital station phones supported by the IP Office.

Though the RJ11 to RJ11 cables supplied with most DS phones can be plugged directly into RJ45 ports including those on IP Office modules, this is not recommend as the connection lock is not positive and may become disconnected.

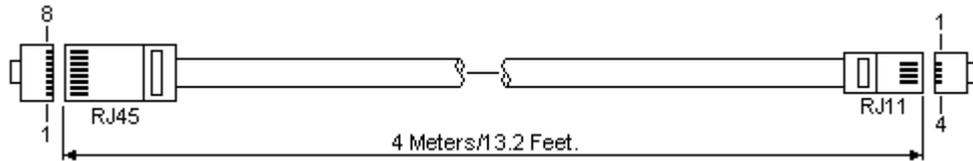
DS ports on Digital Station V1/V2 expansion modules can be connected to out-of-building extensions. If this is the case, connection must be made via suitable protective devices (IROB 146E) at each end and via each building primary protection. In addition the Digital Station module must be connected to a protective ground.

DS ports on IP Office control units must not be connected to out-of-building extensions.

### Structured Cabling Line Cord

This is an RJ45 to RJ11 cable suitable for connection from a structured cabling system RJ45 port to a DS phone. It can also be used for two-wire analog phone extensions.

This cable is not suitable for connection from an Avaya 1151C1/B2 power supply unit to a DS phone with a 4450, EU24 or XM24 add-on module. In those cases the cables supplied with the power supply unit and the add-on module should be used.



IP Office		Phone		
DS Port	Pin	Description	Pin	Port
	1	Not used.	–	
	2	Not used.	1	
	3	Not used.	2	
	4	Signal 1.	3	
	5	Signal 2.	4	
	6	Not used.	5	
	7	Not used.	6	
	8	Not used.	–	

- **SAP Code:** 700047871.

## RS232 DTE Port

These ports are found on the rear of all IP Office control units and external expansion modules. The DTE ports on external expansion modules are not used.

The RS232 DTE ports on the control units can be used for system maintenance and connection of serial terminal adaptors. On IP400 control units the port can also be used for connection of the IP Office serial port licence key dongle.

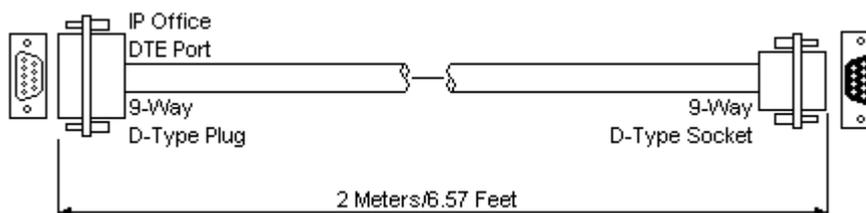
An asynchronous terminal program such as HyperTerminal is also required. Configure this for operation via a PC serial port, as follows:

<b>Bits per second</b>	38,400	<b>Parity</b>	None	<b>Flow Control</b>	None
<b>Data bits</b>	8	<b>Stop Bits</b>	1	<b>Settings   Emulation</b>	TTY

## DTE Cables

These cables are used for system maintenance and diagnostics under Avaya guidance. They can also be used for connection of RS232 serial terminal adaptor equipment to the IP Office control unit.

The cable required depends on the IP Office control unit.



IP Office 9-Way RS232 DTE Port	Signal	PC/Terminal Adaptor
3	← Receive data	3
2	→ Transmit Data	2
7	← RTS (Request To Send)	7
8	→ CTS (Clear To Send)	8
6	→ DSR (Data Set Ready)	6
5	■ Ground	5
1	→ DCD (Data Carrier Detect)	1
4	← DTR (Data Terminal Ready)	4
9	→ RI (Ring Indicator)	9

---

## EXPANSION Ports

This type of port is found on the rear of IP Office control units and external expansion modules. It is used for connecting the external expansion modules to their parent IP Office control unit.

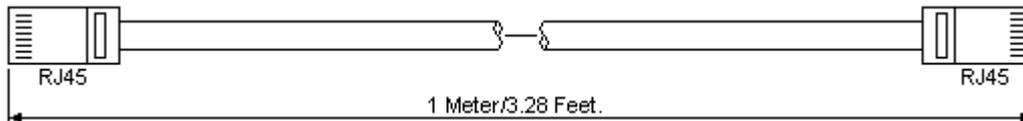
The connection between these ports should only be done using an Avaya Expansion Interconnect Cable. No other cable type should be used.

---

### Expansion Interconnect Cable

The Expansion Interconnect cable is used to link expansion ports between the IP Office control unit and external expansion module (except WAN3 modules).

- **WARNING:** This is the only cable that should be used for connecting an IP Office control unit to external expansion modules (except for WAN3 modules).



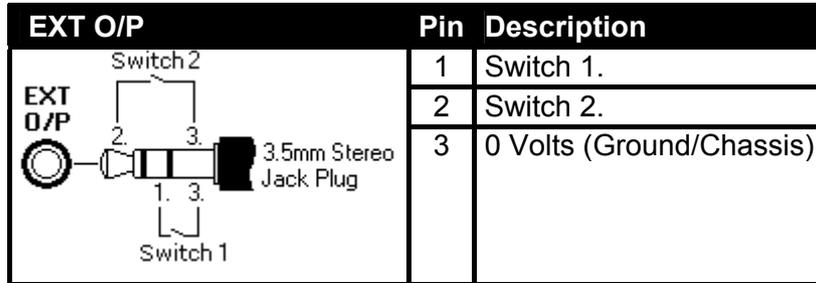
- **Supply:** One cable is normally supplied with each external expansion module.
- **SAP Code:** 700213457

## EXT O/P Port

These ports are found on the rear of all IP Office control units. They are used for connection to external switching relays. The port uses a standard 3.5mm stereo jack plug for connection.

The IP Office is able to open (high resistance), close (low resistance) or pulse (close for 5 seconds and then open) two switches within the port. Either switch can be operated separately. These switches are intended for activation of external relays in systems such as door opening systems.

- **CAUTION:** In installations where this port is connected to a device external to the building, connection must be via an Avaya 146G Surge Protector and a protective ground connection must be provided on the IP Office control unit.



- **Switching Capacity:** 0.7A.
- **Maximum Voltage:** 55V d.c.
- **On state resistance:** 0.7 ohms.
- **Short circuit current:** 1A.
- **Reverse circuit current capacity:** 1.4A.
- Ensure that pins 1 and 2 are always at a positive voltage with respect to pin 3.

3.5mm stereo audio jack plugs are frequently sold as pre-wired sealed modules. It may be necessary to use a multi-meter to determine the wiring connections from an available plug. Typically 3 (common to both relays) is the cable screen.

## LAN Port

These ports are found on IP Office control units and the WAN3 10/100 expansion module. They are used for connection to IP LAN's and IP devices. On the WAN3 10/100 module the port is used for direct connection to a control unit.

All IP Office LAN ports are 10/100Mbps auto-sensing. Operation varies as follows:

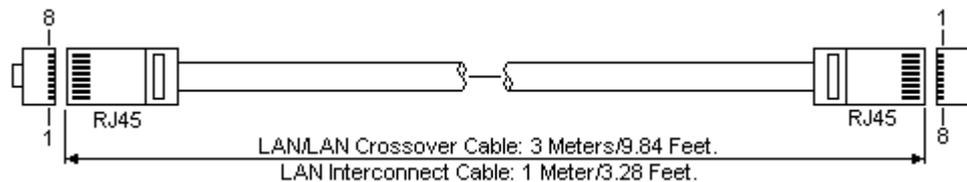
- **IP Office 500**  
This unit has 2 RJ45 Ethernet ports, marked as **LAN** and **WAN**. These form a full-duplex managed layer-3 switch.  
Within the IP Office configuration, the physical LAN port is LAN1, the physical WAN port is LAN2.
- **IP460 V2**  
This unit has 8 RJ45 Ethernet ports marked as **LAN 1** to **8**. These form a full-duplex unmanaged layer-2 LAN switch. Ports are auto-MDI/MDIX.  
Within the IP Office configuration the physical LAN ports are LAN1.
- **IP412**  
This unit has 2 RJ45 Ethernet ports marked as **LAN 1** to **2**. These form a half-duplex managed layer-3 switch. Both ports are fixed MDI crossover ports. Within the IP Office configuration, physical port 1 is LAN1, physical port 2 is LAN2.
- **Small Office Edition**  
This unit has 4 RJ45 Ethernet ports marked LAN 1 to 4. These form a full-duplex unmanaged layer-2 switch. An addition RJ45 Ethernet socket marked as WAN exists. With the LAN ports this acts as a managed layer-3 switch. Within the IP Office configuration, the physical LAN ports are LAN1, the physical WAN port is LAN2.

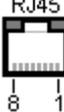
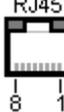
The LAN port LED's are used as follows:

- Green: On = connected, Flashing = Activity.
- Yellow: On = 100Mbps, Off = 10Mbps.

## LAN Cables

These are CAT5 UTP cables for connection of various IP devices within the IP Office system.



IP Office						
LAN	Pin	MDIX (Normal)	MDI (Crossover)	Wire	Standard/ Interconnect	Crossover
	1	← Rx-A.	→ Tx-A.	White/Orange	1	3
	2	← Rx-B.	→ Tx-B.	Orange/White	2	6
	3	→ Tx-A.	← Rx-A.	White/Green	3	1
	4	<i>Not used.</i>	<i>Not used.</i>	Blue/White	4	4
	5	<i>Not used.</i>	<i>Not used.</i>	White/Blue	5	5
	6	→ Tx-B.	← Rx-B.	Green/White	6	2
	7	<i>Not used.</i>	<i>Not used.</i>	White/Brown	7	7
	8	<i>Not used.</i>	<i>Not used.</i>	Brown/White	8	8
						

- **SAP Code:**

- **LAN Cable - GREY:** 700213481.  
Standard straight LAN cable.
- **LAN Interconnect Cable - Green:** 700213465.  
Supplied with WAN3 modules for the direct connection of the WAN3 module to an IP Office control unit LAN port. For an IP412 control unit, this cable should be replaced with a LAN crossover cable.
- **LAN Crossover Cable - Black:** 700213473.  
LAN crossover cable.

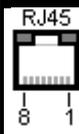
## Analog Power Failure (PF) Ports

These ports are analog extension ports that can be used in conjunction with analog loop-start trunks during power failure to the IP Office system. They are found on the rear of the IP400 Analog Trunk expansion module.

There are a number of options to connect analog extension ports to analog trunks during power failure. In all cases these only work with loop-start analog trunks. Any phones connected to these ports should be clearly labelled as power fail extensions in accordance with the appropriate national and local regulatory requirements.

- **IP400 Small Office Edition**  
On the Small Office Edition control unit, ANALOG port 2 is connected to PHONE (POT) port 1 during power failure.
- **IP400 ATM16 External Expansion Module**  
During power fail conditions, PF1 is internally connected to ANALOG port 1 on the module, PF2 is internally connected to ANALOG port 2 on the same module.
- **IP500 Office**  
When an IP500 Analog Phone 8 base card is fitted with an IP500 Analog Trunk daughter card, during power failure extension port 8 is connected to analog trunk port 12.

Any phones connected to these ports should be clearly labelled as power fail extensions in accordance with the appropriate national and local regulatory requirements.

PF	Pin	Description
	1	<i>Not used.</i>
	2	Pin 2 is internally connected to pin 5 via a ringer capacitor.
	3	<i>Not used.</i>
	4	Ring.
	5	Tip.
	6	Pin 6 is internally connected to pin 5 via a ringer capacitor.
	7	<i>Not used.</i>
	8	<i>Not used.</i>

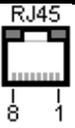
- **Minimum Wire Size:** AWG 26.
- **Maximum Cable Length:**
  - **AWG26:** 500m / 1640'.
  - **AWG24, AWG22:** 1000m / 3280'.

## PHONE Port

These ports are analog extension ports. On older IP Office units these ports were labeled as POT ports rather than PHONE ports.

PHONE ports on Phone V1/V2 expansion modules can be connected to out-of-building extensions. If this is the case, connection must be made via suitable protective devices (IP Office Barrier Box) at each end and via each building primary protection. In addition the Phone module must be connected to a protective ground.

PHONE ports on IP Office control units must not be connected to out-of-building extensions.

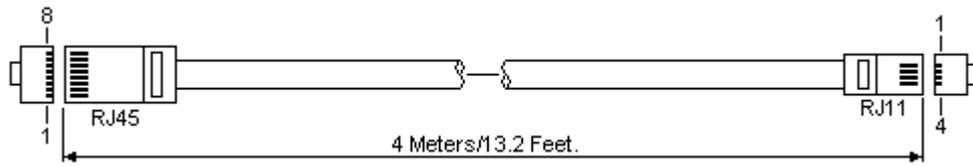
PHONE	Pin	Description
	1	<i>Not used.</i>
	2	<i>Not used.</i>
	3	<i>Not used.</i>
	4	Ring.
	5	Tip.
	6	<i>Not used.</i>
	7	<i>Not used.</i>
	8	<i>Not used.</i>

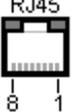
- **REN:** 2
- **Off-Hook Current:** 25mA.
- **Ring Voltage:** 40V rms.
- **Minimum Wire Size:** AWG 26.
- **Maximum Cable Length:**
  - **AWG26:** 0.5km / 1640 feet.
  - **AWG24, AWG22:** 1km / 3280 feet.

Except on some older equipment, these ports do not include a ringing capacitor. Therefore for connection to 4-wire analog phones where this is a requirement (typically the United Kingdom and New Zealand), connection should be via a Master socket containing ringing capacitors. On some older Small Office Edition, IP403 and IP400 Phone V1 modules, pins 2 and 6 are internally connected via ringing capacitors.

### Structured Cabling Line Cord

This is an RJ45 to RJ11 cable suitable for connection from a structured cabling system RJ45 port to a DS phone. It can also be used for two-wire analog phone extensions.



IP Office		Phone		
DS Port	Pin	Description	Pin	Port
	1	Not used.	—	
	2	Not used.	1	
	3	Not used.	2	
	4	Signal 1.	3	
	5	Signal 2.	4	
	6	Not used.	5	
	7	Not used.	6	
	8	Not used.	—	

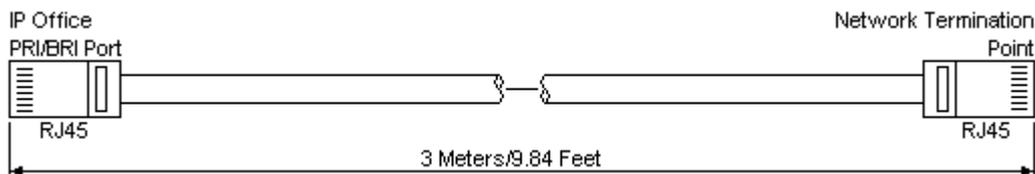
- **SAP Code:** 700047871.

## PRI Port

These ports are used for connection to PRI trunk services including E1, T1 and E1-R2.

### PRI/BRI Trunk Cable

This cable is used to connect from IP Office BRI/PRI trunk ports to the line providers network termination equipment. If that equipment does not use RJ45 sockets, the cable may need to be stripped and rewired or an alternate cable used. The appropriate signal pin-outs and wire colours are detailed below.



IP Office		Wire		Network Termination	
BRI	RJ45	BRI	PRI	PIN	RJ45
	1	–	←Rx-A	White/Orange	1
	2	–	←Rx-B	Orange/White	2
	3	→Tx-A	–	White/Green	3
	4	←Rx-A	→Tx-A	Blue/White	4
	5	←Rx-B	→Tx-B	White/Blue	5
	6	→Tx-B	–	Green/White	6
	7	–	–	White/Brown	7
	8	–	–	Brown/White	8

- **Supply:** BRI/PRI trunks cards are not supplied with these cables.
- **Cable Color:** Red.
- **SAP Code:** 700213440.
- **Standard Length:** 3m/9'10".

## WAN Port

This type of port 37-way D-type port is found on the rear of IP406 V2 and IP412 control units, and on the rear of the WAN3 10/100 external expansion modules. For the Small Office Edition control unit an optional WAN trunk interface card can be fitted.

Each WAN port supports a single synchronous data connection, which can be X.21, V.35 or V.24/V.28. Selection of the required interface is determined by the cable plugged into the WAN port when power is applied.

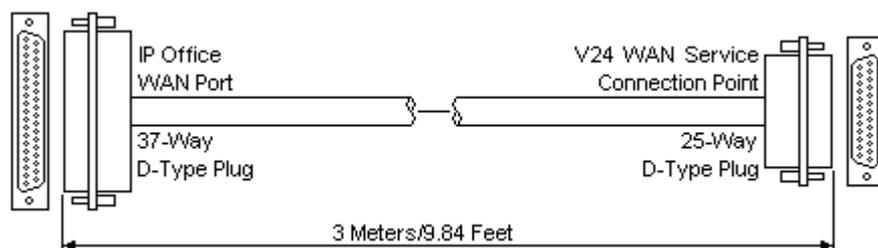
- WAN ports must be clocked externally, the IP Office does not provide a clock signal. The clock signal is usually provided by the service provider but under some circumstances (for example laser, microwave or baseband modems) extra provision must be made by the installer.

Pin	Protocol	Description	Pin	Protocol	Description
1	X.21	←Rx-B: Receive Data B.	20	X.21	←Rx-A: Receive Data A.
2	X.21	←Ind-A: Indicate A.	21	X.21	←Ind-B: Indicate B.
3	X.21	←Clk-A: Clock A.	22	X.21	←Clk-B: Clock B.
4	X.21	→Tx-A: Transmit Data A.	23	X.21	→Tx-B: Transmit Data B.
5	X.21	→Ctl-B: Control B.	24	X.21	→Ctl-A: Control A.
6	X.21	■ Ground	25	V.35	←WAN ID 0: Connect to Pin 6.
7	X.21	←WAN ID 1: Connect to Pin 6.	26	V.24	→Tx: Transmit Data.
8	V.24/V.35	→DTR: Data Terminal Ready.	27	V.24/V.35	→RTS: Request to Send.
9	V.24	←Rx: Receive Data.	28	V.24	←RxClk: Receive Clock.
10	V.24	←TxClk: Transmit Clock.	29	V.24/V.35	←RI: Ring Indicator.
11	V.24/V.35	←DCD: Data Carrier Detect.	30	V.24/V.35	←DSR: Data Set Ready.
12	V.24/V.35	←CTS: Clear to Send.	31	–	<i>Not used.</i>
13	–	<i>Not used.</i>	32	V.35	→Tx-A: Transmit Data A.
14	V.35	→Tx-B: Transmit Data B.	33	V.35	→SCTE-A: External Clock A.
15	V.35	→SCTE-B: External Clock B.	34	V.35	■ V35 Gnd
16	V.35	→Rx-B: Receive Data B.	35	V.35	→Rx-A: Receive Data A.
17	V.35	←TxClk-B: Transmit Clock B.	36	V.35	←TxClk-A: Transmit Clock A.
18	V.35	←RxClk-B: Receive Clock B.	37	V.35	←RxClk-A: Receive Clock A.
19	V.24	■ CHASSIS	–	–	–

1. For the USA, only FCC Part 68 registered data circuit terminal equipment should be connected to the WAN Ports.
2. In all cases Pin 19 should be connected to the cable screen.

## V.24 WAN Cable

This cable is used for connection an IP Office 37-way D-type WAN port to the V.24 WAN service providers equipment.



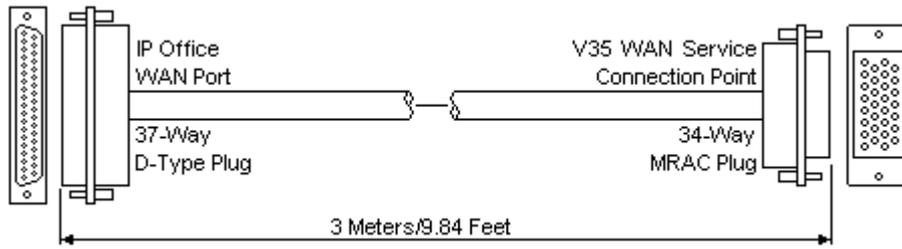
IP Office WAN Port	Signal	V.24 WAN Service
6	■ Ground	7
8	➔ DTR: Data Terminal Ready.	20
9	← Rx: Receive Data	3
10	← Tx: Transmit Clock	15
11	← DCD: Data Carrier Detect.	8
12	← CTS: Clear To Send.	5
26	➔ Tx: Transmit Data.	2
27	➔ RTS: Request To Send.	4
28	← Rx-Clk: Receive Clock.	17
29	← RI: Ring Indicator.	22
30	← DSR: Data Set Ready.	6

- At the IP Office end pin 25 is connected to pin 6.
- At the IP Office end pin 19 is connected to the Screened Cable Drain Wire.

- **Supply:** This cable is not supplied with the control unit or WAN3 module. It must be ordered separately.
- **SAP Code:** 700213416
- **Cable:** 12-core screened cable. Each core is 7/0.203mm (24 AWG) tinned copper stranded wire, nominal capacitance of 95pF/m, resistance of 92 ohms/km, screened with tinned copper braid, maximum working voltage of 440V rms and a maximum current per core of 1A rms. The maximum core to core capacitance must not exceed 800pF.
- **Maximum Length:** 5m/16'5". This is the maximum length that should be used if the above cable is replaced with an alternate cable.

## V.35 WAN Cable

This cable is used for connection an IP Office 37-way D-type WAN port to the V.35 WAN service providers equipment.



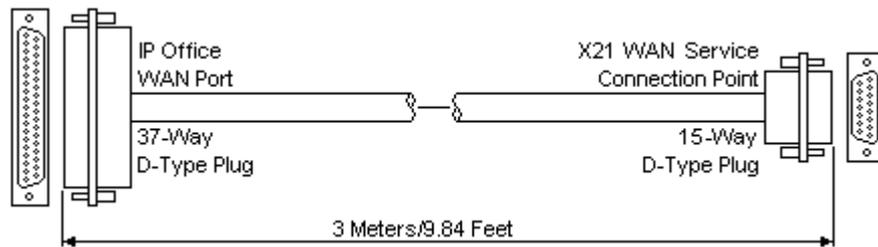
IP Office WAN Port	Signal	Wire	V.35 WAN Service
8	➔DTR: Data Terminal Ready.	----	H
11	←DCD: Data Carrier Detect.	----	F
12	←CTS: Clear To Send.	----	D
27	➔RTS: Request To Send.	----	C
29	←RI: Ring Indicator.	----	J
30	←DSR: Data Set Ready.	----	E
32	➔Tx-A: Transmit Data A.	Twisted Pair	P
14	➔Tx-B: Transmit Data B.		S
35	←Rx-A: Receive Data A.	Twisted Pair	R
16	←Rx-B: Receive Data B.		T
36	➔TxClk-A: Transmit Clock A.	Twisted Pair	Y
17	➔TxClk-B: Transmit Clock B.		AA
37	←RxClk-A: Receive Clock A.	Twisted Pair	V
18	←RxClk-B: Receive Clock B.		X
33	➔SCTE-A: External Clock A.	Twisted Pair	U
15	➔SCTE-B: External Clock B.		W
34	■ Ground	–	B

- At the IP Office end pins 7 and 25 are connected to pin 6.
- At the IP Office end pin 19 is connected to the Screened Cable Drain Wire.

- **Supply:** This cable is not supplied with the control unit or WAN3 module. It must be ordered separately.
- **SAP Code:** 700213424.
- **Cable:** 10 twisted pair screened cable - each core is 7/0.203mm (24 AWG) tinned copper stranded wire, nominal capacitance of 98pF/m, impedance of 80 10% at 1MHz, screened with aluminized tape and a tinned copper wire drain. The maximum core to core capacitance **must not** exceed 800pF.
- **Maximum Length:** 5m/16'5". This is the maximum length that should be used if the above cable is replaced with an alternate cable.

## X.21 WAN Cable

This cable is used for connection from an IP Office 37-way D-type WAN port to the X.21 service providers equipment.



IP Office WAN Port	Signal	Wires	X.21 WAN Service
1	← Rx-B: Receive B.	Twisted Pair	11
20	← Rx-A: Receive A.		4
4	→ Tx-A: Transmit A.	Twisted Pair	2
23	→ Tx-B: transmit B.		9
24	→ Ctl-A: Control A.	Twisted Pair	3
5	→ Ctl-B: Control B.		10
2	← Ind-A: Indicate A.	Twisted Pair	5
21	← Ind-B: Indicate B.		12
3	← Clk-A: Clock A.	Twisted Pair	6
22	← Clk-B: Clock B.		13
6	■ Ground	-----	8

- At the IP Office end pin 7 is connected to pin 6.
- At the IP Office end pin 19 is connected to the Screened Cable Drain Wire.

- **Supply:** This cable is not supplied with the control unit or WAN3 module. It must be ordered separately.
- **SAP Code:** 700213408.
- **Cable:** 6 twisted pair screened cable - each core is 7/0.203mm (24 AWG) tinned copper stranded wire, nominal capacitance of 98pF/m, impedance of 77ohms at 1MHz, screened with aluminized tape and a tinned copper wire drain.
- **Maximum Length:** 5m/16'5". This is the maximum length that should be used if the above cable is replaced with an alternate cable.

## SAP Codes

### SAP Codes

#### IP Office Control Units

Variant	Companding	Country	SAP Code
IP500 Office.	–	All	700417207
IP412 Office.	A-Law	Rest of World	700234479
	U-Law	North America	700350408
IP406 V2 Office DS.	A-Law	Rest of World	700343536
	U-Law	North America	700359946
Small Office Edition 4T+4A+8DS (3 VoIP)	A-Law	Rest of World	700280209
	U-Law	North America	700350424
Small Office Edition 4T+4A+8DS (16 VoIP)	A-Law	Rest of World	700280217
	U-Law	North America	700350432

- IP400 and Small Office Edition control units are supplied with an external power supply unit but not a locale specific power cord. All control units are available in either North America or Rest of World variants. The choice controls various default settings of the unit. For E911 support a North American variant control unit must be used. The companding can be changed once a unit is installed.
- IP500 control units have an integral power supply unit but are not supplied with a locale specific power cord. The appropriate Mu-Law or A-Law Smart Card feature key dongle must be order with the control unit.

#### IP500 Base Cards

IP500 Base Cards			Country	SAP Code
Digital Extension	IPO 500 Extn Card Dgtl Sta 8	IP Office 500 Extension Card Digital Station 8	All	700417330
Analog Extension	IPO 500 Extn Card Phone 2	IP Office 500 Extension Card Phone 2	All	700431778
	IPO 500 Extn Card Phone 8	IP Office 500 Extension Card Phone 8	All	700417231
VCM	IPO 500 MC VCM 32	IP Office 500 Media Card Voice Coding Module 32	All	700417389
	IPO 500 MC VCM 64	IP Office 500 Media Card Voice Coding Module 64	All	700417397
Carrier Card	IPO 500 Carrier Card	IP Office 500 Carrier Card	All	700417215

#### IP500 Trunk Daughter Cards

Variant			Country	SAP Code
Analog	IPO 500 Trnk Anlg 4 Uni	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Analog 4 Universal	All	700417405
PRI	IPO 500 Trnk PRI 1 Uni	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Primary Rate 1 Universal	All	700417439
	IPO 500 Trnk PRI 2 Uni	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Primary Rate 2 Universal	All	700417462
BRI	IPO 500 Trnk BRI 4 Uni	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Basic Rate 4 Universal	All	700417413
	IPO 500 Trnk BRI 8 Uni	IP Office 500 Trunk Card Basic Rate 8 Universal	All	700417421

**IP400 Trunks Cards**

Variants		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
Analog	ATM4 Uni (Loop-Start)	All	700359938	✗	✓	✓	✓
	IP400 Analog 4 (Loop-Start)	North and South America	700185192	✗	✓	✓	✗
	IP400 Analog 4 EU (Loop-Start)	Europe	700241672	✗	✓	✓	✗
	IP400 Analog 4 NZ (Loop-Start)	New Zealand	700241706	✗	✓	✓	✗
BRI	IP400 BRI 8 (UNI)	All except China	700262017	✓	✓	✓	✓
	IP400 BRI	All	700185168	✓	✓	✓	✗
T1/PRI	IP400 PRI 24 T1	North America	700185200	✓	✓	✓	✓
	IP400 PRI 48 T1	North America	700185218	✗	✓	✓	✓
E1 PRI	IP400 PRI 30 E1 (1.4)	All except China and CALA.	700272461	✓	✓	✓	✓
	IP400 PRI 60 E1	All except China and CALA.	700185184	✗	✓	✓	✓
E1R2	IP400 PRI 30 E1R2 RJ45	CALA, Korea, China	700241631	✗	✓	✓	✓
	IP400 PRI 60 E1R2 RJ45	CALA, Korea, China	700241649	✗	✓	✓	✓
	IP400 PRI 30 E1R2 COAX	CALA	700241656	✗	✓	✓	✗
	IP400 PRI 60 E1R2 COAX	CALA	700241664	✗	✓	✓	✗
WAN	IP400 WAN Expansion	All	700289713	✓	✗	✗	✗

**IP500 External Expansion Modules**

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

Variant	Country	SAP Code
Analog Trunk	IPO 500 Analog Trunk 16	US 700449473
BRI So8	IPO 500 BRI So8	All 700449515
Digital Station	IPO 500 Digital Station 16	All 700449499
	IPO 500 Digital Station 30	All 700426216
Analog Phone	IPO 500 Phone 16	All 700449507
	IPO 500 Phone 30	All 700426224

**IP400 External Expansion Modules**

Expansion modules include an external power supply unit (PSU) and an appropriate interconnect cable. They do not include a locale specific power cord for the external PSU or any phone extension cables.

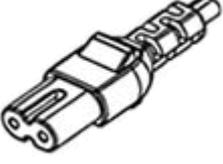
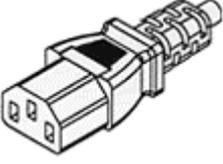
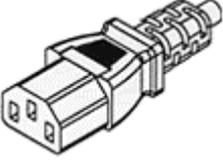
Variant		Country	SAP Code
Analog Trunk	IP400 Analog Trunk 16	North America/CALA	700211360
		Europe	700241680
		New Zealand	700241698
Digital Station	IP400 Digital Station 16 V2	All	700359839
	IP400 Digital Station 30 V2	All	700359847
	IP400 Digital Station 16	All	700184807
	IP400 Digital Station 30	All	700184880
Phone	IP400 Phone 8 V2	All	700359896
	IP400 Phone 16 V2	All	700359904
	IP400 Phone 30 V2	All	700359912
	IP400 Phone 8	All	700184773
	IP400 Phone 16	All	700184781
	IP400 Phone 30	All	700184799
S0 (BRI)	IP400 So8	All	700185077
WAN	IP400 WAN3	All	700185028
	IP400 WAN3 10/100	All	700262009

**Internal Cards**

Variants		Country	SAP Code	SOE	IP406 V2	IP412	IP500
Modem Cards	Modem 2 Card	All	700185226	✗	✓	✓	✓
	Internal Modem Card	All	700343452	✗	✓	✓	✓
Embedded Voicemail Memory Cards	Small Office Edition	All	700289721	✓	✗	✗	✗
	IP406 V2	All	700343460	✗	✓	✗	✓
Wireless Cards	Small Office Edition	All	700289739	✓	✗	✗	✗
IP400 Voice Compression Modules (25ms)	VCM 5	All	700185119	✗	✓	✓	✗
	VCM 10	All	700185127	✗	✓	✓	✗
	VCM 20	All	700185135	✗	✓	✓	✗
	VCM 30	All	700293939	✗	✓	✓	✓
IP400 Voice Compression Modules (64ms)	VCM 4	All	700359854	✗	✓	✓	✓
	VCM 8	All	700359862	✗	✓	✓	✓
	VCM 16	All	700359870	✗	✓	✓	✓
	VCM 24	All	700359888	✗	✓	✓	✓

## Power Supply Units

The following power supply units are used with IP Office control units and expansion modules. Normally the appropriate PSU is supplied with the IP Office control unit or expansion module. Note however that a locale specific power cord is not included with each control unit or expansion module.

Variant	Used with	Country	SAP Code
 <b>40W Unearthed PSU</b> Uses IEC60320 C7 power cords.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP403.</li> <li>• IP406 V1.</li> <li>• Analog.</li> <li>• Digital Station V1.</li> <li>• Phone V1.</li> </ul>	All	700210792
 <b>45W Earthed PSU</b> Uses IEC60320 C13 power cord.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Small Office Edition</li> </ul>	All	700284938
 <b>60W Earthed PSU</b> Uses IEC60320 C13 power cord.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP406 V2.</li> <li>• IP412.</li> <li>• Digital Station V2.</li> <li>• Phone V2.</li> <li>• So8.</li> <li>• WAN3 10/100.</li> </ul>	All	700357387

The following power supply units have various applications. They are used to provide power to 4600 Series and 5600 Series IP phones. They are also used to provide power to other phone types when those phones are supporting an XM24, EU24 or EU24BL add-on unit. Note: An appropriate locale specific power cord is required for the power supply unit. .

Variant	SAP Code
1151C1 Power Supply.	With CAT5 cable. 700356447
1151C2 Power Supply with battery backup.	With CAT5 cable. 700356454
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord.	USA 405362641
	Europe 407786623
	Australia and New Zealand 407786631
	India 407790591
	United Kingdom 407786599
	Argentina 408161453

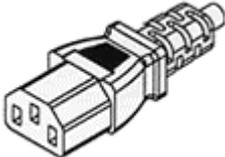
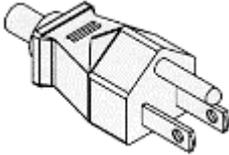
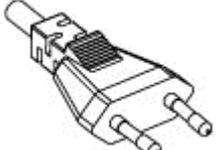
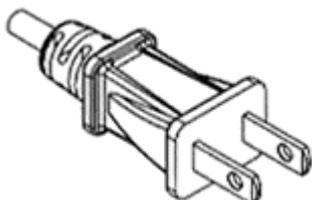
The following items are associated with providing IEEE 802.3af Power-over-Ethernet (PoE) to devices including Avaya IP phones. For full details refer to the IP Office IP Phone Installation Manual.

Variant	SAP Code
1U Mid-Span Power Distribution Unit	6 Ports 700409675
	6 Ports + SNMP 700409691
	12 Ports* 700250525
	12 Ports + SNMP* 700253107
	24 Ports* 700180433
	24 Ports + SNMP 700409717
Cisco Catalyst Power Adapter*.	700259369

\*These items are no longer available as new from Avaya.

**Power Cords**

IP Office control unit and expansion module power supply units are not supplied with a power cord. The appropriate power cord must be ordered or sourced locally.

Power Cord Type	Power Outlet Plug Type	Locales	SAP Codes
<b>Earthed Power Cords (IEC60320 C13)</b>  <b>Control Units</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP500.</li> <li>• IP406 V2.</li> <li>• IP412.*</li> <li>• Small Office Edition.</li> </ul> <b>IP400 External Expansion Modules</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Digital Station V2.</li> <li>• Phone V2.</li> <li>• So8.*</li> <li>• WAN3 10/100.*</li> </ul>	CEE7/7 (Schuko) 	Europe and South Africa.	700289762
	BS1363 	Czech Republic, Ireland, United Kingdom.	700289747
	NEMA5-15P / CS22.2 No.42 	North, Central and South America.	700289770
	CPCS-CCC 	China.	700261977
<b>Unearthed Power Cord (IEC60320 C7)</b>  <b>IP400 External Expansion Modules</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Analog.</li> <li>• Digital Station V1.</li> <li>• Phone V1.</li> </ul>	CEE7/16 (Europlug) 	Europe and South Africa.	700213382
	BS1363 	Czech Republic, Ireland, United Kingdom.	700213374
	NEMA1-15 	North, Central and South America.	700213390
		Korea.	700254519
		China.	700314172

The following additional power cords are available for use with the Avaya 1151C1 and 1151C2 power supply units.

<b>1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord</b>	<b>SAP Code</b>
USA	405362641
Europe	407786623
Australia and New Zealand	407786631
India	407790991
United Kingdom	407786599
Argentina	408161453

**Cables**

<b>Cable</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>SAP Code</b>	<b>Length</b>
25-Way DTE Cable	Connects to a IP403 or IP406 V1 control unit. 25-Way D-type plug to 9-way D-type socket.	700213432	2m/6'6".
9-Way DTE Cable	Connects to an SOE, IP406 V2 or IP412 control unit. 9-Way D-type plug to 9-way D-type socket.	–	2m/6'6".
Structured Cabling DS Line Cable	Connects from RJ45 sockets to RJ11 socketed DS and analog phones.	700047871	4m/13'2".
BRI/PRI Cable	Connects BRI/PRI trunk ports to the line providers network termination point. RJ45 to RJ45. Red.	700213440	3m/9'10".
Expansion Interconnect Cable	Connects the control unit to expansion modules (except WAN3 modules). RJ45 to RJ45. Blue.	700213457	1m/3'3".
LAN Cable	Connects from IP Office LAN ports to IP devices. RJ45 to RJ45. Grey.	700213481	3m/9'10".
LAN Interconnect Cable	Connects WAN3 module to the control unit. Replace with a LAN crossover cable for IP412 control units. Green.	700213465	1m/3'3".
LAN Crossover Cable	Used for connection of IP devices to LAN ports on the IP412 control unit. Black	700213473	3m/9'10".
V.24 WAN Cable	37-Way D-type plug to 25-way D-type plug.	700213416	3m/9'10".
V.35 WAN Cable	37-Way D-type plug to 34-way MRAC plug.	700213424	3m/9'10".
X.21 WAN Cable	37-Way D-type plug to 15-way D-type plug.	700213408	3m/9'10".

**Mounting**

<b>Rack Mounting Kits</b>	<b>SAP Code</b>	<b>Note</b>
IP400 Rack Mounting Kit	700210800	One per IP400 control unit or IP400 external expansion module.
IP500 Rack Mounting Kit	700429202	One per IP500 control unit or IP500 external expansion module.
IP500 Wall Mounting Kit	700430150	One per IP500 control unit.
IP500 Blanking Plate Kit	700429194	Includes 3 front panels for the IP500 control unit.
Barrier Box Rack Mounting Kit	700293905	Up to 8 IP Office Barrier Boxes.

**Barrier Boxes**

<b>IP Office Barrier Boxes</b>	<b>SAP Code</b>	
IP400 Phone Barrier Box	700293897	Use with Phone V1 module. Includes an RJ45 to RJ11 cable and functional earth lead.
IP400 Phone Barrier Box V2 (101V)	700385495	Use with Phone V2 module. Includes an RJ45 to RJ11 cable and functional earth lead.

**Feature Keys Dongles**

Feature Key Dongle	SAP Code
Parallel Port Feature Key	700185234
USB Port Feature Key	700261506
Serial Port Feature Key	700293095
Smart Card Feature Key (MU-Law)	700417470
Smart Card Feature Key (A-Law)	700417488

**CCC Licenses**

License	RFA Name	SAP	
CCC Server	IP400 CCC SV		171994
CCC Agents	IP400 CCC AGT	5	171995
		10	174469
		20	174470
		50	174471
CCC Supervisors	IP400 CCC SUP	1	171996
		5	184730
		10	184731
		20	184732
CCC PC Wallboards	IP400 CCC PCW	5	172786
		10	174472
		20	174473
		50	174474
CCC Spectrum Wallboards	IP400 CCC Wallboard	4	176196
Report Viewer	IP400 CCC Report	5	184726
		10	184727
		20	184728
CCC Agent Rostering	IP400 CCC Rostering		171997
CCC Designer (users)	IP400 CCC Designer		171999

**CTI Licenses**

License	RFA Name	SAP
CTI Link Pro	IP400 CTI RFA	171988
Wave User	IP400 TAPI WAV RFA 4	177466

**General Licenses**

<b>License</b>	<b>RFA Name</b>	<b>SAP</b>	
DECT Integration (ports)	IP400 CTI DECT	8	171989
		16	174457
		64	174458
Conferencing Center	IP400 Conferencing Center		182302
SoftConsole (users)	IP400 SoftConsole		171987
Compact Business Center	IP400 CBC		171993
Small Office Edition WiFi	IP400 Access Point		182197
MS-CRM	IP400 Microsoft CRM Intgr		180588
IPSec Tunneling	IP400 IPSec VPN		182301
Mobile Twinning	IPO Lic Mobile Twinning	1	195569
		5	195570
		10	195571
		20	195572
		50	195573
SIP Trunk Channels	IPO LIC SIP TRNK RFA	1	202967
		5	202968
		10	202969
		20	202970
Advanced Small Community Networking	IPO LIC ADVANCED NTWKG		202966
IP End-points	IP400 IP Endpoint	1	174956
		5	174957
		10	174958
		20	174959
		50	174960
		100	174961
VPN IP Extensions	VPN Phone	1	213980
		5	213981
		10	213982
		25	213983
		50	213984
		100	213985
		Unlimited	213986
Trial (10)	213987		

**IP500 Licenses**

License	RFA Name	SAP	
IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional	IP500 IPO EXP UPG TO PRO		202959
IP500 Voice Networking	IP500 VOICE NTWKG BASE 4 LIC	4	202960
	IP500 VOICE NTWKG ADD LIC	–	205450
IP500 Universal PRI (Additional channels)	IP500 T1 Channels Add	2	21580
		8	21581
		32	21582
	IP500 E1 Channels Add	2	21583
		8	21584
		32	21585
	IP500 E1R2 Channels Add	2	21586
		8	21587
		22	21588
IP500 VCM Channels	IP500 VCM LIC 4 CH	+4	202961
	IP500 VCM LIC 8 CH	+8	202962
	IP500 VCM LIC 16 CH	+16	202963
	IP500 VCM LIC 28 CH	+28	202964
	IP500 VCM LIC 60 CH	+60	202965

**Phone Manager Licenses**

License	RFA Name	SAP	
Phone Manager Pro (per seat)	IP400 Phone Manager Pro	1	177468
		5	177469
		10	177470
		20	177471
		50	177472
		100	177473
	" - unlimited		177474
Phone Manager Pro IP Audio Enabled (per user)	IP400 IPPRO	1	171992
		5	174463
		10	174464
		20	174465
		50	174466
		100	174467

**Voicemail Licenses**

<b>License</b>	<b>RFA Name</b>	<b>SAP</b>	
AUDIX Voicemail	IP400 AUDIX	177467	
Voicemail Pro (4 ports)	IP400 Voicemail Pro	171991	
Additional Voicemail Pro (ports)	IP400 Voicemail Pro	2	174459
		4	174460
		8	174461
		16	174462
Networked Messaging	IP400 Networked Messaging	182297	
Integrated Messaging	IP400 Integrated Messaging Pro	171990	
VMPro TTS (ScanSoft)	IP400 Avaya TTS	182299	
VMPro TTS (Generic)	IP400 3rd Party TTS	182303	
VMPro VB Script	IP400 VB Scripting	182300	
VMPro Database Interface	IP400 3rd Party IVR	182298	
VMPro Recordings Administrators	IP400 ContactStore for IPO	187166	

**IP DECT Licenses**

See IP DECT section. IP DECT licenses are entered into the IP DECT system configuration, not the IP Office configuration.

**45-Day Trial Licenses**

These licenses start expiring from the day the license is generated, not the date of installation. Each license will only be generated once for a given Feature Key dongle serial number.

License	RFA Name	SAP
Voicemail Pro Networked Messaging	IPO TRIAL NTWKD MSGING LIC:DS	189776
3rd Party Database/IVR	IPO TRIAL 3RD PARTY IVR RFA LIC:DS	189777
Avaya Text-to-Speech for IP Office (1 port)	IPO TRIAL AVAYA TTS RFA 1 LIC:CU	189778
VB Scripting	IPO TRIAL VB SCRIPTING RFA LIC:DS	189779
Conferencing Center	IPO TRIAL CONF CENTER RFA LIC:DS	189780
Third Party Text to Speech (1 port)	IPO TRIAL 3RD PRTY TTS RFA LIC:CU	189781
Voicemail Pro (4 ports)	IPO TRIAL VM PRO RFA LIC:DS	189782
SoftConsole (1 user)	IPO TRIAL SOFTCONSOLE/BLF RFA LIC:CU	189783
Phone Manager PC Softphone (10 users)	IPO TRIAL IPPRO RFA 10 LIC:CU	189784
Phone Manager Pro (10 users)	IPO TRIAL PMGR PRO RFA 10 LIC:CU	189785
Centralized Voicemail with Avaya Messaging	IPO TRIAL ACM CENTRAL VM LIC:DS	189786
Integrated Messaging Pro	IPO TRIAL INTG MSGING PRO RFA LIC:DS	189787
Mobile Twinning (5 users)	IPO LIC MOBILE TWINNING TRIAL RFA 5	195574
VPN IPsec	IPO TRIAL IPSEC VPN RFA LIC:DS	189788
IP500 Upgrade Standard to Professional	IPO LIC IP500 STD UPG to PRO TRIAL	205822
VPN IP Phone	IPO LIC VPN PHONE 10 TRIAL	213987

**IP Office Application CDs**

<b>Application</b>	<b>Variant</b>	<b>SAP Code</b>
Voicemail Pro CD	4.1	700448954
	4.0	700428592
	3.2	700407588
	3.1	700380405
	3.0	700350457
	2.1	700330970
	2.0	700304546
Voicemail Pro ScanSoft Text-to-Speech (TTS)	–	700293921
Conferencing Center	3.2	700407596
	3.1	192226
	3.0	700372287
	2.1	700293913
IP Office Software Developer's Kit (SDK)	–	700188873
Compact Contact Center (CCC)	5.2	700451545
	5.0	700330962
	4.0	700188881
IP Office User and Administration CD Set	4.1	700449457
	4.0	700428576
	3.2	700407604
	3.1	700380389
	3.0	700345879
	2.1	700329725
	2.0	700304074
IP Office Applications DVD	4.1	700449465
	4.0	700428584
	3.2	700407612
	3.1	700380397

**2400 Series Phones**

Variant		SAP Code
2402	Multi-grey	700381973
2410	Multi-grey	700381999
2420D	Multi-grey	700381585
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
201B Recorder Interface for 2420/5420D		700381635

**3600 Series Phones**

Variant		SAP Code
3616 Wireless Phone.		700413040
3620 Wireless Phone.		700413065
Additional battery pack for 3616		700277387
Desktop charger for 3616.		700412901
Belt Clip for 3616.		700413057
3626 Wireless Phone.		700413024
Additional battery pack for 3626		700277395
Desktop charger for 3626		700412919
Charger Power Supply	Europe	700412810
	United Kingdom	700412828
	Switzerland	700412836
3626 8-Gang changer.		700412927
Belt Clip for 3626.		700413131
3626 Vinyl case with keypad cover.		700412984
3626 Carry case.	Yellow	700289309
3626 Carry case with keypad cover	Black	700289317
	Yellow	700289325
3616/3626 Configuration Cradle		700375934
Avaya Voice Priority Processor 10 (AVPP 10)		700413164
Avaya Voice Priority Processor 20 (AVPP 20)		700413172
AVPP Power Supply	Europe	700412844
	United Kingdom	700412851
	Switzerland	700412869
Netlink OAI Gateway		700245756
Rack Mount Kit		700245459

**3700 Series Phones**

See IP DECT section.

**3810 Phones**

<b>Item</b>	<b>SAP Code</b>
3810 Set - Includes phone, base station, charger, belt clip and power supply units for charger and base station.	700305105

**4400 Series Phones**

<b>Variant</b>	<b>SAP Code</b>	
4406D+	White	108199019
	Black	108199027
4412D+	White	108199043
	Black	108199050
4424D+	White	108199076
	Black	108199084
DSS4450	White	108199407
	Black	108199696
Power Supply for 4450	–	108596412
Small Stand for 4406 or 4450	Black	108541194
	White	108541202
Large Stand for 4412D+ or 4424D+.	Black	108541269
	White	108541277

**4600 Series Phones (New Style)**

<b>Variant</b>	<b>SAP Code</b>	
4601+	Multi-grey	700381890
4602IP	Multi-grey	700221260
4602SW+	Multi-grey	700381916
4610SW	Multi-grey	700381957
4620IP	Multi-grey	700212186
4620SW	Multi-grey	700259674
4621SW	Multi-grey	700345192
4625SW	Multi-grey	700381551
EU24 1XU-A Expansion Module	Multi-grey	700381817
EU24BL 2XU-A Backlighted Expansion Module	Multi-grey	700381825
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

**5400 Series Phones**

Variant		SAP Code
5402	Multi-grey	700381981
5410	Multi-grey	700382005
5420	Multi-grey	700381627
EU24	Multi-grey	700381817
EU24BL	Multi-grey	700381825
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727
201B Recorder Interface for 2420/5420D		700381635

**5600 Series Phones**

Variant		SAP Code
5601+	Multi-grey	700381908
5602SW+	Multi-grey	700381932
5610SW	Multi-grey	700381965
5621	Multi-grey	700385982
EU24	Multi-grey	700381817
EU24BL	Multi-grey	700381825
Replacement Handset	Dark Grey	700203797
Amplified Handset	Dark Grey	700229735
Noisy Location Handset	Dark Grey	700229743
Push to Talk Handset	Dark Grey	700229727

**6400 Series Phones**

Variant		SAP Code
6408D+	Grey	70020100
	White	70020092
6416D+M	Grey	108807611
	White	108807603
6424D+M	Grey	108807595
	White	108807587
6408 Stand	Grey	108933169
	White	108933177
6416/6424 Stand	Grey	848219127
	White	848219119
XM24	Grey	700406523
	White	700406515
XM24 Stand	Grey	108272378
	White	108272386

**T3 Series Phones (Upn)**

<b>Variant</b>	<b>SAP Code</b>	
T3 Compact	Black	700380264
	White	700380298
T3 Classic	Black	700380272
	White	700380306
T3 Comfort	Black	700380280
	White	700380314
T3 DSS Unit	Black	700380322
	White	700380330
T3 DSS Expansion Unit	Black	700380348
	White	700380355
T3 Headset Link Unit	-	700380363

**T3 Series Phones (IP)**

<b>Variant</b>	<b>SAP Code</b>	
T3 Compact	Black	700414717
	White	700414709
T3 Classic	Black	700414733
	White	700414725
T3 Comfort	Black	700414758
	White	700414741
Power Supply Unit for T3 IP Phones		700414766
T3 AEI/Headset Link for IP Phones		700414774
Power Supply Unit for DSS on T3 IP Phone		700414790

**Spares**

The following spares can be ordered from Avaya.

Item	Color	SAP Code
Handset HIP QD CORD- 4606/16/24/30 SETS		700414121
Cat 5 Cable specific to 4620		700261613
Handset Cords 25ft	Dark Grey	700217417
IP PHONE MOD CORD 1ft CAT5	–	408406932
IP PHONE MOD CORD 7ft CAT5	–	408406957
IP PHONE MOD CORD 14ft CAT5	–	408406940

This is not a definitive listing. The availability and support for particular items must be confirmed with the local Avaya distributor or reseller. In addition various IP DECT bundles may be available in different locales. .

**IP DECT Handsets and Handset Accessories**

Handsets are supplied with 3 AAA rechargeable batteries and a charger. Region specific power adaptor for the charger must be ordered separately.

Item	Region	SAP Code
<b>IP DECT 3701 Handset</b>	EMEA	700346802
<b>IP DECT 3711 Handset</b>	EMEA	700346810
	North America	700430267
<b>Belt Clip</b>		700346885
<b>Phone Charger for 3701/3711</b> Requires power adaptor below.	Global	700346828
<b>Power Adaptor for Charger</b>	European	700346836
	United Kingdom	700346844
	Australia	700378318
	North America	700430309
<b>Rack mount 8-phone charger</b> Requires power adaptor below.	Global	700346851
<b>Power Adaptor for Rack Mount Charger</b> Require region specific IEC60320 C13/C14 power cord ordered separately.	Global	700346869
<b>Power Cord IEC60320 C13</b>	Europe	700289762
	United Kingdom	700289747
	North America	700289770
<b>IP DECT Phone Firmware Upgrade RS232 Serial Cable</b>	EMEA	700379688
<b>IP DECT Phone Firmware Upgrade USB Cable</b>	North America	700436603
<b>Leather Case for 3711</b>	Global	700436629
<b>IP DECT Headset for 3701/3711</b>	Global	700346950

**IP DECT Base Stations**

Item	Region	SAP Code
<b>RFP32 Indoor Base Station</b> Requires power adaptor or PoE.	North America	700430275
	EMEA	700420789
<b>Power Adaptor for RFP32</b>	North America	700430291
	Europe	700346901
	United Kingdom	700346919
	Australia	700378326
<b>RFP34 Outdoor Base Station</b> PoE only.	North America	700430283
	EMEA	700420797
<b>Outdoor Base Station Wall Mounting Kit</b>	Global	700378334
<b>Outdoor Base Station Mast Mounting Kit (65mm)</b>	Global	700347156
<b>Outdoor Base Station Mast Mounting Kit (&gt;65mm)</b>	Global	700347172
<b>External Dipole Aerial (pair)</b>	EMEA	700346935
<b>External Beam Aerial (pair)</b>	EMEA	700346943
<b>Mounting Kit for External Aerials</b>	EMEA	700347149
<b>External Aerial Connection Cable (0.5m)</b>	EMEA	700347115

**IP DECT Site Survey Kits**

Item	Region	SAP Code
<b>IP DECT Survey Kit with Tripod</b> Includes custom RFP, 2 handsets, charger, charger power adaptor and tripod.	North America	700436512
<b>IP DECT Survey Kit without Tripod</b> Includes custom RFP, 2 handsets, charger, charger power adaptor.	Europe	700378284
	United Kingdom	700378292
<b>Tripod for IP DECT Survey Kit</b>	Global	700378300

**IP DECT Licenses**

The following are order codes for IP DECT RFP's operating in conjunction with IP Office.

Item	Region	SAP Code
<b>IP DECT License for 1 RFP</b>	All	700379027
<b>IP DECT License for 2 RFP's</b>	All	700379035
<b>IP DECT License for 3 to 5 RFP's</b>	All	700379043
<b>IP DECT License for 6+ RFP's</b>	All	700379050
<b>IP DECT License for upgrade from 1 to 2 RFP's</b>	All	700379068
<b>IP DECT License for upgrade from 2 to 3-5 RFP's</b>	All	700379076
<b>IP DECT License for Upgrade to 6+ RFP's</b>	All	700379084
<b>IP DECT License Conversion from IP Office to CM</b>	All	700379167

## Equipment Availability

SAP codes and details of specific items within this documentation are for reference only. Items available in any specific locale should be confirmed against the local Avaya IP Office price list for that locale. The local price list may also include additional items relative to the installation requirements of that locale.

---

## RoHS

RoHS is an European Union directive for the Removal of Certain Hazardous Substances from Electrical and Electronic Equipment. Similar legislation has been or is being introduced in a number of other countries. Avaya has decided to make its global product range compliant with the requirements of RoHS. The actions taken vary

- In some cases equipment has been discontinued and is no longer available from Avaya.
- In some cases new manufactured stock has been made RoHS compliant and keeps its existing SAP code.
- In other cases the equipment has been replaced by a new RoHS compliant alternative with new SAP codes.

The SAP codes within this document are for RoHS compliant equipment unless otherwise stated.



---

# Safety Statements

---

## Safety and Homologation Statements

- **CE**  
The CE mark affixed to this equipment means that the module complies with the 1999/5/EC (R&TTE), 89/336/EEC (EMC) and 72/23EEC (LVD) Directives.
- **Declaration of Conformity**  
The Declaration of Conformity (DoC) for the IP400 Office products is available within on the IP Office Documentation CD (Engineer's Toolkit CD).
-   
This warning symbol is found on the base of IP406 V2, IP412 and IP500 modules.
- Refer to Trunk Interface Modules for information concerning which Trunk Interface module variants are fitted in which country.

**WARNING**

**The Avaya IP400 Office and IP500 Office modules are intended to be installed by 'Service Personnel' and it is the responsibility of the Service Personnel to ensure that all subsidiary interconnected equipment is wired correctly and also meet the safety requirements of IEC60950 or UL60950 where applicable.**

---

## Lithium Batteries

A lithium battery is fitted to the real time clock on IP Office control unit mother boards.

**WARNING**

**The Lithium battery must only be replaced by Avaya personnel or authorized representatives. There is a danger of explosion if the battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions.**

# Lightning Protection/Hazard Symbols

## Lightning protectors

The buildings lightning protectors **must be verified** as follow:

1. Check the lightning protectors, at the trunk cable entry point to the building housing the Avaya IP Office, paying special attention to the lightning protection grounding. Report any problems, in writing, to the telephone company.
2. Equipment that is designed to be connected using internal wiring is typically **not** lightning protected. Hence, Avaya IP Office extension cabling **must not leave the building**. For installations where telephones and/or other standard (tip/ring) devices are installed in another building then lightning protection is required (see Out of Building Telephone Installations).

## Hazard Symbol

-  The shock hazard symbol is intended to alert personnel to electrical hazard or equipment damage. The following precautions must also be observed when installing telephone equipment:
  1. Never install telephone wiring during a lightning storm.
  2. Never install telephone jacks in wet locations unless the jack is specifically designed for wet locations.
  3. Never touch uninsulated telephone wires or terminals unless the telephone line has been disconnected at the network interface.
  4. Always use caution when working with telephone lines.

## Trunk Interface Modules

To ensure the validation of the approvals, only the following types of trunk interface cards must be fitted in the following IP Office control units.

USA/Canada							
Product	Quad BRI	PRI E1		PRI T1		ATM4	WAN
		Single	Dual	Single	Dual		
IP500 Office	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓	✓	✗
IP406 V2 Office	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓	✓	✗
IP412 Office	✗	✗	✗	✓	✓	✓	✗
Small Office Edition	✗	✗	✗	✓	✗	✗	✓

Rest of World							
Product	Quad BRI	PRI E1/E1R2		PRI T1		ATM4	WAN
		Single	Dual	Single	Dual		
IP500 Office	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗	✓	✗
IP406 V2 Office	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗	✓	✗
IP412 Office	✓	✓	✓	✗	✗	✓	✗
Small Office Edition	✓	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗	✓

### Notes

- Single WAN trunk card is only supported in the Small Office Edition control unit.
- Small Office Edition control units include 4 integral analog trunk ports.
- E1R2 trunks are only supported in CALA and Korea.

## Further Information and Product Updates

Further information, including Product and Reference Manual updates, can be obtained from Avaya's Dealers and Distributors, or from Avaya's web site: <http://www.avaya.com>.

This guide is also available from the Avaya's support web site: <http://support.avaya.com>.

---

## Support Telephone Numbers

For initial help and support, contact your distributor/supplier. The following contact points are for Avaya authorized partners.

- **In the USA only**

Avaya provides a toll-tree Customer Helpline 24 hours a day:

- **Name:** Avaya Technical Support Organization (TSO)
- **Customer Helpline:** 1 800 628-2888
- **Address:** 8744 Lucent Blvd., Highlands Ranch, Colorado, 80129 USA
- **URL:** <http://support.avaya.com>

If you need assistance when installing, programming, or using your system, call the Helpline or your Avaya representative. Consultation charges may apply.

- **Outside the USA**

If you need assistance when installing, programming, or using your system, contact your Avaya representative.

- **URL:** <http://support.avaya.com>

## Compliance with FCC Rules

### Transmit and Receive Gain Settings for PRI/T1 and Analog Ports

The Gain settings are password controlled for use by qualified installation personnel only and must not be made available to the end user. The default gain settings of 0dB ensures compliance with FCC part 68 section 68.308(b)(5) and TIA/EIA-IS-968 Section 4.5.2.5. "Through transmission amplification from ports for the connection of separately registered equipment or from other network connection ports". Gain setting adjustment by unqualified personnel may result in violation of the FCC rules. Qualified personnel may adjust gain settings above these levels only where:

1. Measurement is made to ensure that the power levels sent to line at each network interface connected does not exceed the maximum levels specified in FCC part 68 section 68.308(b) and TIA/EIA-IS-968 Section 4.5 for that specific interface type.
2. Where gain adjustment away from the default values are made, precautions should be taken to ensure that the connection of terminal equipment is controlled by qualified installation personnel.

## Port Safety Classification

The Avaya IP Office systems have the following ports which are classified as follows:

Port Name	Port Description	Port Classification
PRI port	PRI ISDN connection (NET)	TNV (Operating within the limits of SELV)
BRI ports	BRI ISDN connection (NET)	TNV (Operating within the limits of SELV)
Analog ports	Two wire analog trunk	TNV3
Power fail ports	Two wire analog trunk	TNV3
DTE port	Async Data connection.	SELV
Analog Telephone Ports	Telephone Extension ports	TNV2
Digital Telephone Ports	Telephone Extension ports	SELV
WAN port	WAN connection (NET).	SELV
LAN ports	10/100 BaseT attachment to LAN.	SELV
Expansion ports	Expansion Module connector.	SELV
Audio port	Connector for Music on Hold.	SELV
External Control port	Connector for Controlling Ancillary circuits.	SELV
DC Input port	Connector for DC input power.	SELV

Interconnection circuits shall be selected to provide continued conformance with the requirements of EN 609050:1992/A3:1995 clause 2.3 for SELV circuits and with the requirements of clause 6 for TNV circuits, after connections between equipment.

---

## EMC Cautions

---

### 89/336/ EEC (EMC Directive) CISPR 22:1993 including A1 + A2, AS/NZ 3548:1995 (ROW)

889/336/ EEC (EMC Directive) CISPR 22:1993 including A1 + A2, AS/NZ 3548:1995 (ROW)

- **WARNING**

This is a class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

---

## Federal Communications Commission (FCC)

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his or her own expense.

---

## Canadian Department of Communications (DOC)

"NOTICE: This equipment meets the applicable Industry Canada Terminal Equipment Technical Specifications. This is confirmed by the registration number. The abbreviation, IC, before the registration number signifies that registration was performed based on a Declaration of Conformity indicating that Industry Canada technical specifications were met. It does not imply that Industry Canada approved the equipment."

---

## EMC Caution for China

### 警示

注意：此为A级产品，在生活环境中，该产品可能会造成无线电干扰。在这种情况下，可能需要用户对其干扰采取切实可行的措施。仅适用于商业或工业环境。

## Regulatory Instructions for Use

---

### IP Office Operation in Australia

#### Connection

Connection of IP400 Office products must be via a Line Isolation Module with a telecommunications compliance label.

#### BRI Interface

During the configuration, ensure "000" emergency number is not barred, by performing the following:

- **Short Code:** 000
- **Telephone No:** 000;
- **Function:** DialEmergency

Connections to TS013, the following Bearer Capabilities shall not be used:

- 7kHz Audio, Video, Restricted Digital Information.

If unknown type of number is used in calling party number, the network will use the default CLI.

The system must be configured for Point to Multi point connection to comply with Austel requirements for connecting to TS013 circuits.

As the IP Office does not support emergency dialing after loss of power, the following warning notice should be recognized:

- **WARNING**  
This equipment will be inoperable when mains power fails.

#### PRI Interface

During the configuration, ensure "000" emergency number is not barred, by performing the following:

- **Short Code:** 000
- **Telephone No:** 000;
- **Function:** DialEmergency
  
- **WARNING**  
This equipment will be inoperable during mains power failure.

---

### Industry Canada Notification (DoC)

This equipment meets the applicable Industry Canada Terminal Equipment Technical Specifications. This is confirmed by the registration number. The abbreviation, IC, before the registration number signifies that registration was performed based on a Declaration of Conformity indicating that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

It does not imply that Industry Canada approved the equipment.

"NOTICE: The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) for this terminal equipment is 1. The REN assigned to each terminal equipment provides an indication of the maximum number of terminals allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The termination on an interface may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the sum of the Ringer Equivalence Numbers of all the devices does not exceed five."

**所有在中华人民共和国境内进口或销售的电子信息产品必须附上本文件**  
**Include this document with all Electronic Information Products imported or sold in the People's Republic of China**

部件名称 (Part Name)	有毒有害物质或元素 (Hazardous Substance)					
	铅 (Pb)	汞 (Hg)	镉 (Cd)	六价铬 (Cr <sup>6+</sup> )	多溴联苯 (PBB)	多溴二苯醚 (PBDE)
金属部件 (Metal Parts)	×	○	○	○	○	○
电路模块 (Circuit Modules)	×	○	○	○	○	○
电缆及电缆组件 (Cables & Cable Assemblies)	×	○	○	○	○	○
塑料和聚合物部件 (Plastic and Polymeric parts)	○	○	○	○	○	○
电路开关/断路器 (Circuit Switch/Breakers)	○	○	○	○	○	○
电源组件 (Power Assemblies)	×	○	○	○	○	○
显示器 (LCD, Monitor)	○	○	○	○	○	○
玻璃 (Glass)	○	○	○	○	○	○

○ : 表示该有毒有害物质在该部件所有均质材料中的含量均在 SJ/T 11363 2006 标准规定的限量要求以下。  
Indicates that the concentration of the hazardous substance in all homogeneous materials in the parts is below the relevant threshold of the SJ/T 11363 2006 standard.

× : 表示该有毒有害物质至少在该部件的某一均质材料中的含量超出 SJ/T 11363 2006 标准规定的限量要求。  
Indicates that the concentration of the hazardous substance of at least one of all homogeneous materials in the parts is above the relevant threshold of the SJ/T 11363 2006 standard.

本表显示，所附的亚美亚电子信息产品中，从生产日期起，可能包含这些物质。注意：所附产品可能包含或不包含以上所列的某些组件。  
This table shows where these substances may be found in Avaya's electronic information products, as of the date of manufacture of the enclosed product. Note that some of the component types listed above may or may not be a part of the enclosed product.

除非有另外特别的标注,此标志将作为所附产品及零部件的环保使用期标志. 某些产品会有一个不同的环保使用期(例如,电话机)并贴在其产品上.此环保使用期限只适用于产品在产品手册中所规定的条件下使用



The Environmentally Friendly Use Period (EFUP) for all enclosed products and their parts are per the symbol shown here, unless otherwise marked. Certain products have a different EFUP (for example, telephones) and so are marked to reflect such. The Environmentally Friendly Use Period is valid only when the product is operated under the conditions defined in the product manual.

## **IP Office Operation in EU**

1. 999 and 112 calls must not be barred. Doing so will invalidate the approval.
2. All connections at the MDF shall be identifiable by suitable labeling.
3. The CE mark displayed on IP Office equipment indicates the systems compliance with the EMC, LVD, and R&TTE Directives and common technical regulations for Primary Rate and Basic Rate ISDN.
4. All ports for the connection of other non-telecommunications apparatus have a Safety Extra Low Voltage (SELV) safety status.

---

## **IP Office Operation in New Zealand**

The grant of a Telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Telecom has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Telecom, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of Telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Telecom's network services.

---

## FCC Notification

This equipment is registered with the ACTA (Administrative Council for Terminal Attachments) in accordance with FCC Part 68 of its rules. In compliance with those rules, you are advised of the following:

- **Means of Connection**  
Connection of this equipment to the telephone network shall be through a standard network interface jack. Connection to 1.544-MBps digital facilities must be through a USOC RJ48C. Connection to the Analog Trunk facilities must be through a USOC RJ45S.
- **Notification to the Telephone Companies**  
Before connecting this equipment, you or your equipment supplier must notify your local telephone company's business office of the telephone number or numbers you will be using with this equipment.
- **The facility interface codes (FIC)** for 1.544-MBps digital connection (i.e. IP400 Office PRI-T1) are 04DU9.BN, 04DU9.DN, 04DU9.IKN, 04DU9.ISN.
- **The facility interface code (FIC)** for analog trunk connection (i.e. IP400 Office Quad Analog Trunk-LS) are OL13A, OL13B, OL13C, 02AC2, 02LA2, 02LB2, 02LC2, 02LR2, 02LS2.
- **The facility interface code (FIC)** for analog trunk connection (i.e. IP400 Office ATM16-LS/GS) are OL13A, OL13B, OL13C, 02AC2, 02GS2, 02LA2, 02LB2, 02LC2, 02LR2, 02LF2.
- **The Service Order Code (SOC)** for 1.544-MBps digital connection (i.e. IP400 Office PRI-T1) is 6.0Y.
- **The Service Order Code (SOC)** for analog trunk connection (i.e. IP400 Office Quad Analog Trunk-LS) is 9.0Y.
- **Disconnection**  
You must also notify your local telephone company if and when this equipment is permanently disconnected from the line or lines.
- **Hearing Aid Compatibility**  
The custom telephone sets for this system are compatible with inductively coupled hearing aids as prescribed by the FCC.

Ringer Equivalence Number (REN). The REN is used to determine the number of devices that may be connected to the telephone line. Excessive RENs on the line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most, but not all, areas, the sum of the RENs should not exceed five. To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to the line, as determined by the total RENs, contact the local telephone company to determine the maximum REN for the calling area.



# Index

## 0

0.4mm 35, 330  
0.5km 345  
0.5m 352  
0.5mm 35, 330  
0.65mm 35, 330  
0.7A 184, 341  
0°C 63, 143  
    40°C 63  
02AC2 383  
02GS2 383  
02LA2 383  
02LB2 383  
02LC2 383  
02LF2 383  
02LR2 383  
02LS2 383  
04DU9.BN 383  
04DU9.DN 383  
04DU9.IKN 383  
04DU9.ISN 383  
0dB 377  
0ms PRN 76, 96

## 1

1.2Kg/2.64lbs 214  
1.4A 184, 341  
1.4GB 71, 91, 130, 303, 309  
1.4GHz 295, 311, 312, 318  
1.544-Mbps 383  
1.7GHz 295, 311, 312, 318  
10/100Mbps 208, 210, 212, 214, 332, 342  
10/100Mbps auto-sensing 208, 210, 212, 214, 342  
10/100Mbps Ethernet LAN 214, 332  
1000m 35, 330, 344  
1000m/3280 35, 330  
1000VA 34  
100m/328 35, 330  
100Mbps 342  
100ohm 24, 335  
100ohm terminating 335  
100x 190  
101V 180, 233, 237, 239, 249, 251, 352  
1024KB 18, 208, 210  
104°F 63, 143  
    32°F 63  
10GB 294, 295, 301, 304, 318  
10GB HD 318  
10GB\*2 300  
10k 334  
10Mbps 243, 342  
10Mbps LAN 243  
10Mbps/100Mbps LAN 243  
    supports 243  
10mm 80  
10ms 57  
110-240V 33

1151C1 32, 255, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 282, 283, 288, 289, 291, 292, 352  
1151C1 Power Supply 255, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 282, 283, 288, 289, 291, 292, 352  
1151C1/1151C2 Power Cord 255, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 282, 283, 288, 289, 291, 292, 352  
1151C2 32, 34, 255, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 282, 283, 288, 289, 291, 292, 352  
1151C2 Power Supply 34, 255, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 282, 283, 288, 289, 291, 292, 352  
1151C2 Power Supply Unit 34, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 291, 292  
1151C2 PSU 292  
1200m/3937 35, 330  
120GB 318  
128MB 71, 91, 130, 295, 303, 304, 308, 309, 318  
128MB RAM 318  
128MB RAM 1GB HD 318  
12-core 349  
146G Surge Protector 38, 178  
14AWG 82, 105, 111, 147  
14AWG Solid 82, 111, 147  
150ms 56  
15-way D-type 35, 330, 352  
160MB 306, 318  
160MB HD 318  
160mm 80  
168KB/s 191  
16-bit High Color 71, 91, 130, 303, 309  
16ms 219, 228  
18AWG 179, 180  
192.168.42.1 73, 76, 86, 93, 96, 116, 132, 137, 202  
    default 202  
192KB 18, 214  
1992/A3 378  
1999/5/EC 373  
19-inch 143  
1A 184, 341, 349  
1A rms 349  
1GB 71, 91, 130, 303, 306, 308, 309, 318  
1GB HD 318  
1km 345  
1m/3'3 35, 330, 352

1MB 295, 300, 302, 311, 312, 318  
1MHz 350, 351  
1ms PRN 76, 96  
1U Mid-Span Power Distribution Unit 352

## 2

2.17Kg/4.77lbs 214  
2.4GHz 300  
2.8 18  
2.8GHz 295, 318  
2.8Kg/6.3lbs 241, 243, 247  
2.9 18  
2.9Kg/6.6lbs 231, 245  
200MB 71, 91, 130, 303, 309  
    Manager 71, 91, 130, 303, 309  
200mV rms 334  
201A 291  
201B 255, 275, 291, 352  
    install 291  
201B Recorder Interface 255, 275, 291, 352  
    2420/5420D 352  
201B Recorder Interface Module 255, 275, 291  
20A 291  
20B 255, 275, 291  
20B Module Adapter Base 291  
    called 291  
20B Stand 255, 275, 291  
20GB 312, 318  
20GB\*1 300  
20ms 57  
220m 208  
23B+D 24, 221, 230  
2400/5400 35, 152, 330  
    Installing 152  
2400/5400 Series Phones 152  
    Installing 152  
2402D 253, 273  
    functions 273  
2410 152, 254, 274, 352  
    functions 274  
2410D 254  
241mm/9.5 214  
2420 152, 255, 275, 288, 291  
    functions 275  
2420/5420D 352  
    201B Recorder Interface 352  
2420D 255, 352  
245mm/9.7 210, 212, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251  
24B 24, 221, 230  
24B T1 221  
255.255.255.255 73, 86, 93, 116, 132, 137, 189, 205  
    set 205  
255mm/10.0 214

- 256KB 18, 212  
 256MB 71, 91, 130, 294, 301, 302, 303, 309, 311, 312, 318  
   RAM increases 318  
 256MB RAM 318  
 25mA 227, 333, 345  
 25mm 80  
 25ms 30, 98, 218, 352  
 25-pin Parallel 187  
 25-Way D-Type 35, 231, 235, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 330, 352  
 2B+D 22, 24, 221, 229  
   providing 22  
   supporting 221  
 2GB 311, 312, 318  
 2m/6'6 35, 330, 352  
 2nd CD 300  
 2-pin 210, 231, 235, 239, 241, 243, 245  
 2T+4A 214  
 2U 39
- 3**  
 3 18  
 3.0Kg/6.7lbs 210, 212  
 3.1Kg/6.94lbs 237, 239, 251  
 3.5Kg/7.8lbs 233, 235, 249  
 3.5mm 82, 175, 184, 208, 210, 212, 214, 291, 334, 341  
 3.5mm Jack 82, 214  
 3.5mm mini-RCA 291  
 3.5mm Stereo 184, 208, 210, 212, 214, 334, 341  
 3.5W 267, 268, 276  
 30B channels 230  
 30B+D 24, 222, 223, 230  
   providing 222  
 30GB 295, 318  
 32°F 63, 143  
   104°F 63  
 32-character 10, 12, 14, 41, 42, 138, 185, 186  
 34-way MRAC 35, 330, 352  
 3-5 328, 352  
   Upgrade 328, 352  
 3-5 Base Stations 328, 352  
 3-5 RFP's 352  
 3616 256, 257, 258, 352  
   Belt Clip 352  
   Clip 256  
   pack 256, 352  
 3626 258, 352  
   Belt Clip 352  
   Clip 258  
   pack 258, 352  
 365mm/14.4 208  
 37-Way D-type 24, 26, 35, 210, 212, 222, 330, 348, 352  
 37-way D-type WAN 26  
 3810's 263, 352  
 3m/9'10 35, 330, 336, 347, 352  
 3mm 111, 147  
 3mm fixing 111
- 3-Pin 45W 214  
 3rd 52, 295, 310, 322, 324, 325, 329, 352  
 3rd Party Database/IVR 329, 352  
 3rd-party 49, 52, 301  
 3rd-party SNMP 49
- 4**  
 4.1Kg/9.2lbs 241, 243, 247  
 4.1W 277  
 4.2Kg/9.4lbs 231, 245  
 4.3Kg/9.6lbs 210, 212  
 4.4Kg/9.7lbs 237, 239, 251  
 4.5mm 145  
 4.8Kg/10.8lbs 233, 235, 249  
 40°C 63, 143  
   0°C 63  
 400m/1310 35, 330  
 400m/1640 35, 330  
 40bit 259, 260  
 40mms 218  
 40ms 30  
 40V 227, 345  
 40V rms 345  
 40W 32, 33, 210, 231, 235, 239, 241, 243, 245, 352  
 40W PSU 32  
 40W Unearthed PSU 352  
 425Hz 175  
 4406 352  
   Small Stand 352  
 4406D 20, 35, 226, 264, 330, 352  
 4406D Phone 35, 330  
 440V rms 349  
 4412D 20, 35, 226, 265, 330, 352  
   Large Stand 352  
 4412D Phone 35, 330  
 4412D+/4424D 265, 266  
   Large 4400 Series Stand 265, 266  
 4424D 20, 35, 226, 266, 287, 330, 352  
 4450 32, 266, 287, 338, 352  
   Power Supply 266, 287, 352  
   Small 4400 Series Stand 266  
 445mm/17.5 208, 210, 212, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251  
 45-Day Trial Licenses 329, 352  
 45W 32, 212, 352  
 45W Earthed PSU 32, 352  
 4600 Series 352  
   power 352  
 4600/5600 IP Phone Installation 162  
   Refer 162  
 4601 267, 276, 352  
   functions 276  
 4602/4602SW 268
- 4602IP 268, 352  
 4602SW 268, 352  
 4606/16/24/30 SETS 352  
 4610SW 269, 352  
 4620IP 270, 352  
 4620IP/4620SW 270  
 4620SW 270, 271, 279, 280, 352  
   function 271  
   functions 279, 280  
 4620SW's PC 270  
 4621SW 271, 272, 280, 352  
   function 272  
 4625SW 272, 352  
 46XX Series 322  
 4m/13'2 35, 330, 352  
 4mm 111, 147  
 4pages 269  
 4T+4A+8DS 214  
 4T+8A 214  
 4W 270  
 4-wire 214, 227, 237, 251, 345
- 5**  
 5.75W 271  
 5.9W 270, 279, 280  
 500m 344  
 500m/1640 35, 330  
 500mm 39, 61, 145, 208  
 500VA 34  
 50-60Hz 33  
 50MB 293, 318  
 50MB HD 318  
 50nf/Km 35, 330  
 50x/10x 287  
 512MB 30, 217, 295, 299, 300, 312, 318  
 512MB Compact Flash 30, 217  
   Supports 30  
   Uses 217  
 512MB RAM 318  
 51V Stepped 237, 239  
 5402D 273  
 5420D 275  
 55V d.c. 184, 341  
 5601IP 276  
 5602IP 277, 352  
 5602IP/5602SW 277  
 5602SW 277, 352  
 5610SW 278, 352  
 5620IP 279, 280  
 5621SW 280  
 56XX 322  
 5ESS 191  
 5m/16'5 35, 330, 336, 349, 350, 351  
 5mm Flat-blade 121, 124, 128  
 5W 269, 278  
 5x16 259, 260
- 6**  
 6.0Y 383  
 6.45W 272  
 600MB 71, 91, 130, 303, 309  
 600Mhz 318

- 600MHz Pentium 71, 91, 130, 303, 309  
60W 32, 210, 212, 214, 233, 237, 241, 243, 249, 251, 352  
60W Earthed PSU 32, 352  
64 18, 20, 208, 210, 212, 225, 228, 352  
    banks 210  
6408D 281, 352  
6416/6424D+M Stand 282, 283  
6416D 282  
6416D+M 282, 352  
6424D 283  
6424D+M 283, 352  
64-bit 71, 91, 130, 303, 309, 318  
64MB 217, 293, 306, 318  
64Mb Compact Flash 30, 217  
    Supports 30  
    Uses 217  
64MB RAM 318  
64ms 30, 98, 218, 225, 352  
650Mhz 294, 295, 301, 302, 304, 306, 308, 318  
65-0MHz 293  
65mm 352  
670m/2200 35, 330  
6mm 143, 145
- 7**  
7.2MB 300  
7/0.203mm 349, 350, 351  
700m/2295 35, 330  
71mm/2.8 210, 212, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251  
71x445x245mm 18  
72/23EEC 373  
73mm/2.9 208  
73x445x365mm 18  
75mm 61  
76mm/3.0 214  
76x255x241mm 18  
77ohms 351  
79mm 152  
7-days 53, 295  
7kHz Audio 380
- 8**  
800m/2620 35, 330  
800MB 71, 91, 130, 303, 309  
800MHz 71, 91, 130, 293, 294, 295, 301, 302, 303, 304, 306, 308, 309, 318  
800MHz Pentium 71, 91, 130, 303, 309  
800pF 349, 350  
80129 USA 376  
802.11a 259, 260  
802.11b 30, 216, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260  
802.11b WiFi 30, 256, 257, 258
- 802.11g standard-compatible 259, 260  
802.3af Power 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280  
80GB 299, 318  
81V 180, 237, 239  
89/336/EEC 373  
8-Gang 352  
8kHz 16-bit 175  
8-phone 261, 262, 352  
8-Phone Gang Charger 261, 262
- 9**  
9.0Y 383  
900MHz 263  
90mm 61, 208  
91N 191  
9281-AV 43  
9330-AV 43  
9335-AV 43  
95pF/m 349  
98pF/m 350, 351  
9b 102  
9-pin D-type 233, 237  
9-way 18, 35, 208, 210, 212, 214, 233, 237, 249, 251, 330, 352  
9-Way D-Type 35, 208, 210, 212, 214, 233, 237, 249, 251, 330, 352
- A**  
a00320 191  
A1 379  
    including 379  
A2 379  
AA 350  
AAA 352  
About 50, 53, 60, 76, 96, 189, 193, 295, 308, 309, 326  
ACA 59  
accept 10, 20, 24, 55, 71, 91, 123, 130, 202, 205, 382  
    IP500 20  
access 30, 49, 50, 52, 56, 57, 60, 63, 76, 85, 86, 96, 115, 116, 122, 133, 137, 142, 162, 196, 198, 214, 216, 233, 253, 256, 257, 258, 273, 295, 299, 300, 301, 303, 306, 308, 309, 315, 324  
    ContactStore 300  
    Delta Server application 315  
    IP Office ContactStore 315  
    IP Office's 85, 115, 142  
Account Codes 57  
Accunet 191  
ACE 59  
ACS 59  
ACTA 383
- Action 8, 83, 113, 134, 157, 158, 160, 171, 177, 183, 200, 202, 204, 371  
Action Data 158  
Actual UPS 34  
Add 12, 14, 16, 19, 22, 24, 26, 30, 42, 51, 57, 71, 91, 105, 107, 109, 111, 124, 130, 138, 140, 147, 163, 168, 174, 185, 188, 189, 194, 218, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 282, 283, 304, 308, 312, 315, 318, 322, 323, 327  
    Expansion Modules 107  
    External Expansion Modules 140  
    IP500 VCM Channels 138  
    Licences 138  
    MIB file SNMP-FRAMEWORK-MIB.mib 194  
    WAN3 Module 109  
Add/Remove Programs 71, 91, 130, 189  
Additional 4.5mm 39, 145  
Additional B-channels 22, 230, 323  
Additional Clearance 61  
Additional Power Supply Must Be Used 157  
Additional Procedures 152  
Additional Requirements 288  
Additional Voicemail Pro 42, 185, 312, 327, 352  
add-ons 10, 12, 14, 32, 43, 253, 254, 255, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 338, 352  
ADJ 287  
Adjust 67, 83, 113, 132, 134, 160, 171, 205, 315, 334, 377  
    BOOTP 205  
Admin 71, 91, 130, 166, 191, 194, 293, 294, 295, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 311, 312  
Admin Applications 71, 91  
    Installing 71, 91  
Admin CD Set 293, 294, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 311  
Admin Suite 71, 91, 130  
    run 71, 91, 130  
Admin/General Setup 191  
Admin/Software 191  
Admin/Video Network 191  
Admin/Video Network/Call Preference 191  
Admin/Video Network/IMUX 191

- Admin/Video Network/ISDN Video Network 191
- Administration 55, 64, 312, 318, 352
- Administration Applications 64
- Administration CD Set 55, 352
- Administrative Council 383
  - Terminal Attachments 383
- Administrator 44, 49, 51, 55, 71, 75, 85, 86, 87, 91, 95, 115, 116, 117, 130, 133, 137, 142, 149, 189, 194, 300, 311, 312, 327, 352
- Administrator Applications 44, 51, 55, 189, 194, 311
- Administrator Applications CD 49, 55, 71, 91, 130, 189
- Administrator Group 85, 115, 142
- ADMM 328, 352
  - PARK ID 352
- ADSL 76, 96
- Advanced 44, 59, 65, 83, 85, 113, 115, 134, 142, 152, 164, 171, 191, 202, 205, 318, 322, 352
- Advanced Applications Workshop 59
- Advanced Dialing 191
- Advanced Server 318
- Advanced Small Community 322, 352
- Advanced Small Community Networking 322
- AEI/Headset Link 284, 285, 286
  - T3 IP 284, 285, 286
- affect 22, 32, 38, 61, 71, 91, 130, 160, 178, 230, 318, 323
  - IP Office Feature key 71, 91, 130
  - IP412 32
- affect existing cards 22
- Africa 43
- AGC 212
- Agent login 54
- Agent logout 54
- Agent Rostering 295, 324
- Agent Rostering Interface 295, 324
  - Enables 295, 324
- Aid Compatibility 383
  - Hearing 383
- AIS 230
- Alarm Reporter 53, 295
- A-Law 41, 128, 186, 208, 210, 212, 214, 230, 264, 265, 266, 352
- A-Law Smart Card 352
- ALL 50801 299, 312
- ALL 8089 299, 312
- All Athlon 64 295, 300, 312
- All Athlon64 318
- All Buttons 158
- All IP Office 37, 39, 49, 51, 82, 105, 111, 147, 184, 201, 208, 210, 212, 214, 218, 219, 220, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 304, 311, 332, 333, 334, 337, 339, 341, 342
- All IP Office LAN 342
- All IP400 243
- allow upgrading 44
- Allow User Setup 191
- AllowDial 191
- allows 10, 12, 14, 19, 20, 22, 30, 34, 35, 39, 41, 44, 50, 51, 53, 54, 59, 60, 61, 65, 66, 105, 109, 124, 133, 134, 152, 160, 163, 168, 175, 179, 186, 190, 191, 193, 194, 216, 233, 295, 299, 300, 305, 306, 308, 310, 311, 312, 315, 318, 322, 324, 325, 327, 328, 330, 334, 380
  - ICLID 168
  - IP Office 216, 305
  - IP Office's SNMP 193
  - MS-CRM 50
  - PC-less 41, 186
  - allows existing 179
  - allows reporting 295
  - Allows streaming 310, 325
    - WAV 310, 325
- ALOG 76, 96
- AMD 71, 91, 130, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 306, 308, 309, 311, 312, 318
- AMD Athlon XP 71, 91, 130, 303, 309
- AMD Athlon64 71, 91, 130, 303, 309
- AMD Opteron 71, 91, 130, 303, 309, 318
- amend 205
  - BOOTP 205
- America 208, 210, 212, 214, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251
- Amplified Handset 253, 254, 255, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 352
- ANALOG 26, 107, 140, 162, 214, 231, 333, 344
  - Swapping 162
- Analog 16 Module 34
- Analog Extension 10, 14, 16, 20, 136, 227, 231, 245, 344, 345, 352
- Analog Extension Ports 14, 136, 227
- Analog Phone Barrier Boxes 180
- Analog Phone Extensions 38, 178, 227, 332
- Analog Phones 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 22, 26, 35, 38, 178, 180, 212, 227, 330, 332, 338, 345, 352
- ANALOG Port 333, 344
- Analog Ports 214, 231, 245, 377
- Analog Power Failure 22, 344
- Analog Telephone Ports 378
- Analog Trunk Card 219, 220
- Analog Trunk Card Universal 219
- Analog Trunk Module Connections 231
- Analog Trunks 16, 18, 22, 24, 30, 37, 38, 76, 82, 96, 107, 111, 136, 140, 147, 166, 168, 178, 198, 216, 219, 220, 225, 227, 228, 229, 231, 245, 332, 333, 344, 352, 375, 378, 383
- Analog, Digital Station V1 32 and/or 374
- ANLG 20, 124, 224
- Anti-Static Protection Measures 123
- Any 7, 8, 12, 14, 16, 18, 19, 20, 22, 26, 34, 35, 37, 38, 41, 44, 49, 50, 54, 55, 57, 60, 63, 67, 73, 82, 83, 93, 98, 102, 105, 107, 109, 111, 113, 122, 123, 124, 128, 129, 132, 134, 138, 140, 147, 152, 158, 160, 162, 164, 168, 171, 174, 175, 178, 180, 186, 189, 190, 191, 193, 200, 202, 205, 207, 208, 214, 219, 220, 228, 229, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 266, 295, 299, 306, 318, 330, 333, 334, 344, 352, 371, 374, 380, 382
  - set 190
  - any existing 67, 175
  - any incoming ICLID 168
  - any intervening 132
  - any mounting 63
  - any rewiring 35, 330
    - cables 35, 330
  - any sort 382
- Appearance Button Requirements 158
- Applications 7, 10, 12, 14, 16, 41, 42, 44, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 59, 64, 71, 85, 87, 91, 115, 117, 122, 130, 142, 149, 168, 171, 175, 183, 185, 186, 189, 193, 194, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 315, 318, 322, 325, 352
- Applications Dependencies 318
- applications exist 52

- Applications Overview 59
- applications running 56
- applications working 175
- Applications Workshop 59
- Applying 129
  - Power 129
- ARA 47, 60, 122
  - running 60, 122
- Archiver 53, 295, 324
- Archiver manages 53, 295
- Area Code 190, 191
- Argentina 47, 229, 255, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 282, 283, 288, 289, 291, 292, 352
- arrangement 22
- ARS 57
- AS/NZ 3548 379
- Asia-Pacific 43
- Async Data 378
- AT&T 191
- Athlon 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 304, 306, 308, 312, 318
- Athlon 64 318
- Athlon XP 295, 299, 300, 312, 318
- Athlon XP 3000 295, 299, 300, 312, 318
- Athlon64 299
- ATM16 37, 82, 111, 147, 219, 231, 333
- ATM16 Analog Trunk 333
- ATM4 24, 166, 197, 214, 216, 219, 220, 332, 352, 375
- ATM4 Trunk 166, 220, 332
- ATM4 Trunk Cards 166, 220, 332
- ATM4 Uni 219, 352
- ATM4/ATM4U 37, 82, 111, 147
- ATM4U 24, 216, 219
- ATM4U Trunk Card 216, 219
- AT-X2 202, 204
- AT-X3 202, 204
- AT-X4 202, 204
- AU 7
- AUDIO 175, 334
- Audio In 18, 334
- AUDIO Port 334
- Audio Quality 191
- Audit Trail 177
- Audix 76, 96
- AUDIX Voicemail 327, 352
- Austel 380
- Australia 47, 229, 261, 262, 267, 268, 269, 282, 283, 292, 352, 380
- Australia/New Zealand 255, 270, 271, 272, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 288, 289, 291
- AusTS013 24, 229
- authenticationFailure 198
- Auto Answer 191
- auto-attendants 30, 51, 217
- auto-MDI/MDIX 212, 214, 342
- AVA00136WEN 59
- AVA00138WEN 59
- AVA00139WEN 59
- AVA00140H00 59
- AVA00484H00 59
- AVA00619H00 59
- AVA00619WEN 59
- AVA00757WEN 59
- AVA00758H00 59
- Availability 43, 47, 59, 207, 318, 352
  - Date 318
  - Estimated Date 318
- Available 8, 12, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24, 30, 35, 41, 42, 43, 44, 47, 49, 55, 56, 57, 60, 71, 83, 91, 98, 113, 122, 124, 130, 134, 136, 138, 152, 163, 164, 171, 175, 184, 185, 186, 207, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 218, 220, 223, 225, 227, 229, 230, 233, 235, 237, 239, 249, 251, 268, 277, 279, 281, 282, 299, 309, 318, 326, 330, 341, 352, 371, 373, 376, 377
- available busing 57
- Avaya 7, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 20, 26, 30, 32, 34, 35, 38, 43, 44, 47, 49, 50, 51, 55, 56, 59, 60, 63, 71, 76, 91, 96, 122, 123, 130, 138, 157, 162, 178, 184, 193, 200, 201, 207, 210, 212, 214, 217, 218, 219, 220, 226, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 292, 303, 304, 305, 306, 312, 318, 322, 327, 328, 329, 330, 332, 333, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 352, 371, 373, 374, 376, 378
  - Small Office Edition supports 30
- Avaya 1151C1 157, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 292, 352
- Avaya 1151C1/B2 338
- Avaya 1151C2 157
- Avaya 146G Surge Protector 38, 178, 184, 219, 220, 231, 245, 333, 341
- Avaya 40W 231, 235, 239, 243, 245
- Avaya 4600 32, 193, 322
- Avaya 4600/5600 162
  - Swapping 162
- Avaya 4600/5600 Series IP Extensions 162
  - Swapping 162
- Avaya 60W 241, 247
- Avaya 802.11b WiFi 10
- Avaya Authorized Channel Partners 59
- Avaya Business Partners 60, 122
- Avaya cable 35, 330
- Avaya Certified Specialists 59
- Avaya Contact Store 312, 327
  - IP Office application 312, 327
- Avaya DECT 261, 262
- Avaya distributor 70, 90, 352
- Avaya DS 47
  - IP Office 47
- Avaya earthed 60W 210, 214, 233, 237, 249, 251
- Avaya Expansion Interconnect Cable 340
- Avaya H.323 IP 34
- Avaya Interchange 312, 327
- Avaya IP 7, 8, 47, 55, 60, 122, 193, 261, 262, 305, 322, 328, 352, 371, 374, 378
  - including 352
- Avaya IP DECT 193, 261, 262, 322, 328, 352
- Avaya IP DECT Mobility Manager 328
- Avaya IP Office 7, 8, 47, 55, 60, 122, 305, 371, 374, 378
  - housing 374
- Avaya IP Office CD's 55
  - copies 55
- Avaya IP Office Knowledge Base 60, 122
- Avaya IP Office MS-CRM 305
- Avaya IP Office voicemail 47
- Avaya IP400 Office 373
- Avaya Messaging 329, 352
- Avaya phones 50, 303, 306
- Avaya provides 7, 376
- Avaya representative 376
- Avaya reseller 123
- Avaya Support 60, 122
- Avaya Technical Bulletins 7
  - read 7
- Avaya training 60
- Avaya un-earthed 212
- Avaya un-earthed 45W 212
- Avaya University 7, 59, 60
- Avaya University provides 59
- Avaya University site 59
- Avaya Voice Priority Processor 256, 257, 258, 352
- Avaya wall 63
- Avaya wall mounting 63
- avayafw.bat 315
- avayagen-mib.mib 194
- Avaya's Dealers 376
- AVPP 43, 256, 257, 258, 352
- AVPP 10 352
- AVPP 20 352
- AVPP Power Supply 352
- AVRIP 315

AWG 37, 82, 111, 147, 344,  
345, 349, 350, 351  
AWG 26 344, 345  
AWG22 35, 330, 344, 345  
AWG24 35, 330, 344, 345  
AWG26 35, 330, 344, 345

**B**

back 24, 42, 44, 51, 78, 98,  
100, 109, 128, 138, 158, 160,  
162, 175, 182, 183, 185, 188,  
189, 196, 197, 200, 202, 204,  
214, 257, 312  
Barrier Box 182  
IP Office 42, 109, 138, 158,  
160, 162, 185, 188, 189,  
196, 197, 200  
backlight 157, 271, 289  
includes 289  
provides 157  
banks 210  
64 210  
Barrier Box 352  
Barrier Box Rack Mounting Kit  
39, 105, 180, 182, 352  
Barrier Boxes 39, 105, 180,  
182, 352  
back 182  
Base Extension 160, 162  
Change 160, 162  
Base Extension Number 160,  
162  
Base Station 263, 328, 352  
BASE STATION LIC 328, 352  
Base Station Mast Mounting  
Kit 352  
baseband 243, 348  
BaseT 378  
Basic Button Programming  
158  
Basic Rate ISDN 382  
B-channels for 22, 230, 323  
Bearer Capabilities 190, 380  
following 380  
become 35, 51, 59, 152, 174,  
198, 312, 330, 338  
Intranet Service 174  
WAN Service 174  
become Avaya Authorized  
Channel Partners 59  
Belgium 47  
Belt Clip 261, 262, 263, 352  
3616 352  
3626 352  
BIN 44, 83, 113, 134, 171  
BIN Files 44  
Binary Files 67  
Black 35, 258, 264, 265, 266,  
284, 285, 286, 287, 290, 330,  
342, 352  
BLF 315  
Blue Pumpkin 53, 295, 324  
Blue/White 335, 336, 342, 347  
Boot Loader 202, 204, 205

BOOTP 44, 75, 83, 86, 95,  
113, 116, 133, 134, 137, 171,  
205  
Adjust 205  
amend 205  
creates 83, 113, 134, 171  
BOOTP Entries 44, 83, 113,  
134, 171, 205  
BOOTP/DHCP 315  
Bootstrap Protocol Client 315  
Bootstrap Protocol Server 315  
Border Gateway Protocol 315  
Both Voicemail Pro 51, 312  
Bothway 191  
Brazilian 47, 55, 301, 303,  
306, 308, 311, 312  
Brazilian Portuguese 55, 301  
BRI 22, 26, 76, 96, 136, 166,  
168, 198, 221, 225, 228, 229,  
241, 247, 332, 335, 336, 347,  
352, 378, 380  
BRI Interface 380  
BRI ISDN 378  
BRI Port 335, 336  
BRI SO8 247  
BRI Trunk Cards 221  
BRI/PRI 35, 330, 336, 347,  
352  
BRI-8 20, 124, 224  
BRI-S 335, 336  
BRI-So 26  
BRI-T 335, 336  
Broadcast 67, 175, 189, 260,  
315  
IP Office LAN 315  
Brown/White 335, 336, 342,  
347  
BS1363 33, 208, 210, 212,  
214, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239,  
241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251,  
352  
Building Connections 38, 151,  
178, 184, 341  
Busy 228  
Button Programming 158

**C**

Cable 9, 10, 12, 14, 20, 22, 26,  
35, 37, 38, 39, 61, 64, 80, 82,  
105, 107, 109, 111, 121, 124,  
132, 140, 143, 147, 151, 152,  
157, 162, 178, 179, 180, 184,  
187, 198, 201, 202, 204, 205,  
214, 223, 231, 233, 235, 237,  
239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249,  
251, 255, 267, 268, 269, 270,  
271, 272, 275, 276, 277, 278,  
279, 280, 282, 283, 288, 289,  
290, 291, 292, 330, 332, 336,  
338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 345,  
347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352,  
374  
any rewiring 35, 330  
cable ties 143  
for crimping 111, 147

Requirements 38, 178  
Cable Access 61  
Cable Clearance 61  
Cable Color 336, 347  
cable runs 37, 82, 111, 147  
cable tidying 143  
cable ties 143  
cable 143  
cables enter 38, 178  
Cables Supplied 157  
Only 157  
CALA 222, 223, 352, 375  
call asking 50, 299  
Call Center Applications 53  
Call Center View 53, 295  
call coming 190  
Call Detail Records 52  
call enters 54  
queue 54  
call log 52, 301  
Call Logging Applications 52,  
301  
Call Routes 73, 86, 93, 116,  
137  
Incoming 73, 86, 93, 116,  
137  
Call Status 49, 55, 71, 91, 130,  
293, 318  
Call to/from Non-IP Devices 57  
Call Waiting 53, 57, 295  
called 10, 12, 14, 18, 19, 20,  
30, 43, 44, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53,  
54, 55, 57, 71, 73, 76, 86, 91,  
93, 96, 98, 116, 130, 137, 152,  
158, 160, 163, 164, 166, 168,  
175, 177, 190, 191, 193, 216,  
217, 225, 291, 293, 294, 295,  
299, 300, 301, 305, 306, 308,  
309, 310, 312, 315, 318, 322,  
325, 327, 376, 380, 382, 383  
20B Module Adapter Base  
291  
Helpline 376  
IP Office voicemail 57  
SMDR 301  
SNMP 193  
SOE 57  
CALLS 76, 96  
CallStatus/callstatus.exe 293  
Campaign Manager 318  
Campaigns 51, 55, 312, 318  
Canada 47  
Canadian Department 379  
Communications 379  
Canadian French 47  
Cancel 83, 113, 134, 160, 171,  
175  
cancel upgrading 83, 113, 171  
Cantonese 47, 312  
Capacity 20, 22, 34, 56, 98,  
100, 102, 136, 184, 208, 210,  
212, 214, 225, 230, 323, 341  
Switching 184, 341  
card identify 124

- Card LEDs 136
  - Check 136
- card supersedes 219
- Cards 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24, 30, 37, 41, 43, 51, 57, 65, 66, 78, 82, 98, 100, 102, 111, 124, 128, 135, 136, 138, 145, 147, 175, 186, 198, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 264, 265, 266, 318, 332, 333, 336, 344, 347, 352, 375
  - Objective - To fit 98
- Cards Supported 18, 20, 221, 222, 223
- Carrier Card 124, 224, 352
  - Installing 124
- carrier card identify 124
- carrier card need 124
- Carry 194, 258, 352
- Castle Rock SNMPc-EE 5.1.6c 193
- CastleRock 49, 193, 194
- CastleRock SNMPc 194
  - V5.0.1 194
- CastleRock SNMPc 5.1.6c 194
- CastleRock SNMPc V5.0.1 194
- CastleRock SNMPc V5.0.8 194
  - correct 194
- CAT3 10, 12, 14, 35, 330
- CAT3 UTP 10, 12, 14
- CAT5 157, 255, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 282, 283, 288, 289, 291, 292, 342, 352
  - existing 157
- CAT5 UTP 342
- cause 63, 66, 135, 138, 157, 166, 187, 188, 189, 198, 205, 217, 288, 289, 318, 379
  - IP Office 66
- cause lose 217
- CAUTION 179, 180, 184, 341
- CBC 7, 19, 53, 55, 122, 294, 301, 318, 322
- CBC application 322
  - Enables 322
- CBC/SMDR 318
- CBC2 318
- CCC 7, 19, 53, 55, 122, 295, 301, 315, 318, 324, 352
  - following 295, 324
- CCC Agent Rostering 295, 324, 352
- CCC Agents 295, 324, 352
- CCC AGT 295
- CCC Archiver 53, 295
- CCC Chat 324
- CCC Delta Server 318
- CCC Designer 295, 324, 352
- CCC Email 324
- CCC Licenses 352
- CCC PC Wallboards 295, 324, 352
- CCC PCW 295
- CCC Report 295, 324
- CCC Reporter 295, 318
- CCC Rostering 295, 324, 352
- CCC Server 53, 295, 324, 352
  - Enables 295
- CCC Server application 53, 324
  - Enables 324
- CCC Spectrum Wallboards 295, 324, 352
- CCC SUP 295
- CCC Supervisors 295, 324, 352
- CCC SVR 295
- CCC v5 318
- CCC Wallboard Manager 352
- CCC Wallboard Server 315
  - PC Wallboard 315
- CCC Wallboards 295, 315, 352
- CCC/Archiver/ArchiverSQL.exe 295
- CCC/CallCentreView/CallCentreView.exe 295
- CCC/CBC/CBC.exe 294
- CCC/CCVAlarmReporter/CCVAlarmReporter.exe 295
- CCC/DBMgr/DBMgr.exe 295
- CCC/DeltaServer/DeltaServerHTTPPasswordAssistant.exe 301
- CCC/DeltaServer/DeltaServerManagementAssistant.exe 301
- CCC/DeltaServer/DeltaServerService.exe 301
- CCC/DeltaServer/SMDRClientResponse.exe 301
- CCC/DeltaServer/SMDRServerResponse.exe 301
- CCC/PCWallboard/PCWallboard.exe 295
- CCC/Reporting/Admin.exe 295
- CCC/Reporting/bin/CCCReporter.exe 295
- CCC/User
  - Access/CCCUserAccess.exe 295
- CCC/WBServer/WbServer32.exe 295
- CCV 53, 295, 318
- CD 44, 49, 50, 51, 55, 64, 71, 91, 130, 189, 194, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 311, 312, 352
  - Copies 55
    - open 71, 91, 130
  - Voicemail Pro 55
- CD 3/4/5 55
- CD/DVD codes 352
- CDR 52, 315
- CD's 10, 12, 14, 55, 300, 312
- CE 373, 382
- CEE7/16 33, 231, 235, 239, 243, 245, 352
- CEE7/7 33, 208, 210, 212, 214, 233, 237, 241, 247, 249, 251, 352
- Celeron 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 304, 306, 308, 311, 312, 318
- Celeron3 800Mhz 318
- Center 19, 47, 53, 59, 73, 93, 107, 140, 152, 180, 182, 295, 299, 318
  - Point 182
- Center Applications 53
- Center Client5 318
- Center Screw 180
- Center Server 318
- Center Service 315
  - IP Office 315
- Center V3.2 CD 55
- Centralized Voicemail 329, 352
- Certain Hazardous Substances 8, 371
  - Removal 8, 371
- Certified Associate 59
- Certified Expert 59
- Certified Specialists 59
- CH 225, 323, 352
- Changes 7, 22, 26, 30, 32, 42, 44, 47, 50, 54, 55, 63, 65, 67, 71, 73, 75, 83, 85, 86, 91, 93, 95, 107, 113, 115, 116, 124, 130, 133, 134, 137, 140, 142, 152, 158, 160, 162, 171, 185, 189, 193, 196, 197, 198, 210, 212, 214, 230, 233, 237, 306, 315, 323, 352
  - Base Extension 160, 162
  - DS 198
  - Extension 160
  - Extension Numbers 160
  - Individual User's Extension Number 160
  - IP Office 7, 162
  - PCMCIA 198
- Channel Allocation 191
- Channels 12, 14, 18, 19, 20, 22, 30, 56, 57, 59, 76, 96, 98, 100, 124, 138, 152, 163, 166, 191, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 217, 218, 221, 222, 223, 225, 229, 230, 310, 322, 323, 325, 334, 352
  - IP500 225
  - PRI 191
- channels during 30
- CHAP 174
- Characteristics 191
- Charge 32, 190, 376
- charge during 32

- charged during 32
- Charger 256, 257, 258, 261, 262, 263, 352
  - Power Adaptor 261, 262, 352
- Charger Power Supply 352
- Chart 152
  - Planning 152
- CHASSIS 348
- Check All Documentation 123
- Check All Parts 123
- Check IP Office Technical Bulletins 44, 83, 113, 134, 171
- Checking 76, 96, 123, 135, 136, 152, 175
  - Card LEDs 136
  - Correct Parts Have Been Delivered 123
  - CPU LED 135
  - Firmware 152
  - Music 175
  - Package Damage 123
  - System Using System Monitor 76, 96
- China 33, 47, 208, 210, 212, 214, 221, 222, 223, 229, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 352, 379, 381
  - EMC Caution 379
- Chinese 55, 217, 306, 308, 311, 312
- chs 47, 217
- cht 47
- Circuit Overloading 105, 143
- Cisco Catalyst Power Adapter 352
- CISPR 22 379
- CkSRC 76, 96
- Class 32, 157, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 288, 289, 379
  - limits 379
- Clear 54, 128, 201, 339, 348, 349, 350
  - Send 348
- CLI 380
- Client 53, 187, 295, 299, 310, 312, 315, 318, 322
- Client Applications
- Dependencies 318
- Client Operating Systems 318
- Client PC 299, 310, 318
- client PC needs 318
- Clip 256, 257, 258
  - 3616 256
  - 3626 258
- Clk-A 348, 351
- Clk-B 348, 351
- Clock Quality 164
- Close Monitor 76, 96
- CM 318, 352
- cmd 132
- Coaxial Connections 102
- Coaxial E1R2 Trunk Cards Only 102
  - Code 8, 33, 42, 47, 55, 63, 67, 128, 168, 183, 185, 190, 191, 198, 352, 371, 383
  - Code, Telephone Number 67
  - codec 57
  - codecs 57, 225
  - codecs G711 57
  - coldStart 198
  - Colombia 47
  - Colorado 376
  - Colors 71, 91, 130, 272, 303, 309, 352
  - Colour 284, 285, 286, 290
  - colours 336, 347
  - Comma Separated Variable Text Files 67
  - Comms Cards 352
  - Communications 7, 75, 83, 95, 113, 132, 134, 171, 193, 194, 196, 197, 198, 379
    - Canadian Department 379
  - Communications Commission 379
  - communications/data 35, 330
  - Community 19, 44, 60, 196, 197, 198, 315
    - Set 197
  - Community Networking 19, 315
  - Compact Business Center 7, 19, 53, 122, 294, 318, 322, 352
  - Compact Contact Center 7, 19, 53, 55, 122, 295, 318, 352
  - Compact Contact Center 5.0 CD 295
  - Compact Contact Center V5.0 CD 55
  - Compact DECT 7, 122, 322
  - Compact DECT Installation 7, 122
  - Compact Flash 30, 175, 212, 217
  - Companding 210, 212, 214, 352
  - compared 152
  - Compile 194
    - MIBs 194
  - Compliance 105, 143, 267, 377, 380, 382, 383
  - Conf 47
  - CONFERENCE 253, 254, 255, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283
  - Conference Center V3.2 CD 55
  - Conferencing 57, 318
  - Conferencing Center 7, 18, 19, 50, 55, 122, 299, 315, 318, 322, 329, 352
  - Conferencing Center Server 315, 318
  - Conferencing Center Server Service 315
    - IP Office 315
  - Conferencing Center Web Client 318
  - Conferencing resources 57
  - Conferencing Web Client 318
  - Config 194, 202, 204
  - Configuration 7, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 19, 20, 22, 24, 41, 42, 44, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 65, 66, 67, 71, 73, 75, 83, 85, 86, 91, 93, 95, 102, 107, 109, 113, 115, 116, 122, 124, 129, 130, 133, 134, 137, 138, 140, 142, 157, 158, 160, 162, 163, 164, 166, 168, 171, 174, 177, 183, 185, 186, 188, 189, 190, 193, 196, 197, 198, 200, 202, 204, 205, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 217, 221, 229, 230, 231, 241, 256, 257, 258, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 306, 309, 312, 315, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 333, 342, 352, 380
    - Defaulting 204
    - Erasing 202
    - Receiving 75, 86, 95, 116, 133, 137
    - Using Manager receive 109
  - Configuration Cradle 256, 257, 258, 352
  - configuration indicate 160
  - Configuration Memory 18
  - configuration questions 65
  - Configuration Tree 75, 86, 95, 116, 133, 137, 196, 197
  - Configure Incoming Call Route 190
  - configuring 85, 115, 142, 200
    - IP Office 200
    - Security 85, 115, 142
    - Security Settings 85, 115, 142
  - Conformity 373, 379, 380
    - Declaration 373, 379, 380
  - Conformity indicating 379, 380
  - connect 16, 26, 35, 37, 38, 43, 44, 49, 57, 66, 73, 76, 78, 82, 93, 96, 98, 100, 102, 105, 107, 109, 111, 124, 129, 132, 133, 134, 140, 147, 151, 152, 157, 166, 174, 175, 178, 179, 180, 182, 184, 187, 191, 197, 198, 202, 205, 207, 212, 214, 219, 220, 223, 224, 227, 228, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 243, 245, 249, 251, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282,

- 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 292, 330, 333, 335, 336, 338, 340, 341, 342, 344, 345, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 374, 377, 380, 383
    - green/yellow 182
    - IP Office 43, 66, 109, 140, 340
    - IP412 109, 243
    - ISDN 335, 336
    - LAN 129, 132
    - Manager PC 132
    - PHONE 43, 180
    - Pin 348
    - TS013 380
    - WAN 174, 243
    - WAN3 109
  - Connector Type 32
  - Consideration 105, 143
  - Contact Center View 318
  - Contact Centers 59, 318
  - Contact Store 7, 51, 122, 300
  - Contact Store Installation 7, 122
  - ContactStore 19, 51, 300, 312, 318, 327
    - access 300
  - ContactStore PC 51, 300
  - ContactStore Web 318
  - containing ringing 20, 212, 237, 345
  - contains 20, 37, 39, 44, 55, 60, 64, 82, 83, 85, 105, 111, 113, 115, 122, 134, 138, 142, 147, 171, 187, 190, 194, 207, 208, 210, 212, 214, 237, 300, 318, 322, 345
    - HTML 55
    - IP Office Administrator Applications CD 55
    - IP Office Phone Manager 55
    - S0 190
    - Voicemail Pro application 55
  - Contains IP Office Administration Applications CD 64
  - Control Unit 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 24, 26, 30, 32, 33, 35, 38, 39, 41, 44, 61, 65, 66, 73, 75, 76, 83, 85, 86, 87, 93, 95, 96, 98, 100, 102, 105, 107, 109, 113, 115, 116, 117, 124, 129, 133, 134, 135, 137, 138, 140, 142, 143, 145, 149, 171, 174, 175, 177, 178, 183, 186, 190, 193, 196, 198, 202, 204, 205, 207, 210, 212, 214, 219, 220, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 330, 332, 337, 342, 349, 350, 351, 352, 373
  - control unit holds 10, 12, 14
  - Control Unit IP Address 87, 117, 149
  - Control Unit Power Up 93
  - control unit running 75, 95
  - Control Unit Summary 18
  - control unit upgrade 113, 171
  - Controlling Ancillary 378
  - copy 44, 49, 55, 60, 75, 83, 95, 113, 122, 134, 138, 171, 175, 194, 200, 202, 204, 205, 304, 309, 312
    - Avaya IP Office CD's 55
    - CD 55
    - for receiving 75, 95
    - IP Office CD 60, 122
    - IP Office's 202, 204
    - License.csv file 138
    - Manager 83, 113, 134, 171
    - Monitor 49, 304
  - Core Software 44, 60, 75, 83, 95, 113, 122, 134, 171, 177, 196, 200, 205, 207, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 303
    - Erasing 205
    - Upgrading 83, 113, 134, 171
  - correct 14, 76, 78, 87, 96, 98, 100, 102, 107, 117, 123, 124, 128, 138, 140, 149, 160, 168, 180, 187, 190, 194, 205, 304, 379
    - CastleRock SNMPc V5.0.8 194
  - Correct Parts Have Been Delivered 123
    - Check 123
  - Country Code 191
  - Course Code 59
  - CPCS-CCC 33, 352
  - CPU LED 129, 135, 177
    - Checking 135
    - Observe 129
    - sequence 135
  - CPU Revision 0x0900 202, 204, 205
  - Create Configuration tool 66
  - Create New Config 66
  - Create Short 190
  - creates 65, 66, 67, 73, 76, 83, 86, 93, 96, 113, 116, 134, 137, 160, 171, 174, 190, 191, 193, 205, 315
    - BOOTP 83, 113, 134, 171
    - Incoming Call Routing 191
    - IP Route 174
    - New Configuration 66
    - Normal Service 174
    - System Short Code 190
    - User 174
    - WAN Link 174
  - Croatia 229
  - Crosshead 121
  - Crystal Report Writer 295, 324
  - CS 318
  - CS22.2 No.42 33, 352
  - CSU/DSU 221
  - CSV 65, 67
  - CSV file 67
  - CSV File Formats 67
  - CTI 54, 55, 310, 324, 325, 352
  - CTI Applications 54
  - CTI Licenses 55, 352
  - CTI Link Pro 54, 310, 324, 325, 352
  - CTI Link Pro RFA 54
    - Purchasing 54
  - Ctl-A 348, 351
  - Ctl-B 348, 351
  - Ctrl 326
  - CTS 201, 339, 348, 349, 350
  - CU 328, 329, 352
  - Current Clock Source 76, 96, 164
    - Viewing 164
  - Current Service Pack 318
  - Customer Helpline 376
  - Customer Helpline 24 376
  - customer's 7
    - establish 7
  - customised 51, 312
  - CW1308 35, 330
  - Czech Republic 33, 352
- ## D
- damage 33, 38, 55, 61, 73, 93, 123, 128, 129, 157, 178, 288, 289, 374
    - EU24/EU24BL 157, 288, 289
  - dan 47, 217
  - Danish 47, 217, 306, 308, 311, 312
  - Dark Grey 253, 254, 255, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 352
  - Data Carrier Detect 201, 339, 348, 349, 350
  - Data Set Ready 201, 339, 348, 349, 350
  - Data Terminal Ready 201, 339, 348, 349, 350
  - Database Integration 51
  - Datacenter Server 318
  - Date 42, 76, 96, 185, 202, 205, 309, 312, 318, 327, 352
    - Availability 318
  - Daughter Card Ports 136, 225, 228, 229
  - DC 208, 210, 212, 214, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 337, 378
  - DC I/P 210, 212, 214, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 337
  - DC I/P Port 337
  - DC Input 378
  - DCD 201, 339, 348, 349, 350

- D-channels 22, 230, 323
- DCP 253, 254, 255, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283
- Debug 202, 205
- Declaration 373, 379, 380
  - Conformity 373, 379, 380
- DECT 43, 55, 322, 352
- DECT DCU 322
- DECT Integration 55, 322, 352
- Default Control Unit Power Up 73
- Default Data 315
- Default Music on Hold Tones 175
- Default On 187
- Default Short Codes 183
- Defaulted IP Office Control Unit 132
  - Direct Connection 132
- Defaulting 44, 87, 117, 138, 149, 202, 204
  - 192.168.42.1. 202
  - Configuration 204
  - IP Office 202
  - IP Office's 204
  - IP500 44, 138
  - Security 204
  - Security Settings 204
  - System Status Application 87, 117, 149
  - Validate 44
- Delta 7, 19, 52, 53, 55, 122, 198, 294, 295, 301, 315, 318
- Delta Server 7, 19, 52, 53, 55, 122, 198, 294, 295, 301, 315, 318
  - viewing 301
- Delta Server 4.0 318
- Delta Server application 315, 318
  - access 315
- Delta Server PWA 301
- Delta Server SMDR Output 52, 301
- Denmark 47
- Depth 18, 53, 208, 210, 212, 214, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 295
- Deselect Feature Key Server 71, 91, 130
- Design 10, 12, 14, 35, 39, 53, 59, 61, 124, 152, 180, 210, 212, 214, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 257, 259, 260, 290, 295, 324, 330, 374, 379
- Desk Mounting 152
- deskiers 322
- desking 158, 160
  - login 160
- Details 8, 9, 32, 33, 35, 47, 49, 50, 52, 53, 55, 59, 60, 64, 83, 85, 87, 102, 107, 113, 115, 117, 140, 142, 149, 152, 158, 171, 174, 193, 194, 196, 205, 217, 220, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 253, 255, 256, 257, 258, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 269, 273, 274, 275, 276, 278, 281, 282, 283, 284, 287, 288, 289, 290, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 311, 315, 318, 330, 336, 347, 352, 371
- deu 47, 217
- Device Type 193
- DevLink 54, 55
- DEVLink Pro 54, 310, 325
- DHCP 56, 73, 86, 93, 109, 116, 132, 137, 187, 243, 259, 260, 315
- DHCP IP Addresses 73, 86, 93, 116, 137
- DHCP Mode 73, 86, 93, 116, 137
- Dial Channels 191
- Dial In 174
- Dial In On 174
- DialEmergency 380
- DialIn 73, 86, 93, 116, 137
- DID 123456 190
- DID's 190
- diffserv-dscp-tc.mib 194
- DIFFSERV-MIB 194
- DIFFSERV-MIB needs 194
- DIFFSERV-MIB.mib 194
- diffserv-mib-hpov.mib 194
- Digital Extension 12, 14, 162, 352
- Digital Extension Users Using Structured Cabling 162
- Digital Leased Circuit 243
- Digital Station 10, 18, 26, 33, 34, 37, 38, 43, 82, 107, 111, 136, 140, 147, 178, 198, 212, 214, 226, 233, 235, 249, 332, 338, 352
- Digital Station 16 Module 34
- Digital Station 30 33, 34, 249, 352
- Digital Station 30 Module 34
- Digital Station Connections 249
- Digital Station Expansion 38, 178, 332
- Digital Station Module Connections 235
- Digital Station Ports 136, 212, 214, 226, 233, 235, 249
- Digital Station V1 33, 352
- Digital Station V1/V2 338
- Digital Station V2 26, 33, 107, 140, 233, 352
- Digital Station V2 Connections 233
- Digital Telephone Ports 378
- Direct Connection 132, 208, 210, 212, 214, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 342
  - Defaulted IP Office Control Unit 132
- Disabled 20, 54, 163, 166, 208
- display 34, 42, 44, 47, 49, 50, 53, 71, 75, 83, 85, 86, 91, 95, 113, 115, 116, 130, 133, 134, 137, 142, 152, 158, 171, 174, 185, 189, 253, 254, 255, 257, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 294, 295, 303, 308, 309, 315, 382
  - IP Office 85, 115, 142
  - Protocol 315
- Display All Buttons 158
  - selecting 158
- display Upgrading firmware 152
- distances 35, 330
  - DS 35, 330
- distributor/supplier 376
- Distributors 123, 376
- Disturb 54
- DNS 315
- DoC 373, 379, 380
- Documentation 7, 8, 55, 60, 85, 115, 122, 123, 138, 142, 151, 371
  - Read 122
- Documentation CDs 55
- Documentation CD's 55
- Domain Name Server 315
- dongle 10, 12, 14, 41, 49, 61, 71, 91, 128, 130, 186, 187, 201, 302, 339, 352
  - uses 41, 186
- Door 183, 184, 208, 210, 212, 214, 341
- Door Release 183
- Double-click System 196, 197
- DROP 253, 254, 255, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283
- DS 12, 16, 18, 20, 26, 35, 38, 43, 152, 157, 178, 179, 197, 198, 210, 212, 214, 226, 233, 235, 249, 253, 254, 255, 263, 264, 265, 266, 273, 274, 275, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 290, 329, 330, 338, 345, 352
  - change 198
  - distances 35, 330
- DS Phone Extensions 38, 178

- DS Phone IROB Installation 179
- DS Ports 152, 157, 253, 254, 255, 263, 264, 265, 273, 274, 275, 281, 282, 283, 284, 338, 345
- DS V1 233, 266
- DS V2 233, 266
- DS V2 supersedes 233
- DS16 233, 235
- DS16 V2 233
- DS30 233, 235, 249, 265, 266
- DS30 V2 233, 249
- DSR 201, 339, 348, 349, 350
- DSS 266, 287, 352
- Power Supply Unit 352
- DSS Add-On 266
- DSS4450 352
- DSSS 259, 260
- DT 214
- DTE 18, 41, 186, 200, 201, 202, 204, 205, 233, 237, 339, 378
- DTE Cables 201, 339
- DTE Port 18, 200, 202, 204, 205, 378
- DTE Port Overview 200
- DTMF 54, 228
- DTMFA 227
- DTMFC 227
- DTMFD 227
- DTR 201, 339, 348, 349, 350
- Dual PCMCIA 214
- Dual PRI 16, 18, 20, 102, 124, 212, 224, 332
- Dual PRI E1 20, 124, 224
- Dual PRI E1R2 RJ45 20, 124, 224
- Dual PRI T1 20, 124, 224
- During 47, 64, 315
- Staging Installation 64
- Voicemail Pro 47
- VoIP 315
- Dutch 47, 55, 217, 301, 303, 306, 308, 311, 312
- Dutch, French 301, 303
- DVD 55, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 311, 312, 352
- dv pots.bin 237, 251
- E**
- E 128
- E1 22, 166, 168, 198, 222, 223, 230, 347, 352
- including 347
- E1 PRI 22, 166, 168, 222, 230, 352
- E1 PRI Trunk Cards 222
- E1R2 22, 24, 102, 164, 166, 198, 223, 230, 352, 375
- E1-R2 22
- E1-R2 347
- E1R2 Coaxial Connections 102
- Grounding 102
- E1R2 PRI 223, 230
- E1R2 PRI Trunk Cards 223
- E1R2 signalling 24
- E1R2 Trunks 102, 166
- E1R2PRI 223
- E911 210, 212, 214, 352
- earthed 32, 33, 38, 105, 111, 143, 178, 179, 180, 182, 187, 208, 210, 212, 214, 233, 237, 241, 243, 247, 249, 251, 352
- Earthed 3-Pin 210, 212, 233, 237, 241, 243, 247, 249, 251
- earthed 3-pin 60W 210, 212, 233, 237, 241, 243, 247, 249, 251
- earthed ducting 38, 178
- Earthed Power Cords 33, 208, 352
- eBLF 308, 322, 352
- EConf 315
- ECSConference/ConferenceService.exe 299
- Edit 66, 67, 71, 91, 130, 152, 158, 160, 166, 174, 202, 204
- WANPort 174
- EEC 379
- eg 315
- EGP 315
- Electrical 8, 34, 63, 123, 371, 374
- electrical hazard 374
- Electronic Equipment 8, 371
- Elevated Operating Ambient 105, 143
- email 50, 51, 60, 193, 299, 312, 315
- E-mail 318
- Voicemail 318
- email SNMP 193
- SMTP 193
- Embedded Voicemail 7, 10, 12, 18, 19, 30, 47, 51, 57, 71, 91, 122, 130, 212, 217, 352
- Embedded Voicemail Installation 7, 122, 217
- refer 217
- Embedded Voicemail Memory Cards 10, 12, 30, 212, 217, 352
- EMC 373, 379, 382
- EMC Cautions 379
- China 379
- EMC Directive 379
- EMEA 352
- Emergency Numbers 380
- EN 609050 378
- ena 47
- Enable BootP Server 205
- Enables 3rd 312, 327
- Enables CCC Report Designer 295, 324
- Enables CTI Link Pro 310, 325
- Enables IMS 312, 327
- Enables IMS Pro 327
- Enables IP Office 305, 327
- Enables Phone Manager Pro 306, 322, 326
- Enables Phone Manager Pro IP softphone 306, 326
- Enables synchronization 312, 327
- MS Exchange email 312, 327
- Enables VB Script 312, 327
- Enables Voicemail Pro 312, 327
- Enables VPNM 312, 327
- Enabling 42, 185, 196, 197, 295, 322, 324
- Agent Rostering Interface 295, 324
- CBC application 322
- CCC Server 295
- CCC Server application 324
- IP Office 322
- IP Office Conferencing Center application 322
- SNMP 196
- SNMP Trap Sending 197
- Software 42, 185
- Software Features 42, 185
- encoding 259, 260
- G711 259, 260
- Enconf 315
- Encrypted Password 174
- END 194
- eng 47, 217
- Engineer's Toolkit CD 64, 373
- English 55, 191, 299, 301, 303, 305, 306, 308, 311, 312
- English UK 311
- English-UK 217
- English-US 217
- ens 47
- Ensure 7, 34, 49, 61, 63, 71, 76, 78, 83, 91, 96, 98, 100, 102, 105, 107, 111, 113, 122, 123, 124, 128, 130, 134, 138, 143, 147, 152, 162, 163, 164, 168, 171, 174, 175, 182, 184, 187, 189, 197, 200, 202, 204, 205, 304, 341, 373, 375, 377, 380
- Enter AT 202, 204, 205
- Enter AT-DEBUG 202, 205
- Enter AT-SECURITYRESETALL 204
- Enter AT-X 205
- Enter ipconfig 132
- entering 76, 96, 197, 326
- IP Address 76, 96, 197
- Phone Manager 326
- Port 197
- Enterprise Portal 60
- ENTITY-MIB 194
- enu 47, 217

- Environmental requirements 63, 143, 145
- enz 47
- EQUIPMENT 123, 179
  - Unpacking 123
- Equipment Availability 8, 371
- Equipment Checklist 123
- Equipment Required 73, 78, 80, 82, 93, 98, 100, 102, 105, 107, 109, 111, 124, 129, 132, 138, 140, 147, 152
- Erase 83, 113, 171, 177, 200, 202, 204, 205
  - IP Office's 202
- Erase All 177
- Erase Configuration 177, 202
- eraseconfig 202
- erasenvconfig 202
- Erasing 202, 205
  - Configuration 202
  - Core Software 205
  - Operational Software 205
- Error 123, 135, 136, 138, 160, 162, 189, 194, 197, 198, 226, 227
- error warning 160
- es 198
- esl 47
- esm 47, 217
- eso 47
- esp 47, 217
- esr 47
- ess 47, 217
- establish 7, 102, 196, 197, 198, 223
  - customer's 7
- Estimated Date 318
  - Availability 318
- esv 47
- Ethernet 10, 12, 16, 32, 208, 210, 212, 214, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 318, 332
- Ethernet LAN 12, 16, 212
- ethernet switch 12, 208, 210, 212, 214, 332
- Ethernet WAN 10, 16
- ETSI 24, 26, 221, 229, 241, 247
- ETSI BRI 26, 221, 241, 247
- ETSI BRI S0-interface 241, 247
- EU 220, 229, 352, 382
- EU24 32, 157, 255, 270, 271, 272, 275, 277, 278, 279, 280, 288, 289, 291, 338, 352
- EU24 1XU-A Expansion Module 288, 352
- EU24 Add-On 157
  - Installing 157
- EU24/EU24BL 32, 157, 288, 289
  - damage 157, 288, 289
  - Installing 157
- EU24/EU24BL Phone add-ons 32
- EU24BL 157, 270, 271, 272, 277, 278, 279, 280, 289, 352
- EU24BL 2XU-A Backlighted Expansion Module 289, 352
- Europe only 59, 284, 285, 286
- European 8, 191, 229, 261, 262, 352, 371
- European ISDN 191
- European Union 8, 229, 371
- Europlug 33, 352
- event log 193
- Events 49, 54, 193, 194, 197, 198, 231, 245
- events occur 193
- events traps 193
- EVM 47
- Excel 67
  - except 14, 16, 22, 24, 26, 32, 35, 57, 102, 105, 107, 124, 158, 200, 210, 212, 216, 218, 221, 222, 226, 228, 229, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 330, 332, 340, 345, 352
  - IP500 Carrier 228, 229
  - IP500 Legacy Card Carrier 22, 124
  - Small Office Edition 16, 105, 218
  - Small Office Edition Embedded Voicemail 57
  - WAN3 14, 107, 340
  - WAN3 10/100 26
- Excessive RENs 383
- Exchange 51, 102, 162, 164, 168, 223, 312, 315, 327
- excluding 66, 323
  - SCN 323
  - WAN3 66
- existing 8, 105, 107, 109, 140, 143, 145, 151, 157, 179, 243, 312, 327, 371
  - CAT5 157
  - IP Office 105, 107, 109, 140, 143, 145
  - Network Terminating 243
  - Network Terminating Module 243
  - RJ45 151, 179
  - SAP 8, 371
  - Voicemail Pro 312, 327
- exp 67
- Expansion 12, 18, 26, 32, 33, 35, 38, 39, 44, 61, 65, 66, 105, 107, 109, 111, 113, 140, 147, 152, 158, 160, 171, 178, 190, 198, 200, 208, 210, 212, 214, 219, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 265, 266, 330, 332, 337, 338, 340, 342, 344, 345, 352, 378
- Expansion Interconnect 107, 140, 208, 210, 212, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 340
- Expansion Interconnect Cable 107, 140, 208, 210, 212, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 340
- Expansion Module 26, 32, 33, 38, 39, 44, 61, 105, 107, 111, 160, 178, 190, 198, 208, 210, 212, 219, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 340, 342, 344, 352, 378
  - Adding 107
- EXPANSION Ports 18, 107, 140, 340
- Expansion Units 152, 158
- expiry 42, 185
- Export 65, 67
- Exporting 67
  - Settings 67
- Exporting Settings 67
- Express Edition 140
- EXT O/P 183, 184, 341
- EXT O/P Port 183, 184, 341
- Extension 12, 14, 16, 19, 20, 22, 30, 35, 37, 38, 49, 50, 54, 56, 67, 73, 82, 86, 93, 98, 107, 111, 116, 124, 137, 140, 147, 152, 160, 162, 175, 178, 179, 180, 198, 208, 210, 212, 214, 219, 220, 225, 226, 227, 228, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 305, 306, 322, 330, 338, 344, 345, 352, 374
  - change 160
- Extension Number 152, 160
- Changing 160
- Extension Users 162
  - Swapping 162
- Exterior Gateway Protocol 315
- External 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 19, 24, 26, 32, 33, 37, 38, 39, 44, 56, 61, 66, 73, 76, 82, 93, 96, 107, 109, 111, 140, 143, 147, 163, 175, 178, 179, 180, 182, 183, 184, 201, 208, 210, 212, 214, 227, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 332, 334, 335, 336, 337, 339, 340, 341, 348, 350, 352, 378
- External Aerial Connection Cable 352
- External Aerials 352
- External Beam Aerial 352
- external blanking 210, 212
- External Clock 348, 350
- External Control 378
- external dialing 163
- External Dipole Aerial 352

- External Expansion 10, 12, 14, 16, 19, 24, 26, 32, 33, 37, 39, 44, 61, 66, 76, 82, 96, 107, 111, 140, 143, 147, 201, 208, 210, 212, 243, 339, 340, 348, 352
- External Expansion Module 12, 14, 19, 26, 37, 39, 61, 82, 107, 111, 140, 147, 340
  - Adding 140
- External MOH 175
- External O/P Switch Port 18
- External Output 38, 178, 183
  - Using 183
- External Output Switch 38, 178, 183
- external switching 184, 341
- Extn201 73, 86, 93, 116, 137
- Extn202 73, 86, 93, 116, 137
- F**
- F 129, 194, 350
- Fallback 47, 164
  - set 164
- Far Control 191
  - Near Camera 191
- Fax 57
- Fax Calls 57
- Fax Transport 57
- FCC 259, 260, 348, 377, 379, 383
- FCC Notification 383
- FCC Part 68 348, 377, 383
- FCC Rules 377, 379
  - Part 15 379
- Feature 10, 12, 14, 18, 19, 34, 41, 42, 50, 51, 54, 55, 61, 64, 66, 67, 71, 91, 128, 130, 135, 138, 157, 160, 183, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 194, 197, 208, 210, 212, 214, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 292, 302, 306, 312, 318, 322, 329, 352
- Feature Key 10, 12, 14, 34, 41, 55, 61, 64, 71, 91, 128, 130, 135, 138, 186, 187, 188, 189, 197, 230, 253, 273, 302, 318, 329, 352
  - Inserting 128
  - missing 135
- Feature Key dongle 10, 12, 14, 41, 49, 61, 71, 91, 128, 130, 138, 186, 187, 188, 189, 230, 302, 329, 352
  - IP Office 71, 91, 130
  - Plug 189
  - types 12
- Feature Key Dongle Serial Number 138, 329, 352
- Feature Key Dongles 41, 186, 352
- Feature Key Server 34, 55, 64, 71, 91, 130, 187, 189, 197, 302, 318
  - part 189
- Feature Key Server PC 187, 318
- Feature Key Server PC's 34
- Feature Key Type 41, 186
- Federal Communications Commission 379
- Ferrograph 295, 324
- FIC 383
- Find 194
- Finish 66
- Finland 47
- Finnish 217, 306, 308, 311, 312
- firewall 133, 205, 210, 315
- firewall blocking TFTP 205
- Firewall Exceptions 315
- Firmware 152, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 268, 269, 273, 274, 275, 277, 278, 281, 282, 322, 352
  - Checking 152
- FIRMWARE UPDATE IN PROGRESS 152
- Firmware Upgrade 352
- Firmware Upgrade RS232 Serial Cable 352
- Fitting 57, 78, 80, 98, 100, 102, 124, 224
  - IP400 124
  - IP400 VCM 57
  - IP500 224
  - Modem Cards 100
  - Objective 98, 100, 124
  - Trunk Cards 78, 102
  - Trunk Interface Cards 102
  - VCM Cards 98
  - WAN 78
  - Z-shaped 80
- Fixed IP 44, 83, 113, 132, 171, 187, 202, 205
- fixing 80, 98, 100, 102
  - IP Office 98, 100, 102
  - Z-bracket 80
- Flash 44, 73, 93, 124, 129, 135, 136, 177, 202, 204, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 342
- RED 135
- Flow Control 201, 339
- following 12, 16, 24, 26, 49, 196, 295, 324, 375, 380
  - Bearer Capabilities 380
  - CCC 295, 324
  - IP Office 16, 196, 375
  - IP400 12, 24, 26
  - IP500 26
- Windows 49
  - For 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24, 26, 30, 32, 33, 34, 35, 37, 38, 39, 42, 44, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 59, 60, 61, 63, 64, 66, 67, 71, 73, 75, 76, 78, 80, 82, 83, 85, 86, 87, 91, 93, 95, 96, 98, 100, 102, 105, 107, 109, 111, 113, 115, 116, 117, 121, 122, 123, 124, 128, 129, 130, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 140, 142, 143, 145, 147, 149, 151, 152, 157, 158, 160, 162, 163, 164, 166, 168, 171, 174, 175, 177, 178, 179, 180, 183, 184, 185, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 193, 194, 196, 197, 198, 200, 201, 205, 207, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 256, 257, 258, 260, 261, 262, 263, 265, 266, 267, 268, 271, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 315, 318, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 345, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 371, 373, 374, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 382, 383
    - new 75, 76, 95, 96, 113, 134, 171
  - for achieving 59
  - for crimping 111, 147
    - cable 111, 147
  - for ease 336
  - for free-standing 63
  - for hearing 47
  - for input 332
  - for IPv6 315
  - for out-of-building 212, 214
  - for out-of-building extensions 214
  - for providing 52
  - for Push-to-talk 260
  - for receiving 75, 95
    - copy 75, 95
  - for RFP32 352
  - for securing 39, 80
    - module 39
  - for selecting 158
    - required button action 158
  - for supporting 130
  - for switching external 208, 210, 212, 214
  - for Upgrade 44, 352
    - unit 44
  - for viewing 301

Forcing 152  
 Software Upgrade 152  
 form 9, 38, 44, 54, 65, 73, 86,  
 93, 116, 137, 174, 178, 179,  
 180, 208, 210, 212, 214, 312,  
 327, 342  
 IP Office Phone Barrier  
 Boxes 180  
 IROB 146E 179  
 parts take 44  
 Forward All 54  
 Forward All Calls 54  
 Forward on Busy 54  
 Forward on No Answer 54  
 fra 47, 217  
 Frame-Relay 198  
 France 47  
 frb 47  
 frc 47, 217  
 Free EXPANSION 107, 140  
 Free LAN 109  
 French 47, 55, 217, 299, 301,  
 306, 308, 311, 312  
 French Canadian 47, 301, 311,  
 312  
 French, German 47, 55, 299  
 French-Canadian 217  
 frs 47  
 FSK 227  
 Functional Grounding 107,  
 109, 140  
 functions 47, 51, 55, 124, 157,  
 207, 214, 217, 239, 241, 243,  
 247, 268, 270, 271, 272, 273,  
 274, 275, 276, 277, 279, 280,  
 289, 312, 315, 380  
 2402D 273  
 2410 274  
 2420 275  
 4601 276  
 4620SW 271, 279, 280  
 4621SW 272  
 Further Information 376  
 FWV 152

**G**  
 G.711 225  
 G.723 225  
 G711 259, 260  
 encoding 259, 260  
 G723 57  
 G729 225  
 G729a 57  
 Gain 212, 377  
 Gang 258  
 Gatekeeper 315  
 General 9, 18, 85, 115, 121,  
 124, 136, 142, 163, 225, 299,  
 315, 322, 352  
 General Licenses 352  
 General Notes 124  
 General Routing  
 Encapsulation 315  
 generates 54, 138, 198, 352,  
 379

License.csv file 138  
 German 47, 55, 217, 299, 303,  
 306, 308, 311, 312  
 Germany 47  
 get 34, 202, 204, 205  
 Loader 202, 204, 205  
 VA 34  
 grant 382  
 Telepermit 382  
 GRE 315  
 Greece 47  
 Greek 47, 311, 312  
 Green 35, 37, 73, 82, 93, 105,  
 107, 109, 111, 129, 132, 135,  
 136, 140, 147, 177, 179, 180,  
 182, 225, 226, 228, 229, 230,  
 330, 342, 352  
 Green Blink 230  
 Green Fast Flash 230  
 Green On 129, 136, 225, 226,  
 228, 229, 230  
 Green/White 335, 336, 342,  
 347  
 green/yellow 82, 111, 147, 182  
 Connect 182  
 GREY 342  
 Ground/Chassis 184, 341  
 Grounding 102, 107, 109, 140  
 E1R2 Coaxial Connections  
 102  
 Requirements 107, 109,  
 140  
 Group 50, 51, 53, 54, 60, 67,  
 76, 85, 96, 115, 142, 160, 194,  
 233, 294, 295, 308, 311, 322

**H**  
 H 130, 191, 194, 350  
 H.323 56, 259, 260, 315, 322  
 H.323 Discovery 315  
 H.323 IP 56  
 H.323 RAS 315  
 H.323 Signalling 315  
 H.323 VoIP 315  
 H.323/H.245 315  
 H.323Ras 315  
 H323 19, 43, 323  
 H323 IP 19, 43, 323  
 H323 IP Phones 43  
 HAC 152  
 Handset 152, 253, 254, 255,  
 261, 262, 267, 268, 269, 270,  
 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276,  
 277, 278, 279, 280, 352  
 Handset Accessories 352  
 Handset Cords 25ft 352  
 Handset HIP QD CORD 352  
 handsfree 50, 253, 254, 255,  
 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266,  
 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272,  
 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278,  
 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284,  
 285, 286, 306  
 Hard Disk Space 303, 309  
 hardphones 43

Hardware/Hardware 191  
 Hardware/Software 191  
 Hazard Symbol 374  
 HD 71, 91, 130, 293, 294, 295,  
 299, 300, 301, 302, 304, 306,  
 308, 311, 312  
 HD Space 71, 91, 130  
 HEADSET 253, 254, 255, 264,  
 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270,  
 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276,  
 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282,  
 283  
 healthcare 257  
 Hearing 175, 383  
 Aid Compatibility 383  
 system's 175  
 Hello 202, 205  
 Help 85, 115, 142, 152, 326,  
 376  
 Helpline 376  
 call 376  
 Hence, Avaya IP Office 374  
 Highlands Ranch 376  
 HOLD 162, 253, 254, 255,  
 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269,  
 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275,  
 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281,  
 282, 283  
 HOLD RESET 162  
 holdmusic.wav 175  
 holdmusic.wav file 175  
 look 175  
 holes 63, 78, 80, 98, 100, 102,  
 124  
 IP400 124  
 IP500 124  
 Home Basic 306, 308, 309,  
 318  
 Home Premium 306, 308, 309,  
 318  
 Homologation Statements 373  
 Hong Kong 47  
 hosting 71, 91, 130  
 Parallel 71, 91, 130  
 hot-swappable 214  
 housing 374  
 Avaya IP Office 374  
 HP Open View Network Node  
 Manager 194  
 HP OpenView 49, 193  
 HP OpenView Network Node  
 Manager 6.41 193  
 HTML 55  
 Contains 55  
 HTTP 315  
 Humidity 63, 143  
 Operating 143  
 hun 47  
 Hungarian 47, 311, 312  
 Hungary 47  
 Hunt 51, 53, 67, 73, 86, 93,  
 116, 137, 160, 294, 300, 322  
 Hunt Group 51, 67, 73, 86, 93,  
 116, 137, 160, 300

- HuntGroup 67  
HyperTerminal 201, 202, 204, 205, 339
- I**
- i.e IP400 Office Quad Analog Trunk-LS 383  
IC 379, 380  
Iceland 47  
Icelandic 47  
ICLID 168, 228  
    allows 168  
    incoming 168  
ICMP 315  
    IPv6 315  
ID 190  
Idle 67, 175  
IE 6.0 318  
IE6 318  
    running 318  
IE6.0 318  
IEC60320 C13 32, 33, 208, 210, 212, 214, 233, 237, 241, 243, 247, 249, 251, 352  
IEC60320 C13 Earthed Power Cord 208  
IEC60320 C13 Power Cord 210, 212, 214, 233, 237, 241, 243, 247, 249, 251  
IEC60320 C13/C14 352  
IEC60320 C7 32, 33, 231, 235, 239, 245, 352  
IEC60320 C7 Power Cord 33, 231, 235, 239, 245  
IEC60950 373  
IEEE 802.3af Power 32  
IEEE 802.3af Power-over-Ethernet 352  
    providing 352  
IEUS v18 191  
IGMP 315  
IGP 315  
II 179  
IKE 315  
Immediate Reboot 177  
Implementation 7, 59  
Import 65, 67  
Import/Export 67, 138  
IMPORTANT 63, 231, 245, 333  
IMPORTANT SAFETY  
INSTRUCTIONS 63  
Importing 67, 138  
    License.csv File 138  
    Settings 67  
IMS 51, 55, 312, 318  
IMS Gateway Service 312  
IMS interoperates 51, 312  
IMS Voice Service 312  
includes 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 14, 16, 20, 22, 24, 32, 33, 34, 39, 44, 49, 55, 56, 57, 59, 60, 61, 63, 66, 67, 73, 83, 85, 93, 102, 105, 107, 113, 115, 122, 123, 129, 138, 140, 142, 143, 145, 152, 160, 162, 171, 177, 180, 193, 194, 196, 197, 202, 212, 214, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 263, 268, 271, 272, 277, 289, 291, 293, 304, 309, 315, 318, 335, 338, 345, 347, 352, 371, 375, 376, 379  
    A1 379  
    Avaya IP 352  
    backlight 289  
    E1 347  
    IP 225, 226  
    IP Office 60, 122, 315  
    IP Office 403 60  
    Product 376  
    Reset button 177  
    RJ45 180, 352  
    SNMPv2-SMI.mib 194  
    WAN3 113, 171  
includes screws 39, 105  
includes screws for 39, 105  
includes terminating 335  
Incoming 30, 73, 86, 93, 116, 137, 168, 190, 191  
    Call Routes 73, 86, 93, 116, 137  
    ICLID 168  
    Line Group 191  
    Number 190  
    V.90 30  
Incoming Call Routes 190  
Incoming Call Routing 190, 191  
    Create 191  
Incoming Password 174  
incoming/outgoing 177  
ind 47  
Ind-A 348, 351  
Ind-B 348, 351  
IndexInteger 194  
India 47, 229, 255, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 282, 283, 288, 289, 291, 292, 352  
Indicator 201, 259, 260, 339, 348, 349, 350  
Individual 9, 34, 35, 39, 56, 59, 60, 160, 190, 207, 330  
Individual Equipment 34  
Individual User's Extension Number 160  
    Changing 160  
Industry Canada 379, 380  
Industry Canada Notification 380  
Industry Canada Terminal Equipment Technical Specifications 379, 380  
inet-address-mib.mib 194  
Information Required 71, 75, 76, 83, 86, 91, 95, 96, 113, 116, 123, 130, 134, 137, 152, 171  
Information Web Sites 122  
Initializing 136, 226, 227  
INPUT 208  
Inserting 71, 91, 124, 128, 130, 189  
    Feature Key 128  
    IP Office Administrator Applications CD 71, 91, 130, 189  
    proceed 124  
inserting\_the\_feature\_key.htm 128  
install 71, 91  
    Objective 71, 91, 130  
Installation 7, 8, 12, 14, 22, 33, 35, 37, 38, 44, 61, 63, 64, 65, 66, 71, 73, 76, 80, 82, 86, 87, 91, 93, 96, 102, 105, 107, 109, 111, 116, 117, 122, 123, 124, 129, 130, 137, 138, 140, 143, 147, 149, 151, 152, 162, 178, 184, 187, 189, 194, 216, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 231, 233, 237, 245, 249, 251, 291, 330, 333, 341, 352, 371, 374, 377  
    tool during 76, 96  
Installation Manual 122, 151  
Installation Requirements 80, 105, 107, 109, 140, 187  
installation training 7  
installer's 7  
Installing 7, 50, 55, 71, 91, 98, 100, 124, 130, 151, 152, 157, 194, 291  
    201B 291  
    2400/5400 152  
    2400/5400 Series Phones 152  
    Admin Applications 71, 91  
    Carrier Card 124  
    EU24 Add-On 157  
    EU24/EU24BL 157  
    IP Office 7  
    IP Office Admin Applications 71, 91, 130  
    IP Office Conference Center application 55  
    IP Office MIB Files 194  
    IP Office TAPI 50  
    IP500 Trunk Daughter Card 124  
    Modem Cards 100  
    Phones 151  
    VCM Cards 98  
Integral Modules 198  
Integral Voicemail 51  
Integral WAN Port 18  
Integrated Messaging 312, 327, 352  
Integrated Messaging Pro 318, 329, 352

Integrated Messaging Service 51, 312	IP Address 52, 66, 73, 76, 86, 93, 96, 109, 116, 132, 137, 152, 174, 187, 189, 193, 197, 202, 205, 243, 301, 315	219, 220, 221, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 292, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 315, 318, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 344, 345, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 373, 375, 380, 382
INTEGRATED-SERVICES- MIB 194	Enter 76, 96, 197 system 205	access 85, 115, 142 allows 216, 305 Avaya DS 47 back 42, 109, 138, 158, 160, 162, 185, 188, 189, 196, 197, 200 cause 66 Center Service 315 change 7, 162 Conferencing Center Server Service 315 configuring 200 connect 43, 66, 109, 140 connecting 340 copy 202, 204 defaults 202, 204 display 85, 115, 142 Enables 322 erases 202 existing 105, 107, 109, 140, 143, 145 Feature Key dongle 71, 91, 130 fixing 98, 100, 102 following 16, 196, 375 including 60, 122, 315 Installing 7 IP Office Technical Bulletin 83, 113, 134, 171 level 44, 134 levels 7 maintain 49 Manager 83, 113, 134, 171 matching 66 monitoring 304 order 196 part 7, 44, 49, 122, 303 PC 44 power 78, 98, 100, 102, 107, 109, 124, 128, 140, 202, 204, 205 provide 163 rear 340 receive 138, 188, 189 repeating 140
Intel Celeron 318	IP address polling 193	
Intel Pentium 318	IP Audio Enabled 306, 326, 352	
interconnection 332, 378	IP DECT 7, 19, 43, 59, 122, 151, 193, 261, 262, 328, 352	
Interior Gateway Protocol 315	station 328	
Internal Cards 352	IP DECT Base Stations 352	
Internal Clock Source 76, 96	IP DECT Headset for 3701/3711 352	
Internal Modem 216, 352	IP DECT Installation 7, 122, 151, 193	
Internal Modem Card 216, 352	Refer 193	
Internal Music on Hold File 175	IP DECT Installation Manual 151, 193	
Internet Control Message 315	IP DECT IPO MOBMGR 328, 352	
Internet Explorer 6.0 294, 295, 299, 318	IP DECT IPO MOBMGR 3-5 RFP LIC 328, 352	
Internet Group Management 315	IP DECT IPO UPG TO 328, 352	
Interquartz Gemini 43	IP DECT License Conversion 352	
Intranet Service 174	IP DECT Licenses 328, 352	
become 174	IP DECT RFP's 352	
Intuity 327	IP DECT Survey Kit 352	
Intuity Audix 327	IP DECT Trunks 19	
Invalid 67, 138, 188, 189	IP Device 56, 57	
IP 7, 9, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 19, 20, 22, 24, 26, 30, 32, 34, 35, 37, 38, 39, 41, 42, 43, 44, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 59, 60, 61, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 71, 73, 75, 76, 78, 82, 83, 85, 86, 87, 91, 93, 95, 96, 98, 100, 102, 105, 107, 109, 111, 113, 115, 116, 117, 121, 122, 124, 128, 129, 130, 132, 133, 134, 135, 137, 138, 140, 142, 143, 145, 147, 149, 151, 152, 157, 158, 160, 162, 163, 164, 166, 168, 171, 174, 175, 177, 178, 179, 180, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 191, 193, 194, 196, 197, 198, 200, 201, 202, 204, 205, 207, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 217, 218, 219, 221, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 292, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 315, 318, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 344, 345, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 373, 375, 380, 382		
including 225, 226	IP Device 57	
played 57	Non-IP Device 57	
UDP 52	Page Calls 57	
	IP Endpoints 43	
	IP End-points 322	
	IP End-points 352	
	IP Endpoints license 43	
	IP LAN's 342	
	IP Mask 73, 86, 93, 116, 137	
	IP Network 256, 257, 258, 261, 262, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280	
	IP Office 7, 9, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 19, 20, 22, 24, 26, 30, 32, 34, 35, 37, 38, 39, 41, 42, 43, 44, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 59, 60, 61, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 71, 73, 75, 76, 78, 82, 83, 85, 86, 87, 91, 93, 95, 96, 98, 100, 102, 105, 107, 109, 111, 113, 115, 116, 117, 121, 122, 124, 128, 129, 130, 132, 133, 134, 135, 137, 138, 140, 142, 143, 145, 147, 149, 151, 152, 157, 158, 160, 162, 163, 164, 166, 168, 171, 175, 177, 178, 179, 180, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 191, 193, 194, 196, 197, 198, 200, 201, 202, 204, 205, 207, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 217, 218,	

- requests 315
- require 51, 102, 223, 311
- restarting 98, 175
- running 219, 318
- scans 83, 113, 134, 171
- SMTP 315
- summarizes 18
- Technical Bulletin 171
- Text-to-Speech 329, 352
- upgrading 83, 113, 134, 171
- IP Office 1.0 216
- IP Office 1.3 218
- IP Office 1.4 Admin 187
- IP Office 2.0 193
- IP Office 2.1 44, 75, 95, 216, 303
  - IP Office 4.0. 303
- IP Office 2.1. 44
- IP Office 3.0 157, 175, 214, 217
- IP Office 3.1 26, 52, 157, 175, 237, 239, 266, 318
- IP Office 3.1. 24
- IP Office 3.2 26, 47, 49, 71, 75, 85, 86, 91, 95, 115, 116, 130, 137, 142, 193, 204, 207, 243, 318, 322
  - running 86, 116, 137, 204
  - upgrade 85, 115, 142
- IP Office 3.2 supports 193
  - use 193
- IP Office 3.2. 318
- IP Office 3600 Series
- Installation Manual 151
- IP Office 37-way D-type WAN 349, 350, 351
- IP Office 4.0 12, 16, 24, 41, 43, 49, 55, 57, 71, 91, 128, 130, 134, 168, 186, 207, 226, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 311, 312, 323
- IP Office 4.0 Applications DVD 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 311, 312
- IP Office 4.0 Installation 128
- IP Office 4.0 supports 12, 16, 43
- IP Office 4.0 User 55, 293, 294, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 311
- IP Office 4.0. 26, 207, 303
  - IP Office 2.1 303
- IP Office 403 60, 202, 204
  - including 60
  - running 202, 204
- IP Office 4600/5600 IP Phones
- Installation Manual 151
- IP Office 500 Base Unit 208
- IP Office 500 Carrier Card 224, 352
- IP Office 500 Extension Card
- Digital Station 226, 352
- IP Office 500 Extension Card Phone 227, 352
- IP Office 500 Media Card
- Voice Coding Module 32 225, 352
- IP Office 500 Media Card
- Voice Coding Module 64 225, 352
- IP Office 500 Trunk Card
- Analog 228, 352
- IP Office 500 Trunk Card Basic Rate 229, 352
- IP Office 9-Way 201, 339
- IP Office Admin 49, 71, 91, 121, 130, 194, 293, 303, 304, 309
- IP Office Admin Applications 71, 91, 130
  - Installing 71, 91, 130
- IP Office Admin CD 194
- IP Office Administration CD 187
- IP Office Administrator
- Applications CD 44, 49, 51, 55, 71, 91, 130, 189, 194, 311
  - contains 55
  - Insert 71, 91, 130, 189
  - SNMPc mibfiles 194
  - Windows PC 51, 311
- IP Office Advanced
- Applications Workshop 59
- IP Office application 55, 171, 312, 315, 318, 327, 352
  - Avaya Contact Store 312, 327
- IP Office Application
- CD/DVD's 55
- IP Office Application CDs 352
- IP Office Application PC's 318
  - Specification 318
- IP Office Applications DVD 352
- IP Office Applications
- Installation 7, 122
- IP Office Barrier Box 180, 239, 345, 352
- IP Office BRI/PRI 336, 347
- IP Office Button Programming 158
- IP Office CD 60, 64, 122
  - Copies 60, 122
- IP Office CD Pack 64
- IP Office Compact DECT 151
- IP Office Compact DECT
- Installation Manual 151
- IP Office Conference Center 4.0 299
- IP Office Conference Center
- application 55, 322
  - Enables 322
  - Installs 55
- IP Office config 315
- IP Office configuration indicate 160
- IP Office ContactStore 55, 315
  - access 315
- IP Office ContactStore
- application 55
- IP Office Control 16, 18, 26, 30, 32, 39, 41, 42, 44, 56, 61, 66, 73, 75, 76, 78, 83, 85, 93, 95, 96, 98, 100, 102, 107, 109, 113, 115, 124, 128, 129, 132, 133, 140, 142, 152, 171, 175, 177, 179, 183, 184, 185, 186, 188, 193, 196, 200, 201, 202, 204, 205, 214, 216, 217, 223, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 299, 302, 310, 312, 315, 325, 327, 339, 340, 341, 342, 352, 375
- IP Office Control Units 26, 30, 32, 41, 42, 44, 56, 66, 73, 75, 76, 78, 83, 85, 93, 95, 96, 98, 100, 102, 107, 109, 113, 115, 124, 128, 129, 132, 133, 140, 142, 152, 171, 175, 177, 179, 183, 184, 185, 186, 188, 193, 196, 200, 201, 202, 204, 205, 214, 216, 217, 223, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 299, 302, 310, 312, 315, 325, 327, 339, 340, 341, 342, 352, 375
- power 109
- IP Office Core Software 44, 129, 135, 171, 208, 210, 212, 214, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 303
- IP Office Data Components 59
- IP Office Dealer Support 322, 352
- IP Office Default Settings 73, 86, 93, 116, 137
- IP Office Delta Server 53, 295, 301
- IP Office Delta Server
- application 53, 301
- IP Office Documentation CD 373
- IP Office Documentation CD's 55
- IP Office DS 263
- IP Office Engineers Toolkit CD 64
- IP Office Express 16, 44, 51
- IP Office Express Edition 16, 51
- IP Office Ext O/P 38, 178
- IP Office Feature key 41, 71, 91, 130, 186
  - affect 71, 91, 130
- IP Office Hardware 59
- IP Office Implementation
- Workshop 59

- IP Office Info 60
- IP Office Installation Manual 194
- IP Office IP Phone Installation Manual 32, 352
  - refer 32, 352
- IP Office IP400 12, 224
- IP Office IP400 System Components 12
- IP Office IP500 14
- IP Office Italian 60
- IP Office Key 158
- IP Office Knowledge Base 60, 122
- IP Office LAN 35, 51, 132, 311, 315, 330, 352
  - Broadcast 315
- IP Office LAN1 44
- IP Office Lite 71, 91, 130
- IP Office Maintenance 59
- IP Office Manager 19, 44, 47, 71, 75, 76, 83, 85, 86, 91, 95, 96, 113, 115, 116, 124, 130, 133, 137, 142, 171, 230, 303, 315, 318
- IP Office Manager 6.0 303
- IP Office Manager 6.0. 303
- IP Office Manager application 44, 47, 76, 96
  - part 44
- IP Office MIB 194
  - structure 194
- IP Office MIB Files 194
  - Installing 194
- IP Office Monitor 76, 78, 96, 98, 100, 102, 221, 315
- IP Office Monitor application 78, 98, 100, 102, 221, 315
- IP Office MS-CRM 50
- IP Office Operation 71, 91, 130, 138, 194, 380, 382
- IP Office Phone Barrier Box V2 180, 233, 237, 249, 251
- IP Office Phone Barrier Boxes 180, 233, 237, 249, 251
  - form 180
- IP Office Phone Manager 55
  - Contains 55
- IP Office Phones 43, 55, 180, 233, 237, 249, 251
- IP Office Port Types 332
- IP Office Ports 315, 332
- IP Office Profession Edition 208
- IP Office Professional Edition 16, 19, 26, 228, 229, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 311, 312
- IP Office Programming 49
- IP Office Recommended Analog Phones 43
- IP Office Release 59, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 292
- IP Office Release 4.0 Product Delta 59
- IP Office resellers 59
- IP Office running 86, 116, 137
- IP Office Rx1 102, 223
  - wants 102
- IP Office Serial Port Feature Key dongle 210, 212, 214
- IP Office Small Office Edition 10, 132, 188, 198, 214
- IP Office SMDR 54, 318
- IP Office SNMP 193, 196
  - allows 193
- IP Office So8 335
- IP Office SoftConsole 183, 308, 322
- IP Office Software Developer's Kit 352
- IP Office Standard 228, 229
- IP Office Standard Edition 19, 26, 51, 71, 91, 130, 138, 208, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 311, 312, 323
- IP Office Supported DECT Phones 43
- IP Office Supported Digital Station 43
- IP Office Supported H323 IP Phones 43
- IP Office supports 43, 51, 54
- IP Office system running 204
- IP Office System Status Application 87, 117, 124, 149, 164
  - Run 124
- IP Office Systems 7, 12, 16, 38, 41, 42, 43, 44, 49, 50, 52, 53, 55, 64, 65, 66, 67, 71, 73, 76, 83, 86, 87, 91, 93, 96, 105, 109, 113, 116, 117, 122, 124, 130, 134, 137, 138, 143, 145, 149, 152, 157, 158, 160, 162, 164, 171, 178, 180, 185, 186, 191, 200, 202, 204, 205, 207, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 293, 301, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 315, 322, 328, 342, 344
- IP Office TAPI 19, 50, 310, 315
  - installing 50
- IP Office TAPI PC 315
- IP Office Tech Tip Bulletin 49 318
- IP Office Technical Bulletin 44, 83, 113, 122, 134, 171
  - IP Office 83, 113, 134, 171 read 122
- IP Office Technical Bulletin relating 122
- IP Office Telephones End-User Training 59
- IP Office Telephones End-User Training ILT 59
- IP Office UK 60
- IP Office Upgrade Standard 138
  - Professional 138
- IP Office User 50, 55, 64, 306, 352
- IP Office User Applications CD 50, 55, 64
- IP Office V2.1 318
- IP Office voicemail 41, 57, 59, 186, 300, 312
  - Calls 57
- IP Office Voicemail Lite 41, 186
- IP Office Voicemail Pro 50, 59, 299, 300, 312
- IP Office Voicemail Pro 4.0 CD's 300, 312
- IP Office WAN Port 349, 350, 351
- IP Office Wizard 55
- IP Office's configuration 20, 24, 42, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 75, 95, 102, 138, 157, 160, 162, 164, 166, 168, 183, 185, 202, 204, 216, 221, 229, 230, 231, 241, 245, 247, 295, 300, 301, 303, 306, 312, 315, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 333, 342, 352
- IP Office's Flash 44
- IP Office's RAM 44
- IP Office's System Password 76, 96
- IP Office's TDM 57
- IP Office 500 Extension Card Phone 352
- IP PHONE MOD CORD 14ft CAT5 352
- IP PHONE MOD CORD 1ft CAT5 352
- IP PHONE MOD CORD 7ft CAT5 352
- IP Phones 18, 32, 197, 352
  - T3 AEI/Headset Link 352
- IP Route 174
  - Create 174
- IP Trunks 19
- IP Wireless Telephone 259, 260
- IP400 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 24, 26, 30, 32, 33, 39, 44, 57, 61, 71, 76, 78, 85, 86, 89, 91, 96, 102, 111, 113, 115, 116, 124, 130, 143, 164, 180, 182, 201, 208, 210, 212, 216, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241,

- 243, 294, 299, 300, 305, 306, 308, 310, 312, 322, 324, 325, 326, 327, 333, 336, 339, 344, 345, 352, 373, 380, 383  
 fitting 124  
 following 12, 24, 26  
 holes 124  
 rear 219, 220, 221, 222, 223  
 supporting 130  
 IP400 3rd Party IVR 312, 327, 352  
 IP400 3rd Party TTS 312, 327, 352  
 IP400 Access Point 322, 352  
 IP400 Analog 220, 231, 344, 352  
 IP400 Analog Trunk 231, 344, 352  
 rear 344  
 IP400 Analog Trunk 16 231, 352  
 IP400 Analog Trunk Module 231  
 IP400 ATM16 External Expansion Module 344  
 IP400 ATM4 333  
 IP400 AUDIX 327, 352  
 IP400 Avaya TTS 312, 327, 352  
 IP400 BRI 221, 352  
 IP400 Card 124, 224  
 IP400 Cards Supported 20, 224  
 IP400 CBC 294, 322, 352  
 IP400 CCC AGT 324, 352  
 IP400 CCC Designer 324, 352  
 IP400 CCC PCW 324, 352  
 IP400 CCC Report 324, 352  
 IP400 CCC Rostering 324, 352  
 IP400 CCC SUP 324, 352  
 IP400 CCC SV 352  
 IP400 CCC SVR 324  
 IP400 CCC Wallboard 324, 352  
 IP400 Conferencing Center 322, 352  
 IP400 Conferencing Center RFA 299  
 IP400 ContactStore 300, 312, 327, 352  
 IPO 312, 327, 352  
 IPO RFA 300  
 IP400 Control 12, 24, 26, 39, 44, 57, 61, 71, 91, 111, 164, 201, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 339, 352  
 IP400 control unit supports 12  
 IP400 Control Units 12, 24, 39, 61, 71, 91, 111, 164, 352  
 IP400 CTI 310, 322, 324, 325, 352  
 IP400 CTI DECT 322, 352  
 IP400 CTI RFA 352  
 IP400 Digital Station 26, 32, 233, 235, 352  
 IP400 Digital Station 16 352  
 IP400 Digital Station 16 V2 352  
 IP400 Digital Station 30 26, 352  
 IP400 Digital Station 30 V2 26, 352  
 IP400 Digital Station Module 235  
 IP400 Digital Station V1 235  
 IP400 Digital Station V2 32, 233  
 IP400 External Expansion Modules 26, 33, 39, 352  
 IP400 Install/IP500 Optional 71, 91  
 IP400 Installation 85, 86, 89, 115, 116  
 IP400 Integrated Messaging Pro 312, 327, 352  
 IP400 IP Endpoint 322, 352  
 IP400 IPPRO 306, 326, 352  
 IP400 IPsec VPN 322, 352  
 IP400 Microsoft CRM Intgr 305, 322, 352  
 IP400 Networked Messaging 312, 327, 352  
 IP400 Office 12, 373, 380, 383  
 IP400 Office ATM16-LS/GS 383  
 IP400 Office PRI-T1 383  
 IP400 Office Quad Analog Trunk-LS 383  
 IP400 Phone 26, 32, 180, 182, 237, 239, 306, 326, 345, 352  
 IP400 Phone 16 352  
 IP400 Phone 16 V2 352  
 IP400 Phone 30 26, 352  
 IP400 Phone 30 V2 26, 352  
 IP400 Phone 8/16/32 182  
 IP400 Phone Barrier Box 180, 352  
 IP400 Phone Barrier Box V2 180, 352  
 IP400 Phone Manager Pro 306, 326, 352  
 IP400 Phone Module 237, 239  
 IP400 Phone Module V2 237  
 IP400 Phone V1 239, 345  
 IP400 Phone V2 32, 237  
 IP400 PRI 24 T1 221, 352  
 IP400 PRI 30 E1 222, 352  
 IP400 PRI 30 E1R2 COAX 223, 352  
 IP400 PRI 30 E1R2 RJ45 223, 352  
 IP400 PRI 48 T1 221, 352  
 IP400 PRI 60 E1 222, 352  
 IP400 PRI 60 E1R2 COAX 223, 352  
 IP400 PRI 60 E1R2 RJ45 223, 352  
 IP400 Rack Mounting Kit 39, 143, 210, 212, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 352  
 IP400 Small Office Edition 344  
 IP400 So8 32, 241, 336, 352  
 IP400 So8 Module 241, 336  
 IP400 SoftConsole 308, 322, 352  
 IP400 TAPI WAV 310, 325, 352  
 IP400 TAPI WAV RFA 352  
 IP400 Trunk Cards 10, 24, 78, 102, 124, 352  
 IP400 Trunk Cards Supported 18  
 IP400 VB Scripting 312, 327, 352  
 IP400 VCM 14, 18, 20, 30, 57, 208, 224, 225  
 fitting 57  
 IP400 VCM Cards 18  
 IP400 VCM10 30  
 IP400 VCM16 30  
 IP400 VCM20 30  
 IP400 VCM24 30  
 IP400 VCM30 30  
 IP400 VCM4 30  
 IP400 VCM5 30  
 IP400 VCM8 30  
 IP400 Voice Compression Modules 30, 352  
 IP400 Voicemail Pro 312, 327, 352  
 IP400 WAN Expansion 222, 352  
 IP400 WAN3 32, 243, 352  
 IP400 WAN3 10/100 32, 243, 352  
 IP400 WAN3 10/100 Module 243  
 IP400 WiFi Access Point RFA 216  
 IP401 325  
 ip401ng.bin 44, 83, 171, 214  
 IP403 30, 179, 207, 216, 325, 332, 345, 352  
 IP403 Control Unit 30, 332  
 IP403 Office 207  
 IP406 12, 18, 24, 26, 30, 32, 33, 34, 41, 51, 76, 96, 98, 100, 102, 111, 113, 132, 171, 175, 179, 186, 188, 207, 212, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 243, 310, 312, 325, 327, 332, 342, 348, 352, 373, 375  
 IP406 DS 3.2 76, 96  
 IP406 V1 207, 352  
 IP406 V1 Control Unit 352  
 IP406 V1 Office 207  
 IP406 V2 12, 24, 26, 32, 33, 34, 51, 98, 100, 102, 111, 113, 132, 171, 175, 179, 188, 212, 216, 217, 219, 220, 221, 222,

- 223, 243, 312, 327, 332, 342, 348, 352, 373, 375
  - rear 348
  - Slot 102
  - Upgrading 113
- IP406 V2 Connections 212
- IP406 V2 Control Unit 34, 102, 212, 332
- IP406 V2 Office 212, 352, 375
- IP406 V2 Office DS 212, 352
- IP406 V2 System 34
- ip406u.bin 44, 113, 171, 212
- IP412 12, 18, 24, 26, 30, 32, 33, 34, 35, 41, 44, 51, 98, 100, 102, 109, 111, 113, 132, 171, 186, 188, 210, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 243, 310, 312, 325, 327, 330, 342, 348, 352, 373, 375
  - affects 32
  - connecting 109, 243
- IP412 Connections 210
- IP412 Control Unit 34, 35, 51, 102, 109, 132, 210, 243, 330, 342, 352
- IP412 Office 210, 352, 375
- IP412 System 34
- ip412.bin 44, 113, 171, 210
- IP460 V2 12, 342
- IP500 14, 16, 18, 19, 20, 22, 24, 26, 30, 32, 33, 39, 41, 43, 44, 51, 57, 61, 71, 76, 91, 96, 105, 119, 122, 124, 128, 130, 132, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 140, 142, 143, 145, 147, 164, 171, 175, 177, 186, 208, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 264, 265, 266, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 311, 312, 323, 325, 327, 329, 332, 333, 342, 344, 352, 373, 375
  - accept 20
  - channels 225
  - default 44, 138
  - fitting 224
  - following 26
  - holes 124
  - license 16, 19, 128
  - matches 26
  - mounting 39
  - power 124
  - rear 41, 128, 186
  - upgrade 323
- IP500 Addition 225
- IP500 Addition VCM Channels License 225
- IP500 Analog 18, 20, 22, 136, 227, 228, 333, 344
- IP500 Analog Extension 228, 344
- IP500 Analog Phone 22, 136, 227, 228, 344
- IP500 Analog Phone Base Card 22, 136, 227
- IP500 Analog Trunk 18, 20, 227, 228, 333, 344
- IP500 Analog Trunk Daughter Card 20, 227, 228, 344
- IP500 Base Cards 20, 22, 124, 228, 229, 230, 352
- IP500 Blanking Plate Kit 208, 352
- IP500 BRI 18, 229
- IP500 BRI Trunk Daughter Cards 229
- IP500 Card 124
- IP500 Card Installation 124
- IP500 Carrier 20, 24, 30, 124, 218, 219, 221, 222, 223, 225, 228, 229, 230
  - except 228, 229
- IP500 Carrier Card 24, 30, 124, 218, 219, 221, 222, 223, 225
- IP500 Control Unit 14, 16, 20, 22, 24, 26, 39, 41, 57, 61, 105, 124, 128, 135, 140, 143, 145, 147, 164, 177, 186, 218, 219, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 332, 352
- IP500 control unit running 140
- IP500 control unit runs 26, 140
- IP500 Daughter Card Support 224, 225, 226, 227
- IP500 Digital Station 32, 43, 136, 226, 249, 264, 265, 266, 352
- IP500 Digital Station 30 32, 352
- IP500 Digital Station Base Card 136, 226
- IP500 Digital Station Connections 249
- IP500 DS 30 249
- IP500 External Expansion Modules 26, 33, 39, 352
- IP500 Feature Key 128
- IP500 Installation 76, 96, 119
- IP500 IPO EXP UPG TO PRO 323, 352
- IP500 Legacy Card Carrier 22, 24, 124, 224
  - except 22, 124
- IP500 Legacy Card Carrier Base Card 22, 24, 124, 224
- IP500 Legacy Carrier 14, 124
- IP500 Licenses 352
- IP500 Office 14, 122, 124, 138, 344, 352, 373, 375
- IP500 Office System Components 14
- IP500 Phone 32, 251, 352
- IP500 Phone 30 32, 251, 352
- IP500 Phone Connections 251
- IP500 PRI-U 22, 352
- IP500 PRI-U card 22
- IP500 PRI-U port 22, 230, 323
- IP500 Rack Mounting Kit 26, 39, 143, 208, 245, 247, 249, 251, 352
- IP500 Reset Button 177
- IP500 Standard 19, 138
- IP500 Standard Networking 138
- IP500 Standard Networking licenses 138
- IP500 STD NTWKG ADD LIC 323
- IP500 STD NTWKG BASE 323
- IP500 STD UPG TO PRO TRIAL 329, 352
- IP500 System Unit 208
- IP500 Trunk Card 124, 224, 226, 227
- IP500 Trunk Daughter Cards 18, 22, 124, 136, 352
  - Installing 124
- IP500 Upgrade 19, 140, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 245, 247, 249, 251, 323, 329, 352
- IP500 Upgrade Standard 19, 140, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 245, 247, 249, 251, 323, 329, 352
  - Professional 19, 140, 323, 352
- IP500 VCM 18, 20, 30, 57, 124, 136, 138, 208, 218, 225, 323, 352
- IP500 VCM Base Card 136, 138, 323
- IP500 VCM Cards 18, 225
- IP500 VCM Channels 138, 323, 352
  - adding 138
- IP500 VCM LIC 323, 352
- IP500 VCM LIC 16 CH 323, 352
- IP500 VCM LIC 28 CH 323, 352
- IP500 VCM LIC 60 CH 323, 352
- IP500 Voice Networking 19, 138, 323, 352
- IP500 Voice Networking license 323
- IP500 Voice Networking licenses 19
- IP500 VOICE NTWKG ADD LIC 323, 352
- IP500 VOICE NTWKG BASE 323, 352
- IP500 Wall Mounting Kit 39, 145, 208, 352
- ip500.bin 44, 171, 208
- IPO 208, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 245, 247, 249,

- 251, 300, 312, 315, 322, 327, 329, 352  
 IP400 ContactStore 312, 327, 352  
 IPO 500 Base Unit 208  
 IPO 500 Carrier Card 224, 352  
 IPO 500 Extn Card Dgtl Sta 226, 352  
 IPO 500 Extn Card Phone 227, 352  
 IPO 500 MC VCM 32 225, 352  
 IPO 500 MC VCM 64 225, 352  
 IPO 500 Trnk Anlg 228, 352  
 IPO 500 Trnk BRI 229, 352  
 IPO BLF 315  
 IPO LIC ADVANCED NTWK 322, 352  
 IPO LIC IP500 VCM LIC 225  
 IPO LIC IP500 VCM LIC 16 CH 225  
 IPO LIC IP500 VCM LIC 28 CH 225  
 IPO LIC IP500 VCM LIC 60 CH 225  
 IPO Lic Mobile Twinning 352  
 IPO LIC MOBILE TWINNING TRIAL RFA 329, 352  
 IPO LIC SIP TRNK RFA 322, 352  
 IPO License Dongle 315  
 IPO Monitor 315  
 IPO Network DTE 315  
 IPO PCPartner 315  
 IPO RFA 300  
 IP400 ContactStore 300  
 IPO Solo Voicemail 315  
 IPO TAPI 315  
 IPO TRIAL 3RD PARTY IVR RFA LIC 329, 352  
 IPO TRIAL 3RD PRTY TTS RFA LIC 329, 352  
 IPO TRIAL ACM CENTRAL VM LIC 329, 352  
 IPO TRIAL AVAYA TTS RFA 329, 352  
 IPO TRIAL CONF CENTER RFA LIC 329, 352  
 IPO TRIAL INTG MSGING PRO RFA LIC 329, 352  
 IPO TRIAL IPPRO RFA 10 LIC 329, 352  
 IPO TRIAL IPSEC VPN RFA LIC 329, 352  
 IPO TRIAL NTWKD MSGING LIC 329, 352  
 IPO TRIAL PMGR PRO RFA 10 LIC 329, 352  
 IPO TRIAL SOFTCONSOLE/BLF RFA LIC 329, 352  
 IPO TRIAL VB SCRIPTING RFA LIC 329, 352  
 IPO TRIAL VM PRO RFA LIC 329, 352  
 IPO Voice Networking 315  
 IPO Voicemail 315  
 IPO Who-Is 315  
 IPOffice\_1 76, 96  
 ipoGenDSCCommsChangeEvent 198  
 ipoGenDSCCommsErrorEvent 198  
 ipoGenDSCCommsFailureEvent 198  
 ipoGenDSCCommsOperationalEvent 198  
 ipoGenEntityChangeEvent 198  
 ipoGenEntityErrorEvent 198  
 ipoGenEntityFailureEvent 198  
 ipoGenEntityOperationalEvent 198  
 ipoGenLKSCCommsChangeEvent 198  
 ipoGenLKSCCommsErrorEvent 198  
 ipoGenLKSCCommsFailureEvent 198  
 ipoGenLKSCCommsOperationalEvent 198  
 ipoGenVMSCCommsChangeEvent 198  
 ipoGenVMSCCommsErrorEvent 198  
 ipoGenVMSCCommsFailureEvent 198  
 ipoGenVMSCCommsOperationalEvent 198  
 IPO-MIB 198  
 ipo-mib.mib 194  
 ipoPhonesChangeEvent 198  
 IPO-PHONES-MIB 198  
 ipo-phones-mib.mib 194  
 ipoPhonesType 198  
 ipo-prod-mib.mib 194  
 IPsec 212, 315, 322, 352  
 IPsec Tunneling 212, 322, 352  
 Ipv6 315  
 ICMP 315  
 IPv6-ICMP 315  
 ipwan3.bin 243  
 IPX 315  
 IPX-In-IP 315  
 Ireland 33, 352  
 IROB 146E 179, 233, 235, 249, 338  
 form 179  
 IROB's 38, 178, 179, 233, 235, 249, 338  
 ISDN 26, 76, 96, 191, 241, 247, 332, 335, 336  
 connect 335, 336  
 ISDN Switch Protocol 191  
 ISDN Terminal 241, 247, 335, 336  
 ISDN Version 191  
 ISDN Video Calls 191  
 ISDN\_Quad\_BRI 191  
 isl 47  
 ISP 56  
 ita 47, 217  
 Italian 47, 55, 217, 299, 301, 303, 306, 308, 311, 312  
 Italy 47  
 Its LAN 49, 50, 210, 212  
 IVR 51, 312, 318  
**J**  
 J 133, 350  
 J6 102, 223  
 January 12 128  
 Japanese 55, 217  
 Java application 49  
 jpn 217  
 June 26th 2003 318  
**K**  
 K 134  
 Key Server 189  
 KeyServe/keyserve.exe 302  
 Kit 352  
 Mounting 352  
 know 205  
 MAC 205  
 kor 47, 217  
 Korea 33, 47, 128, 223, 231, 235, 239, 245, 352, 375  
 Korean 47, 55, 217, 306, 308, 311, 312  
**L**  
 L 135  
 L2TP 315, 322  
 Label 22, 26, 41, 64, 107, 109, 124, 140, 152, 158, 186, 214, 219, 231, 233, 237, 245, 332, 344, 345, 380, 382  
 Lamp Operation 158  
 LAN 10, 12, 14, 16, 26, 35, 41, 44, 49, 50, 53, 56, 73, 83, 93, 109, 113, 129, 132, 134, 171, 186, 212, 243, 301, 330, 332, 342, 352, 378  
 Connect 129, 132  
 loader supports 44  
 supports 44  
 LAN Cable 109, 132, 342  
 LAN Crossover Cable 35, 243, 330, 342, 352  
 LAN Interconnect 109, 243, 342  
 LAN Interconnect Cable 109, 243, 342  
 LAN Port 26, 35, 132, 243, 330, 342  
 LAN port acting 342  
 LAN1 73, 86, 93, 116, 137, 342  
 LAN2 214, 342  
 LAN2/WAN 73, 86, 93, 116, 137  
 LANM 76, 96  
 LANM-0 76, 96  
 Large 4400 Series Stand 265, 266

4412D+/4424D 265, 266  
 Large Stand 352  
     4412D 352  
 Large Systems 44  
 Latin Spanish 47, 55, 299,  
 301, 306, 308, 311, 312  
 LAW 76, 96  
 Layer 16, 208, 210, 212, 214,  
 315, 332  
 Layer Two Tunneling Protocol  
 315  
 layer-2 342  
 layer-2 LAN 342  
 layer-3 342  
 layer-3 Ethernet 342  
 layer-3 LAN 342  
 LD 228  
 LD dialing 228  
 LDAP 315  
 Leather Case for 3711 352  
 LED 73, 93, 107, 124, 129,  
 132, 135, 136, 140, 225, 228,  
 229, 230, 233, 342  
 LED1 136, 225, 226, 227  
 Left Channel 334  
 Legacy Card Carrier 224  
 Legacy Cards 224  
 Legal Requirements 175  
 Level 2.0 83, 113, 171, 214  
 levels 7, 44, 49, 53, 56, 59, 75,  
 83, 95, 113, 129, 134, 135,  
 140, 193, 196, 205, 208, 210,  
 212, 214, 231, 233, 235, 237,  
 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249,  
 251, 265, 266, 295, 303, 334,  
 377  
     IP Office 7, 44, 134  
 LIC 323, 329, 352  
 Licences 19, 41, 138, 186,  
 187, 197, 201, 339, 352  
     Adding 138  
 license 10, 12, 14, 16, 19, 20,  
 22, 41, 42, 43, 44, 49, 50, 51,  
 52, 53, 54, 55, 57, 67, 73, 86,  
 93, 116, 124, 128, 136, 137,  
 138, 185, 186, 188, 189, 198,  
 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 217,  
 218, 225, 228, 229, 230, 293,  
 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302,  
 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309,  
 310, 311, 312, 315, 318, 322,  
 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328,  
 329, 352  
     IP500 16, 19, 128  
     Networking 19  
     Voicemail Pro 42, 185  
 license controls 318  
     number 318  
 License Key Server 198  
 License Keys 10, 12, 14, 42,  
 54, 138, 185, 188, 189, 198,  
 326, 352  
 License Keys CCC 324  
 License Keys CTI 325

License Keys Documentation  
 138  
 License Keys General 322  
 License Keys Phone Manager  
 326  
 License Keys Voicemail 327  
 License Name 42, 67, 185  
 license provide 42, 185  
 License Server IP Address 73,  
 86, 93, 116, 137, 188, 189,  
 315  
     set 188  
 License shows 322, 323, 324,  
 325, 326, 327  
     name 322, 323, 324, 325,  
     326, 327  
 License, License Key 67  
 License.csv file 138  
     Copy 138  
     generates 138  
     Importing 138  
 Licenses Keys IP500 323  
 Lightning 374  
     Protection/Hazard Symbols  
     374  
 Lightweight Directory 315  
 limits 19, 42, 124, 185, 295,  
 378, 379  
     Class 379  
     SELV 378  
 Line 35, 38, 49, 57, 76, 96,  
 102, 124, 152, 158, 164, 166,  
 168, 175, 178, 179, 190, 191,  
 223, 230, 237, 239, 241, 247,  
 254, 255, 264, 265, 266, 268,  
 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274,  
 275, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281,  
 282, 283, 315, 330, 334, 336,  
 338, 345, 347, 352, 374, 377,  
 380, 383  
     ports appear 241  
 Line Cord 152, 338, 345  
 line enter 168  
 Line Group 190, 191  
     Incoming 191  
     Outgoing 191  
 Line Group ID 190  
 Line Group ID 701 190  
 Line Group ID 702 190  
     Repeat 190  
 LINE IN 157  
 Line Isolation Module 380  
 Line Number 191  
 Line Out 175, 334  
 Line Reversal 237, 239  
 Line Signalling 166, 315  
 Line Signalling Type 166  
     set 166  
 Line Sub Type 191  
 Link 44, 56, 60, 122, 160, 174,  
 197, 198, 284, 285, 286, 290,  
 340  
     T3 UPN 284, 285, 286  
     voicemail 198

linkDown 198  
 linkUp 198  
 listen 57, 175, 196  
     system's 175  
 Lite 47, 50, 306, 318  
 Lithium 373  
 Lithium Batteries 373  
 Load 32, 34, 44, 66, 67, 75,  
 76, 83, 85, 86, 95, 96, 105,  
 113, 115, 116, 133, 134, 137,  
 142, 143, 152, 158, 171, 175,  
 194, 334  
 Load/Unload MIBs 194  
 Loader 44, 202, 204, 205  
     get 202, 204, 205  
 loader supports 44  
     LAN 44  
 Locale 8, 10, 12, 14, 24, 26,  
 32, 33, 37, 47, 54, 65, 66, 73,  
 82, 93, 111, 128, 129, 147,  
 207, 208, 210, 212, 214, 219,  
 220, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239,  
 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251,  
 352, 371  
 Locale Specific Power Cord  
 32, 33, 73, 93, 129, 210, 212,  
 214, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239,  
 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251,  
 352  
 localhost 301  
 Locate 37, 78, 80, 82, 98, 100,  
 102, 109, 111, 124, 128, 147,  
 151, 152, 160, 171, 183, 187,  
 193, 315, 318  
     Manager 152  
 Location -  
     %ProgramFiles%/Avaya/IP  
     Office 293, 294, 295, 299, 300,  
     301, 302, 303, 304, 306, 308,  
     310, 311, 312  
 Logging 193  
     SNMP 193  
 login 160  
     desking 160  
 Logon 87, 117, 149  
 Logon menu 87, 117, 149  
 Logon menu enter 87, 117,  
 149  
 look 9, 67, 138, 175  
     holdmusic.wav file 175  
 Look In 67, 138  
 loopback 230  
 Loop-Start 20, 22, 24, 26, 214,  
 219, 220, 228, 231, 245, 333,  
 344, 352  
 Lucent Blvd 376  
 LVD 373, 382  
 Lycos Forum 60  
**M**  
 M 136  
 M3 80, 143, 145, 152  
 M4 111, 147, 182  
 M4 Cross-Head Screwdriver  
 111, 147

- M4 earthing 182  
 MAC 73, 75, 85, 86, 93, 95, 115, 116, 133, 137, 142, 204, 205  
   know 205  
 MAC Address 73, 75, 85, 86, 93, 95, 115, 116, 133, 137, 142, 204, 205  
   matches 205  
 Main 10, 12, 14, 38, 66, 73, 75, 86, 93, 95, 105, 116, 133, 137, 178, 179, 180, 190, 380  
 Main Building 38, 178, 179, 180  
 main pool 190  
 maintain 49, 50, 105, 143  
   IP Office 49  
 Maintenance 34, 49, 59, 63, 71, 91, 130, 162, 200, 201, 208, 210, 212, 214, 293, 318, 332, 339  
 Maintenance Applications 49  
 Major 44, 152  
 Management Information Base 194  
 Manager 44, 47, 49, 55, 65, 66, 67, 71, 75, 83, 85, 86, 91, 95, 107, 109, 113, 115, 116, 121, 130, 132, 133, 134, 137, 138, 140, 142, 152, 160, 162, 171, 175, 188, 189, 193, 194, 196, 197, 202, 204, 205, 303, 304, 309, 315, 318  
   200MB 71, 91, 130, 303, 309  
   copy 83, 113, 134, 171  
   IP Office 83, 113, 134, 171  
   Locate 152  
   part 85, 115, 142  
 Manager - Install 71, 91, 130  
 Manager application 67, 75, 83, 95, 113, 134, 171, 193, 194, 196, 197  
   part 83, 113, 134, 171  
 Manager PC 44, 83, 107, 109, 113, 132, 134, 138, 140, 152, 171  
   Connecting 132  
 Manager PC's Local Area Network 132  
 Manager supports 65  
   number 65  
 Manager TFTP Log 205  
 Manager/manager.exe 303  
 Manager/upgradewiz.exe 303  
 Manager's working 205  
 Manually Adding Licenses 138  
 Master 20, 212, 214, 227, 237, 251, 345  
 matches 20, 26, 35, 47, 66, 67, 71, 75, 78, 82, 85, 86, 91, 95, 102, 111, 115, 116, 130, 133, 137, 138, 142, 147, 157, 158, 160, 162, 166, 174, 190, 196, 205, 223, 224, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 289, 330  
   IP Office 66  
   IP500 26  
   MAC Address 205  
 Maximum a.c. 334  
 Maximum Cable Length 344, 345  
 Maximum Extension Capacity 18  
 Maximum Extensions 18, 208, 210, 212, 214  
 Maximum Length 35, 175, 330, 336, 349, 350, 351  
 Maximum Time on Call 191  
 Maximum Voltage 184, 341  
 MDF 382  
 MDI 208, 210, 342  
 MDIX 342  
 MDM 76, 96, 100, 102  
 Mechanical Loading 105, 143  
 Mechanical Loading -  
 Mounting 105, 143  
 Media Card Voice Coding 225, 352  
 Media Card Voice Coding Module 32 225, 352  
 Media Service Provider 54  
 Meet-me Conferences 19  
 MENU 152  
 MESSAGES 253, 254, 255, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283  
 Mexican 303  
 Mexican Spanish 47  
 Mexico 47  
 MHT 299  
 MIB 55, 193, 194  
   Compile 194  
 MIB Database 194  
 MIB file 193, 194  
 MIB file exists 193  
 MIB file SNMP-FRAMEWORK-MIB.mib 194  
   Add 194  
 MIBs ready 194  
   use 194  
 Microsoft 50, 54, 299, 300, 301, 305, 318  
 Microsoft Client 318  
 Microsoft Exchange 5.5 318  
 Microsoft Explorer 5.5 300  
 Microsoft Explorer 6.0 301  
 Microsoft MS-CRM application 305  
 Microsoft Office 299  
 Microsoft operating systems 318  
 Microsoft Server 318  
 Microsoft Telephony  
 Application Program Interface 50  
 Microsoft Windows  
 2000/2003/XP Professional 318  
 Microsoft's MS-CRM 50, 305  
 Mid Span PSU 34  
 Middle East 43  
 Minimum Assessment Target 56  
 Minimum PC Requirements 293, 294, 295, 300, 301, 302, 304, 306, 308, 311, 312  
 Minimum PC Resources 318  
 Minimum Server PC Requirements 299  
 Minimum Wire Size 344, 345  
 missing 135  
   Feature Key 135  
 Mobile Twinning 322, 329, 352  
 Modem 12, 30, 76, 96, 100, 102, 198, 216, 243, 348, 352  
 Modem Cards 30, 100, 216, 352  
   Fitting 100  
   Installing 100  
 Modem2 197  
 Modify 189, 194  
 MODU 76, 96  
 Modular Messaging 327  
   voicemail 327  
 Module 10, 12, 14, 16, 19, 20, 24, 26, 30, 32, 33, 34, 35, 37, 38, 39, 43, 44, 61, 64, 65, 66, 76, 82, 83, 96, 98, 105, 107, 109, 111, 113, 134, 140, 147, 157, 160, 171, 178, 179, 180, 182, 184, 191, 197, 198, 200, 201, 205, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 218, 219, 220, 225, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 265, 266, 290, 323, 330, 332, 333, 335, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 344, 345, 348, 352, 373, 375  
   for securing 39  
 Module Connections 231, 235, 239, 245  
 module found 83, 113, 171  
 module supersedes 237  
 MOH 18, 175  
 Monitor 49, 50, 54, 55, 56, 57, 60, 71, 76, 91, 96, 98, 100, 102, 130, 193, 230, 304, 306  
   copies 49, 304  
   IP Office 304  
   Monitor Password 76, 96  
   Running 76, 96  
   start 98  
 Monitor Password 76, 96  
   Monitor 76, 96  
 Monitor Started IP 76, 96  
 Monitor traces 49, 98, 304

- Monitor/sysmonitor.exe 304
- Most Avaya 158
- Most SMNP 193
- Most SNMP 193
- Mounting 39, 105, 143, 352
  - IP500 39
  - Kit 352
- MP Mode 191
- MS Exchange email 312, 327
  - Enables synchronization 312, 327
- MS Internet Explorer 6.0 299
- MS-CRM 19, 50, 55, 305, 322, 352
  - allows 50
- MS-CRM application 50
- MS-CRM Integration 55
- MSP 54
- MU 76, 96
- MU-Law 41, 128, 186, 208, 352
- Multi 380
  - Point 380
- Multi-Grey 253, 254, 255, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 288, 289, 291, 352
- Multiple Managers 83, 113, 134, 171
- Multiple UPS 34
- MultiPoint Setup 191
- Multi-Sector Erase 205
- Multi-Stage Upgrades 44, 83, 113, 171
- Music 30, 57, 175, 208, 210, 212, 214, 332, 378
  - Checking 175
- Music on Hold 30, 57, 175, 208, 210, 212, 214, 332, 378
- Music on Hold Tones 175
- MUTE 253, 254, 255, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283
- MWI 26, 237, 239
- N**
- N 86, 116, 137, 190, 191
- N/A 318
- NA E1 PRI 20, 124, 224
- naatm16.bin 231, 245
- nadcp-16.bin 235
- nadcpV2.bin 233, 249
- Name 42, 47, 67, 73, 75, 85, 86, 93, 95, 115, 116, 133, 137, 138, 142, 174, 185, 188, 189, 196, 208, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 315, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 376
  - License shows 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327
  - RAS 174
  - Service 174
- Name, Extension 67
- Name, Number 67
- names take 73, 86, 93, 116, 137
- napots16.bin 239
- nas0-16.bin 241, 247
- Near Camera 191
  - Far Control 191
- NEMA1-15 33, 231, 235, 239, 245, 352
- NEMA5-15P 33, 208, 210, 212, 214, 233, 237, 241, 243, 247, 249, 251, 352
- Net 71, 91, 130, 378
- NET2 71, 91, 130, 303, 309
- NETBIOS Datagram Service 315
- NETBIOS Name Service 315
- NETBIOS Session Service 315
- Netherlands 47
- Netlink OAI Gateway 352
- Network 164
- Network Assessments 56
- Network Interface 191, 374, 377, 383
- Network Interface Type 191
- Network Terminating 243
  - existing 243
- Network Terminating Module 243
  - existing 243
- Network Termination 35, 330, 336, 347, 352
- Network Time Protocol 315
- Networked Messaging 312, 327, 352
- Networking 19, 164
  - Licenses 19
    - set 164
- New 8, 22, 34, 44, 47, 49, 65, 66, 67, 73, 75, 76, 78, 83, 85, 86, 93, 95, 96, 109, 113, 115, 116, 129, 132, 133, 134, 135, 137, 138, 140, 142, 152, 160, 171, 174, 177, 188, 189, 205, 220, 229, 231, 237, 267, 268, 269, 282, 283, 292, 303, 318, 345, 352, 371, 382
  - For 75, 76, 95, 96, 113, 134, 171
- New Calls 152
- New Configuration 65, 66
  - Creating 66
- new incoming/outgoing call 177
- new incoming/outgoing call barring 177
- New IP500 134
- New Style 352
- New Zealand 47, 220, 229, 231, 237, 267, 268, 269, 282, 283, 292, 345, 352, 382
- Next 66, 71, 75, 83, 85, 86, 91, 95, 113, 115, 116, 130, 133, 134, 137, 138, 142, 152, 171, 318
- Next Update 318
- nib 47
- nld 47, 217
- No.8 80
- No.8 panhead 80
- Noisy Location Handset 253, 254, 255, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 352
- Non-Avaya 9, 30, 60, 217
- non-Avaya IP Office 9
- Non-Avaya Web Sites 60
- None 76, 96, 164, 177, 201, 214, 237, 239, 253, 254, 264, 265, 267, 268, 269, 273, 274, 276, 277, 278, 281, 290, 339
- non-IP 30, 56, 57, 98, 315
- Non-IP Device 56, 57
  - IP Device 57
  - Non-IP Device 57
- non-IP Office 315
- non-SNMP 193
- non-telecommunications 382
- Normal Power On Sequence 135
- Normal Service 174
  - Create 174
- Normally Slot 210, 212
- North America 43, 128, 210, 212, 214, 221, 263, 264, 265, 266, 352
- North America/CALA 352
- North American 210, 212, 214, 352
- Norway 47
- Norwegian 47, 55, 217, 306, 308, 311, 312
- Not required 50, 51, 52, 53, 57, 130, 187, 217, 301, 311, 327
- Notepad 194
- NOTICE 379, 380
- NT4 Operating Systems 318
- NTSC 191
- NTSC UIS Interface 191
- NTU 243
- Number 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 19, 20, 26, 30, 39, 41, 42, 44, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 60, 65, 73, 76, 83, 86, 93, 96, 98, 100, 102, 105, 113, 116, 124, 128, 132, 137, 138, 152, 158, 160, 163, 166, 171, 183, 185, 186, 187, 189, 190, 191, 196, 208, 214, 218, 220, 295, 306, 309, 310, 312, 315, 318, 322, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 344, 371, 376, 379, 380, 383
  - Incoming 190
  - license controls 318
  - Manager supports 65
  - users run 50

- VCM provides 218
- NV Config 202, 204
- NZ 220, 352
- O**
- O 138
- Objective 71, 91, 98, 100, 124, 130
  - fit 98, 100, 124
  - install 71, 91, 130
- Objective - Allow SSA 87, 117, 149
- Objective - Connect 140
- Objective - Make 85, 115, 142
- Objective - Physically 132
- Objective - Receive 86, 116, 137
- Objective - Set 164
- Objective - This 75, 95
- Objective - To 71, 73, 91, 93, 98, 100, 123, 124, 129, 130
- Objective - To fit 98, 100, 124
  - card 98
- Objective - To install 71, 91, 130
- Objective - Upgrade 134
- Observed 73, 93, 123, 129, 374
  - CPU LED 129
- Off 20, 22, 24, 34, 65, 67, 78, 98, 100, 102, 107, 109, 124, 128, 135, 140, 152, 160, 177, 202, 204, 205, 216, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 228, 229, 230, 332, 342
- Off Line Configuration 65
- Off Pillars 124
- Off-Hook 227, 333, 345
- Off-Hook Current 227, 333, 345
- Office V2.1 318
- Office's 7, 10, 24, 37, 44, 49, 57, 76, 82, 85, 87, 96, 111, 115, 117, 138, 142, 147, 149, 157, 162, 164, 168, 175, 193, 194, 200, 202, 204, 207, 214, 217, 219, 243, 253, 261, 262, 273, 274, 275, 276, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 306, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 318, 332, 338, 342, 345, 373, 382, 383
- offline 44, 66, 67, 83, 113, 171
- Offline Upgrade 44
- ohms/km 349
- OK 67, 75, 76, 83, 85, 86, 95, 96, 109, 113, 115, 116, 133, 134, 137, 138, 142, 158, 160, 162, 171, 188, 189, 196, 197, 202, 204, 205
- Okay 83, 113, 134, 136, 171, 189, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230
- OL13A 383
- OL13B 383
- OL13C 383
  - on IP 7, 24, 37, 49, 82, 111, 147, 157, 174, 175, 194, 200, 214, 219, 243, 253, 261, 262, 273, 274, 275, 276, 318, 332, 338, 342, 345, 373, 382
  - Site 174
  - on/off 175
  - online 60
  - Only 7, 8, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24, 26, 30, 32, 34, 38, 44, 51, 52, 53, 54, 57, 59, 60, 63, 67, 71, 76, 80, 83, 91, 96, 102, 107, 113, 122, 123, 130, 134, 136, 138, 143, 145, 151, 152, 157, 158, 164, 166, 171, 174, 178, 180, 187, 200, 202, 204, 210, 212, 214, 216, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 227, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 263, 264, 265, 266, 273, 274, 275, 276, 284, 285, 286, 288, 289, 291, 295, 301, 311, 315, 318, 323, 329, 333, 340, 344, 348, 352, 371, 373, 375, 376, 377, 380, 382
  - Cables Supplied 157
    - only supports 16, 34, 44, 57, 138, 221, 222, 223, 265, 266, 333
    - service 44
    - only works for 315
  - open 47, 71, 75, 86, 91, 95, 102, 116, 130, 133, 137, 183, 184, 194, 315, 341
    - CD 71, 91, 130
  - Open Configuration 75, 86, 95, 116, 133, 137
  - Open Door 183
  - OpenView Install CD 194
  - OpenView Network Node Manager 194
    - Start 194
  - Operating 71, 91, 130, 143, 303, 309, 318
    - Humidity 143
    - System 71, 91, 130, 303, 309
    - Systems 318
    - Temperature 143
  - Operating Systems 71, 91, 130, 303, 309, 318
  - Operational Software 205
    - Erasing 205
  - Operator 50, 75, 86, 95, 116, 133, 137, 308
  - OPTION 152
  - option mounting 39
  - Optional 12, 14, 18, 71, 91, 107, 109, 130, 140, 179, 210, 212, 214, 218, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 259, 260, 284, 285, 286, 348
  - Optional Embedded Voicemail Card Slot 18
  - Options 26, 30, 34, 39, 44, 47, 52, 53, 56, 57, 71, 83, 91, 113, 130, 171, 174, 175, 183, 189, 194, 295, 318, 344
  - Orange/White 335, 336, 342, 347
  - order 10, 12, 14, 20, 26, 32, 33, 35, 42, 49, 55, 59, 60, 66, 67, 98, 107, 109, 124, 134, 138, 140, 160, 163, 164, 185, 194, 196, 200, 208, 214, 330, 334, 349, 350, 351, 352
    - IP Office 196
  - order processing 55
  - orderable item 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327
  - OS 318
    - Windows XP 318
  - OS's 1, 9 318
  - Other 8, 12, 14, 20, 26, 30, 34, 37, 38, 43, 44, 50, 52, 53, 55, 60, 61, 63, 64, 66, 71, 73, 76, 82, 87, 91, 93, 96, 98, 100, 102, 105, 107, 109, 111, 113, 117, 122, 124, 128, 129, 130, 138, 140, 143, 147, 149, 152, 157, 158, 160, 164, 166, 171, 175, 177, 178, 180, 182, 183, 189, 193, 198, 210, 212, 214, 223, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 284, 285, 286, 301, 306, 315, 318, 322, 329, 337, 340, 352, 371, 374, 377, 382
  - other end 102, 182
  - other firewalls 315
  - Other IP Office Applications 171
  - Other IP Office Cards 30
  - Other IP Office Installation Manuals 122
  - Other IP softphones 43
  - Other Non-Avaya Web Sites 60
  - Other Plug-In Modules 198
  - Out 78, 107, 140, 151, 152, 166, 193, 194, 205
    - Service 166
    - Type 166
  - out polling 193
  - Outgoing 191
    - Line Group 191
  - Outlook 50, 51, 312, 318, 327
  - Outlook 2003 318
  - Outlook 2003 operating 318
  - Out-of-Building Connections/Lightning Protection 38, 178
  - overcurrent 105, 143
  - P**
  - P 140, 350
  - P12 Loader 2.4 202, 204, 205

- P4 2.4GHz 299
- P4 2.8GHz 300, 312
- PABX 56
- pack 123, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 318, 352
  - 3616 256, 352
  - 3626 258, 352
- Pack Support 318
- Package Damage 123
  - Check 123
- Packet Loss 56
- Page Calls 57
  - IP Device 57
- panhead 80
- Parallel 41, 49, 50, 71, 91, 130, 186, 187, 189, 191, 302, 352
  - hosting 71, 91, 130
- Parallel Port 71, 91, 130, 187, 189, 352
- Parallel Port Feature Key 187, 352
- PARK 328, 352
- PARK ID 352
  - ADMM 352
- part 7, 44, 49, 50, 64, 71, 73, 78, 80, 82, 83, 85, 86, 91, 93, 98, 100, 102, 105, 107, 109, 111, 113, 115, 116, 122, 123, 124, 128, 129, 130, 132, 134, 137, 138, 140, 142, 147, 152, 160, 171, 189, 259, 260, 303, 312, 379
  - Feature Key Server 189
  - IP Office 7, 44, 49, 122, 303
  - IP Office Manager application 44
  - Manager 85, 115, 142
  - Manager application 83, 113, 134, 171
- Part 15 379
  - FCC Rules 379
- Parties 18, 52, 54, 208, 210, 212, 214, 295, 310, 312, 322, 324, 325, 327, 380
- Parts Have Been Delivered 123
- Parts Required 64, 71, 91, 128, 130
- parts take 44
  - form 44
- party Agent Rostering 295, 324
- Password 50, 59, 60, 73, 75, 76, 83, 85, 86, 87, 93, 95, 96, 113, 115, 116, 117, 133, 134, 137, 142, 149, 171, 174, 299, 309, 377
- password entered 174
  - service 174
- passwords controlling 85, 115, 142
- PBX Tech 60
- PC 41, 44, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 56, 64, 66, 71, 76, 83, 91, 96, 113, 121, 130, 132, 133, 134, 171, 175, 186, 187, 189, 197, 201, 202, 204, 205, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 311, 312, 315, 318, 324, 339, 352
  - IP Office 44 setting 47
  - PC firewalls 315
  - PC Pass-Through Port/with Voice Priority 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280
  - PC Requirements 303, 309
  - PC running 41, 53, 64, 175, 186, 189, 197, 301, 315, 318
  - PC softphone 50, 306, 318
  - PC Wallboard 53, 295, 315, 318, 324
    - CCC Wallboard Server 315
  - PC/Terminal 201, 339
  - PC's 318
  - PC-Base Licensing 41, 186
  - PC-less 41, 186
    - allowing 41, 186
  - PC-Less Licensing 41, 186
  - PCM 175
  - PCMCIA 30, 198, 214, 216, 217
    - changes 198
  - pcol 315
  - PCs 187
  - PC's 34, 49, 132, 189, 302, 318
  - PC's BIOS 187
  - PC's LAN 132
  - PCS level 265, 266
  - PC's parallel 189
  - PC's system 302
  - PDF 55
  - Pentium 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 304, 306, 308, 311, 312, 318
  - Pentium III 318
  - Pentium III 800MHz 318
  - Pentium IV 300, 311
  - Pentium4 318
  - Pentium4 2.8GHz 318
  - Peru 47
  - PF 344
  - PF1 231, 245, 344
  - PF2 231, 245, 344
  - PHONE 18, 26, 38, 43, 107, 152, 157, 178, 180, 198, 212, 214, 237, 239, 251, 344, 345
    - Connect 43, 180
    - POT 26
  - Phone 16 34, 237, 239, 251, 352
  - Phone 16 Module 34
  - Phone 30 33, 34, 237, 239, 251, 352
    - Phone 30 Module 34
    - Phone 30 V2 237, 239, 251
    - Phone Add-Ons 32
    - Phone Barrier Box 180, 182
    - Phone Change 197
    - Phone Charger 261, 262, 263, 352
    - Phone Connections 251
    - Phone Connectors 35, 330
    - Phone Display 47
    - Phone Keys 253, 254, 255, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283
    - Phone Manager 7, 19, 42, 43, 50, 122, 183, 185, 305, 306, 315, 318, 326, 329, 352
      - entering 326
    - Phone Manager IP Audio 43
    - Phone Manager iPro 306
    - Phone Manager Licenses 326, 352
    - Phone Manager Lite 42, 50, 185, 306
    - Phone Manager Lite/Pro 318
    - Phone Manager PC Softphone 318, 329, 352
    - Phone Manager Pro 42, 43, 50, 183, 185, 305, 306, 322, 326, 329, 352
    - Phone Manager Pro IP Audio Enabled 306, 326
    - Phone Manager Pro PC Softphone 43, 50, 305, 306
    - Phone Manager Pro PC Softphone application 43
    - Phone Manager Type 306, 326
    - Phone Manager VOIP Server 306
    - Phone Manager/iClaritySvr.exe 306
    - Phone Manager/PC Softphone Avaya 318
    - Phone Manager/PC Softphone Avaya recommends 318
      - use 318
    - Phone Manager/PhoneManager.exe 306
    - Phone Module V2 26, 237
    - Phone Module V2 Connections 237
    - PHONE Port 214, 345
    - Phone V1 26, 32, 33, 180, 237, 239, 352
    - Phone V1 Module Connections 239
    - Phone V1/V2 345
    - Phone V2 26, 33, 107, 140, 180, 237, 239, 352
    - Phone V2 supports 26

- Phones 7, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 19, 20, 26, 32, 33, 34, 35, 37, 38, 42, 43, 47, 49, 50, 56, 82, 107, 111, 122, 136, 140, 147, 151, 152, 157, 158, 160, 162, 168, 178, 179, 180, 182, 183, 185, 193, 197, 198, 208, 212, 214, 226, 227, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 303, 305, 306, 315, 318, 322, 326, 329, 330, 332, 338, 344, 345, 352
  - Installing 151
  - phones existing stand 291
- Phones Expansion 38, 178, 332
- phones need 152
- PIII 800MHz 293, 294, 295, 301, 302, 304, 306, 308
- PIN 335, 336, 347, 348
  - Connect 348
- Pin 19 348, 349, 350, 351
- Pin No 334
- PIP 191
- Planning 152
  - Chart 152
- played 51, 57, 311, 312
  - IP 57
  - voicemail 51
- plk 47
- Plug 35, 41, 78, 184, 186, 188, 189, 243, 330, 338, 341, 348, 352
  - Feature Key dongle 189
- PoE 32, 157, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 288, 289, 352
- Point 30, 35, 37, 38, 39, 78, 82, 98, 100, 102, 105, 111, 121, 124, 147, 178, 179, 180, 182, 214, 216, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 256, 257, 258, 330, 352, 374, 376, 380
  - center 182
  - Multi 380
- Poland 47
- Polish 47, 311, 312
- Polling Support 196
- Polycom 191
- Polycom Video Module Settings 191
- Polycom View Station 512 MP 191
- Polycom Viewstation 191
  - routed 191
- Port 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24, 26, 34, 35, 38, 41, 42, 43, 54, 73, 76, 78, 86, 93, 96, 102, 107, 109, 116, 121, 129, 132, 136, 137, 140, 152, 157, 160, 162, 164, 166, 174, 175, 178, 179, 180, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 196, 197, 200, 201, 208, 210, 212, 214, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 263, 266, 268, 270, 277, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 292, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 306, 308, 310, 311, 312, 315, 318, 322, 323, 325, 327, 329, 330, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 344, 345, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 375, 377, 378, 382
  - Enter 197
  - Port Classification 378
  - Port Description 378
  - Port Name 378
  - Port Safety Classification 378
  - port supports 230
  - Ports + SNMP 352
  - ports acting 342
  - ports appear 241, 247
    - lines 241
  - ports depending on card 227
  - Ports Used 315
  - Ports/Channels 228, 229, 230
  - Portugal 47
  - Portuguese 47, 217, 306, 308, 311, 312
  - Portuguese-Brazilian 217
  - post-installation 65
  - POT 26, 38, 178, 180, 198, 214, 239, 332, 344, 345
  - PHONE 26
  - potPhone 198
  - power 10, 12, 14, 16, 20, 22, 32, 33, 34, 38, 60, 61, 63, 73, 78, 93, 98, 100, 102, 105, 107, 109, 124, 128, 129, 135, 140, 143, 157, 175, 178, 183, 198, 202, 204, 205, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 217, 219, 220, 227, 228, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 261, 262, 263, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 291, 292, 332, 337, 338, 344, 348, 352, 377, 378, 380
    - 4600 Series 352
    - Applying 129
    - IP Office 78, 98, 100, 102, 107, 109, 124, 128, 140, 202, 204, 205
    - IP Office Control Unit 109
  - IP500 124
  - WAN3 10/100 109
  - Power Adaptor 261, 262
    - Rack Mount Charger 261, 262
  - Power Adaptor 261, 262, 352
    - Charger 261, 262, 352
    - Rack Mount Charger 352
  - power conditioning 34
  - Power Cord Type 33, 352
  - Power Cords 32, 33, 63, 73, 93, 129, 210, 212, 214, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 352
  - Power Fail Port 227, 228
  - Power Failure Operation 219, 220
  - Power Outlet Plug Type 33, 352
  - Power Supplies 10, 12, 14, 16, 32, 33, 34, 60, 61, 73, 93, 107, 109, 129, 140, 157, 183, 208, 210, 212, 214, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 263, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 292, 332, 337, 338, 352
  - Power Supply
    - 4450 266, 287, 352
    - T3 IP DSS 284, 285, 286
  - Power Supply Backup 34
  - Power Supply Cords 33, 61, 73, 93, 129
  - Power Supply Units 10, 12, 14, 16, 32, 73, 93, 107, 109, 140, 157, 208, 210, 212, 214, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 282, 283, 287, 332, 337, 338, 352
    - DSS 352
    - T3 IP Phones 352
  - Pozidrive No 64
  - PPP 197, 198
  - pre-2.1 83, 113, 171
  - Pre-3.2 47, 75, 95
  - pre-3.2 IP Office 47, 75, 95
    - running 75, 95
  - Pre-3.2 IP Office Control Unit 75, 95
  - pre-4.0 IP Office 71, 91, 130, 293, 304
  - pre-configuration 65
  - Preferences 205
  - Prefix Dialing 168
  - pre-IP Office 3.2 71, 91, 130
  - pre-IP Office 4.0 130
    - running 130
  - pre-Level 2.1 83, 113, 171
    - Upgrading 83, 113, 171

- pre-Level 2.1 Systems 83, 113, 171
  - Upgrading 83, 113, 171
- Press 51, 78, 152, 177, 202, 204, 205, 312
- Press Duration 177
- Press Exit 152
- Previous System Monitor 71, 91, 130
- PRI 16, 18, 20, 22, 24, 76, 96, 102, 124, 191, 221, 224, 230, 323, 332, 336, 347, 352, 375, 378, 380
  - channels 191
- PRI 30 E1 20, 124, 224
- PRI 30 E1R2 RJ45 20, 124, 224
- PRI E1 375
- PRI E1/E1R2 375
- PRI Interface 380
- PRI ISDN 378
- PRI Port 347, 378
- PRI T1 20, 124, 224, 375
- PRI Trunk Cards 221
- PRI/BRI Trunk Cable 336, 347
- PRI/T1 377
  - Receive Gain Settings 377
- Primary Protection Box 38, 178
- Primary Rate 221, 222, 230, 352, 382
- PRI-U 124
- Pro 47, 50, 54, 55, 76, 96, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 304, 306, 308, 311, 312, 318, 327, 329, 352
- Pro3 318
- proceed 124
  - Inserting 124
- Product 8, 59, 60, 63, 122, 318, 371, 373, 375, 376, 379, 380, 382
  - including 376
- Product Key 318
- Product Updates 376
- Professional 19, 50, 138, 140, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 245, 247, 249, 251, 306, 318, 322, 323, 329, 352
  - IP Office Upgrade Standard 138
  - IP500 Upgrade Standard 19, 140, 323, 352
- Professional Edition 19, 50, 306, 322, 323, 352
- Professional License 19, 138, 140, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 245, 247, 249, 251
- Program Files/SNMPc Network Manager/mibfiles 194
- ProgramFiles%/Avaya/IMS Client/UMSForm.exe 312
- Programs 49, 67, 71, 75, 76, 83, 85, 86, 87, 91, 95, 96, 113, 115, 116, 117, 130, 133, 137, 142, 149, 152, 189, 194, 201, 202, 204, 205, 339
- Protection Device Type 38, 178
- Protection/Hazard Symbols 374
  - Lightning 374
- Protective Ground 37, 38, 39, 82, 102, 105, 107, 111, 140, 147, 178, 179, 180, 184, 223, 233, 235, 237, 239, 249, 251, 332, 338, 341, 345
- Protocol 49, 193, 229, 263, 304, 315, 348
  - displaying 315
- Provides 12 V.90 30, 100 providing 22, 53, 157, 163, 222, 295, 352
  - 2B+D 22
  - 30B+D 222
  - backlight 157
  - IEEE 802.3af Power-over-Ethernet 352
  - IP Office 163
  - realtime 53, 295
- PSU 26, 32, 33, 157, 210, 212, 214, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 352
- ptb 47, 217
- ptg 47, 217
- punchdown 35, 151, 330
- punchdown wiring systems 151
- Purchasing 54
  - CTI Link Pro RFA 54
- Putonghua 47
- Q**
- Q 142
- QSIG 19, 24, 164, 166, 168, 323
- QSIG Trunks 19, 164, 166, 168
- Quad BRI 18, 214, 221, 332, 375
- Queued 54, 67
  - call enters 54
- Queuing On 67
- R**
- R 143, 350
- R&TTE 373, 382
- R&TTE Directives 382
- R2 223
- R2 signalling 223
- R3.0 318
- R3.0GA 318
- R3.0GA release 318
- Rack Mount Charger 261, 262, 352
  - Power Adaptor 261, 262
  - Power Adaptor 352
- Rack Mounting 39, 105, 143
- Rack Mounting Barrier Boxes 182
- Rack Mounting Instructions 105
- Rack Mounting Kits 105, 214, 352
- Rack Positioning 105, 143
- RAM 44, 71, 83, 91, 113, 130, 171, 202, 204, 205, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 306, 308, 309, 311, 312, 318
- RAM 256MB 293, 295, 303, 304, 309
- RAM increases 318
  - 256MB 318
- RAS 73, 86, 93, 116, 137, 174
  - name 174
  - routed 73, 86, 93, 116, 137
  - read 7, 85, 115, 122, 123, 142, 196
  - Avaya Technical Bulletins 7 Documentation 122
  - IP Office Technical Bulletin 122
- realtime 53, 295
  - Provides 53, 295
- rear 16, 24, 26, 41, 61, 78, 80, 82, 107, 109, 111, 128, 129, 135, 140, 147, 184, 186, 201, 214, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 233, 237, 243, 334, 335, 339, 340, 341, 344, 348
  - IP Office 340
  - IP400 219, 220, 221, 222, 223
  - IP400 Analog Trunk 344
  - IP406 V2 348
  - IP500 41, 128, 186
  - WAN3 10/100 348
- Reboot 44, 71, 76, 83, 91, 96, 107, 113, 130, 140, 152, 158, 160, 162, 171, 174, 175, 177, 187, 188, 189, 196, 197, 198, 202, 205
- Reboot When Free 177
- Receive Clock 348, 349, 350
- Receive Data 53, 201, 294, 339, 348, 349, 350
- Receive Gain Settings 377
  - PRI/T1 377
- Receiving 75, 86, 95, 116, 133, 137, 138, 188, 189, 377
  - Configuration 75, 86, 95, 116, 133, 137
  - IP Office 138, 188, 189
- records 18, 49, 50, 51, 52, 54, 57, 59, 60, 107, 128, 140, 162, 177, 187, 193, 291, 299, 300, 301, 306, 309, 312, 327
  - SMDR file 52, 301
- RED 135
  - Flashing 135
- Red Flashing 136, 226, 227

- Red Flashing - Initializing 136, 226, 227
- Red On 136, 226, 227
- red/green 135, 230
- Red/Green Fast Flash 230
- REDIAL 253, 254, 255, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283
- Reduced Air Flow 105, 143
- refer 9, 32, 37, 47, 56, 82, 111, 147, 162, 193, 217, 219, 220, 221, 233, 235, 237, 239, 249, 251, 318, 352, 373
- 4600/5600 IP Phone
    - Installation 162
  - Embedded Voicemail
    - Installation 217
  - IP DECT Installation 193
  - IP Office IP Phone
    - Installation Manual 32, 352
  - Voicemail Installation 318
  - Voicemail Pro 47
  - Voicemail Pro Installation 47
- Reference Manual 376
- Refresh 75, 83, 85, 86, 95, 113, 115, 116, 133, 134, 137, 142, 171
- REL 152
- Relay Off 183
- Relay On 183
- Relay Pulse 183
- Reliable Earthing 105, 143
- Reliable Earthing - Reliable 105, 143
- Remote Access 60, 122
- Removal 8, 64, 189, 216, 217, 371
- Certain Hazardous Substances 8, 371
- Remove 38, 71, 73, 78, 80, 91, 93, 98, 100, 102, 124, 130, 138, 152, 166, 168, 178, 182, 189, 291
- Remove Programs 71, 91, 130
- REN 227, 345, 380, 383
- sum 383
- Renumber Extension 160
- repacking 123
- Repair 189
- repeating 140, 190
- IP Office 140
  - Line Group ID 702 190
- Report Manager 53, 295
- Report Viewer 295, 324, 352
- representatives 373, 376
- Republic 37, 38, 82, 107, 111, 140, 147, 178, 219, 220, 231, 245, 333
- South Africa 37, 38, 82, 107, 111, 140, 147, 178, 219, 220, 231, 333
- Request 49, 56, 71, 75, 83, 85, 86, 91, 95, 113, 115, 116, 130, 133, 134, 137, 142, 152, 171, 196, 198, 201, 205, 303, 304, 315, 339, 348, 349, 350
- IP Office 315
  - Send 348
  - require 10, 12, 14, 19, 22, 26, 32, 33, 34, 35, 37, 39, 41, 42, 43, 44, 47, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 57, 59, 60, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 71, 73, 75, 76, 78, 80, 82, 83, 85, 86, 87, 91, 93, 95, 96, 98, 100, 102, 105, 107, 109, 111, 113, 115, 116, 117, 121, 123, 124, 128, 129, 130, 132, 133, 134, 135, 137, 138, 140, 142, 143, 145, 147, 149, 152, 157, 158, 160, 162, 163, 164, 171, 179, 180, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 191, 194, 201, 205, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 217, 218, 219, 221, 222, 223, 228, 229, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 263, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 287, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 311, 312, 315, 318, 322, 323, 324, 326, 327, 330, 332, 334, 339, 348, 352, 374, 379
  - IP Office 51, 102, 223, 311
  - require upgrades 83, 113, 171
  - required button action 158
    - for selecting 158  - required during 64, 138
- Requirements 7, 8, 20, 37, 38, 56, 60, 61, 63, 64, 65, 71, 80, 82, 91, 105, 107, 109, 111, 121, 130, 140, 143, 145, 147, 151, 158, 163, 175, 178, 187, 208, 210, 212, 214, 219, 237, 287, 288, 289, 290, 292, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 306, 308, 309, 311, 312, 318, 344, 345, 371, 373, 378, 380
- Cabling 38, 178
  - Grounding 107, 109, 140
- reseller 352
- Reservation Protocol 315
- Reset button 177
- includes 177
- Resources 57, 71, 91, 130, 164, 210, 309, 318
- respond 193, 196, 202, 204, 205
- SNMP 196
- Rest 124, 210, 212, 214, 352, 375
- World 210, 212, 214, 352, 375
- restarting 98, 175
- IP Office 98, 175
- Restricted Digital Information 380
- Retain All Packaging 123
- RFA 42, 185, 295, 299, 305, 306, 308, 310, 312, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 352
- RFA Name 42, 185, 295, 305, 306, 308, 310, 312, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 352
- RFC1215 Generic SNMP Traps 198
- rfc2213-integrated-services-mib.mib 194
- rfc2737-entity-mib.mib 194
- RFC868 315
- RFP 352
- RFP LIC 328, 352
- RFP32 Indoor 352
- RFP34 Outdoor 352
- RI 201, 339, 348, 349, 350
- Right 20, 85, 111, 115, 124, 142, 145, 147, 175, 208, 334
- Right-Hand Screw 180
- Rights Groups 85, 115, 142
- RIM 291
- Ringer Equivalence 380, 383
- Ringer Equivalence Number 380, 383
- sum 380
- RIP 315
- RIP1 315
- RIP2 315
- RIP2 Multicast 315
- RJ11 35, 152, 180, 330, 338, 345, 352
- RJ11 338
  - RJ45 338, 345
- RJ11 Phone Connectors 35, 330
- RJ11-to-RJ11 35, 152, 157, 330
- RJ11-to-RJ11 Cable 152, 157
- RJ11-to-RJ11 cable depending 157
- RJ45 20, 24, 35, 43, 121, 151, 162, 179, 180, 208, 210, 212, 214, 219, 220, 221, 223, 225, 226, 227, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 330, 332, 335, 336, 338, 342, 345, 347, 352
- existing 151, 179
  - Includes 180, 352
  - RJ11 338, 345
  - RJ45 35, 330, 352
- RJ45 BRI 24
- RJ45 DS 226
- RJ45 EQUIPMENT 179
- RJ45 Ethernet 121, 332, 342
- RJ45 Ethernet LAN 121

- RJ45 LAN 43
- RJ45 LINE 179
- RJ45 Socket 208, 210, 212, 214, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 342
- RJ45-RJ45 107, 109, 121, 132, 140
- RJ45-RJ45 Ethernet LAN Cable 121
- RJ45-RJ45 LAN 109, 132
- RJ45-to-RJ11 152, 157
- RJ45-to-RJ11 Cable 152, 157
- RJ45-to-RJ45 35, 152, 330
- RoHS 8, 267, 268, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 280, 291, 371
- Rotary 67
- routed 10, 12, 14, 33, 56, 61, 73, 86, 93, 116, 129, 137, 180, 182, 187, 190, 191, 193, 315
  - Polycm Viewstation 191
  - RAS 73, 86, 93, 116, 137
- Routes 49, 73, 86, 93, 116, 137, 160, 168, 174, 190, 191
- Routing Encapsulation 315
- ROW 379
- RS232 35, 147, 201, 330, 339, 352
- RS232 DTE 35, 147, 201, 330, 339
- RS232 DTE Port 35, 147, 201, 330, 339
- RSVP 315
- RTCP 315
- RTP 315
- RTP/RTCP 315
- RTS 201, 339, 348, 349, 350
- ruggedized 258
- Run Manager 47, 205
- Run Phone Manager 326
- running 60, 71, 75, 76, 86, 87, 91, 95, 96, 116, 117, 122, 124, 130, 132, 137, 149, 202, 204, 219, 318
  - Admin Suite 71, 91, 130
  - ARA 60, 122
  - IE6 318
  - IP Office 219, 318
  - IP Office 3.2 86, 116, 137, 204
  - IP Office 403 202, 204
  - IP Office System Status Application 124
  - Monitor 76, 96
  - pre-3.2 IP Office 75, 95
  - pre-IP Office 4.0 130
  - System Status Application 87, 117, 149
- rus 47, 217
- Russia 47, 229
- Russian 47, 55, 217, 306, 308
- Rx 348, 349
- Rx1 102, 223
- Rx-A 335, 336, 342, 347, 348, 350, 351
- Rx-B 335, 336, 342, 347, 348, 350, 351
- RxCik 348
- Rx-Cik 349
- RxCik-A 348, 350
- RxCik-B 348, 350
- S**
- S 145, 350
- S/T Interface 191
- S0 166, 168, 190, 191, 352
  - contains 190
- S08 198
- Safety 63, 105, 143, 373, 382
- Safety Extra Low Voltage 382
- SAP 8, 30, 32, 33, 35, 39, 41, 55, 98, 100, 105, 143, 145, 180, 182, 186, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 295, 305, 306, 308, 310, 312, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 336, 338, 340, 342, 345, 347, 349, 350, 351, 352, 371
  - existing 8, 371
  - SAP 700210800 39, 105
  - SAP 700293905 39, 105
  - SAP 700428584 55
  - SAP 700429202 39, 143
  - SAP 700430150 145
  - SAP Code 8, 30, 32, 33, 35, 39, 41, 55, 98, 100, 180, 182, 186, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 330, 336, 338, 340, 342, 345, 347, 349, 350, 351, 352, 371
  - SAP Code 700293905 182
  - SAP Code 700430150 39
  - Saudi Arabia 47
  - Save Configuration As 83, 113, 134, 171
  - Save In 67
  - scans 83, 109, 113, 134, 171
- IP Office 83, 113, 134, 171
- WAN3 109
- ScanSoft 55, 312, 327, 352
- ScanSoft TTS CD's 312
- Schuko 33, 352
- SCN 44, 323
  - excluding 323
- Screened Cable Drain Wire 349, 350, 351
- SCTE-A 348, 350
- SCTE-B 348, 350
- SDK 55, 352
- Secondary Building 180
- Secondary Dial Tone 57
- Sector 202, 204
- Sector Erases 202, 204
- Security 85, 86, 87, 115, 116, 117, 133, 137, 142, 149, 196, 197, 202, 204, 309, 312, 315
  - Configuring 85, 115, 142
  - Defaulting 204
  - Security Administrator 85, 115, 142
  - Security Settings 85, 115, 142, 202, 204
    - Configuring 85, 115, 142
    - Defaulting 204
    - understand 85, 115, 142
  - securitypwd 85, 115, 142
- See Analog 231, 245
- See Training 7
- Select Directory 83, 113, 171
- Select Features menu 189
- Select IP Office window 75, 85, 86, 95, 115, 116, 133, 137, 142
- Select Unit 76, 96
- Select WAN 109
- selecting 158, 175
  - Display All Buttons 158
  - Use External Music 175
- Self Test 73, 93, 129, 152
- Selling 59
- SELV 378, 382
  - limits 378
- Send 49, 52, 66, 109, 160, 162, 190, 193, 194, 196, 197, 205, 301, 348
  - Clear 348
  - Request 348
- send alerts 49
- send alerts for 49
- Send Configuration 66
- Sentinel System Driver 189
- sequence 47, 135, 160, 259, 260
  - CPU LED 135
- Serial Port Feature Key 187, 188, 352
- Serial Port Feature Key dongle 187, 188
- Serial Port Feature Key Installation 188

- Series 7, 20, 32, 35, 43, 51, 122, 152, 162, 193, 202, 204, 312, 322, 330, 352
- Series IP 7, 32, 122, 162, 193, 352
- Series IP Phone Installation 7, 122
- Series IP Phones 7, 32, 122
- Series Phone 152, 352
- Series Wireless IP Installation 7, 122
- Series/5600 Series 30, 32, 217
- Series/5600 Series IP 32
- Server 34, 41, 47, 49, 50, 51, 54, 57, 71, 73, 86, 91, 93, 109, 116, 130, 137, 152, 175, 186, 187, 189, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 306, 308, 311, 312, 315, 318, 322, 327
- Server Applications
  - Dependencies 318
  - server PC's 34
- Service 26, 44, 51, 53, 57, 71, 85, 86, 87, 91, 115, 116, 117, 130, 137, 142, 149, 166, 174, 187, 189, 191, 243, 295, 301, 302, 309, 312, 315, 318, 335, 336, 347, 348, 351, 373, 382, 383
  - name 174
  - only supports 44
  - Out 166
  - password entered 174
- Service Management Assistant V5 301
- Service Order Code 383
- Service Personnel 373
- Service Restart 312
- Service User 85, 86, 87, 115, 116, 117, 137, 142, 149, 309
- Service User Name 85, 86, 115, 116, 137, 142, 309
- Service V5 301
- Services Base TCP Port 87, 117, 149
- Services Panel 189
- Set 30, 42, 44, 47, 50, 54, 55, 56, 67, 71, 73, 76, 85, 91, 93, 96, 115, 124, 129, 130, 132, 142, 157, 158, 160, 164, 166, 168, 185, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 197, 205, 216, 229, 230, 263, 299, 306, 315, 322, 326, 352, 377, 383
  - 255.255.255.255 205
  - Any 190
  - Community 197
  - Fallback 164
  - License Server IP Address 188
  - Line Signalling Type 166
  - Network 164
  - PC 47
  - Trunk Type 166
    - setting varies 166, 168
    - setting varies for 166, 168
  - Settings 47, 65, 66, 67, 73, 76, 85, 86, 87, 93, 96, 115, 116, 117, 128, 129, 132, 133, 137, 142, 149, 158, 160, 162, 168, 174, 191, 201, 202, 204, 205, 210, 212, 214, 302, 309, 315, 339, 352, 377
    - Exporting 67
    - Importing 67
  - Settings | Emulation 201, 339
  - Setup RAS 174
  - setup.exe 71, 91, 130
  - Shelf/Wall Mounting 80
  - Shift 160, 326
  - Short Code 57, 183, 190, 191, 380
  - ShortCode 67
  - Simple File Transfer Protocol 315
  - Simple Mail Transfer 315
  - Simple Message Protocol 315
  - Simple Network Management Protocol 193
  - Single PRI 18, 24, 332
  - Single T1 PRI 214
  - Single WAN 214, 375
  - SIP 19, 57, 315, 322, 352
  - SIP Line Signalling 315
  - SIP Trunk Channels 322, 352
  - SIP Trunks 19, 322, 352
  - Site 10, 34, 49, 59, 60, 64, 122, 123, 174, 189, 352
    - on IP 174
    - Site 174
  - Site A on IP 174
  - Site Survey Kits 352
  - Slot 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24, 30, 39, 41, 61, 80, 98, 102, 105, 111, 124, 128, 143, 145, 164, 186, 198, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 217, 221, 222, 223, 230, 253, 273, 291, 299, 323
    - IP406 V2 102
  - slots facing right 145
  - Small 217
  - Small 4400 Series Stand 264, 266, 287
    - 4450 266
  - Small Community Networking 19, 44, 315
  - Small Office 10, 16, 18, 24, 26, 30, 32, 33, 34, 39, 51, 57, 61, 69, 73, 76, 78, 80, 82, 83, 96, 105, 164, 171, 175, 179, 214, 216, 217, 218, 222, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 310, 312, 322, 325, 327, 332, 342, 344, 345, 348, 352, 375
    - Small Office Edition 10, 16, 18, 24, 26, 30, 32, 33, 34, 39, 51, 57, 61, 69, 73, 76, 78, 80, 82, 83, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400, 401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407, 408, 409, 410, 411, 412, 413, 414, 415, 416, 417, 418, 419, 420, 421, 422, 423, 424, 425, 426, 427, 428, 429, 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 441, 442, 443, 444, 445, 446, 447, 448, 449, 450, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455, 456, 457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 465, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 472, 473, 474, 475, 476, 477, 478, 479, 480, 481, 482, 483, 484, 485, 486, 487, 488, 489, 490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499, 500, 501, 502, 503, 504, 505, 506, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513, 514, 515, 516, 517, 518, 519, 520, 521, 522, 523, 524, 525, 526, 527, 528, 529, 530, 531, 532, 533, 534, 535, 536, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542, 543, 544, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 550, 551, 552, 553, 554, 555, 556, 557, 558, 559, 560, 561, 562, 563, 564, 565, 566, 567, 568, 569, 570, 571, 572, 573, 574, 575, 576, 577, 578, 579, 580, 581, 582, 583, 584, 585, 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591, 592, 593, 594, 595, 596, 597, 598, 599, 600, 601, 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 607, 608, 609, 610, 611, 612, 613, 614, 615, 616, 617, 618, 619, 620, 621, 622, 623, 624, 625, 626, 627, 628, 629, 630, 631, 632, 633, 634, 635, 636, 637, 638, 639, 640, 641, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646, 647, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 653, 654, 655, 656, 657, 658, 659, 660, 661, 662, 663, 664, 665, 666, 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, 672, 673, 674, 675, 676, 677, 678, 679, 680, 681, 682, 683, 684, 685, 686, 687, 688, 689, 690, 691, 692, 693, 694, 695, 696, 697, 698, 699, 700, 701, 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 707, 708, 709, 710, 711, 712, 713, 714, 715, 716, 717, 718, 719, 720, 721, 722, 723, 724, 725, 726, 727, 728, 729, 730, 731, 732, 733, 734, 735, 736, 737, 738, 739, 740, 741, 742, 743, 744, 745, 746, 747, 748, 749, 750, 751, 752, 753, 754, 755, 756, 757, 758, 759, 760, 761, 762, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769, 770, 771, 772, 773, 774, 775, 776, 777, 778, 779, 780, 781, 782, 783, 784, 785, 786, 787, 788, 789, 790, 791, 792, 793, 794, 795, 796, 797, 798, 799, 800, 801, 802, 803, 804, 805, 806, 807, 808, 809, 810, 811, 812, 813, 814, 815, 816, 817, 818, 819, 820, 821, 822, 823, 824, 825, 826, 827, 828, 829, 830, 831, 832, 833, 834, 835, 836, 837, 838, 839, 840, 841, 842, 843, 844, 845, 846, 847, 848, 849, 850, 851, 852, 853, 854, 855, 856, 857, 858, 859, 860, 861, 862, 863, 864, 865, 866, 867, 868, 869, 870, 871, 872, 873, 874, 875, 876, 877, 878, 879, 880, 881, 882, 883, 884, 885, 886, 887, 888, 889, 890, 891, 892, 893, 894, 895, 896, 897, 898, 899, 900, 901, 902, 903, 904, 905, 906, 907, 908, 909, 910, 911, 912, 913, 914, 915, 916, 917, 918, 919, 920, 921, 922, 923, 924, 925, 926, 927, 928, 929, 930, 931, 932, 933, 934, 935, 936, 937, 938, 939, 940, 941, 942, 943, 944, 945, 946, 947, 948, 949, 950, 951, 952, 953, 954, 955, 956, 957, 958, 959, 960, 961, 962, 963, 964, 965, 966, 967, 968, 969, 970, 971, 972, 973, 974, 975, 976, 977, 978, 979, 980, 981, 982, 983, 984, 985, 986, 987, 988, 989, 990, 991, 992, 993, 994, 995, 996, 997, 998, 999, 1000
    - Small Office Edition 10, 16, 18, 24, 26, 30, 32, 33, 34, 39, 51, 57, 61, 69, 73, 76, 78, 80, 82, 83, 96, 105, 164, 171, 175, 179, 214, 216, 217, 218, 222, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 310, 312, 322, 325, 327, 332, 342, 344, 345, 348, 352, 375
      - Except 16, 105, 218
      - Upgrading 83
    - Small Office Edition
      - Small Office Edition
        - 4T+4A+8DS 214, 352
      - Small Office Edition
        - Connections 214
        - Small Office Edition Control Units 10, 16, 24, 30, 39, 61, 73, 82, 216, 222, 322, 344, 348, 375
        - Small Office Edition
          - Embedded Voicemail 57
            - except 57
        - Small Office Edition Installation 69
        - Small Office Edition supports 30
          - Avaya 30
        - Small Office Edition System Components 10
        - Small Office Edition WiFi 322, 352
        - Small Office Edition Wireless Card 30, 216
        - Small Office WiFi 216
        - Small Stand 352
          - 4406 352
        - Smart Card 14, 16, 41, 128, 186, 208, 302, 352
        - Smart Card Feature Key 16, 128, 208, 352
        - Smart Card Feature Key dongle 16, 128
        - SMDR 7, 52, 54, 122, 301
          - called 301
        - SMDR CR 301
        - SMDR file 52, 301
          - records 52, 301
        - SMDR SR 301
        - SMDR6 318
        - snmp\_mibs 194
        - SMNPc 194
        - SMP 315
        - SMTP 49, 193, 315
          - email SNMP 193
          - IP Office 315
        - SMTP email 49
          - SNMP 49
        - SN 187
        - SNMP 49, 55, 193, 194, 196, 197, 198, 315
          - called 193
          - Enabling 196
          - log 193
          - respond 196
          - SMTP email 49
        - SNMP alarms 193

- SNMP Enabled 196, 197
- SNMP Introduction 193
- SNMP MIB's 55
- SNMP polling 193
- SNMP Port 196
- SNMP Trap 193, 197, 315
- SNMP Trap Sending 197
  - Enabling 197
- SNMP v1 193
- snmp\_mibs/IPOffice 194
- snmp\_mibs/IPOffice on IP Office Admin CD 194
- snmp\_mibs/standard 194
- snmp\_mibs/Standard on IP Office Admin CD 194
- SNMPc 194
- SNMPc mibfiles 194
  - IP Office Administrator Applications CD 194
- SNMPc's STANDARD.mib file 194
- SNMPTRAP 315
- SNMPv2-SMI 194
- SNMPv2-SMI.mib 194
  - including 194
- SNMPv2-SMI.mib file 194
- SO 191
- So8 32, 33, 34, 190, 191, 241, 247, 332, 335, 352
- So8 Example 190, 191
- So8 Module 34, 241, 247, 332, 335
- So8 Module Connections 241, 247
- SOC 383
- Socket 20, 24, 33, 34, 35, 61, 73, 78, 82, 93, 107, 109, 128, 129, 140, 152, 157, 183, 208, 210, 212, 214, 219, 220, 221, 227, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 291, 292, 330, 334, 336, 342, 345, 347, 352
- SOE 16, 24, 41, 57, 73, 76, 78, 80, 82, 83, 85, 86, 96, 115, 116, 186, 216, 217, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 352
  - calls 57
- SoftConsole 7, 19, 50, 55, 122, 308, 315, 318, 322, 329, 352
- SoftConsole/SoftConsole.exe 308
- Softphone 43
- Software 7, 22, 30, 42, 44, 47, 49, 50, 51, 54, 55, 64, 71, 75, 83, 85, 86, 91, 95, 113, 115, 116, 122, 129, 130, 133, 134, 135, 137, 140, 142, 152, 171, 185, 187, 189, 191, 193, 205, 207, 208, 210, 212, 214, 217, 219, 228, 229, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 295, 303, 306, 312, 324, 326, 327, 352
  - Enabling 42, 185
  - Software Developers Kit 55
  - Software Developer's Kit 55, 352
  - Software Features 42, 185
    - Enabling 42, 185
  - Software Level 44, 83, 113, 129, 135, 171, 208, 210, 212, 214, 228, 229, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 303
  - Software Upgrade 152
    - Forcing 152
  - Source Priority 164
  - sourced 30, 32, 60, 63, 164, 175, 194, 208, 210, 212, 214, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 312, 315, 332, 334, 352
  - sources failing 164
  - South Africa 33, 37, 38, 47, 82, 107, 111, 140, 147, 178, 219, 220, 229, 231, 245, 333, 352
    - Republic 37, 38, 82, 107, 111, 140, 147, 178, 219, 220, 231, 333
  - South America 33, 220, 352
  - SP2 71, 91, 130, 303, 309, 318
  - SP4 71, 91, 130, 303, 309, 318
  - Space Requirements 61
  - Spacer Pegs 124
  - Spain 47
  - Spanish 47, 55, 217, 301, 303, 306, 308, 311, 312
  - Spanish-Argentina 217
  - Spanish-Mexico 217
  - SPEAKER 253, 254, 255, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283
  - Specification 60, 71, 91, 130, 318, 379, 380
    - IP Office Application PC's 318
  - Spectrum 259, 260, 295, 324, 352
  - Spectrum 3214C Wallboard 352
  - Spectrum 3214C Wallboard Kit 352
  - Speech 50, 51, 55, 312, 318, 327, 329, 352
    - Text 51, 55, 312, 318, 327
    - Third Party Text 329, 352
  - SPID 191
  - SQL Service 315
  - src 315
  - SSA 87, 117, 149, 309
  - Stage 9a 102
  - Staging Installation 64, 123
    - During 64
  - Stand 22, 24, 78, 98, 100, 102, 124, 152, 216, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 264, 281, 291, 352
  - Stand 4400 Series Stand 264
  - Standard DCP Phone Keys 253, 254, 255, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283
  - Standard Edition 19, 138, 322, 323, 352
  - Standard ETSI Euro-ISDN 191
  - Standard ETSI ISDN 191
  - Standard IP Office Cables 35, 330
  - Standard Length 336, 347
  - STANDARD.mib 194
  - STANDARD.MIB file 194
  - Start 19, 24, 26, 37, 71, 73, 75, 76, 82, 83, 85, 86, 87, 91, 93, 95, 96, 98, 107, 111, 113, 115, 116, 117, 122, 124, 128, 129, 130, 132, 133, 134, 135, 137, 138, 142, 147, 149, 152, 158, 160, 171, 177, 188, 189, 194, 197, 198, 202, 204, 205, 210, 352
    - Monitor 98
    - OpenView Network Node Manager 194
  - start expiring 352
  - Start Manager 133, 138, 152, 188, 189
  - start transferring 205
  - station 43, 214, 226, 261, 262, 284, 285, 286, 328, 352
    - IP DECT 328
  - Status 42, 49, 50, 54, 55, 71, 85, 87, 91, 115, 117, 121, 124, 130, 136, 138, 142, 149, 164, 185, 188, 189, 197, 198, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 233, 259, 260, 293, 304, 306, 308, 309, 315, 318, 382
    - Using IP Office SNMP MIB files 49
  - Status Application 71, 85, 87, 91, 115, 117, 121, 124, 130, 142, 149, 164, 304, 309
  - Steady Green 135
  - steady green following 135
  - Steady Red 135
  - Still 30, 39, 49, 50, 76, 83, 96, 113, 135, 160, 171, 214, 218, 228
  - Stop Bits 201, 339
  - streaming 325
    - WAV 325

- structure 10, 12, 14, 35, 129, 151, 152, 162, 179, 194, 330, 338, 345
  - IP Office MIB 194
- Structured Cabling Line Cord 338, 345
- subnet 83, 109, 113, 132, 171, 175, 315
- Subnet Mask 132
- subnets 315
- sum 380, 383
  - RENs 383
  - Ringer Equivalence Numbers 380
- summarizes 18, 202, 204, 205
  - IP Office 18
- Suomi 47
- Supported Country Locales 47
- supporting 30, 44, 60, 122, 130, 221, 243, 352
  - 10Mbps/100Mbps LAN 243
  - 2B+D 221
  - 512MB Compact Flash 30
  - 64Mb Compact Flash 30
  - IP400 130
  - LAN 44
  - XM24 352
- Supports ICLID 227
- Supports PRI 24
- sve 47, 217
- Svenska 47
- swappable 216, 217
- Swapping 162
  - Analog 162
  - Avaya 4600/5600 162
  - Avaya 4600/5600 Series IP Extensions 162
  - Extension Users 162
  - Users Using Configuration Change 162
- Sweden 47
- Swedish 217, 299, 306, 308, 311, 312
- Switch Type 191
- switchable 332, 333
- Switching 184, 341
  - Capacity 184, 341
- Switzerland 47, 352
- synchronization 163, 164
- Sysmon 304
- System 7, 9, 10, 12, 14, 16, 19, 22, 26, 30, 34, 35, 37, 39, 41, 42, 44, 47, 49, 50, 52, 53, 56, 57, 61, 63, 65, 66, 67, 71, 73, 75, 76, 82, 83, 85, 86, 87, 91, 93, 95, 96, 105, 107, 109, 111, 113, 115, 116, 117, 121, 128, 130, 133, 134, 137, 138, 140, 142, 143, 147, 149, 151, 152, 160, 162, 163, 164, 166, 171, 175, 183, 184, 185, 186, 188, 189, 190, 191, 193, 198, 200, 201, 205, 207, 208, 210, 212, 214, 218, 219, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 284, 285, 286, 293, 295, 301, 302, 303, 304, 306, 308, 309, 310, 312, 315, 318, 322, 323, 325, 327, 328, 330, 332, 334, 338, 339, 341, 345, 352, 376, 378, 380, 382, 383
  - IP addresses 205
  - Operating 71, 91, 130, 303, 309, 318
  - System | System 47, 175
  - System | Telephony 175
  - System Components 10, 12, 14, 207
  - System Information 191
  - System IP Address 76, 96
  - System Monitor 71, 76, 91, 96, 130, 304, 318
  - System Name 67
  - System Overview 9
  - System Password 73, 75, 76, 83, 86, 93, 95, 96, 109, 113, 116, 134, 137, 171
  - system programming 63
  - System Short Code 175, 190
    - Create 190
  - System Status 85, 87, 115, 117, 142, 149, 309
  - System Status Access 85, 115, 142
  - System Status Application 71, 85, 87, 91, 115, 117, 121, 130, 142, 149, 304, 309
    - default 87, 117, 149
    - Running 87, 117, 149
  - System Using System Monitor 76, 96
    - Checking 76, 96
  - system's 175
    - hear 175
    - listen 175
  - systems running 19, 71, 91, 130, 219
  - systems running software 303
- T**
- T 147, 350
- T1 18, 22, 24, 166, 168, 198, 221, 230, 347
- T1 PRI 22, 166, 168, 198, 221, 230
- T1 PRI Trunk Cards 221
- T1 PRI Trunks 168, 221
- T1 Robbed-Bit 24
- T1/PRI 352
- T3 32, 35, 43, 47, 57, 284, 285, 286, 290, 330, 352
- T3 AEI/Headset Link 352
  - IP Phones 352
- T3 Classic 284, 285, 286, 290, 352
- T3 Comfort 285, 290, 352
- T3 Compact 286, 290, 352
- T3 DSS 32, 284, 285, 286, 290, 352
- T3 DSS Expansion Unit 284, 285, 286, 290, 352
- T3 DSS provides 290
- T3 DSS Unit 284, 285, 286, 290, 352
- T3 Headset 284, 285, 286, 352
- T3 Headset Link 284, 285, 286, 352
- T3 Headset Link Unit 284, 285, 286, 352
- T3 IP 57, 284, 285, 286, 352
  - AEI/Headset Link 284, 285, 286
- T3 IP Classic 284
- T3 IP Comfort 285
- T3 IP Compact 286
- T3 IP DSS 284, 285, 286
  - Power Supply 284, 285, 286
- T3 IP Phones 352
  - Power Supply Unit 352
- T3 IP Power Supply Unit 284, 285, 286
- T3 IPN 284, 285, 286
- T3 Phones 47, 290
- T3 Series 35, 47, 290, 330, 352
- T3 Series Phones 352
- T3 UPN 284, 285, 286
  - Link 284, 285, 286
- T3 UPN Classic 284
- T3 UPN Comfort 285
- T3 UPN Compact 286
- T38 57
- Taiwan 47
- TAPI 50, 54, 55, 310, 315, 325
- TAPI 2.1 54
- TAPI 3.0 54
- TAPI 3.0. 54
- TAPI Link Pro 310, 325
- TAPI WAV 54, 310, 325
- TAPI WAV file 325
- TAPI/tspi2w.tsp 310
- TAPI2 310
- TAPILink Lite 50, 54
- TAPILink Pro 54, 310, 325
- TAPI-WAV 54
- TBC 322, 352
- TBD 245, 247, 249, 251, 352
- TCP 52, 295, 300, 301, 303, 312, 315
- TCP/IP 132, 187
- TCP/IP networking 187
- TDM 57
- Technical Bulletin 64, 171
  - IP Office 171
- Technical Support Organization 376
- Tek-Tips 60
- Telecom 382
- telecommunications 380
- telecoms 163

- Telepermit 382
  - grant 382
- Telepermitted 382
- Telephone Companies 38, 178, 374, 383
- Telephone Extension 378
- Telephone No 380
- Telephone Numbers 190, 376, 383
- Telephony 7, 37, 47, 49, 56, 66, 82, 111, 147, 304
- Telnet 315
- Temperature 39, 63, 105, 143
  - Operating 143
- Terminal 180, 201, 202, 204, 205, 332, 339, 348, 374, 377, 379, 380, 382, 383
- Terminal Attachments 383
  - Administrative Council 383
- Terminal Equipment Technical Specifications 379, 380
- Tested 37, 43, 56, 75, 82, 95, 111, 147, 187, 191, 193, 194, 207, 230, 295, 299, 300, 312, 318, 379
- Text 10, 12, 14, 51, 55, 67, 174, 312, 318, 327
  - Speech 51, 55, 312, 318, 327
- text string 10, 12, 14
- Text To Speech 51, 55, 312, 318, 327
- Text-to-Speech 329, 352
  - IP Office 329, 352
- TFTP 30, 44, 49, 56, 152, 175, 205, 217, 259, 260, 303, 315
- TFTP Server IP Address 175
- TFTPLog 205
- The Upgrade Wizard tool 44, 83, 113, 134, 171
- These MIB 194
- These WAN 243
- Third Party Database Access 318
- Third Party Text 329, 352
  - Speech 329, 352
- TIA/EIA-IS-968 Section 4.5 377
- TIA/EIA-IS-968 Section 4.5.2.5. 377
- Tick SNMP Enabled 196
- Time 34, 38, 53, 73, 93, 107, 123, 129, 164, 178, 193, 202, 205, 259, 260, 291, 295, 309, 315, 329, 373
- tip/ring 374
- Tma 105, 143
- TNV 378
- TNV2 378
- TNV3 378
- To Send 51, 66, 138, 188, 189, 201, 312, 339, 348, 349, 350
- tool during 76, 96
  - installation 76, 96
- tool provides 309
- Tools 49, 64, 71, 76, 78, 80, 83, 91, 96, 98, 100, 102, 107, 109, 111, 113, 121, 124, 128, 130, 134, 140, 147, 152, 160, 171, 303, 304, 309
- Tools Required 64, 78, 80, 83, 98, 100, 102, 107, 109, 111, 113, 121, 124, 128, 134, 140, 147, 152, 171
- TOT 76, 96
- Traditional IDC Punchdown
- Wiring Installations 35, 330
- TRANSFER 253, 254, 255, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283
- Transmission Control 315
- Transmit Clock 348, 349, 350
- Transmit Data 201, 339, 348, 349, 350
- TransTalk 9040 207
- Trap Destination 197
- Trap Generation 198
- Tripod 352
- Trivial File Transfer 315
- TRNK PRI 230, 352
- Troubleshooting Workshop 59
- TRUNK 124
- trunk card provides 166, 222
- Trunk Cards 16, 18, 20, 78, 102, 111, 124, 166, 208, 210, 212, 214, 221, 222, 230, 332, 352, 375
  - Fitting 78, 102
- Trunk Configuration 163
- Trunk Connections 35, 164, 330
- Trunk Daughter Cards 18, 22, 124, 136, 229, 230, 352
- Trunk Interface 16, 56, 102, 198, 348, 373, 375
- Trunk Interface Cards 16, 102, 348
  - Fitting 102
- Trunk Interface Modules 373, 375
- trunk provides 166, 222
- trunk providing 2B+D 22
- trunk supporting 221
- Trunk Type 166, 168
  - Set 166
- trunk/extension 22
- Trunks 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 19, 20, 22, 24, 26, 30, 35, 37, 38, 53, 56, 65, 66, 76, 78, 82, 96, 98, 102, 111, 124, 128, 136, 138, 147, 163, 164, 166, 168, 178, 197, 198, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 245, 294, 323, 330, 332, 333, 335, 336, 344, 347, 348, 352, 373, 374, 375
- trunks during power 344
- TS013 380
  - connecting 380
- TSO 376
- TTS 51, 55, 312, 318, 327, 352
- TTS CD's 55, 312
- TTY 47, 201, 339
- turn\_off.bat 152
- turn\_on.bat 152
- Twisted Pair 350, 351
- Tx 348, 349
- Tx1 102, 223
- Tx-A 335, 336, 342, 347, 348, 350, 351
- Tx-B 335, 336, 342, 347, 348, 350, 351
- TxCk 348
- TxCk-A 348, 350
- TxCk-B 348, 350
- TYP 76, 96
- Type
  - Out 166
- type Direct Sequence Spread Spectrum 259, 260
- types 12, 14, 16, 20, 22, 24, 26, 30, 32, 35, 38, 39, 41, 42, 56, 60, 63, 65, 66, 67, 76, 83, 96, 113, 124, 134, 136, 138, 145, 151, 152, 157, 166, 171, 178, 180, 185, 186, 187, 193, 196, 197, 198, 205, 208, 210, 212, 214, 225, 228, 229, 230, 259, 260, 284, 285, 286, 310, 312, 325, 327, 330, 332, 337, 340, 348, 352, 373, 375, 377, 380
  - Feature Key dongle 12
  - Typical Desktop PC 34
  - Typical IP Office System 34
  - Typical Off-Hook Power Consumption 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280
  - Typical Server PC 34
  - Typically IP Office 171

## U

- U PRI 76, 96
- UAE 229
- UDP 52, 196, 197, 293, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 306, 308, 310, 311, 312, 315
  - IP 52
- UDP/TCP 315
- UK 47, 55, 261, 262, 301, 312, 352
- UK English 47
- UK20 227
- UL60950 373
- U-Law 210, 212, 214, 230, 284, 285, 286, 352

- Unboxed 210, 212, 214, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251
- Under Destination 174
- Under File 205
- understand 7, 49, 85, 115, 142, 160, 304
  - Security Settings 85, 115, 142
- Unearthed Power Cord 33, 352
- Uni 20, 124, 221, 224, 228, 229, 230, 352
- uninsulated 374
- uninterruptable 60
- Uninterrupted Power Supply 34
- Unit 9, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 19, 22, 24, 26, 30, 32, 33, 34, 35, 37, 39, 41, 44, 51, 57, 60, 61, 63, 66, 73, 75, 76, 80, 82, 83, 85, 86, 93, 95, 96, 98, 100, 102, 105, 107, 109, 111, 113, 115, 116, 128, 129, 130, 132, 133, 134, 135, 137, 140, 142, 143, 145, 147, 157, 164, 171, 175, 179, 180, 183, 184, 186, 188, 193, 196, 197, 200, 201, 202, 204, 205, 207, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 229, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 255, 263, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 312, 315, 330, 332, 334, 335, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 345, 348, 352, 375
  - for upgrading 44
  - wall mounting 145
- unit found 134
- Unit/Broadcast 75, 83, 85, 86, 95, 113, 115, 116, 133, 134, 137, 142, 171
- Unit/Broadcast Address 75, 83, 85, 86, 95, 113, 115, 116, 133, 134, 137, 142, 171
- United Arab Emirates 229
- units need 83, 113
- units proceed 76, 96
- units running 26, 51
- Universal 22, 228, 229, 230, 323, 352
- University 59, 60
- Unknown 42, 138, 185, 188, 189, 380
- unlabelled 136, 225
- Unpacking 123
  - Equipment 123
- Unshielded Twisted-Pair 35, 330
- Unsuitable 164
- Unsupported Items 207
- untick 83, 113, 171
  - Validate 83, 113, 171
  - WAN3 113, 171
- Unused Trunks 166
- unvalidated 44, 83, 113, 171
- Unvalidated Only 44, 83, 113, 171
- Unvalidated Upgrade 44, 83, 113, 171
- up/down 197
- Upgrade 83
- Upgrade Procedure 83, 113, 134, 171
- Upgrade Wizard 44, 83, 113, 134, 171, 303
- Upgrade Wizard tool 44, 83
- upgradeable Avaya 49
- Upgradeable Firmware 266, 267, 270, 271, 272, 276, 279, 280, 283, 284, 285, 286
- UpgradeWiz 83, 113, 134, 171
- UpgradeWizard 315
- Upgrading 44, 83, 85, 113, 115, 134, 142, 152, 171, 205, 323, 328, 352
  - 3-5 328, 352
  - Core Software 83, 113, 134, 171
  - IP Office 83, 113, 134, 171
  - IP Office 3.2 85, 115, 142
  - IP406 V2 113
  - IP500 323
  - pre-Level 2.1 83, 113, 171
  - pre-Level 2.1 Systems 83, 113, 171
  - Small Office Edition 83
  - WAN3 10/100 44
- Upn 35, 43, 330, 352
- UPS 34, 60
- UPS Calculator 60
- URL 376
- US 47, 55, 152, 221, 301, 311, 312, 352
- US English 47
- US PRI 221
- USA 47, 191, 255, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 282, 283, 288, 289, 291, 292, 348, 352, 376
- USA/Canada 375
- USB 41, 49, 71, 91, 130, 186, 187, 189, 302, 332, 352
- USB 1.1 187
- USB Feature Key 187, 189
- USB Feature Key Installation 189
- USB Port Feature Key 49, 71, 91, 130, 302, 352
- use differing 57
- Use External Music 175
  - selecting 175
- Use External Music on Hold 175
- User | Telephony 306, 326
- User Applications 50
- User Applications CD 55
- User Datagram 315
- User Name 59, 60, 87, 117, 149, 152, 174
- User Restriction/Rights 67
- User Setup 191
- Users 16, 35, 42, 47, 49, 50, 51, 55, 56, 59, 60, 67, 71, 73, 85, 86, 87, 91, 93, 115, 116, 117, 130, 137, 142, 149, 152, 158, 160, 162, 174, 185, 191, 295, 299, 300, 303, 305, 306, 308, 310, 311, 312, 315, 318, 322, 324, 325, 326, 329, 330, 352, 377, 379
  - Create 174
- users repeat 160, 162
- users run 50
  - number 50
- Users Using Configuration Change 162
  - Swapping 162
- uses 16, 18, 20, 22, 24, 26, 30, 32, 34, 35, 37, 39, 41, 42, 44, 47, 50, 51, 53, 54, 55, 57, 63, 64, 66, 67, 71, 76, 82, 83, 87, 91, 96, 102, 105, 107, 111, 113, 117, 123, 124, 128, 130, 136, 138, 140, 143, 147, 149, 152, 157, 158, 160, 163, 164, 171, 175, 180, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 193, 194, 202, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, 217, 223, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 257, 259, 260, 263, 291, 293, 295, 299, 300, 309, 310, 312, 318, 322, 325, 327, 330, 334, 336, 341, 347, 352, 374, 377, 379, 380
  - 512MB Compact Flash 217
  - 64MB Compact Flash 217
  - dongle 41, 186
  - IP Office 3.2 supports 193
  - MIBs ready 194
  - Phone Manager/PC
  - Softphone Avaya
  - recommends 318
- Uses IEC60320 C13 352
- Uses IEC60320 C7 352
- Using 10, 12, 14, 20, 22, 24, 26, 30, 32, 35, 37, 39, 41, 44, 47, 49, 50, 51, 54, 57, 63, 67, 71, 76, 80, 82, 83, 91, 96, 98, 100, 102, 105, 107, 109, 111, 113, 124, 128, 130, 134, 140, 147, 152, 158, 162, 164, 171, 174, 175, 177, 179, 180, 182, 183, 186, 187, 191, 193, 194,

- 197, 202, 205, 208, 210, 212, 218, 219, 220, 225, 230, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251, 259, 260, 261, 262, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 292, 299, 305, 310, 311, 312, 315, 322, 323, 325, 327, 330, 333, 340, 374, 376, 383
  - External Output 183
  - Using 14AWG 105, 182
  - using Avaya 261, 262, 312, 327
  - Using IP Office 49, 50, 158, 183, 299
  - Using IP Office Manager 158
  - Using IP Office SNMP MIB 49
  - Using IP Office SNMP MIB files 49
    - status 49
  - Using Manager 83, 102, 107, 109, 113, 134, 140, 158, 171
  - using Manager receive 102, 107, 109, 140
    - configuration 109
  - using VPNremote firmware 322
  - USOC RJ45S 383
  - USOC RJ48C 383
  - UTP 35, 330
- V**
  - V.24 24, 26, 109, 210, 212, 243, 332, 348, 349
  - V.24 WAN 349
  - V.24 WAN Cable 349
  - V.24 WAN Service 349
  - V.24/V.28 243, 348
  - V.24/V.35 348
  - V.32 30, 216
  - V.35 24, 26, 109, 210, 212, 243, 332, 348, 350
  - V.35 WAN 350
  - V.35 WAN Cable 350
  - V.35 WAN Service 350
  - V.90 30, 100, 216
    - incoming 30
  - V2 18, 26, 30, 41, 186, 216, 217, 218, 352
  - V3.0 318
  - V3.1 318
  - V3\_0\_99 113
  - V3\_1\_999 113
  - V3\_2\_99 83
  - V35 Gnd 348
  - V5.0.1 194
    - CastleRock SNMPc 194
  - VA 34
    - get 34
  - VA values 34
  - VA values for 34
  - Valid 42, 138, 140, 168, 185, 188, 189
  - Validate 10, 12, 14, 44, 49, 83, 87, 113, 117, 149, 171, 302
    - default 44
    - untick 83, 113, 171
  - Validated Upgrade 44, 83, 113, 171
  - Various IP Office 10, 12, 14, 41, 42, 44, 138, 185, 186, 318
  - VB Scripting 329, 352
  - VCM 18, 20, 30, 76, 96, 98, 102, 124, 138, 208, 210, 212, 214, 218, 224, 225, 352
  - VCM 10 352
  - VCM 16 20, 124, 224, 352
  - VCM 20 218, 352
  - VCM 20 on IP403 218
  - VCM 24 20, 124, 224, 352
  - VCM 30 20, 124, 224, 352
  - VCM Card Slots 208, 210, 212, 214
  - VCM Cards 18, 30, 98, 208, 210, 212, 214, 218
    - Fitting 98
    - Installing 98
  - VCM Channel 124, 138
  - VCM provides 218
    - number 218
  - VCM10 98, 218
  - VCM16 98, 218
  - VCM20 98, 218
  - VCM24 98, 218
  - VCM30 98, 218
  - VCM4 98, 218
  - VCM5 98, 218
  - VCM8 98, 218
  - VCOMP 76, 96, 98, 102
  - Venezuela 47
  - VER 76, 96
  - Video 191, 380
  - Video Comm Interface 191
  - Video Conference 191
  - View Station PVS 1419 191
  - viewing 164, 205, 301
    - Current Clock Source 164
    - Delta Server 301
  - Viewstation 128 191
  - Viewstation 256 191
  - Viewstation MP 191
  - Vinyl 258, 352
  - VK00nDd15SDvXoxkw9cR9x\_ jOXr\_AWz9 10, 12, 14
  - VM 47, 295, 300, 318
  - VM Lite 47, 318
  - VM Pro 47, 295, 300, 318
  - VM Pro Server 300, 318
  - VMAIL 76, 96
  - VMPPro 295, 300, 312, 327, 352
  - VMPPro Database 312
  - VMPPro Database Interface 312, 327, 352
  - VMPPro Recordings
    - Administrators 300, 312, 327, 352
  - VMPPro TTS 312, 327, 352
  - VMPPro VB Script 312, 327, 352
  - VMPPro VPIM DBSVR 312
  - VMPPro VPIM Receiver 312
  - VMPPro VPIM Server 312
  - Voice Compression 12, 14, 18, 20, 30, 56, 57, 98, 136, 138, 210, 212, 214, 217, 218, 225, 352
  - Voice Compression Channels 57, 136, 225
  - Voice Compression Module Cards 218
  - Voice Compression Modules 98, 218
  - Voice Compressor 198
  - Voice Mail Lite 71, 91, 130
  - Voice Mail Pro 57, 327
  - Voice Priority Processor 10 352
  - Voice Priority Processor 20 352
  - voicemail 7, 10, 12, 18, 19, 30, 34, 41, 42, 47, 49, 50, 51, 55, 57, 59, 64, 67, 71, 76, 91, 96, 122, 130, 183, 185, 186, 198, 208, 210, 212, 214, 217, 295, 299, 300, 310, 311, 312, 315, 318, 325, 327, 329, 352
    - E-mail 318
    - Link 198
    - Modular Messaging 327
    - playing 51
  - Voicemail Applications 51
  - Voicemail Channels 208, 210, 212, 214
  - voicemail email 51, 67, 312
  - Voicemail Installation 318
    - refer 318
  - Voicemail Licenses 352
  - Voicemail Lite 7, 19, 47, 51, 55, 57, 71, 76, 91, 96, 122, 130, 311, 312, 318
  - Voicemail Lite Installation 7, 122
  - Voicemail Mail Lite 71, 91, 130
  - Voicemail On 67
  - Voicemail Pro 7, 19, 41, 42, 47, 50, 51, 55, 71, 91, 122, 130, 183, 185, 186, 299, 300, 312, 318, 327, 329, 352
    - CD 55
      - during 47
      - existing 312, 327
      - license 42, 185
      - refer 47
  - Voicemail Pro 4.0 55
  - Voicemail Pro 4.0 CD 55
  - Voicemail Pro application 41, 55, 186
    - Contains 55
  - Voicemail Pro CD 352

- Voicemail Pro Installation 7, 47, 122  
Refer 47
- Voicemail Pro Networked Messaging 312, 327, 329, 352
- Voicemail Pro PC 42, 185
- Voicemail Pro ScanSoft Text-to-Speech 352
- Voicemail Pro ScanSoft TTS CD's 55
- Voicemail Pro Server 299, 312
- Voicemail  
Pro/IMS/IMSAdmin.exe 312
- Voicemail  
Pro/IMS/IMSServiceRestart.exe 312
- Voicemail  
Pro/IMS/UMServer.exe 312
- Voicemail  
Pro/IMS/VMServer.exe 312
- Voicemail Pro/TAPI WAV 18, 208, 210, 212, 214
- Voicemail Pro/TAPI WAV Channels 18
- Voicemail Pro/VM/IMSSec.exe 312
- Voicemail  
Pro/VM/VMPCDBSvc.exe 312
- Voicemail  
Pro/VM/vmprov5svc.exe 312
- Voicemail  
Pro/VPIM/vpimdbsvr.exe 312
- Voicemail  
Pro/VPIM/VPIMReceiver.exe 312
- Voicemail  
Pro/VPIM/VPIMServer3.exe 312
- Voicemail Pro/VPIMClient.exe 312
- Voicemail Pro's TTS 55
- Voicemail Server 47, 49, 64, 76, 96, 315
- Voicemail Server/VMLite.exe 311
- Voicemail Services 57
- VoIP 12, 20, 50, 56, 214, 225, 306, 315, 322, 352  
during 315
- Voltage 180, 183, 184, 227, 341, 345, 349
- VOLUME DOWN 253, 254, 255, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283
- VOLUME UP 253, 254, 255, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283
- VPIM Client 312
- VPN 322, 352
- VPN IPsec 329, 352
- VPNM 55
- VRL 315
- VS 191
- W**
- Waiting 87, 117, 149
- Waiting for 87, 117, 149
- walkie-talkie 260
- Wall 14, 33, 39, 61, 63, 73, 80, 93, 121, 129, 145, 152, 208, 337, 352
- Wall Fixings 80, 152
- Wall Mounting 14, 39, 61, 63, 145, 152  
unit 145
- Wall Mounting Kit 39, 145, 208, 352
- Wallboard 53, 295, 318, 324, 352
- Wallboard Client 295, 318
- Wallboard DBMGR 295
- Wallboard Manager 53, 295, 324, 352
- Wallboard manager Comms Cards 352
- Wallboard Manager provides 53, 295
- Wallboard Server 295, 318
- Wallboard/22 352
- WAN 18, 43, 76, 78, 96, 109, 129, 174, 208, 210, 212, 214, 222, 243, 332, 342, 348, 352, 375, 378  
connect 174, 243  
fitting 78
- WAN acting 342
- WAN Cables 109, 174
- WAN Cards 78, 222
- WAN ID 348
- WAN Link 174  
Creating 174
- WAN Port 18, 76, 96, 109, 210, 212, 214, 243, 342, 348, 378
- WAN port supports 348
- WAN Service 174  
become 174
- WAN Trunk Card 222
- WAN3 14, 16, 26, 32, 33, 34, 35, 44, 66, 76, 96, 107, 109, 113, 171, 197, 198, 243, 330, 332, 340, 342, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352  
Connect 109  
except 14, 107, 340  
excluding 66  
including 113, 171  
scanned 109  
untick 113, 171
- WAN3 10/100 16, 26, 32, 33, 44, 109, 113, 171, 243, 342, 348, 352  
except 26  
power 109  
rear 348  
upgrading 44
- WAN3 10/100 Modules 26, 44, 109, 113, 171, 243, 342
- WAN3 Module 34, 35, 66, 76, 96, 109, 113, 171, 243, 330, 342, 349, 350, 351, 352  
Adding 109
- WAN3 Module Connections 243
- WANPort 174  
Edit 174
- wants 34, 71, 76, 83, 91, 96, 102, 113, 130, 133, 134, 160, 162, 171, 223  
IP Office Rx1 102
- warmStart 198
- WARNING 37, 82, 111, 147, 187, 200, 202, 204, 219, 220, 231, 245, 333, 340, 373, 379, 380
- WARNINGS 83, 113, 134, 171
- Watts 32, 34
- WAV 310, 325  
Allows streaming 310, 325  
streaming 325
- wav file 30, 217
- Wave 310, 315, 325, 352
- Wave User 310, 325, 352
- Web 10, 12, 14, 34, 44, 50, 51, 59, 60, 122, 138, 299, 301, 312, 318, 376
- Web Campaigns 312, 318
- web site provides 34
- Web Sites 10, 12, 14, 34, 44, 59, 60, 138, 376
- website 55, 193
- WEP 259, 260
- Which IP Office Admin Suite 71, 91, 130
- Whilst avayafw.bat only 315
- Whilst PC's 187
- White/Blue 335, 336, 342, 347
- White/Brown 335, 336, 342, 347
- White/Green 335, 336, 342, 347
- White/Orange 335, 336, 342, 347
- Width 18, 208, 210, 212, 214, 231, 233, 235, 237, 239, 241, 243, 245, 247, 249, 251
- WiFi 259, 260
- Windows 49, 50, 51, 53, 64, 71, 91, 109, 130, 132, 152, 187, 189, 205, 293, 295, 299, 301, 303, 304, 309, 311, 312, 315, 318  
following 49
- Windows 2000 71, 91, 130, 187, 299, 303, 309, 318
- Windows 2000 Professional 71, 91, 130, 299, 303, 309, 318

- Windows 2000 Server 71, 91, 130, 303, 309, 318
- Windows 2000/2003/XP Professional 318
- Windows 2000/XP 318
- Windows 2000/XP/2003 64
- Windows 2003 71, 91, 130, 303, 309, 318
- Windows 2003 SBS 71, 91, 130, 303, 309
- Windows 2003 Server 71, 91, 130, 303, 309, 318
- Windows 2003 server8 318
- Windows 95 318
- Windows 98 PCs 318
- Windows Control Panel 71, 91, 130
- Windows logon 71, 91, 130
- Windows ME 318
- Windows ODBC 51
- Windows Operating System Service Pack Support 318
- Windows operating systems 318
- Windows PC 51, 53, 71, 91, 130, 295, 299, 311
  - IP Office Administrator Applications CD 51, 311
- Windows PC running 299
- Windows Server 2003 318
- Windows server operating 295
- Windows Servers 295, 318
- Windows Small Business Server 2003 318
- Windows System Tray 189
- Windows Vista 309, 318
- Windows XP 71, 91, 130, 293, 295, 299, 303, 304, 309, 318
- OS 318
- Windows XP Home Edition 318
- Windows XP Professional 71, 91, 130, 299, 303, 309, 318
- Windows XP/2000 318
- Windows XP/Windows 2003 firewall 315
- Wired Equivalent Privacy 259, 260
- Wireless Cards 10, 30, 216, 322, 352
- Wireless Keyboard/Remote Control 352
- Wireless Phone 256, 257, 258, 352
- Within Manager 152
- Witness/tomcat5024/bin/tomcat5.exe 300
- WordPad 67
- Workforce Management 53, 295
- World 210, 212, 214, 315, 352, 375
  - Rest 210, 212, 214, 352, 375
- World Wide Web-HTTP 315
- WPA2-PSK 259, 260
- WPA-PSK 259, 260
- www.avaya-learning.com 59
- www.iana.org/assignments/port-numbers 315
- X**
- X.21 24, 26, 109, 210, 212, 243, 332, 348, 351
- X.21 WAN 24, 26, 109, 210, 212, 243, 351
- X.21 WAN Cable 109, 351
- X.21 WAN Service 24, 210, 212, 351
- X.Y 44
- x1 332
- x16 332
- x16/x30 332
- x2 332
- x3 332
- x4 332
- x8 332
- x8/x16/x30 332
- XM24 32, 282, 283, 292, 338, 352
  - supporting 352
- XM24 Phone add-ons 32
- XM24 Stand 282, 283, 292, 352
- XP 187, 293, 294, 295, 299, 300, 301, 302, 304, 306, 308, 311, 312
- XP Pro 295, 306, 312
- XX10 152
- XX20 152
- XX20 models 152
- Y**
- Yahoo Groups 60
- Yes 71, 83, 91, 113, 130, 133, 134, 171, 191
- Z**
- Z-bracket 80
  - fixing 80
- zeroDotZero 194
- zhh 47
- Z-shaped 80
  - Fit 80



Performance figures and data quoted in this document are typical, and must be specifically confirmed in writing by Avaya before they become applicable to any particular order or contract.

The company reserves the right to make alterations or amendments to the detailed specifications at its discretion. The publication of information in this document does not imply freedom from patent or other protective rights of Avaya or others.

Intellectual property related to this product (including trademarks) and registered to Lucent Technologies have been transferred or licensed to Avaya.

All trademarks identified by the ® or ™ are registered trademarks or trademarks, respectively, of Avaya Inc. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

This document contains proprietary information of Avaya and is not to be disclosed or used except in accordance with applicable agreements.

Any comments or suggestions regarding this document should be sent to "wgctechpubs@avaya.com".

© 2007 Avaya Inc. All rights reserved.

Avaya  
Unit 1, Sterling Court  
15 - 21 Mundells  
Welwyn Garden City  
Hertfordshire  
AL7 1LZ  
United Kingdom

Tel: +44 (0) 1707 392200  
Fax: +44 (0) 1707 376933

Web: <http://www.avaya.com/ipoffice/knowledgebase>